CONTENTS

SECTIO	N 1 GENERAL	
Group	1 Safety Hints	1-1
Group	2 Specifications	1-10
SECTIO	N 2 STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION	
Group	1 Pump Device ·····	2-1
Group	2 Main Control Valve	2-20
Group	3 Swing Device	2-46
Group	4 Travel Device ·····	2-57
Group	5 RCV Lever ·····	2-71
Group	6 RCV Pedal ·····	2-78
SECTIO	N 3 HYDRAULIC SYSTEM	
Group	1 Hydraulic Circuit ·····	3-1
Group	2 Main Circuit ·····	3-2
Group	3 Pilot Circuit ·····	3-5
Group	4 Single Operation	3-14
Group	5 Combined Operation	3-24
SECTIO	N 4 ELECTRICAL SYSTEM	
Group	1 Component Location	4-1
Group	2 Electric Circuit ·····	4-3
Group	3 Electrical Component Specification	4-23
Group	4 Connectors ·····	4-32
SECTIO	N 5 MECHATRONICS SYSTEM	
Group	1 Outline	5-1
Group	2 Mode selection System ·····	5-3
Group	3 Automatic Deceleration System	5-6
	4 Power Boost System	
=	5 Travel Speed Control System	
	6 Automatic Warming Up Function	
	7 Engine Overheat Prevention Function	
	8 Variable Power Control System	

	O	^	Attackers and Flavy Constral Cyceters	F 40
			Attachment Flow Control System	
			Boom Floating Control System	
			Intelligent Power Control System	
			Anti-Restart System	
			Self-Diagnostic System	
	-		Engine Control System ·····	
			EPPR (Electro Proportional Pressure Reducing) Valve	
	-		Monitoring System ·····	
	Group	17	Fuel Warmer System	5-96
SE	CTIO	N 6	TROUBLESHOOTING	
	Group	1	Before Troubleshooting	6-1
	Group	2	Hydraulic and Mechanical System ·····	6-4
			Electrical System ·····	
	Group	4	Mechatronics System	6-40
SE	CTIO	N 7	MAINTENANCE STANDARD	
			Operational Performance Test	
	-		Major Components ·····	
	Group	3	Track and Work Equipment	7-32
SE	CTIO	N 8	DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY	
	Group	1	Precaution	8-1
	Group	2	Tightening Torque ·····	8-4
	Group	3	Pump Device ·····	8-7
	Group	4	Main Control Valve	8-30
	Group	5	Swing Device	8-54
	Group	6	Travel Device	8-78
	Group	7	RCV Lever ·····	8-111
	Group	8	Turning Joint ·····	8-125
	Group	9	Boom, Arm and Bucket Cylinder	8-130
	-		Undercarriage ······	
			Work Equipment ·····	
	- 1		• •	

SECTION 9 COMPONENT MOUNTING TORQUE

Group	1 Introduction guide ·····	9-1
Group	2 Engine system ·····	9-2
Group	3 Electric system	9-4
Group	4 Hydraulic system ·····	9-6
Group	5 Undercarriage ·····	9-9
Group	6 Structure	9-10
Group	7 Work equipment ······	9-15

1. STRUCTURE

This service manual has been prepared as an aid to improve the quality of repairs by giving the serviceman an accurate understanding of the product and by showing him the correct way to perform repairs and make judgements. Make sure you understand the contents of this manual and use it to full effect at every opportunity.

This service manual mainly contains the necessary technical information for operations performed in a service workshop.

For ease of understanding, the manual is divided into the following sections.

SECTION 1 GENERAL

This section explains the safety hints and gives the specification of the machine and major components.

SECTION 2 STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION

This section explains the structure and function of each component. It serves not only to give an understanding of the structure, but also serves as reference material for troubleshooting.

SECTION 3 HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

This section explains the hydraulic circuit, single and combined operation.

SECTION 4 ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

This section explains the electrical circuit, monitoring system and each component. It serves not only to give an understanding electrical system, but also serves as reference material for trouble shooting.

SECTION 5 MECHATRONICS SYSTEM

This section explains the computer aided power optimization system and each component.

SECTION 6 TROUBLESHOOTING

This section explains the troubleshooting charts correlating **problems** to **causes**.

SECTION 7 MAINTENANCE STANDARD

This section gives the judgement standards when inspecting disassembled parts.

SECTION 8 DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

This section explains the order to be followed when removing, installing, disassembling or assembling each component, as well as precautions to be taken for these operations.

SECTION 9 COMPONENT MOUNTING TORQUE

This section shows bolt specifications and standard torque values needed when mounting components to the machine.

The specifications contained in this shop manual are subject to change at any time and without any advance notice. Contact your HD Hyundai Construction Equipment distributor for the latest information.

2. HOW TO READ THE SERVICE MANUAL

Distribution and updating

Any additions, amendments or other changes will be sent to HD Hyundai Construction Equipment distributors.

Get the most up-to-date information before you start any work.

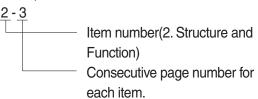
Filing method

1. See the page number on the bottom of the page.

File the pages in correct order.

2. Following examples shows how to read the page number.

Example 1



3. Additional pages: Additional pages are indicated by a hyphen(-) and number after the page number. File as in the example.

Revised edition mark(123...)

When a manual is revised, an edition mark is recorded on the bottom outside corner of the pages.

Revisions

Revised pages are shown at the list of revised pages on the between the contents page and section 1 page.

Symbols

So that the shop manual can be of ample practical use, important places for safety and quality are marked with the following symbols.

Symbol	Item	Remarks
Λ	Cofoty	Special safety precautions are necessary when performing the work.
	Safety	Extra special safety precautions are necessary when performing the work because it is under internal pressure.
*	Caution	Special technical precautions or other precautions for preserving standards are necessary when performing the work.

3. CONVERSION TABLE

Method of using the Conversion Table

The Conversion Table in this section is provided to enable simple conversion of figures. For details of the method of using the Conversion Table, see the example given below.

Example

1. Method of using the Conversion Table to convert from millimeters to inches Convert 55mm into inches.

- (1) Locate the number 50in the vertical column at the left side, take this as ⓐ, then draw a horizontal line from ⓐ.
- (2) Locate the number 5in the row across the top, take this as ⓑ, then draw a perpendicular line down from ⓑ.
- (3) Take the point where the two lines cross as ©. This point © gives the value when converting from millimeters to inches. Therefore, 55mm = 2.165 inches.

2. Convert 550mm into inches.

- (1) The number 550 does not appear in the table, so divide by 10(Move the decimal point one place to the left) to convert it to 55mm.
- (2) Carry out the same procedure as above to convert 55mm to 2.165 inches.
- (3) The original value(550mm) was divided by 10, so multiply 2.165 inches by 10(Move the decimal point one place to the right) to return to the original value.

 This gives 550mm = 21.65 inches.

	Millimete	rs to inche	es				<u> </u>			1mm = 0.03937 in		
		0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	
	0		0.039	0.079	0.118	0.157	0.197	0.236	0.276	0.315	0.354	
	10	0.394	0.433	0.472	0.512	0.551	0.591	0.630	0.669	0.709	0.748	
	20	0.787	0.827	0.866	0.906	0.945	0.984	1.024	1.063	1.102	1.142	
	30	1.181	1.220	1.260	1.299	1.339	1.378	1.417	1.457	1.496	1.536	
	40	1.575	1.614	1.654	1.693	1.732	1.772	1.811	1.850	1.890	1.929	
							©					
a	50	1.969	2.008	2.047	2.087	2.126	2.165	2.205	2.244	2.283	2.323	
•	60	2.362	2.402	2.441	2.480	2.520	2.559	2.598	2.638	2.677	2.717	
	70	2.756	2.795	2.835	2.874	2.913	2.953	2.992	3.032	3.071	3.110	
	80	3.150	3.189	3.228	3.268	3.307	3.346	3.386	3.425	3.465	3.504	
	90	3.543	3.583	3.622	3.661	3.701	3.740	3.780	3.819	3.858	3.898	

Millimeters to inches 1mm = 0.03937in

	min = 0.00007m									
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0		0.039	0.079	0.118	0.157	0.197	0.236	0.276	0.315	0.354
10	0.394	0.433	0.472	0.512	0.551	0.591	0.630	0.669	0.709	0.748
20	0.787	0.827	0.866	0.906	0.945	0.984	1.024	1.063	1.102	1.142
30	1.181	1.220	1.260	1.299	1.339	1.378	1.417	1.457	1.496	1.536
40	1.575	1.614	1.654	1.693	1.732	1.772	1.811	1.850	1.890	1.929
50	1.969	2.008	2.047	2.087	2.126	2.165	2.205	2.244	2.283	2.323
60	2.362	2.402	2.441	2.480	2.520	2.559	2.598	2.638	2.677	2.717
70	2.756	2.795	2.835	2.874	2.913	2.953	2.992	3.032	3.071	3.110
80	3.150	3.189	3.228	3.268	3.307	3.346	3.386	3.425	3.465	3.504
90	3.543	3.583	3.622	3.661	3.701	3.740	3.780	3.819	3.858	3.898

Kilogram to Pound 1kg = 2.2046lb

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0		2.20	4.41	6.61	8.82	11.02	13.23	15.43	17.64	19.84
10	22.05	24.25	26.46	28.66	30.86	33.07	35.27	37.48	39.68	41.89
20	44.09	46.30	48.50	50.71	51.91	55.12	57.32	59.5.	61.73	63.93
30	66.14	68.34	70.55	72.75	74.96	77.16	79.37	81.57	83.78	85.98
40	88.18	90.39	92.59	94.80	97.00	99.21	101.41	103.62	105.82	108.03
50	110.23	112.44	114.64	116.85	119.05	121.25	123.46	125.66	127.87	130.07
60	132.28	134.48	136.69	138.89	141.10	143.30	145.51	147.71	149.91	152.12
70	154.32	156.53	158.73	160.94	163.14	165.35	167.55	169.76	171.96	174.17
80	176.37	178.57	180.78	182.98	185.19	187.39	189.60	191.80	194.01	196.21
90	198.42	200.62	202.83	205.03	207.24	209.44	211.64	213.85	216.05	218.26

Liter to U.S. Gallon 1 l = 0.2642 U.S.Gal

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
0		0.264	0.528	0.793	1.057	1.321	1.585	1.849	2.113	2.378
10	2.642	2.906	3.170	3.434	3.698	3.963	4.227	4.491	4.755	5.019
20	5.283	5.548	5.812	6.6076	6.340	6.604	6.869	7.133	7.397	7.661
30	7.925	8.189	8.454	8.718	8.982	9.246	9.510	9.774	10.039	10.303
40	10.567	10.831	11.095	11.359	11.624	11.888	12.152	12.416	12.680	12.944
50	13.209	13.473	13.737	14.001	14.265	14.529	14.795	15.058	15.322	15.586
60	15.850	16.115	16.379	16.643	16.907	17.171	17.435	17.700	17.964	18.228
70	18.492	18.756	19.020	19.285	19.549	19.813	20.077	20.341	20.605	20.870
80	21.134	21.398	21.662	21.926	22.190	22.455	22.719	22.983	23.247	23.511
90	23.775	24.040	24.304	24.568	24.832	25.096	25.631	25.625	25.889	26.153

Liter to U.K. Gallon 1 t = 0.21997 U.K.Gal

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	
0		0.220	0.440	0.660	0.880	1.100	1.320	1.540	1.760	1.980	
10	2.200	2.420	2.640	2.860	3.080	3.300	3.520	3.740	3.950	4.179	
20	4.399	4.619	4.839	5.059	5.279	5.499	5.719	5.939	6.159	6.379	
30	6.599	6.819	7.039	7.259	7.479	7.969	7.919	8.139	8.359	8.579	
40	8.799	9.019	9.239	9.459	9.679	9.899	10.119	10.339	10.559	10.778	
50	10.998	11.281	11.438	11.658	11.878	12.098	12.318	12.528	12.758	12.978	
60	13.198	13.418	13.638	13.858	14.078	14.298	14.518	14.738	14.958	15.178	
70	15.398	15.618	15.838	16.058	16.278	16.498	16.718	16.938	17.158	17.378	
80	17.598	17.818	18.037	18.257	18.477	18.697	18.917	19.137	19.357	19.577	
90	19.797	20.017	20.237	20.457	20.677	20.897	21.117	21.337	21.557	21.777	

	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
		7.2	14.5	21.7	28.9	36.2	43.4	50.6	57.9	65.1
10	72.3	79.6	86.8	94.0	101.3	108.5	115.7	123.0	130.2	137.4
20	144.7	151.9	159.1	166.4	173.6	180.8	188.1	195.3	202.5	209.8
30	217.0	224.2	231.5	238.7	245.9	253.2	260.4	267.6	274.9	282.1
40	289.3	396.6	303.8	311.0	318.3	325.5	332.7	340.0	347.2	354.4
50	361.7	368.9	376.1	383.4	390.6	397.8	405.1	412.3	419.5	426.8
60	434.0	441.2	448.5	455.7	462.9	470.2	477.4	484.6	491.8	499.1
70	506.3	513.5	520.8	528.0	535.2	542.5	549.7	556.9	564.2	571.4
80	578.6	585.9	593.1	600.3	607.6	614.8	622.0	629.3	636.5	643.7
90	651.0	658.2	665.4	672.7	679.9	687.1	694.4	701.6	708.8	716.1
100	723.3	730.5	737.8	745.0	752.2	759.5	766.7	773.9	781.2	788.4
110	795.6	802.9	810.1	817.3	824.6	831.8	839.0	846.3	853.5	860.7
120	868.0	875.2	882.4	889.7	896.9	904.1	911.4	918.6	925.8	933.1
130	940.3	947.5	954.8	962.0	969.2	976.5	983.7	990.9	998.2	10005.4
140	1012.6	1019.9	1027.1	1034.3	1041.5	1048.8	1056.0	1063.2	1070.5	1077.7
150	1084.9	1092.2	1099.4	1106.6	1113.9	1121.1	1128.3	1135.6	1142.8	1150.0
160	1157.3	1164.5	1171.7	1179.0	1186.2	1193.4	1200.7	1207.9	1215.1	1222.4
170	1129.6	1236.8	1244.1	1251.3	1258.5	1265.8	1273.0	1280.1	1287.5	1294.7
180	1301.9	1309.2	1316.4	1323.6	1330.9	1338.1	1345.3	1352.6	1359.8	1367.0
190	1374.3	1381.5	1388.7	1396.0	1403.2	1410.4	1417.7	1424.9	1432.1	1439.4

kgf/cm² to **lbf/in²** 1 kgf/cm² = 14.2233 lbf/in²

$1 \text{kgf} / \text{cm}^2 = 14.2233 \text{kg}$									<u> </u>	
	0	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9
		14.2	28.4	42.7	56.9	71.1	85.3	99.6	113.8	128.0
10	142.2	156.5	170.7	184.9	199.1	213.4	227.6	241.8	256.0	270.2
20	284.5	298.7	312.9	327.1	341.4	355.6	369.8	384.0	398.3	412.5
30	426.7	440.9	455.1	469.4	483.6	497.8	512.0	526.3	540.5	554.7
40	568.9	583.2	597.4	611.6	625.8	640.1	654.3	668.5	682.7	696.9
50	711.2	725.4	739.6	753.8	768.1	782.3	796.5	810.7	825.0	839.2
60	853.4	867.6	881.8	896.1	910.3	924.5	938.7	953.0	967.2	981.4
70	995.6	1010	1024	1038	1053	1067	1081	1095	1109	1124
80	1138	1152	1166	1181	1195	1209	1223	1237	1252	1266
90	1280	1294	1309	1323	1337	1351	1365	1380	1394	1408
100	1422	1437	1451	1465	1479	1493	1508	1522	1536	1550
110	1565	1579	1593	1607	1621	1636	1650	1664	1678	1693
120	1707	1721	1735	1749	1764	1778	1792	1806	1821	1835
130	1849	2863	1877	1892	1906	1920	1934	1949	1963	1977
140	1991	2005	2020	2034	2048	2062	2077	2091	2105	2119
150	2134	2148	2162	2176	2190	2205	2219	2233	2247	2262
160	2276	2290	2304	2318	2333	2347	2361	2375	2389	2404
170	2418	2432	2446	2460	2475	2489	2503	2518	2532	2546
180	2560	2574	2589	5603	2617	2631	2646	2660	2674	2688
200	2845	2859	2873	2887	2901	2916	2930	2944	2958	2973
210	2987	3001	3015	3030	3044	3058	3072	3086	3101	3115
220	3129	3143	3158	3172	3186	3200	3214	3229	3243	3257
230	3271	3286	3300	3314	3328	3343	3357	3371	3385	3399
240	3414	3428	3442	3456	3470	3485	3499	3513	3527	3542

TEMPERATURE

Fahrenheit-Centigrade Conversion.

A simple way to convert a fahrenheit temperature reading into a centigrade temperature reading or vice verse is to enter the accompanying table in the center or boldface column of figures.

These figures refer to the temperature in either Fahrenheit or Centigrade degrees.

If it is desired to convert from Fahrenheit to Centigrade degrees, consider the center column as a table of Fahrenheit temperatures and read the corresponding Centigrade temperature in the column at the left.

If it is desired to convert from Centigrade to Fahrenheit degrees, consider the center column as a table of Centigrade values, and read the corresponding Fahrenheit temperature on the right.

°C		°F	°C		°F	°C		°F	°C		°F
-40.4	-40	-40.0	-11.7	11	51.8	7.8	46	114.8	27.2	81	117.8
-37.2	-35	-31.0	-11.1	12	53.6	8.3	47	116.6	27.8	82	179.6
-34.4	-30	-22.0	-10.6	13	55.4	8.9	48	118.4	28.3	83	181.4
-31.7	-25	-13.0	-10.0	14	57.2	9.4	49	120.2	28.9	84	183.2
-28.9	-20	-4.0	-9.4	15	59.0	10.0	50	122.0	29.4	85	185.0
-28.3	-19	-2.2	-8.9	16	60.8	10.6	51	123.8	30.0	86	186.8
-27.8	-18	-0.4	-8.3	17	62.6	11.1	52	125.6	30.6	87	188.6
-27.2	-17	1.4	-7.8	18	64.4	11.7	53	127.4	31.1	88	190.4
-26.7	-16	3.2	-6.7	20	68.0	12.8	55	131.0	32.2	90	194.0
-26.1	-15	5.0	-6.7	20	68.0	12.8	55	131.0	32.2	90	194.0
-25.6	-14	6.8	-6.1	21	69.8	13.3	56	132.8	32.8	91	195.8
-25.0	-13	8.6	-5.6	22	71.6	13.9	57	134.6	33.3	92	197.6
-24.4	-12	10.4	-5.0	23	73.4	14.4	58	136.4	33.9	93	199.4
-23.9	-11	12.2	-4.4	24	75.2	15.0	59	138.2	34.4	94	201.2
-23.3	-10	14.0	-3.9	25	77.0	15.6	60	140.0	35.0	95	203.0
-22.8	-9	15.8	-3.3	26	78.8	16.1	61	141.8	35.6	96	204.8
-22.2	-8	17.6	-2.8	27	80.6	16.7	62	143.6	36.1	97	206.6
-21.7	-7	19.4	-2.2	28	82.4	17.2	63	145.4	36.7	98	208.4
-21.1	-6	21.2	-1.7	29	84.2	17.8	64	147.2	37.2	99	210.2
-20.6	-5	23.0	-1.1	35	95.0	21.1	70	158.0	51.7	125	257.0
-20.0	-4	24.8	-0.6	31	87.8	18.9	66	150.8	40.6	105	221.0
-19.4	-3	26.6	0	32	89.6	19.4	67	152.6	43.3	110	230.0
-18.9	-2	28.4	0.6	33	91.4	20.0	68	154.4	46.1	115	239.0
-18.3	-1	30.2	1.1	34	93.2	20.6	69	156.2	48.9	120	248.0
-17.8	0	32.0	1.7	35	95.0	21.1	70	158.0	51.7	125	257.0
-17.2	1	33.8	2.2	36	96.8	21.7	71	159.8	54.4	130	266.0
-16.7	2	35.6	2.8	37	98.6	22.2	72	161.6	57.2	135	275.0
-16.1	3	37.4	3.3	38	100.4	22.8	73	163.4	60.0	140	284.0
-15.6	4	39.2	3.9	39	102.2	23.3	74	165.2	62.7	145	293.0
-15.0	5	41.0	4.4	40	104.0	23.9	75	167.0	65.6	150	302.0
-14.4	6	42.8	5.0	41	105.8	24.4	76	168.8	68.3	155	311.0
-13.9	7	44.6	5.6	42	107.6	25.0	77	170.6	71.1	160	320.0
-13.3	8	46.4	6.1	43	109.4	25.6	78	172.4	73.9	165	329.0
-12.8	9	48.2	6.7	44	111.2	26.1	79	174.2	76.7	170	338.0
-12.2	10	50.0	7.2	45	113.0	26.7	80	176.0	79.4	172	347.0

SECTION 1 GENERAL

Group	1	Safety Hints	1-1
Group	2	Specifications	1-10

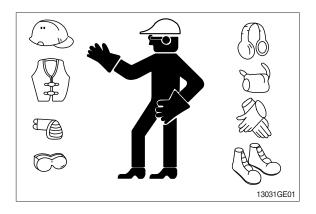
GROUP 1 SAFETY

FOLLOW SAFE PROCEDURE

Unsafe work practices are dangerous. Understand service procedure before doing work; Do not attempt shortcuts.

WEAR PROTECTIVE CLOTHING

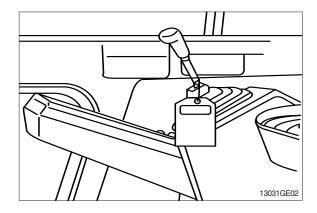
Wear close fitting clothing and safety equipment appropriate to the job.



WARN OTHERS OF SERVICE WORK

Unexpected machine movement can cause serious injury.

Before performing any work on the excavator, attach a 「Do Not Operate」 tag on the right side control lever.



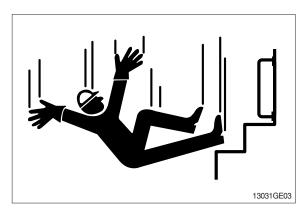
USE HANDHOLDS AND STEPS

Falling is one of the major causes of personal injury.

When you get on and off the machine, always maintain a three point contact with the steps and handrails and face the machine. Do not use any controls as handholds.

Never jump on or off the machine. Never mount or dismount a moving machine.

Be careful of slippery conditions on platforms, steps, and handrails when leaving the machine.

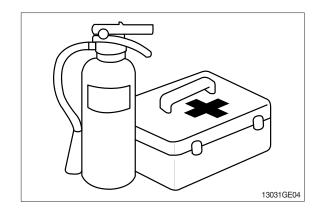


PREPARE FOR EMERGENCIES

Be prepared if a fire starts.

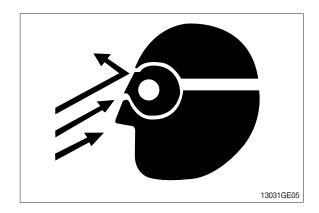
Keep a first aid kit and fire extinguisher handy.

Keep emergency numbers for doctors, ambulance service, hospital, and fire department near your telephone.



PROTECT AGAINST FLYING DEBRIS

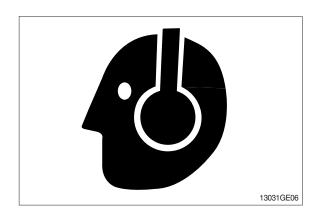
Guard against injury from flying pieces of metal or debris; Wear goggles or safety glasses.



PROTECT AGAINST NOISE

Prolonged exposure to loud noise can cause impairment or loss of hearing.

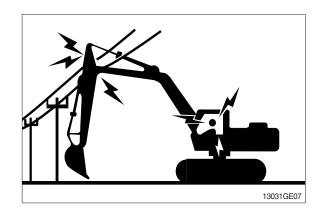
Wear a suitable hearing protective device such as earmuffs or earplugs to protect against objectionable or uncomfortable loud noises.



AVOID POWER LINES

Serious injury or death can result from contact with electric lines.

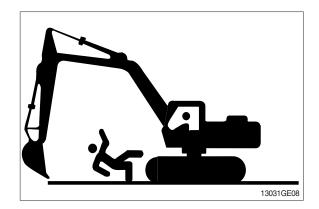
Never move any part of the machine or load closer to electric line than 3m(10ft) plus twice the line insulator length.



KEEP RIDERS OFF EXCAVATOR

Only allow the operator on the excavator. Keep riders off.

Riders on excavator are subject to injury such as being struck by foreign objects and being thrown off the excavator. Riders also obstruct the operator's view resulting in the excavator being operated in an unsafe manner.

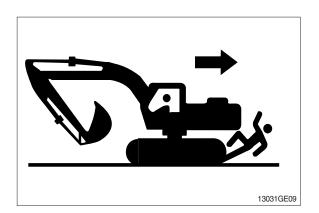


MOVE AND OPERATE MACHINE SAFELY

Bystanders can be run over. Know the location of bystanders before moving, swinging, or operating the machine.

Always keep the travel alarm in working condition. It warns people when the excavator starts to move.

Use a signal person when moving, swinging, or operating the machine in congested areas. Coordinate hand signals before starting the excavator.



OPERATE ONLY FORM OPERATOR'S SEAT

Avoid possible injury machine damage. Do not start engine by shorting across starter terminals.

NEVER start engine while standing on ground. Start engine only from operator's seat.



PARK MACHINE SAFELY

Before working on the machine:

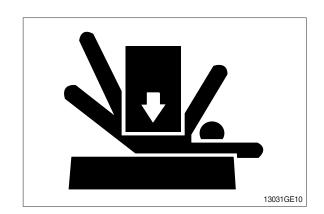
- · Park machine on a level surface.
- · Lower bucket to the ground.
- · Turn auto idle switch off.
- · Run engine at 1/2 speed without load for 2 minutes.
- Turn key switch to OFF to stop engine. Remove key from switch.
- · Move pilot control shutoff lever to locked position.
- · Allow engine to cool.

SUPPORT MACHINE PROPERLY

Always lower the attachment or implement to the ground before you work on the machine. If you must work on a lifted machine or attachment, securely support the machine or attachment.

Do not support the machine on cinder blocks, hollow tiles, or props that may crumble under continuous load.

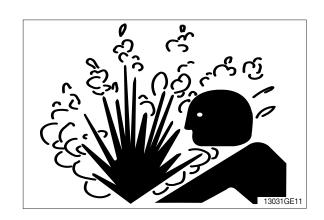
Do not work under a machine that is supported solely by a jack. Follow recommended procedures in this manual.



SERVICE COOLING SYSTEM SAFELY

Explosive release of fluids from pressurized cooling system can cause serious burns.

Shut off engine. Only remove filler cap when cool enough to touch with bare hands.



HANDLE FLUIDS SAFELY-AVOID FIRES

Handle fuel with care; It is highly flammable. Do not refuel the machine while smoking or when near open flame or sparks. Always stop engine before refueling machine.

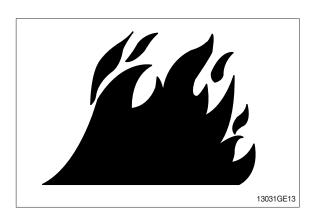
Fill fuel tank outdoors.



Store flammable fluids away from fire hazards. Do not incinerate or puncture pressurized containers.

Make sure machine is clean of trash, grease, and debris.

Do not store oily rags; They can ignite and burn spontaneously.



BEWARE OF EXHAUST FUMES

Prevent asphyxiation. Engine exhaust fumes can cause sickness or death.

If you must operate in a building, be positive there is adequate ventilation. Either use an exhaust pipe extension to remove the exhaust fumes or open doors and windows to bring enough outside air into the area.

REMOVE PAINT BEFORE WELDING OR HEATING

Avoid potentially toxic fumes and dust.

Hazardous fumes can be generated when paint is heated by welding, soldering, or using a torch.

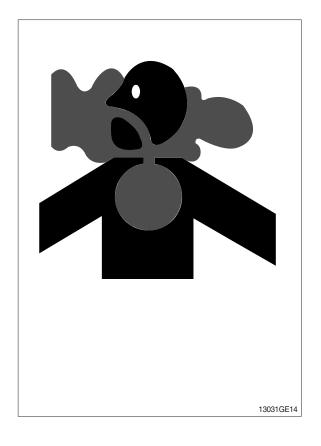
Do all work outside or in a well ventilated area. Dispose of paint and solvent properly.

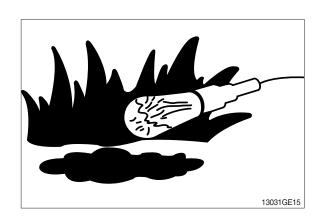
Remove paint before welding or heating:

- If you sand or grind paint, avoid breathing the dust.
 - Wear an approved respirator.
- If you use solvent or paint stripper, remove stripper with soap and water before welding.
 Remove solvent or paint stripper containers and other flammable material from area.
 Allow fumes to disperse at least 15 minutes before welding or heating.

ILLUMINATE WORK AREA SAFELY

Illuminate your work area adequately but safely. Use a portable safety light for working inside or under the machine. Make sure the bulb is enclosed by a wire cage. The hot filament of an accidentally broken bulb can ignite spilled fuel or oil.

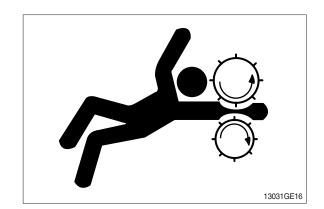




SERVICE MACHINE SAFELY

Tie long hair behind your head. Do not wear a necktie, scarf, loose clothing or necklace when you work near machine tools or moving parts. If these items were to get caught, severe injury could result.

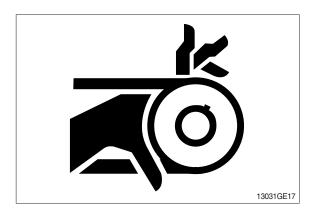
Remove rings and other jewelry to prevent electrical shorts and entanglement in moving parts.



STAY CLEAR OF MOVING PARTS

Entanglements in moving parts can cause serious injury.

To prevent accidents, use care when working around rotating parts.



AVOID HIGH PRESSURE FLUIDS

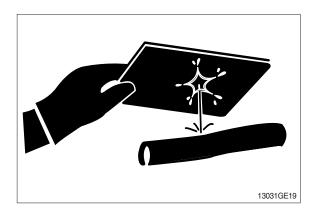
Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.

Avoid the hazard by relieving pressure before disconnecting hydraulic or other lines. Tighten all connections before applying pressure.

Search for leaks with a piece of cardboard. Protect hands and body from high pressure fluids.

If an accident occurs, see a doctor immediately. Any fluid injected into the skin must be surgically removed within a few hours or gangrene may result.





AVOID HEATING NEAR PRESSURIZED FLUID LINES

Flammable spray can be generated by heating near pressurized fluid lines, resulting in severe burns to yourself and bystanders. Do not heat by welding, soldering, or using a torch near pressurized fluid lines or other flammable materials.

Pressurized lines can be accidentally cut when heat goes beyond the immediate flame area. Install fire resisting guards to protect hoses or other materials.



PREVENT BATTERY EXPLOSIONS

Keep sparks, lighted matches, and flame away from the top of battery. Battery gas can explode.

Never check battery charge by placing a metal object across the posts. Use a volt-meter or hydrometer.

Do not charge a frozen battery; It may explode. Warm battery to 16°C (60°F).



PREVENT ACID BURNS

Sulfuric acid in battery electrolyte is poisonous. It is strong enough to burn skin, eat holes in clothing, and cause blindness if splashed into eyes.

Avoid the hazard by:

- 1. Filling batteries in a well-ventilated area.
- 2. Wearing eye protection and rubber gloves.
- 3. Avoiding breathing fumes when electrolyte is added.
- 4. Avoiding spilling of dripping electrolyte.
- 5. Use proper jump start procedure.

If you spill acid on yourself:

- 1. Flush your skin with water.
- 2. Apply baking soda or lime to help neutralize the acid.
- Flush your eyes with water for 10-15 minutes. Get medical attention immediately.

If acid is swallowed:

- 1. Drink large amounts of water or milk.
- 2. Then drink milk of magnesia, beaten eggs, or vegetable oil.
- 3. Get medical attention immediately.

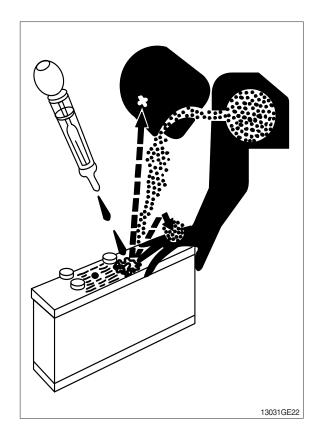
USE TOOLS PROPERLY

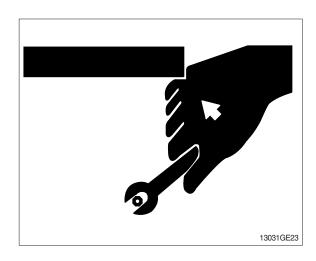
Use tools appropriate to the work. Makeshift tools, parts, and procedures can create safety hazards.

Use power tools only to loosen threaded tools and fasteners.

For loosening and tightening hardware, use the correct size tools. DO NOT use U.S. measurement tools on metric fasteners. Avoid bodily injury caused by slipping wrenches.

Use only recommended replacement parts. (See Parts catalogue.)



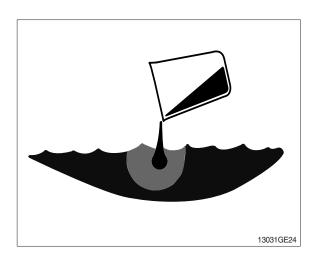


DISPOSE OF FLUIDS PROPERLY

Improperly disposing of fluids can harm the environment and ecology. Before draining any fluids, find out the proper way to dispose of waste from your local environmental agency.

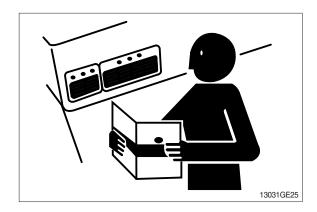
Use proper containers when draining fluids. Do not use food or beverage containers that may mislead someone into drinking from them.

DO NOT pour oil into the ground, down a drain, or into a stream, pond, or lake. Observe relevant environmental protection regulations when disposing of oil, fuel, coolant, brake fluid, filters, batteries, and other harmful waste.



REPLACE SAFETY SIGNS

Replace missing or damaged safety signs. See the machine operator's manual for correct safety sign placement.

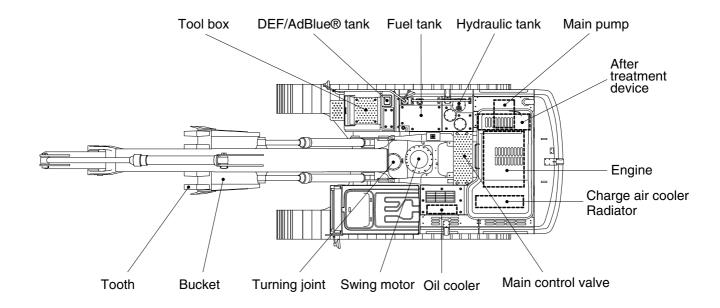


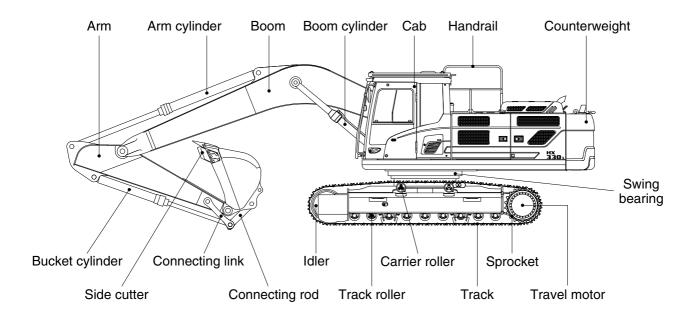
LIVE WITH SAFETY

Before returning machine to customer, make sure machine is functioning properly, especially the safety systems. Install all guards and shields.

GROUP 2 SPECIFICATIONS

1. MAJOR COMPONENT



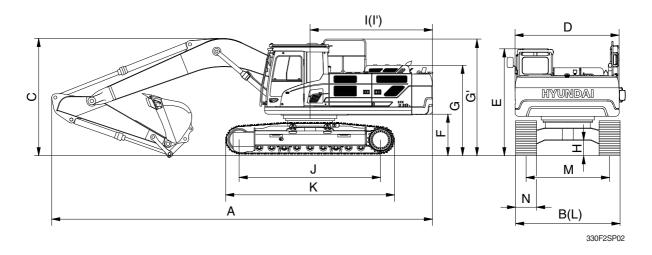


330F2SP01

2. SPECIFICATIONS

1) HX330 L

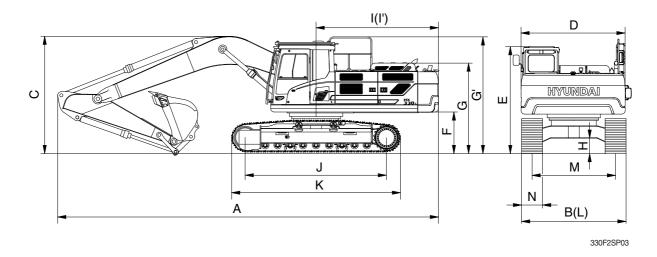
 \cdot 6.45 m (21' 2") BOOM and 3.20 m (10' 6") ARM



Description		Unit	Specification		
Operating weight		kg (lb)	33500 (73850)		
Bucket capacity (SAE heaped), standard		m³ (yd³)	1.44 (1.88)		
Overall length	А		11220 (36' 10")		
Overall width, with 600 mm shoe	В		3280 (10' 9")		
Overall height of boom	С		3380 (11' 1")		
Superstructure width	D		2980 (9' 9")		
Overall height of cab	E		3160 (10' 4")		
Ground clearance of counterweight	F		1200 (3' 11")		
Overall height of engine hood	G		2610 (8' 7")		
Overall height of handrail	G'	mm /ft in\	3350 (11' 0")		
Minimum ground clearance	Н	mm (ft-in)	500 (1' 8")		
Rear-end distance	I		3505 (11' 6")		
Rear-end swing radius	l'		3570 (11' 9")		
Distance between tumblers	J		4030 (13' 3")		
Undercarriage length	K		4940 (16' 2")		
Undercarriage width	L		3280 (10' 9")		
Track gauge	М		2680 (8' 10")		
Track shoe width, standard	N		600 (24")		
Travel speed (low/high)		km/hr (mph)	3.4/5.9 (2.1/3.7)		
Swing speed		rpm	9.1		
Gradeability		Degree (%)	35 (70)		
Ground pressure (600 mm shoe)		kgf/cm²(psi)	0.65 (9.24)		
Max traction force		kg (lb)	27000 (59520)		

2) HX330 NL

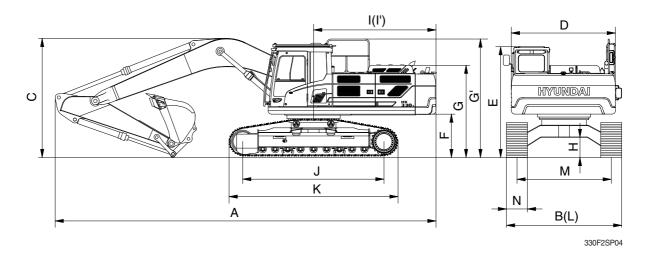
\cdot 6.45 m (21' 2") BOOM and 3.20 m (10' 6") ARM



Description		Unit	Specification
Operating weight		kg (lb)	33300 (73410)
Bucket capacity (SAE heaped), standard		m³ (yd³)	1.44 (1.88)
Overall length	А		11220 (36' 10")
Overall width, with 600 mm shoe	В		2990 (9' 10")
Overall height of boom	С		3380 (11' 1")
Superstructure width	D		2980 (9' 9")
Overall height of cab	E		3160 (10' 4")
Ground clearance of counterweight	F		1200 (3' 11")
Overall height of engine hood	G		2610 (8' 7")
Overall height of handrail	G'	mm (ft-in)	3350 (11' 0")
Minimum ground clearance	Н	111111 (11-111)	500 (1' 8")
Rear-end distance	I		3505 (11' 6")
Rear-end swing radius	l'		3570 (11' 9")
Distance between tumblers	J		4030 (13' 3")
Undercarriage length	K		4940 (16' 2")
Undercarriage width	L		2990 (9' 10")
Track gauge	М		2390 (7' 10")
Track shoe width, standard	N		600 (24")
Travel speed (low/high)		km/hr (mph)	3.4/5.9 (2.1/3.7)
Swing speed		rpm	9.1
Gradeability		Degree (%)	35 (70)
Ground pressure (600 mm shoe)		kgf/cm²(psi)	0.64 (9.10)
Max traction force		kg (lb)	27000 (59520)

3) HX330 L HIGH WALKER

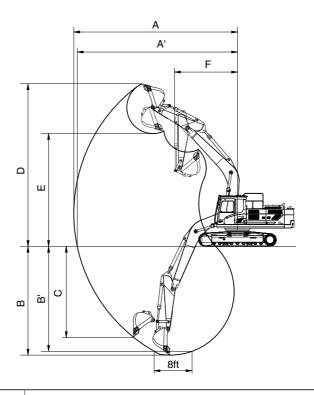
\cdot 6.45 m (21' 2") BOOM and 3.20 m (10' 6") ARM



Description		Unit	Specification
Operating weight		kg (lb)	36000 (79370)
Bucket capacity (SAE heaped), standard		m³ (yd³)	1.44 (1.88)
Overall length	А		11150 (36' 7")
Overall width, with 600 mm shoe	В		3470 (11' 5")
Overall height of boom	С		3360 (11' 0")
Superstructure width	D		2980 (9' 9")
Overall height of cab	Е		3460 (11' 4")
Ground clearance of counterweight	F		1500 (4' 11")
Overall height of engine hood	G		2910 (9' 7")
Overall height of handrail	G'	mm (ft in)	3650 (12' 0")
Minimum ground clearance	Н	mm (ft-in)	765 (2' 6")
Rear-end distance	I		3505 (11' 6")
Rear-end swing radius	l'		3570 (11' 9")
Distance between tumblers	J		4030 (13' 3")
Undercarriage length	K		4940 (16' 2")
Undercarriage width	L		3470 (11' 5")
Track gauge	М		2870 (9' 5")
Track shoe width, standard	N		600 (24")
Travel speed (low/high)		km/hr (mph)	3.4/5.9 (2.1/3.7)
Swing speed		rpm	9.1
Gradeability		Degree (%)	35 (70)
Ground pressure (600 mm shoe)		kgf/cm²(psi)	0.69 (9.81)
Max traction force		kg (lb)	27000 (59520)

3. WORKING RANGE

1) HX330 L/NL

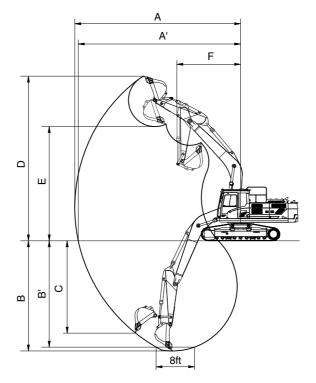


330F2SP05

Description			6.45 m (21	' 2") Boom		6.15 m (20' 2") Boom		
Description		2.2 m (7' 3") Arm	2.5 m (8' 2") Arm	3.2 m (10' 6") Arm	4.05 m (13' 3") Arm	2.2 m (7' 3") Arm		
Max digging reach	Α	10330 mm (33'11")	10550 mm (34' 7")	11140 mm (36' 7")	11950 mm (39' 2")	10020 mm (32'10")		
Max digging reach on ground	A'	10110 mm (33' 2")	10330 mm (33'11")	10940 mm (35'11")	11760 mm (38' 7")	9800 mm (32' 2")		
Max digging depth	В	6370 mm (20'11")	6670 mm (21'11")	7370 mm (24' 2")	8220 mm (26'12")	6160 mm (20' 3")		
Max digging depth (8ft level)	B'	6160 mm (20' 3")	6470 mm (21' 3")	7210 mm (23' 8")	8080 mm (26' 6")	5950 mm (19' 6")		
Max vertical wall digging depth	С	5980 mm (19' 7")	5920 mm (19' 5")	6360 mm (20'10")	7260 mm (23'10")	5710 mm (18' 9")		
Max digging height	D	10220 mm (33' 6")	10170 mm (33' 4")	10310 mm (33'10")	10710 mm (35' 2")	9940 mm (32' 7")		
Max dumping height	Е	7050 mm (23' 2")	7050 mm (23' 2")	7240 mm (23' 9")	7630 mm (25' 0")	6780 mm (22' 3")		
Min swing radius	F	4700 mm (15' 5")	4550 mm (14'11")	4460 mm (14' 8")	4470 mm (14' 8")	4520 mm (14'10")		
		189.3 [205.5] kN	189.3 [205.5] kN	189.3 [205.5] kN	189.3 [205.5] kN	189.3 [205.5] kN		
	SAE	19300 [20950] kgf	19300 [20950] kgf	19300 [20950] kgf	19300 [20950] kgf	19300 [20950] kgf		
Rusket diaging force		42550 [46200] lbf	42550 [46200] lbf	42550 [46200] lbf	42550 [46200] lbf	42550 [46200] lbf		
Bucket digging force		211.8 [230.0] kN	211.8 [230.0] kN	211.8 [230.0] kN	211.8 [230.0] kN	211.8 [230.0] kN		
	ISO	21600 [23450] kgf	21600 [23450] kgf	21600 [23450] kgf	21600 [23450] kgf	21600 [23450] kgf		
		47620 [51700] lbf	47620 [51700] lbf	47620 [51700] lbf	47620 [51700] lbf	47620 [51700] lbf		
		196.6 [213.4] kN	178.9 [194.2] kN	143.2 [155.5] kN	119.6 [129.9] kN	196.6 [213.4] kN		
	SAE	20000 [21760] kgf	18200 [19810] kgf	14600 [15850] kgf	12200 [13240] kgf	20000 [21760] kgf		
Arm around force		44190 [47980] lbf	40220 [43670] lbf	32190 [34950] lbf	26890 [29190] lbf	44190 [47980] lbf		
Arm crowd force		202.8 [220.2] kN	185.1 [201.0] kN	147.1 [159.7] kN	122.7 [133.3] kN	202.8 [220.2] kN		
	ISO	20700 [22450] kgf	18900 [20500] kgf	15000 [16290] kgf	12515 [13590] kgf	20700 [22450] kgf		
		45600 [49510] lbf	41620 [45190] lbf	33070 [35900] lbf	27590 [29950] lbf	45600 [49510] lbf		

[]: Power boost

2) HX330 L HIGH WALKER



330F2SP06

Description			6.45 m (21	' 2") Boom		6.15 m (20' 2") Boom
Description		2.2 m (7' 3") Arm	2.5 m (8' 2") Arm	3.2 m (10' 6") Arm	4.05 m (13' 3") Arm	2.2 m (7' 3") Arm
Max digging reach	Α	10330 mm (33'11")	10550 mm (34' 7")	11140 mm (36' 7")	11950 mm (39' 2")	10020 mm (32'10")
Max digging reach on ground	A'	10040 mm (32'11")	10270 mm (33' 8")	10880 mm (35' 8")	11710 mm (38' 5")	9730 mm (31'11")
Max digging depth	В	6100 mm (20' 0")	6400 mm (20'12")	7100 mm (23' 4")	7950 mm (26' 1")	5880 mm (19' 3")
Max digging depth (8ft level)	B'	5890 mm (19' 4")	6200 mm (20' 4")	6940 mm (22' 9")	7800 mm (25' 7")	5680 mm (18' 8")
Max vertical wall digging depth	С	5700 mm (18' 8")	5650 mm (18' 6")	6080 mm (19'11")	6980 mm (22'11")	5440 mm (17'10")
Max digging height	D	10500 mm (34' 5")	10450 mm (34' 3")	10590 mm (34' 9")	10990 mm (36' 1")	10220 mm (33' 6")
Max dumping height	Е	7330 mm (24' 1")	7330 mm (24' 1")	7520 mm (24' 8")	7910 mm (25'11")	7060 mm (23' 2")
Min swing radius	F	4700 mm (15' 5")	4550 mm (14'11")	4460 mm (14' 8")	4470 mm (14' 8")	4520 mm (14'10")
		189.3 [205.5] kN	189.3 [205.5] kN	189.3 [205.5] kN	189.3 [205.5] kN	189.3 [205.5] kN
	SAE	19300 [20950] kgf	19300 [20950] kgf	19300 [20950] kgf	19300 [20950] kgf	19300 [20950] kgf
Puokat diagina force		42550 [46200] lbf	42550 [46200] lbf	42550 [46200] lbf	42550 [46200] lbf	42550 [46200] lbf
Bucket digging force		211.8 [230.0] kN	211.8 [230.0] kN	211.8 [230.0] kN	211.8 [230.0] kN	211.8 [230.0] kN
	ISO	21600 [23450] kgf	21600 [23450] kgf	21600 [23450] kgf	21600 [23450] kgf	21600 [23450] kgf
		47620 [51700] lbf	47620 [51700] lbf	47620 [51700] lbf	47620 [51700] lbf	47620 [51700] lbf
		196.6 [213.4] kN	178.9 [194.2] kN	143.2 [155.5] kN	119.6 [129.9] kN	196.6 [213.4] kN
	SAE	20000 [21760] kgf	18200 [19810] kgf	14600 [15850] kgf	12200 [13240] kgf	20000 [21760] kgf
Arm around force		44190 [47980] lbf	40220 [43670] lbf	32190 [34950] lbf	26890 [29190] lbf	44190 [47980] lbf
Arm crowd force		202.8 [220.2] kN	185.1 [201.0] kN	147.1 [159.7] kN	122.7 [133.3] kN	202.8 [220.2] kN
	ISO	20700 [22450] kgf	18900 [20500] kgf	15000 [16290] kgf	12515 [13590] kgf	20700 [22450] kgf
		45600 [49510] lbf	41620 [45190] lbf	33070 [35900] lbf	27590 [29950] lbf	45600 [49510] lbf

[]: Power boost

4. WEIGHT

1) HX330 L, HX330 NL

lène	HX3	30 L	HX33	30 NL
Item	kg	lb	kg	lb
Upperstructure assembly				
· Main frame weld assembly	3910	8620	←	←
· Engine assembly	710	1560	←	←
· Main pump assembly	200	440	←	←
· Main control valve assembly	220	490	←	←
· Swing motor assembly	370	820	←	←
· Hydraulic oil tank assembly	250	550	←	←
· Fuel tank assembly	260	570	←	←
· Counterweight	6000	13230	←	←
· Cab assembly	500	1102	←	←
· Radiator assy	230	510	←	←
· Oil cooler assy	80	180	←	←
Lower chassis assembly				
· Track frame weld assembly	3970	8750	3835	8450
· Swing bearing	470	1040	←	←
· Travel motor assembly	440	970	←	←
· Turning joint	50	110	←	←
· Tension cylinder	225	470	←	←
· Idler	250	550	←	←
· Sprocket	80	180	←	←
· Carrier roller	40	90	←	←
· Track roller	60	130	←	←
 Track-chain assembly (600 mm standard triple grouser shoe) 	1880	4145	←	←
Front attachment assembly				
· 6.45 m boom assembly	2560	5640	←	←
· 3.2 m arm assembly	1170	2580	←	←
· 1.44 m³ SAE heaped bucket	1230	2710	←	←
· Boom cylinder assembly	305	670	←	←
· Arm cylinder assembly	380	840	←	←
· Bucket cylinder assembly	265	580	←	←
· Bucket control linkage assembly	370	820	←	←

^{*} This information is different with operating and transportation weight because it is not including harness, pipe, oil, fuel so on.

^{*} Refer to Transportation for actual weight information and Specifications for operating weight.

2) HX330 L HIGH WALKER

Item	kg	lb
Upperstructure assembly		
· Main frame weld assembly	3910	8620
· Engine assembly	710	1560
· Main pump assembly	200	440
· Main control valve assembly	220	490
· Swing motor assembly	370	820
· Hydraulic oil tank assembly	250	550
· Fuel tank assembly	260	570
· Counterweight	6000	13230
· Cab assembly	500	1100
· Radiator assy	230	510
· Oil cooler assy	80	180
Lower chassis assembly		
· Track frame weld assembly	6180	13620
· Swing bearing	470	1040
· Travel motor assembly	440	970
· Turning joint	50	110
· Tension cylinder	225	470
· Idler	250	550
· Sprocket	80	180
· Carrier roller	60	130
· Track roller	60	130
Track-chain assembly (600 mm standard triple grouser shoe)	1880	4145
Front attachment assembly		
· 6.45 m boom assembly	2560	5640
· 3.2 m arm assembly	1170	2580
· 1.44 m³ SAE heaped bucket	1230	2710
· Boom cylinder assembly	305	670
· Arm cylinder assembly	380	840
· Bucket cylinder assembly	265	580
· Bucket control linkage assembly	370	820

^{*} This information is different with operating and transportation weight because it is not including harness, pipe, oil, fuel so on.

^{*} Refer to Transportation for actual weight information and Specifications for operating weight.

5. LIFTING CAPACITIES

1) HX330 L

(1) 6.15 m (20' 2") boom, 2.2 m (7' 3") arm equipped with 1.44 m 3 (SAE heaped) bucket and 600 mm (24") triple grouser shoe.

· Pating over-front · ₽ : Rating over-side or 360 degree

					Load	radius				At	max. rea	ch
Load poi	int	3.0 m	(9.8 ft)	4.5 m (14.7 ft)	6.0 m (19.6 ft)	7.5 m (24.5 ft)	Capa	acity	Reach
height		ľ				H				Ð		m (ft)
1 1	kg lb									*7380 *16270	6080 13400	7.69 (25.2)
	kg lb					*8280 *18250	*8280 *18250	*7970 *17570	6200 13670	*7440 *16400	4850 10690	8.61 (28.2)
1	kg lb			*11980 *26410	*11980 *26410	*9530 *21010	8850 19510	*8390 *18500	6060 13360	6600 14550	4230 9330	9.16 (30.1)
1 1	kg lb			*15470 *34110	13010 28680	*11120 *24520	8350 18410	9080 20020	5830 12850	6220 13710	3950 8710	9.39 (30.8)
1.5 m	kg lb			*17910 *39480	12210 26920	*12530 *27620	7920 17460	8840 19490	5600 12350	6190 13650	3910 8620	9.35 (30.7)
	kg lb			*18640 *41090	11930 26300	12410 27360	7660 16890	8670 19110	5450 12020	6530 14400	4120 9080	9.02 (29.6)
1 1	kg lb	*16990 *37460	*16990 *37460	*18160 *40040	11930 26300	12320 27160	7580 16710	8630 19030	5420 11950	7400 16310	4690 10340	8.37 (27.5)
	kg lb	*22830 *50330	*22830 *50330	*16550 *36490	12120 26720	*12300 *27120	7690 16950			*8260 *18210	5970 13160	7.29 (23.9)
	kg lb	*17800 *39240	*17800 *39240	*13080 *28840	12560 27690							

Note

- 1. Lifting capacity are based on SAE J1097 and ISO 10567.
- 2. Lifting capacity of the ROBEX series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
- 3. The load point is a hook located on the back of the bucket.
- 4. *indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.
- * Lifting capacities are based upon a standard machine conditions.

Lifting capacities will vary with different work tools, ground conditions and attachments.

The difference between the weight of a work tool attachment must be subtracted.

Consult your HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer regarding the lifting capacities for specific work tools and attachments.

▲ Failure to comply to the rated load can cause possible personal injury or property damage. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessory for non-standard configurations.

(2) 6.45 m (21' 2") boom, 2.2 m (7' 3") arm equipped with 1.44 m³ (SAE heaped) bucket and 600 mm (24") triple grouser shoe.

· Rating over-front · Rating over-side or 360 degree

					Load	radius				At	max. rea	ch
Load po	int	3.0 m	(9.8 ft)	4.5 m (14.7 ft)	6.0 m (19.6 ft)		7.5 m (24.5 ft)		Cap	acity	Reach
height				ľ						ľ		m (ft)
1	kg lb									*7020 *15480	5490 12100	8.07 (26.5)
	kg lb					*8120 *17900	*8120 *17900	*7600 *16760	6140 13540	6900 15210	4430 9770	8.95 (29.4)
4.5 m	kg lb			*12260 *27030	*12260 *27030	*9450 *20830	8660 19090	*8150 *17970	5950 13120	6140 13540	3890 8580	9.47 (31.1)
3.0 m	kg lb					*11050 *24360	8120 17900	8930 19690	5690 12540	5790 12760	3630 8000	9.70 (31.8)
	kg lb					*12410 *27360	7680 16930	8670 19110	5450 12020	5770 12720	3600 7940	9.66 (31.7)
	kg lb			*18350 *40450	11600 25570	12150 26790	7430 16380	8500 18740	5290 11660	6060 13360	3780 8330	9.34 (30.6)
1 1	kg lb	*14500 *31970	*14500 *31970	*17770 *39180	11640 25660	12080 26630	7370 16250	8460 18650	5250 11570	6810 15010	4280 9440	8.72 (28.6)
	kg lb	*22000 *48500	*22000 *48500	*16270 *35870	11850 26120	12210 26920	7480 16490			*7830 *17260	5360 11820	7.70 (25.3)
	kg lb	*17710 *39040	*17710 *39040	*13290 *29300	12270 27050							

(3) 6.45 m (21' 2") boom, 2.5 m (8' 2") arm equipped with 1.44 m 3 (SAE heaped) bucket and 600 mm (24") triple grouser shoe.

· 🖟 : Rating over-front · 🚓 : Rating over-side or 360 degree

			Load radius									At max. reach			
Load point		3.0 m	3.0 m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.7 ft)		6.0 m (19.6 ft)		24.5 ft)	9.0 m (29.4 ft)	Cap	acity	Reach	
height		Ū		ľ		ľ		ľ		ľ		Ů		m (ft)	
7.5 m (24.5 ft)	kg lb											*6610 *14570	5190 11440	8.34 (27.4)	
6.0 m	kg							*7220	6170			6590	4220	9.19	
(19.6 ft) 4.5 m	lb kg			*11490	*11490	*9010	8710	*15920 *7820	13600 5960			14530 5880	9300 3710	(30.2) 9.70	
(14.7 ft)	lb			*25330	*25330	*19860	19200	*17240	13140			12960	8180	(31.8)	
3.0 m (9.8 ft)	kg lb			*15000 *33070	12650 27890	*10650 *23480	8130 17920	*8660 *19090	5670 12500			5560 12260	3460 7630	9.92 (32.5)	
1.5 m	kg			*17450	11780	*12090	7650	8640	5410	6410	3990	5520	3420	9.88	
(4.9 ft)	lb			*38470	25970	*26650	16870	19050	11930	14130	8800	12170	7540	(32.4)	
Ground Line	kg lb			*18220 *40170	11490 25330	12090 26650	7360 16230	8440 18610	5230 11530			5780 12740	3580 7890	9.57 (31.4)	
-1.5 m	kg	*15100	*15100	*17870	11480	11980	7270	8370	5170			6450	4020	8.97	
(-4.9 ft)	lb	*33290	*33290	*39400	25310	26410	16030	18450	11400			14220	8860	(29.4)	
-3.0 m	kg	*22890	*22890	*16580	11660	12070	7350					*7820	4960	7.98	
(-9.8 ft)	lb	*50460	*50460	*36550	25710	26610	16200					*17240	10930	(26.2)	
-4.5 m	kg	*18960	*18960	*13950	12050	*10230	7640					*7180	*7180	6.42	
(-14.7 ft)	lb	*41800	*41800	*30750	26570	*22550	16840					*15830	*15830	(21.1)	

(4) 6.45 m (21' 2") boom, 3.2 m (10' 6") arm equipped with 1.44 m³ (SAE heaped) bucket and 600 mm (24") triple grouser shoe.

· Rating over-front · Rating over-side or 360 degree

					,	Load	radius						At r	nax. re	ach
Load point	1.5 m	(5.0 ft)	3.0 m (10.0 ft)	4.5 m (15.0 ft)	6.0 m (20.0 ft)	7.5 m (25.0 ft)	9.0 m (30.0 ft)	Cap	acity	Reach
height															m (ft)
7.5 m kg (25.0 ft) lb									*5160 *11380	*5160 *11380			*5870 *12940	4510 9940	9.06 (29.7)
6.0 m kg (20.0 ft) lb	1								*6410 *14130	6300 13890			5880 12960	3740 8250	9.84 (32.3)
4.5 m kg							*8000	*8000	*7090	6040	*5360	4290	5300	3310	10.31
(15.0 ft) lb					*13300	13080	*17640 *9720	*17640 8270	*15630 *8020	13320 5730	*11820 6570	9460 4140	11680 5020	7300 3090	(33.8)
(10.0 ft) lb					*29320	28840	*21430	18230	*17680	12630	14480	9130	11070	6810	(34.5)
1.5 m kg (5.0 ft) lb	1				*16290 *35910	11990 26430	*11360 *25040	7720 17020	8650 19070	5420 11950	6390 14090	3970 8750	4970 10960	3040 6700	10.48 (34.4)
Ground kg			*10320	*10320	*17800	11460	12070	7340	8400	5190	6260	3850	5160	3150	10.19
Line lb		*11460	*22750 *14560	*22750 *14560	*39240	25260 11320	26610 11870	16180 7160	18520 8260	11440 5060	13800	8490	11380 5660	6940 3470	9.63
(-5.0 ft) lb	1	*25260	*32100	*32100	*39770	24960	26170	15790	18210	11160			12480	7650	(31.6)
-3.0 m kg		*15430	*19550	*19550	*17260	11400	11870	7160	8270	5070			6690	4160	8.74
(-10.0 ft) lb		*34020	*43100	*43100	*38050	25130	26170	15790	18230	11180			14750	9170	(28.7)
-4.5 m kg			*21700	*21700 *47840	*15310	11680 25750	*11330	7350					*7380	5670 12500	7.37
(-15.0 ft) lb			*47840	4/840	*33750	*11240	*24980	16200					*16270	12000	(24.2)
(-20.0 ft) lb					*24780	*24780									

(5) 6.45 m (21' 2") boom, 4.05 m (13' 3") arm equipped with 1.44 m³ (SAE heaped) bucket and 600 mm (24") triple grouser shoe.

· Rating over-front · Rating over-side or 360 degree

							Load	radius						At r	nax. re	ach
Load point		1.5 m	(5.0 ft)	3.0 m ((10.0 ft)	4.5 m (15.0 ft)	6.0 m (20.0 ft)	7.5 m ((25.0 ft)	9.0 m ((30.0 ft)	Cap	acity	Reach
height				Ū		Ū		Ð		Ů		Į.		Ð		m (ft)
	(g b													*5090 *11220	3700 8160	10.00 (32.8)
	(g b											*4410 *9720	*4410 *9720	5020 11070	3120 6880	10.71 (35.1)
4.5 m k	g b									*6100 *13450	*6100 *13450	*5630 *12410	4330 9550	4570 10080	2780 6130	11.13 (36.5)
3.0 m k	ιg			*17980	*17980	*11050	*11050	*8430	*8430	*7110	5780	*6360	4130	4340	2600	11.32
1.5 m k	b (g			*39640 *10550	*39640 *10550	*24360 *14520	*24360 12330	*18580 *10270	*18580 7820	*15670 *8170	12740 5420	*14020 6360	9110 3930	9570 4290	5730 2540	(37.1) 11.29
\ · /	b (g			*23260 *10920	*23260 *10920	*32010 *16810	27180 11520	*22640	17240 7330	*18010	11950 5130	14020 6170	8660 3750	9460	5600 2620	(37.0)
Line I	b			*24070	*24070	*37060	25400	*25880	16160	18410	11310	13600	8270	9740	5780	(36.2)
	(g b	*9970 *21980	*9970 *21980	*13500 *29760	*13500 *29760	*17770 *39180	11160 24600	11760 25930	7050 15540	8140 17950	4940 10890	6050 13340	3650 8050	4780 10540	2850 6280	10.52 (34.5)
<u> </u>	\rightarrow	*13140	*13140	*17090	*17090	*17640	11100	11650	6950	8060	4870	6040	3640	5480	3320	9.72
1	\rightarrow	*28970	*28970	*37680	*37680	*38890	24470	25680	15320	17770	10740	13320	8020	12080	7320	(31.9)
	9	*16780 *36990	*16780 *36990	*21910 *48300	*21910 *48300	*16430 *36220	11260 24820	11730 25860	7030 15500	8150 17970	4950 10910			*6870 *15150	4260 9390	8.53 (28.0)
-6.0 m	rg b			*19740 *43520	*19740 *43520	*13170 *30230	11670 25730	*9910 *21850	7320 16140					*6610 *14570	6600 14550	6.71 (22.0)

2) HX330 NL

(1) 6.45 m (21' 2") boom, 2.2 m (7' 3") arm equipped with 1.44 m³ (SAE heaped) bucket and 600 mm (24") triple grouser shoe.

· Pating over-front · □ : Rating over-side or 360 degree

					Load	radius				At max. reach			
Load point height		3.0 m	(9.8 ft)	4.5 m (14.7 ft)	6.0 m (6.0 m (19.6 ft) 7.5 m (24			Capa	acity	Reach	
				ľ		H				F		m (ft)	
7.5 m (25.0 ft)	kg lb									*7020 *15480	4640 10230	8.07 (26.5)	
6.0 m (20.0 ft)	kg lb					*8120 *17900	7760 17110	*7600 *16760	5180 11420	6850 15100	3700 8160	8.95 (29.4)	
4.5 m (15.0 ft)	kg lb			*12260 *27030	11550 25460	*9450 *20830	7310 16120	*8150 *17970	5000 11020	6090 13430	3210 7080	9.47 (31.1)	
3.0 m (10.0 ft)	kg lb					*11050 *24360	6790 14970	8880 19580	4750 10470	5750 12680	2980 6570	9.70 (31.8)	
1.5 m (5.0 ft)	kg lb					12360 27250	6360 14020	8620 19000	4520 9960	5730 12630	2940 6480	9.66 (31.7)	
Ground Line	kg lb			*18350 *40450	9450 20830	12070 26610	6130 13510	8440 18610	4370 9630	6020 13270	3100 6830	9.34 (30.6)	
-1.5 m (-5.0 ft)	kg lb	*14500 *31970	*14500 *31970	*17770 *39180	9500 20940	12010 26480	6070 13380	8400 18520	4330 9550	6770 14930	3530 7780	8.72 (28.6)	
-3.0 m (-10.0 ft)	kg lb	*22000 *48500	19730 43500	*16270 *35870	9690 21360	12130 26740	6170 13600			*7830 *17260	4460 9830	7.70 (25.3)	
-4.5 m (-15.0 ft)	kg lb	*17710 *39040	*17710 *39040	*13290 *29300	10090 22240								

Note

- 1. Lifting capacity are based on SAE J1097 and ISO 10567.
- 2. Lifting capacity of the ROBEX series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
- 3. The load point is a hook located on the back of the bucket.
- 4. *indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.
- Lifting capacities are based upon a standard machine conditions.

Lifting capacities will vary with different work tools, ground conditions and attachments.

The difference between the weight of a work tool attachment must be subtracted.

Consult your HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer regarding the lifting capacities for specific work tools and attachments.

▲ Failure to comply to the rated load can cause possible personal injury or property damage. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessory for non-standard configurations.

(2) 6.45 m (21' 2") boom, 2.5 m (8' 2") arm equipped with 1.44 m³ (SAE heaped) bucket and 600 mm (24") triple grouser shoe.

· Fating over-front · Fating over-side or 360 degree

			Load radius											ach
Load point height		3.0 m	3.0 m (9.8 ft)		14.7 ft)	6.0 m (19.6 ft)	7.5 m (24.5 ft)	9.0 m (29.4 ft)	Cap	acity	Reach
		Ū		U		J		ľ		ľ		Ů		m (ft)
7.5 m (24.5 ft)	kg Ib											*6610 *14570	4380 9660	8.34 (27.4)
6.0 m (19.6 ft)	kg lb							*7220 *15920	5210 11490			6550 14440	3510 7740	9.19 (30.2)
4.5 m (14.7 ft)	kg lb			*11490 *25330	*11490 *25330	*9010 *19860	7350 16200	*7820 *17240	5010 11050			5840 12870	3050 6720	9.70 (31.8)
3.0 m	kg			*15000	10440	*10650	6800	*8660	4730			5520	2830	9.92
(9.8 ft) 1.5 m	lb kg			*33070 *17450	23020 9620	*23480 *12090	14990 6340	*19090 8580	10430 4480	6360	3270	12170 5480	6240 2780	(32.5) 9.88
(4.9 ft) Ground	lb kg			*38470	21210 9340	*26650 12010	13980	18920 8380	9880 4300	14020	7210	12080 5740	6130 2920	(32.4) 9.57
Line	lb			*40170	20590	26480	13360	18470	9480			12650	6440	(31.4)
-1.5 m (-4.9 ft)	kg lb	*15100 *33290	*15100 *33290	*17870 *39400	9340 20590	11900 26230	5970 13160	8310 18320	4240 9350			6400 14110	3290 7250	8.97 (29.4)
-3.0 m	kg	*22890	19360	*16580	9510	11990	6040		2000			*7820	4110	7.98
(-9.8 ft) -4.5 m	lb kg	*50460 *18960	*18960	*36550 *13950	20970 9870	26430 *10230	13320 6330					*17240 *7180	9060 6120	(26.2) 6.42
(-14.7 ft)	lb	*41800	*41800	*30750	21760	*22550	13960					*15830	13490	(21.1)

(3) 6.45 m (21' 2") boom, 3.2 m (10' 6") arm equipped with 1.44 m^3 (SAE heaped) bucket and 600 mm (24") triple grouser shoe.

· Rating over-front · Rating over-side or 360 degree

			Load radius												At max. rea		
Load point		1.5 m	(5.0 ft)	3.0 m (10.0 ft)	4.5 m (15.0 ft)	6.0 m (20.0 ft)	7.5 m (25.0 ft)	9.0 m ((30.0 ft)	Cap	acity	Reach	
height		ŀ				U						H				m (ft)	
7.5 m (25.0 ft)	kg lb									*5160 *11380	*5160 *11380			*5870 *12940	3780 8330	9.06 (29.7)	
	kg									*6410	5340			5840	3090	9.84	
(20.0 ft)	lb									*14130	11770			12870	6810	(32.3)	
4.5 m	kg							*8000	7520	*7090	5090	*5360	3570	5260	2700	10.31	
(15.0 ft)	lb							*17640	16580	*15630	11220	*11820	7870	11600	5950	(33.8)	
3.0 m	kg					*13300	10840	*9720	6930	*8020	4780	6530	3410	4980	2500	10.52	
(10.0 ft)	lb					*29320	23900	*21430	15280	*17680	10540	14400	7520	10980	5510	(34.5)	
	kg					*16290	9820	*11360	6400	8600	4480	6350	3250	4930	2450	10.48	
(5.0 ft)	lb					*35910	21650	*25040	14110	18960	9880	14000	7170	10870	5400	(34.4)	
Ground	kg			*10320	*10320	*17800	9320	11990	6030	8340	4260	6220	3130	5120	2540	10.19	
Line	lb			*22750	*22750	*39240	20550	26430	13290	18390	9390	13710	6900	11290	5600	(33.4)	
	kg	*11460	*11460	*14560	*14560	*18040	9180	11790	5860	8210	4140			5620	2820	9.63	
(-5.0 ft)	lb	*25260	*25260	*32100	*32100	*39770	20240	25990	12920	18100	9130			12390	6220	(31.6)	
	kg	*15430	*15430	*19550	18810	*17260	9260	11790	5860	8220	4150			6640	3410	8.74	
(-10.0 ft)	lb	*34020	*34020	*43100	41470	*38050	20410	25990	12920	18120	9150			14640	7520	(28.7)	
	kg			*21700	19340	*15310	9520	*11330	6040					*7380	4710	7.37	
(-15.0 ft)	lb			*47840	42640	*33750	20990	*24980	13320					*16270	10380	(24.2)	
	kg					*11240	10070										
(-20.0 ft)	lb					*24780	22200										

3) HX330 L HIGH WALKER

(1) 6.45 m (21' 2") boom, 2.5 m (8' 2") arm equipped with 1.44 m³ (SAE heaped) bucket and 600 mm (24") triple grouser shoe.

· Rating over-front · Rating over-side or 360 degree

						Load	radius					At ı	ach	
Load point height		3.0 m (9.8 ft)		4.5 m (14.7 ft)	6.0 m (19.6 ft)	7.5 m (24.5 ft)	9.0 m (29.4 ft)	Capa	acity	Reach
		Ū		ľ		ľ		ľ		ľ		Ū		m (ft)
7.5 m (24.5 ft)	kg lb											*6620 *14590	5780 12740	8.53 (28.0)
6.0 m	kg							*7300	7120			*6720	4830	9.31
(19.6 ft)	lb							*16090	15700			*14820	10650	(30.5)
4.5 m	kg			*12140	*12140	*9300	*9300	*7960	6880			6410	4330	9.76
(14.7 ft)	lb			*26760	*26760	*20500	*20500	*17550	15170			14130	9550	(32.0)
3.0 m	kg			*15590	14610	*10950	9380	*8820	6590			6130	4100	9.93
(9.8 ft)	lb			*34370	32210	*24140	20680	*19440	14530			13510	9040	(32.6)
1.5 m	kg			*17710	13840	*12300	8920	9460	6340	7200	4840	6150	4100	9.84
(4.9 ft)	lb			*39040	30510	*27120	19670	20860	13980	15870	10670	13560	9040	(32.3)
Ground	kg			*18220	13610	*13030	8670	9290	6180			6510	4340	9.48
Line	lb			*40170	30000	*28730	19110	20480	13620			14350	9570	(31.1)
-1.5 m	kg	*16440	*16440	*17710	13640	*13030	8600	9240	6130			7340	4920	8.82
(-4.9 ft)	lb	*36240	*36240	*39040	30070	*28730	18960	20370	13510			16180	10850	(28.9)
-3.0 m	kg	*22420	*22420	*16220	13860	*12130	8720	•		•		*7780	6170	7.75
(-9.8 ft)	lb	*49430	*49430	*35760	30560	*26740	19220					*17150	13600	(25.4)
-4.5 m	kg	*17900	*17900	*13210	*13210									
(-14.7 ft)	lb	*39460	*39460	*29120	*29120									

Note

- 1. Lifting capacity are based on SAE J1097 and ISO 10567.
- 2. Lifting capacity of the ROBEX series does not exceed 75% of tipping load with the machine on firm, level ground or 87% of full hydraulic capacity.
- 3. The load point is a hook located on the back of the bucket.
- 4. *indicates load limited by hydraulic capacity.
- * Lifting capacities are based upon a standard machine conditions.

Lifting capacities will vary with different work tools, ground conditions and attachments.

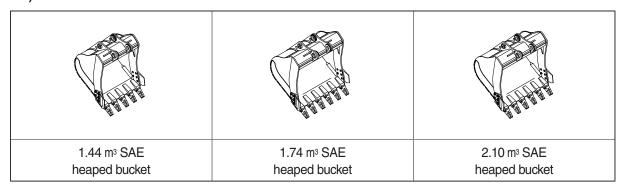
The difference between the weight of a work tool attachment must be subtracted.

Consult your HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer regarding the lifting capacities for specific work tools and attachments.

▲ Failure to comply to the rated load can cause possible personal injury or property damage. Make adjustments to the rated load as necessory for non-standard configurations.

6. BUCKET SELECTION GUIDE

1) GENERAL BUCKET



Capacity					Recommendation						
		Wi	dth	Weight		6.15 m (20' 2") boom					
SAE heaped	CECE heaped	Without side cutter	With side cutter	J	2.2 m arm (7' 3")	2.5 m arm (8' 2")	3.2 m arm (10' 6")	4.05 m arm (13' 3")	2.2 m arm (7' 3")		
1.44 m³ (1.88 yd³)	1.25 m ³ (1.63 yd ³)	1410 mm (55.5")	1505 mm (59.3")	1230 kg (2710 lb)	0	0	0	•	0		
1.74 m ³ (2.28 yd ³)	1.50 m ³ (1.96 yd ³)	1640 mm (64.6")	1735 mm (68.3")	1370 kg (3020 lb)	0	0	•	•	0		
2.10 m ³ (2.75 yd ³)	1.83 m ³ (2.39 yd ³)	1780 mm (70.1")	1875 mm (73.8")	1500 kg (3310 lb)	•	•	•		•		

	Applicable for materials with density of 2000 kgf/m³ (3370 lbf/yd³) or less
•	Applicable for materials with density of 1600 kgf/m _3 (2700 lbf/yd _3) or less
	Applicable for materials with density of 1100 kgf/m³ (1850 lbf/yd³) or less

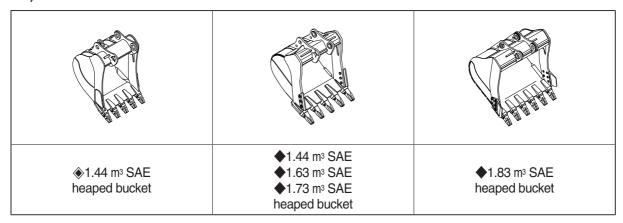
* These recommendations are for general conditions and average use.

Work tools and ground conditions have effects on machine performance.

Select an optimum combination according to the working conditions and the type of work that is being done.

Consult your HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealer for information on selecting the correct boom—arm—bucket combination.

2) HEAVY DUTY AND ROCK-HEAVY DUTY BUCKET



					Recommendation				
Capacity		Width		Weight	6.45 m (21' 2") boom				6.15 m (20' 2") boom
SAE heaped	CECE heaped	Without side cutter	With side cutter		2.2 m arm (7' 3")	2.5 m arm (8' 2")	3.2 m arm (10' 6")	4.05 m arm (13' 3")	2.2 m arm (7' 3")
♦1.44 m³ (1.88 yd³)	1.25 m ³ (1.63 yd ³)	1480 mm (58.3")	-	1520 kg (3350 lb)	0	0	•	•	0
◆1.44 m³ (1.88 yd³)	1.25 m ³ (1.63 yd ³)	1470 mm (57.9")	-	1610 kg (3550 lb)	0	0	•	•	0
◆1.63 m³ (2.09 yd³)	1.39 m ³ (1.82 yd ³)	1590 mm (62.6")	-	1690 kg (3730 lb)	•	•	•	•	0
◆1.73 m³ (2.26 yd³)	1.5 m ³ (1.96 yd ³)	1700 mm (66.9")	-	1760 kg (3880 lb)	•	•	•		0
◆1.83 m³ (2.39 yd³)	1.59 m ³ (2.08 yd ³)	1770 mm (69.7")	-	1860 kg (4100 lb)	•	•	•		•

: Heavy duty bucket

♦ : Rock-Heavy duty bucket

Applicable for materials with density of 2000 kg/m³ (3370 lb/yd³) or less
 Applicable for materials with density of 1600 kg/m³ (2700 lb/yd³) or less
 Applicable for materials with density of 1100 kg/m³ (1850 lb/yd³) or less

7. UNDERCARRIAGE

1) TRACKS

X-leg type center frame is integrally welded with reinforced box-section track frames. The design includes dry tracks, lubricated rollers, idlers, sprockets, hydraulic track adjusters with shock absorbing springs and assembled track-type tractor shoes with triple grousers.

2) TYPES OF SHOES

	I Shapes		Triple grouser			
Model						
	Shoe width	mm (in)	600 (24)	700 (28)	800 (32)	900 (36)
LIV220 I	Operating weight	kg (lb)	33500 (73850)	34070 (75110)	34450 (75950)	34830 (76790)
HX330 L	Ground pressure	kgf/cm² (psi)	0.65 (9.24)	0.56 (7.96)	0.50 (7.11)	0.45 (6' 40")
	Overall width	mm (ft-in)	3280 (10' 9")	3380 (11' 1")	3480 (11' 5")	3580 (11' 9")
LIVOONII	Shoe width	mm (in)	600 (24)	-	-	-
	Operating weight	kg (lb)	33300 (73410)	-	-	-
HX330 NL	Ground pressure	kgf/cm² (psi)	0.64 (9.10)	-	-	-
	Overall width	mm (ft-in)	2990 (9' 10")	-	-	-
	Shoe width	mm (in)	600 (24)	700 (28)	800 (32)	Double Grouser 710 (28)
HX330 L	Operating weight	kg (lb)	36000 (79370)	36570 (80620)	36950 (81460)	37480 (82630)
HIGH WALKER	Ground pressure	kgf/cm² (psi)	0.69 (9.81)	0.60 (8.53)	0.53 (7.54)	0.61 (8.67)
	Overall width	mm (ft-in)	3470 (11' 5")	3570 (11' 9")	3670 (12' 0")	3580 (11' 9")

3) NUMBER OF ROLLERS AND SHOES ON EACH SIDE

Item	Quantity
Carrier rollers	2EA
Track rollers	9EA
Track shoes	48EA

4) SELECTION OF TRACK SHOE

Suitable track shoes should be selected according to operating conditions.

Method of selecting shoes

Confirm the category from the list of applications in **table 2**, then use **table 1** to select the shoe. Wide shoes (categories B and C) have limitations on applications. Before using wide shoes, check the precautions, then investigate and study the operating conditions to confirm if these shoes are suitable.

Select the narrowest shoe possible to meet the required flotation and ground pressure. Application of wider shoes than recommendations will cause unexpected problem such as bending of shoes, crack of link, breakage of pin, loosening of shoe bolts and the other various problems.

* Table 1

Track shoe	Specification	Category
600 mm triple grouser	Standard	Α
700 mm triple grouser	Option	В
710 mm double grouser	Option	В
800 mm triple grouser	Option	С
900 mm triple grouser	Option	С

* Table 2

Category	Applications	Applications
А	Rocky ground, river beds, normal soil	Travel at low speed on rough ground with large obstacles such as boulders or fallen trees
В	Normal soil, soft ground	 These shoes cannot be used on rough ground with large obstacles such as boulders or fallen trees Travel at high speed only on flat ground Travel slowly at low speed if it is impossible to avoid going over obstacles
С	Extremely soft gound (swampy ground)	 Use the shoes only in the conditions that the machine sinks and it is impossible to use the shoes of category A or B These shoes cannot be used on rough ground with large obstacles such as boulders or fallen trees Travel at high speed only on flat ground Travel slowly at low speed if it is impossible to avoid going over obstacles

8. SPECIFICATIONS FOR MAJOR COMPONENTS

1) ENGINE

ltem	Specification
Model	Cummins QSL9
Туре	4-cycle turbocharged charger air cooled diesel engine
Cooling method	Water cooling
Number of cylinders and arrangement	6 cylinders, in-line
Firing order	1-5-3-6-2-4
Combustion chamber type	Direct injection type
Cylinder bore × stroke	114 \times 145 mm (4.49" \times 5.69")
Piston displacement	8900 cc (543 cu in)
Compression ratio	17.8:1
Rated net horse power (SAE J1349)	270 Hp at 1800 rpm (202 kW at 1800 rpm)
Rated gross horse power (SAE J1995)	284 Hp at 1800 rpm (212 kW at 1800 rpm)
Maximum torque	123.7 kgf · m (895 lbf · ft) at 1500 rpm
Engine oil quantity	30 ℓ (7.9 U.S. gal)
Wet weight	708 kg (1560 lb)
High idling speed	1800+50 rpm
Low idling speed	$800\pm50~\mathrm{rpm}$
Rated fuel consumption	164.8 g/Hp · hr at 1800 rpm
Starting motor	Denso 24V-7.8 kW
Alternator	Denso 24V-95A
Battery	2 × 12V × 160Ah

2) MAIN PUMP

Item	Specification
Туре	Variable displacement tandem axis piston pumps
Capacity	2 × 154 cc/rev
Rated oil flow	2 × 277 ℓ /min (73.2 U.S. gpm / 61.0 U.K. gpm)
Rated speed	1800 rpm

3) GEAR PUMP

Item	Specification	
Туре	Fixed displacement gear pump single stage	
Capacity	15cc/rev	
Maximum pressure	40 kgf/cm² (570 psi)	
Rated oil flow	26.3 / /min (6.9 U.S. gpm/5.8 U.K. gpm)	

4) MAIN CONTROL VALVE

Item	Specification
Туре	9 spools
Operating method	Hydraulic pilot system
Main relief valve pressure	350 kgf/cm² (4980 psi) [380 kgf/cm² (5400 psi)]
Overload relief valve pressure	400 kgf/cm² (5690 psi)

[]: Power boost

5) SWING MOTOR

Item	Specification
Туре	Axial piston motor
Capacity	156.9 cc/rev
Relief pressure	300 kgf/cm² (4270 psi)
Braking system	Automatic, spring applied hydraulic released
Braking torque	84.4 kgf · m (610 lbf · ft)
Brake release pressure	36.5 kgf/cm² (519 psi)
Reduction gear type	2 - stage planetary

6) TRAVEL MOTOR

Item	Specification
Туре	Variable displacement axial piston motor
Relief pressure	350 kgf/cm² (4980 psi)
Capacity (max / min)	282.6/156.9 cc/rev
Reduction gear type	2-stage planetary
Braking system	Automatic, spring applied hydraulic released
Brake release pressure	17 kgf/cm² (242 psi)
Braking torque	134 kgf · m (969 lbf · ft)

7) REMOTE CONTROL VALVE

Item		Specification
Туре		Pressure reducing type
Operating proceure	Minimum	6.5 kg/cm² (92 psi)
Operating pressure	Maximum	26 kg/cm² (370 psi)
Cinale execution study	Lever	61 mm (2.4 in)
Single operation stroke	Pedal	123 mm (4.84 in)

8) CYLINDER

Ite	Specification		
Boom cylinder	Bore dia \times Rod dia \times Stroke	ø 150 × ø 105 × 1480 mm	
	Cushion	Extend only	
Arm a diador	Bore dia \times Rod dia \times Stroke	ø 160× ø 110×1685 mm	
Arm cylinder	Cushion	Extend and retract	
Pugkat aylindar	Bore dia \times Rod dia \times Stroke	Ø 140 × Ø 100 × 1285 mm	
Bucket cylinder	Cushion	Extend only	

^{*} Discoloration of cylinder rod can occur when the friction reduction additive of lubrication oil spreads on the rod surface.

9) SHOE

Item		Width	Ground pressure	Link quantity	Overall width
	Standard	☆600 mm (24")	0.65 kgf/cm² (9.24 psi)	48	3280 mm (10' 9")
HX330 L		☆700 mm (28")	0.56 kgf/cm² (7.96 psi)	48	3380 mm (11' 1")
ПХ330 L	Option	☆800 mm (32")	0.50 kgf/cm² (7.11 psi)	48	3480 mm (11' 5")
		☆900 mm (36")	0.45 kgf/cm² (6.40 psi)	48	3580 mm (11' 9")
HX330 NL	Standard	☆600 mm (24")	0.64 kgf/cm² (9.10 psi)	48	2990 mm (9' 10")
	Standard	☆600 mm (24")	0.69 kgf/cm² (9.81 psi)	48	3470 mm (11' 5")
HX330 L		☆700 mm (28")	0.60 kgf/cm² (8.53 psi)	48	3570 mm (11' 9")
H/WALKER	Option	☆800 mm (32")	0.53 kgf/cm² (7.54 psi)	48	3670 mm (12' 0")
		★710 mm (28")	0.61 kgf/cm² (8.67 psi)	48	3580 mm (11' 9")

☆ : Triple grouser★ : Double grouser

^{*} Discoloration does not cause any harmful effect on the cylinder performance.

10) BUCKET

Itom	Сара	acity	Tooth	Width		
Item	SAE heaped	CECE heaped	quantity	Without side cutter	With side cutter	
	1.44 m³ (1.88 yd³)	1.25 m³ (1.63 yd³)	5	1410 mm (55.5")	1505 mm (59.3")	
	1.74 m³ (2.28 yd³)	1.50 m³ (1.96 yd³)	6	1640 mm (64.5")	1735 mm (68.3")	
	2.10 m³ (2.75 yd³)	1.82 m³ (2.39 yd³)	6	1780 mm (70.1")	1875 mm (73.8")	
HX330 L	♦ 1.44 m³ (1.88 yd³)	1.25 m³ (1.63 yd³)	5	1480 mm (58.3")	-	
HX330 NL H/WALKER	◆1.44 m³ (1.88 yd³)	1.25 m³ (1.63 yd³)	5	1470 mm (57.9")	-	
	◆1.63 m³ (2.09 yd³)	1.39 m³ (1.82 yd³)	5	1590 mm (62.6")	-	
	◆1.73 m³ (2.26 yd³)	1.50 m³ (1.96 yd³)	5	1700 mm (66.9")	-	
	◆1.83 m³ (2.39 yd³)	1.59 m³ (2.08 yd³)	6	1770 mm (69.7")	-	

: Heavy duty bucket : Rock-Heavy duty bucket

9. RECOMMENDED OILS

HD Hyundai Construction Equipment genuine lubricating oils have been developed to offer the best performance and service life for your equipment. These oils have been tested according to the specifications of HD Hyundai Construction Equipment and, therefore, will meet the highest safety and quality requirements. We recommend that you use only HD Hyundai Construction Equipment genuine lubricating oils and grease officially approved by HD Hyundai Construction Equipment.

Service		Capacity	Ambient temperature °C(°F)									
point	Kind of fluid	ℓ (U.S. gal)	-50	-30	-20	-1		0	10	20		
ропп		, ,	(-58)	(-22)	(-4)	(1	4)	(32)	(50)	(68	3) (86) (104)
					★SA	E 5W-	40					
										SAE	30	
Engine oil pan	Engine oil	30 (7.9)				SAE	10W					
Oli pari								SAE 10	W-30			
								SA	E 15W	-40		
DEF/	Mixture of urea											
AdBlue® tank	and deionized water	42.5 (11.2)		ISO 22	241, Hi	gh-pu	rity urea	a + deid	nized	water ((32.5:67.	5)
Swing drive		11 (2.91)			★SAE	- 75W	7-90					
Final	Gear oil	, , ,			\ \(\)	- 7011						
drive		(2.1×2)						SA	E 80W	-90		
		Tank : 210 (55.5)			★ I	SO V	G 15					
Hydraulic						Į	SO VG	32				
tank						ISO V	G 46, H	вно \	/G 46*	k 3		
		(106.7)							ISO	VG 68	3	
				★AS	TM D97	′5 NO	1					
Fuel tank	Diesel fuel ^{★1}	550 (145.3)				0110			OTN 4 F	2075	10.0	
								A	SIML)975 N	10.2	
Fitting					7	★NLG	I NO.1					
(grease	Grease	As required						NI	_GI NC)2		
nipple)								141	-3.110			
Radiator	Mixture of antifreeze	_			Eth	/lene	glycol b	ase pe	rmanei	nt type	(50 : 50)	
(reservoir tank)	and soft water*2	55 (14.5)	★Ethyl	lene glycol	base perm	nanent ty	pe (60 : 40)				

SAE: Society of Automotive Engineers

API : American Petroleum Institute

ISO: International Organization for Standardization

NLGI: National Lubricating Grease Institute

ASTM: American Society of Testing and Material

UTTO: Universal Tractor Transmission Oil

DEF: Diesel Exhaust Fluid, DEF compatible with AdBlue®

★ : Cold region Russia, CIS, Mongolia

★1: Ultra low sulfur diesel

- sulfur content ≤ 15 ppm

★2: Soft water

City water or distilled water

★3: HD Hyundai Construction Equipment Bio Hydraulic Oil

- * Using any lubricating oils other than HD Hyundai Construction Equipment genuine products may lead to a deterioration of performance and cause damage to major components.
- * Do not mix HD Hyundai Construction Equipment genuine oil with any other lubricating oil as it may result in damage to the systems of major components.
- * Do not use any engine oil other than that specified above, as it may clog the diesel particulate filter(DPF).
- * For HD Hyundai Construction Equipment genuine lubricating oils and grease for use in regions with extremely low temperatures, please contact HD Hyundai Construction Equipment dealers.

SECTION 2 STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION

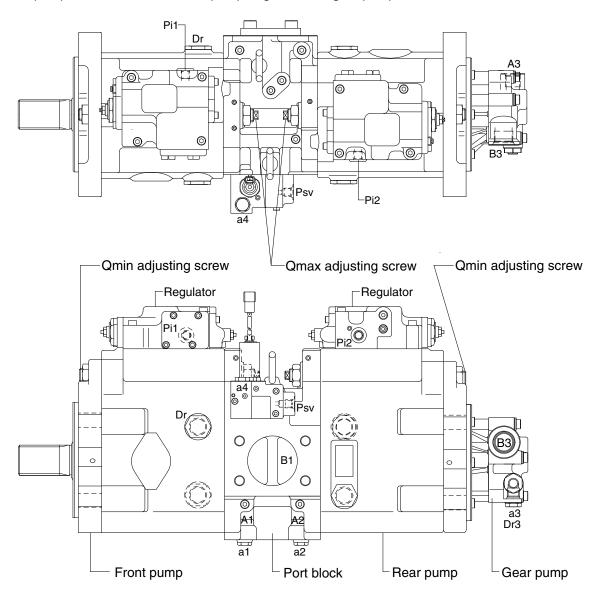
Group	1 Pump Device ····	2-1
Group	2 Main Control Valve ·····	2-20
Group	3 Swing Device	2-46
Group	4 Travel Device ·····	2-57
Group	5 RCV Lever	2-71
Group	6 RCV Pedal ·····	2-78

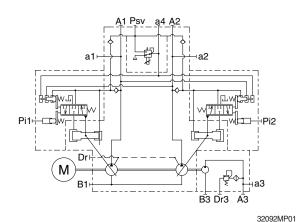
SECTION 2 STRUCTURE AND FUNCTION

GROUP 1 PUMP DEVICE

1. STRUCTURE

The pump device consists of main pump, regulator and gear pump.

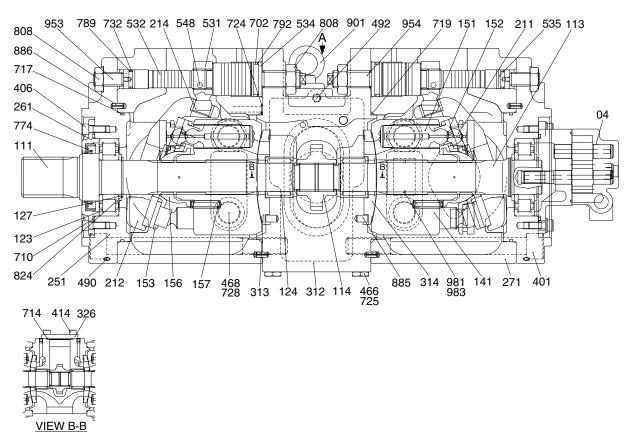




Port	Port name	Port size
A1, 2	Delivery port	SAE6000psi 1"
B1	Suction port	SAE2000psi 3"
Dr	Drain port	PF 3/4 - 23
Pi1, i2	Pilot port	PF 1/4 - 15
Psv	Servo assist port	PF 1/4 - 15
a1, 2, 4	Gauge port	PF 1/4 - 15
a3	Gauge port	PF 1/4 - 14
A3	Gear pump delivery port	PF 1/2 - 19
В3	Gear pump suction port	PF 3/4 - 20.5
Dr3	Gear pump drain port	PF 3/8 - 15

1) MAIN PUMP(1/2)

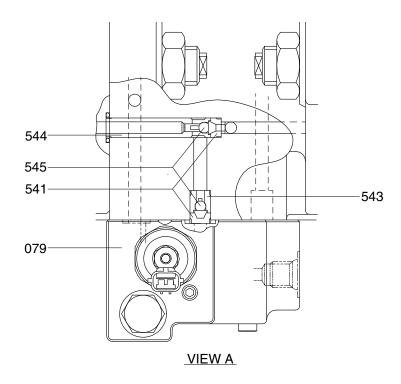
The main pump consists of two piston pumps (front & rear) and valve block.



330F2MP01

04	Gear pump	312	Valve block	717	O-ring
111	Drive shaft (F)	313	Valve plate (R)	719	O-ring
113	Drive shaft (R)	314	Valve plate (L)	724	Square ring
114	Gear	326	Cover	725	O-ring
123	Roller bearing	401	Hexagon socket bolt	728	O-ring
124	Needle bearing	406	Hexagon socket bolt	732	O-ring
127	Bearing spacer	414	Hexagon socket bolt	774	Oil seal
141	Cylinder block	466	VP plug	789	Back up ring
151	Piston	468	VP plug	792	Back up ring
152	Shoe	490	VP plug	808	Hexagon head nut
153	Set plate	492	VP plug	824	Snap ring
156	Bushing	531	Tilting pin	885	Pin
157	Cylinder spring	532	Servo piston	886	Spring pin
211	Shoe plate	534	Stopper (L)	901	Eye bolt
212	Swash plate	535	Stopper (S)	953	Set screw
214	Bushing	548	Pin	954	Set screw
251	Swash plate support	702	O-ring	981	Name plate
261	Seal cover (F)	710	O-ring	983	Pin
271	Pump casing	714	O-ring		

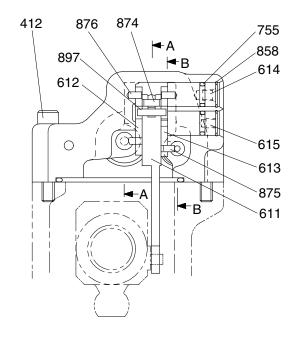
MAIN PUMP (2/2)

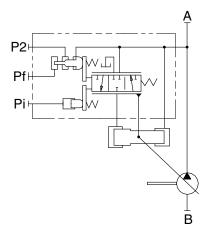


32092MP03

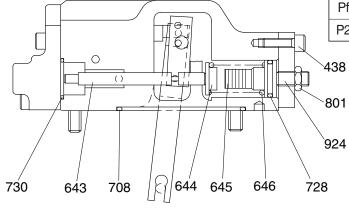
079	Proportional reducing valve	543	Stopper 1	545	Steel ball
541	Seat	544	Stopper 2		

2) REGULATOR (1/2)

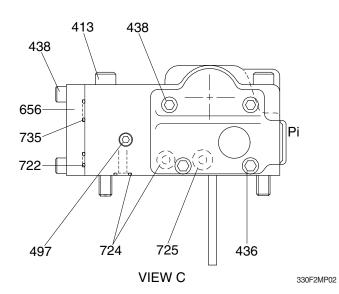




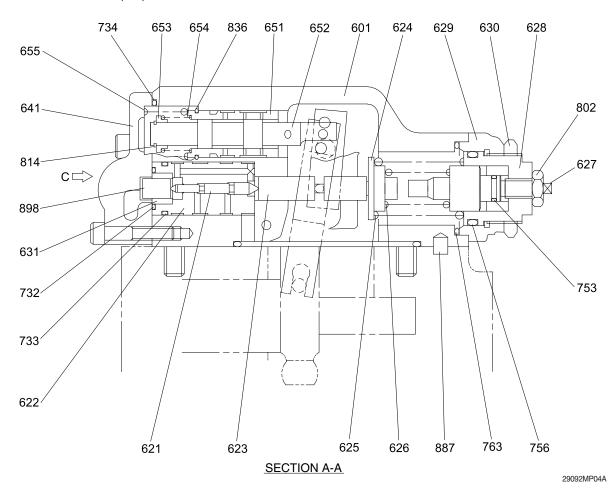
Port	Port name	Port size
Α	Delivery port	1"
В	Suction port	3"
Pi	Pilot port	PF 1/4-15
Pf	Power shift pressure	-
P2	Companion delivery pressure	-



SECTION B-B

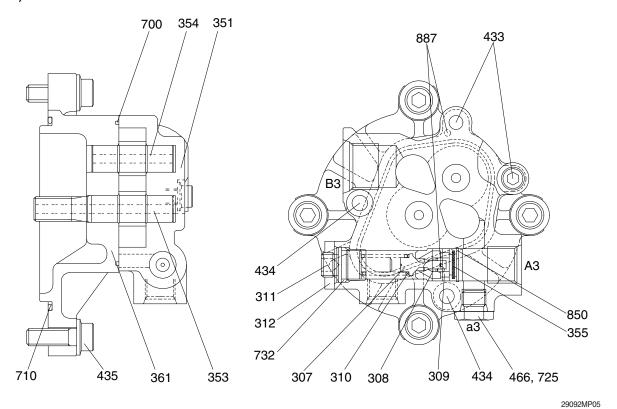


REGULATOR (2/2)



412	Hexagon socket screw	630	Lock nut	733	O-ring
413	Hexagon socket screw	631	Sleeve, pf	734	O-ring
436	Hexagon socket screw	641	Pilot cover	735	O-ring
438	Hexagon socket screw	643	Pilot piston	753	O-ring
497	Plug	644	Spring seat (Q)	755	O-ring
601	Casing	645	Adjust stem (Q)	756	O-ring
611	Feed back lever	646	Pilot spring	763	O-ring
612	Lever (1)	651	Sleeve	801	Nut
613	Lever (2)	652	Spool	802	Nut
614	Center plug	653	Spring seat	814	Snap ring
615	Adjust plug	654	Return spring	836	Snap ring
621	Compensator piston	655	Set spring	858	Snap ring
622	Piston case	656	Block cover	874	Pin
623	Compensator rod	708	O-ring	875	Pin
624	Spring seat (C)	722	O-ring	876	Pin
625	Outer spring	724	Square ring	887	Pin
626	Inner spring	725	O-ring	897	Pin
627	Adjust stem (C)	728	O-ring	898	Pin
628	Adjust screw (C)	730	O-ring	924	Set screw
629	Cover (C)	732	O-ring		

3) GEAR PUMP



307	Poppet	353	Drive gear	466	Plug
	Seat		Driven gear		Ring
309	Ring	355	Filter	710	O-ring
310	Spring	361	Front case	725	O-ring
311	Screw	433	Flange socket	732	O-ring
312	Nut	434	Flange socket	850	Snap ring
351	Gear case	435	Flange socket	887	Pin

2. FUNCTION

1) MAIN PUMP

The pumps may classified roughly into the rotary group performing a rotary motion and working as the major part of the whole pump function: the swash plate group that varies the delivery rates: and the valve cover group that changes over oil suction and discharge.

(1) Rotary group

The rotary group consists of drive shaft (F)(111), cylinder block (141), piston shoes (151,152), set plate (153), spherical bush (156), and cylinder spring (157). The drive shaft is supported by bearing (123,124) at its both ends.

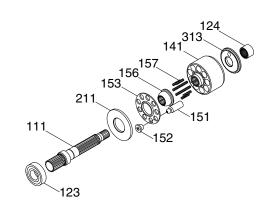
The shoe is caulked to the piston to from a spherical coupling. It has a pocket to relieve thrust force generated by loading pressure and the take hydraulic balance so that it slides lightly over the shoe plate (211). The sub group composed by a piston and a shoe is pressed against the shoe plate by the action of the cylinder spring via a retainer and a spherical bush. Similarly, the cylinder block is pressed against valve plate (313) by the action of the cylinder spring.

(2) Swash plate group

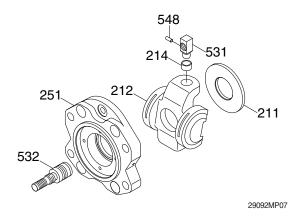
The swash plate group consists of swash plate (212), shoe plate (211), swash plate support (251), tilting bush (214), tilting pin (531) and servo piston (532).

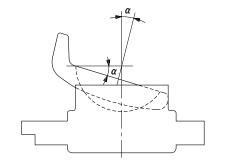
The swash plate is a cylindrical part formed on the opposite side of the sliding surface of the shoe and is supported by the swash support.

If the servo piston moves to the right and left as hydraulic force controlled by the regulator is admitted to hydraulic chamber located on both sides of the servo piston, the swash plate slides over the swash plate support via the spherical part of the tilting pin to change the tilting angle (α)



29092MP06





2-7

(3) Valve block group

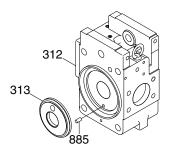
The valve block group consists of valve block (312), valve plate (313) and valve plate pin (885).

The valve plate having two melon-shaped ports is fixed to the valve block and feeds and collects oil to and from the cylinder block.

The oil changed over by the valve plate is connected to an external pipeline by way of the valve block.

Now, if the drive shaft is driven by a prime mover (electric motor, engine, etc), it rotates the cylinder block via a spline linkage at the same time. If the swash plate is tilted as in Fig (previous page) the pistons arranged in the cylinder block make a reciprocating motion with respect to the cylinder block, while they revolve with the cylinder block.

If you pay attention to a single piston, it performs a motion away from the valve plate (oil sucking process) within 180 degrees, and makes a motion towards the valve plate (or oil discharging process) in the rest of 180 degrees. When the swash plate has a tilting angle of zero, the piston makes no stroke and discharges no oil.



29092MP08

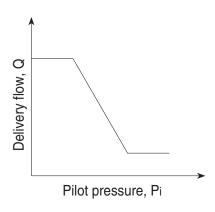
2) REGULATOR

Regulator consists of the negative flow control, total horse power control and power shift control function.

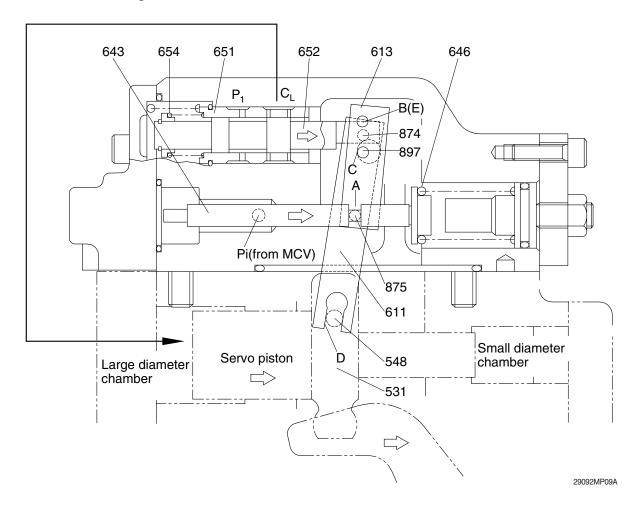
(1) Negative flow control

By changing the pilot pressure Pi, the pump tilting angle (delivery flow) is regulated arbitrarily, as shown in the figure.

This regulator is of the negative flow control in which the delivery flow Q decreases as the pilot pressure Pi rises. With this mechanism, when the pilot pressure corresponding to the flow required for the work is commanded, the pump discharges the required flow only, and so it does not consume the power uselessly.



① Flow reducing function



As the pilot pressure Pi rises, the pilot piston (643) moves to the right to a position where the force of the pilot spring (646) balances with the hydraulic force.

The groove (A) in the pilot piston is fitted with the pin (875) that is fixed to lever 2 (613). Therefore, when the pilot piston moves, lever 2 rotates around the fulcrum of point B [Fixed by the fulcrum plug (614) and pin (875)]. Since the large hole section (C) of lever 2 contains a protruding pin (897) fixed to the feedback lever (611), the pin (897) moves to the right as lever 2 rotates. Since the opposing-flat section (D) of the feedback lever is fitted with the pin (548) fixed by the tilting pin (531) that swings the swash plate, the feedback lever rotates around the fulcrum of point D, as the pin (897) moves.

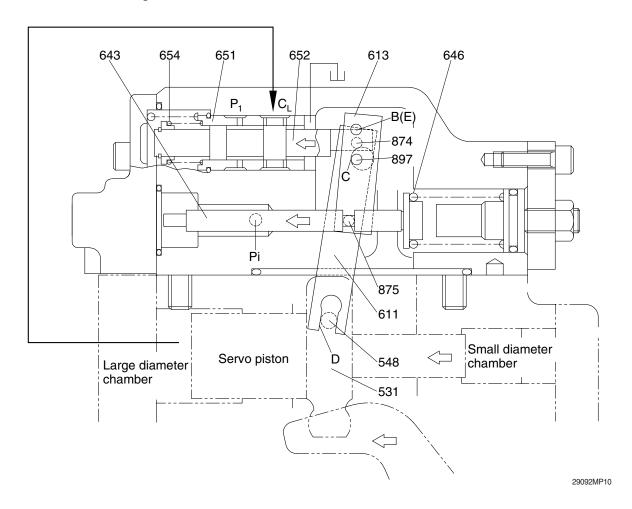
Since the feedback lever is connected with the spool (652) via the pin (874), the spool moves to the right.

The movement of the spool causes the delivery pressure P1 to connect to port CL through the spool and to be admitted to the large diameter section of the servo piston. The delivery pressure P1 that is constantly admitted to the small diameter section of the servo piston moves the servo piston to the right due to the area difference, resulting in decrease of the tilting angle.

When the servo piston moves to the right, point D also moves to the right. The spool is fitted with the return spring (654) and is tensioned to the left at all times, and so the pin (897) is pressed against the large hole section (C) of lever 2.

Therefore, as point D moves, the feedback lever rotates around the fulcrum of point C, and the spool is shifted to the left. This causes the opening between the sleeve (651) and spool (652) to close slowly, and the servo piston comes to a complete stop when it closes completely.

② Flow increasing function



As the pilot pressure Pi decreases, the pilot piston (643) moves to the left by the action of the pilot spring (646) and causes lever 2 (613) to rotate around the fulcrum of point B. Since the pin (897) is pressed against the large hole section (C) of lever 2 by the action of the return spring (654) via the spool (652), pin (874), and feedback lever (611), the feedback lever rotates around the fulcrum of point D as lever 2 rotates, and shifts the spool to the left. Port CL opens a way to the tank port as the spool moves. This deprives the large diameter section of the servo piston of pressure, and shifts the servo piston to the left by the discharge pressure P1 in the small diameter section, resulting in an increase in the flow rate.

As the servo piston moves, point D also moves to the left, the feedback lever rotates around the fulcrum of point C, and the spool moves to the right till the opening between the spool and sleeve is closed.

3 Adjustment of flow control characteristic

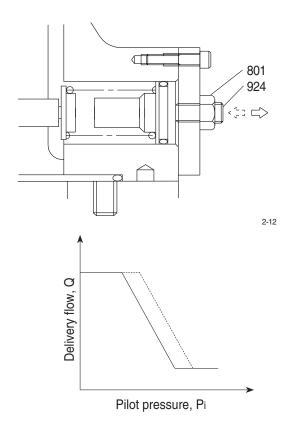
The flow control characteristic can be adjusted with the adjusting screw.

Adjust it by loosening the hexagon nut (801) and by tightening (or loosening) the hexagonal socket head screw (924).

Tightening the screw shifts the control chart to the right as shown in the figure.

* Adjusting values are shown in table.

Speed	Adjustment of flow control characteristic					
Оросс	Tightening amount of adjusting screw (924)	Flow control starting pressure change amount	Flow change amount			
(min -1)	(Turn)	(kgf/cm²)	(<i>l</i> /min)			
1750	+1/4	+1.0	+18.4			



(2) Total horsepower control

The regulator decreases the pump tilting angle (delivery flow) automatically to limit the input torque within a certain value with a rise in the delivery pressure P1 of the self pump and the delivery pressure P2 of the companion pump.

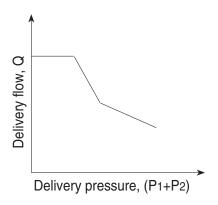
(The input horsepower is constant when the speed is constant.)

Since the regulator is of the simultaneous total horsepower type that operates by the sum of load pressures of the two pumps in the tandem double-pump system, the prime mover is automatically prevented from being overloaded, irrespective of the load condition of the two pumps, when horsepower control is under way.

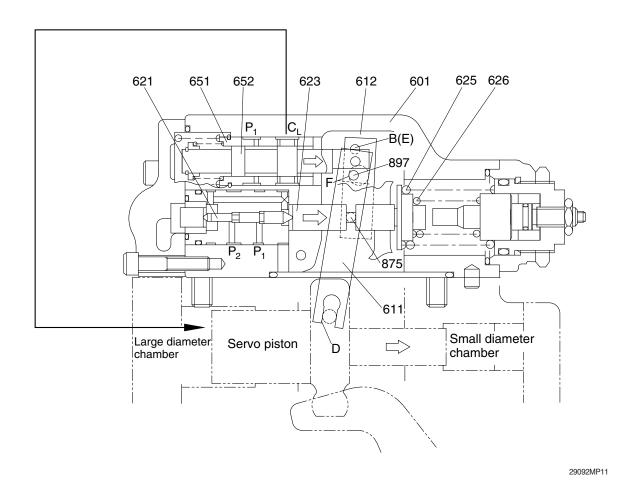
Since this regulator is of the simultaneous total horsepower type, it controls the tilting angles (displacement volumes) of the two pumps to the same value as represented by the following equation:

Tin = P1×q/2
$$\pi$$
 + P2×q/2 π
= (P1+P2)×q/2 π

The horsepower control function is the same as the flow control function and is summarized in the following. (for detailed behaviors of respective parts, refer to the section of flow control).



① Overload preventive function

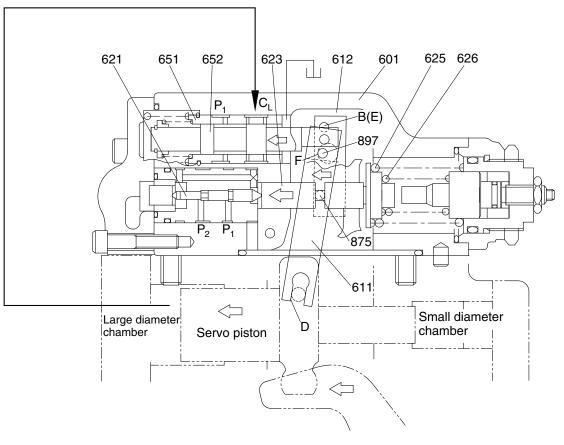


When the self pump delivery pressure P1 or the companion pump delivery pressure P2 rises, it acts on the stepped part of the compensating piston (621). It presses the compensating rod (623) to the right till the force of the outer spring (625) and inner spring (626) balances with the hydraulic force. The movement of the compensating rod is transmitted to lever 1 (612) via pin (875).

Lever 1 rotates around the pin (875) (E) fixed to the casing (601).

Since the large hole section (F) of lever 1 contains a protruding pin (897) fixed to the feedback lever (611), the feedback lever rotates around the fulcrum of point D as lever 1 rotates, and then the spool(652) is shifted to the right. As the spool moves, the delivery pressure P1 is admitted to the large diameter section of the servo piston via port CL, causes the servo piston move to the right, reduces the pump delivery, flow rate, and prevents the prime mover from being overloaded. The movement of the servo piston is transmitted to the feedback lever via point D. Then the feedback lever rotates around the fulcrum of point F and the spool is shifted to the left. The spool moves till the opening between the spool (652) and sleeve (651) is closed.

② Flow reset function



29092MP12

As the self pump delivery pressure P1 or the companion pump delivery pressure P2 decreases, the compensating rod (623) is pushed back by the action of the springs (625 & 626) to rotate lever 1 (612) around point E. Rotating of lever 1 causes the feedback lever (611) to rotate around the fulcrum of point D and then the spool (652) to move to the left. As a result, port CL opens a way to the tank port.

This causes the servo piston to move to the left and the pump's delivery rate to increase.

The movement of the servo piston is transmitted to the spool by the action of the feedback mechanism to move it till the opening between the spool and sleeve is closed.

3 Low tilting angle (low flow) command preferential function

As mentioned above, flow control and horsepower control tilting angle commands are transmitted to the feedback lever and spool via the large-hole sections (C & F) of levers 1 and 2. However, since sections C and F have the pins (\emptyset 4) protruding from the large hole (\emptyset 8), only the lever lessening the tilting angle contacts the pin (897); the hole (\emptyset 8) in the lever of a larger tilting angle command is freed without contacting the pin (897). Such a mechanical selection method permits preference of the lower tilting angle command of the flow control and horsepower control.

4 Adjustment of input horsepower

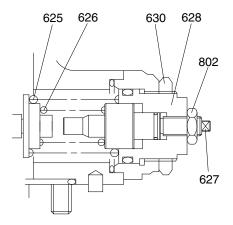
Since the regulator is of total cumulative horsepower type, adjust the adjusting screws of both the front and rear pumps, when changing the horsepower set values. The pressure change values by adjustment are based on two pumps pressurized at the same time, and the values will be doubled when only one pump is loaded.

a. Adjustment of outer spring

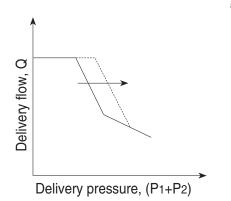
Adjust it by loosening the hexagon nut (630) and by tightening (or loosening) the adjusting screw C (628). Tightening the screw shifts the control chart to the right and increases the input horsepower as shown in the figure. Since turning the adjusting screw C by N turns changes the setting of the inner spring (626), return the adjusting screw QI (627) by N×A turns at first. (A=1.9)

* Adjusting values are shown in table.

Speed	Adjustment of outer spring		
Speed	Tightening amount of adjusting screw (C) (628)	Compensating control starting pressure change amount	Input torque change amount
(min ⁻¹)	(Turn)	(kgf/cm²)	(kgf · m)
1750	+1/4	+19.2	+8.5



8007A2MP03



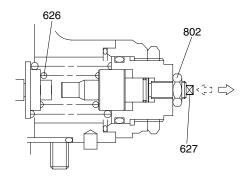
b. Adjustment of inner spring

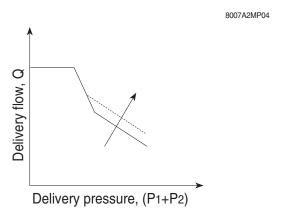
Adjust it by loosening the hexagon nut (802) and by tightening (or loosening) the adjusting screw QI (627).

Tightening the screw increases the flow and then the input horsepower as shown in the figure.

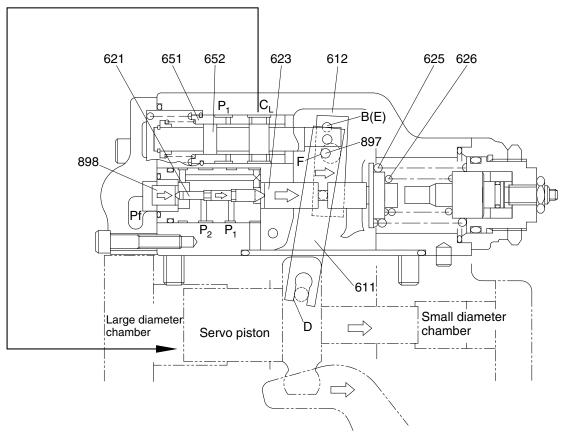
* Adjusting valves are shown in table.

Spood	Adjustment of inner spring		
Speed	Tightening amount of adjusting screw (QI) (627)	Flow change amount (rpm)	Input torque change amount
(min ⁻¹)	(Turn)	(l /min)	(kgf · m)
1750	+1/4	+15.9	+8.7





(3) Power shift control

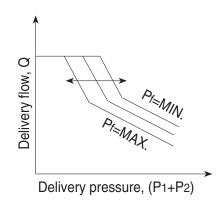


29092MP13

The set horsepower valve is shifted by varying the command current level of the proportional pressure reducing valve attached to the pump.

Only one proportional pressure reducing valve is provided.

However, the secondary pressure Pf (power shift pressure) is admitted to the horsepower control section of each pump regulator through the pump's internal path to shift it to the same set horsepower level.



This function permits arbitrary setting of the

pump output power, thereby providing the optimum power level according to the operating condition.

The power shift pressure Pf controls the set horsepower of the pump to a desired level, as shown in the figure.

As the power shift pressure Pf rises, the compensating rod (623) moves to the right via the pin (898) and compensating piston (621).

This decreases the pump tilting angle and then the set horsepower in the same way as explained in the overload preventive function of the horsepower control. On the contrary, the set horsepower rises as the power shift pressure Pf falls.

(4) Adjustment of maximum and minimum flows

① Adjustment of maximum flow

Adjust it by loosening the hexagon nut (808) and by tightening (or loosening) the set screw (954).

The maximum flow only is adjusted without changing other control characteristics.

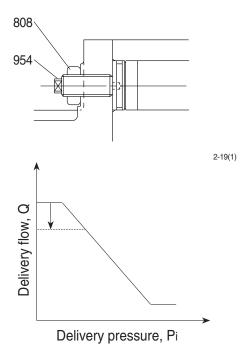
Speed	Adjustment of max flow		
	Tightening amount of adjusting screw (954)	Flow change amount	
(min -1)	(Turn)	(/ /min)	
1750	+1/4	-6.7	

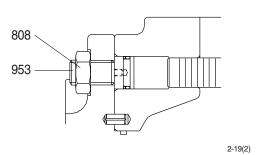
② Adjustment of minimum flow

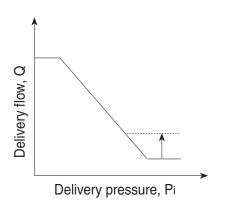
Adjust it by loosening the hexagon nut (808) and by tightening (or loosening) the hexagonal socket head set screw (953). Similarly to the adjustment of the maximum flow, other characteristics are not changed.

However, remember that, if tightened too much, the required horsepower during the maximum delivery pressure (or during relieving) may increase.

Spood	Adjustment of min flow		
Speed	Tightening amount of adjusting screw (953)	Flow change amount	
(min -1)	(Turn)	(l /min)	
1750	+1/4	+6.7	



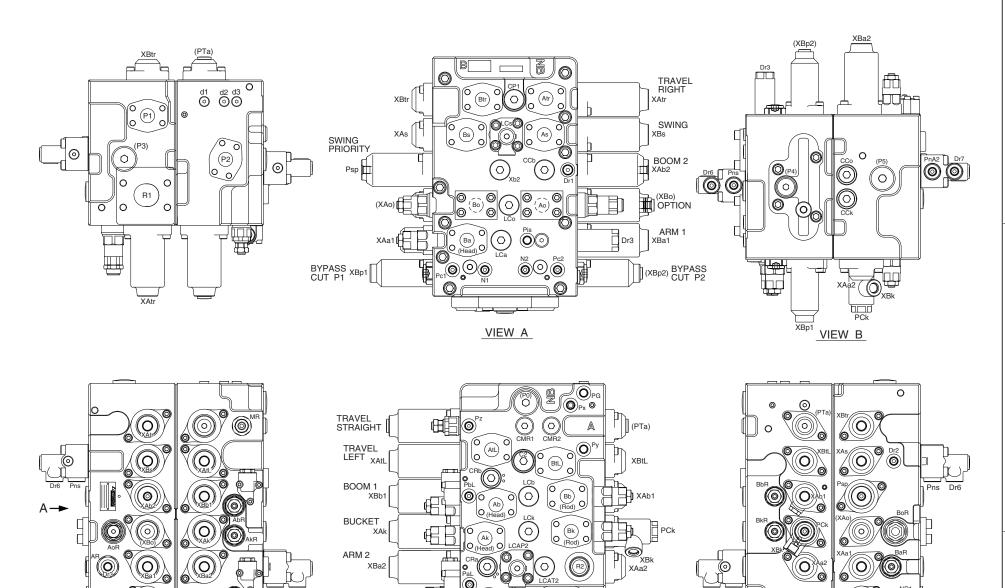




GROUP 2 MAIN CONTROL VALVE

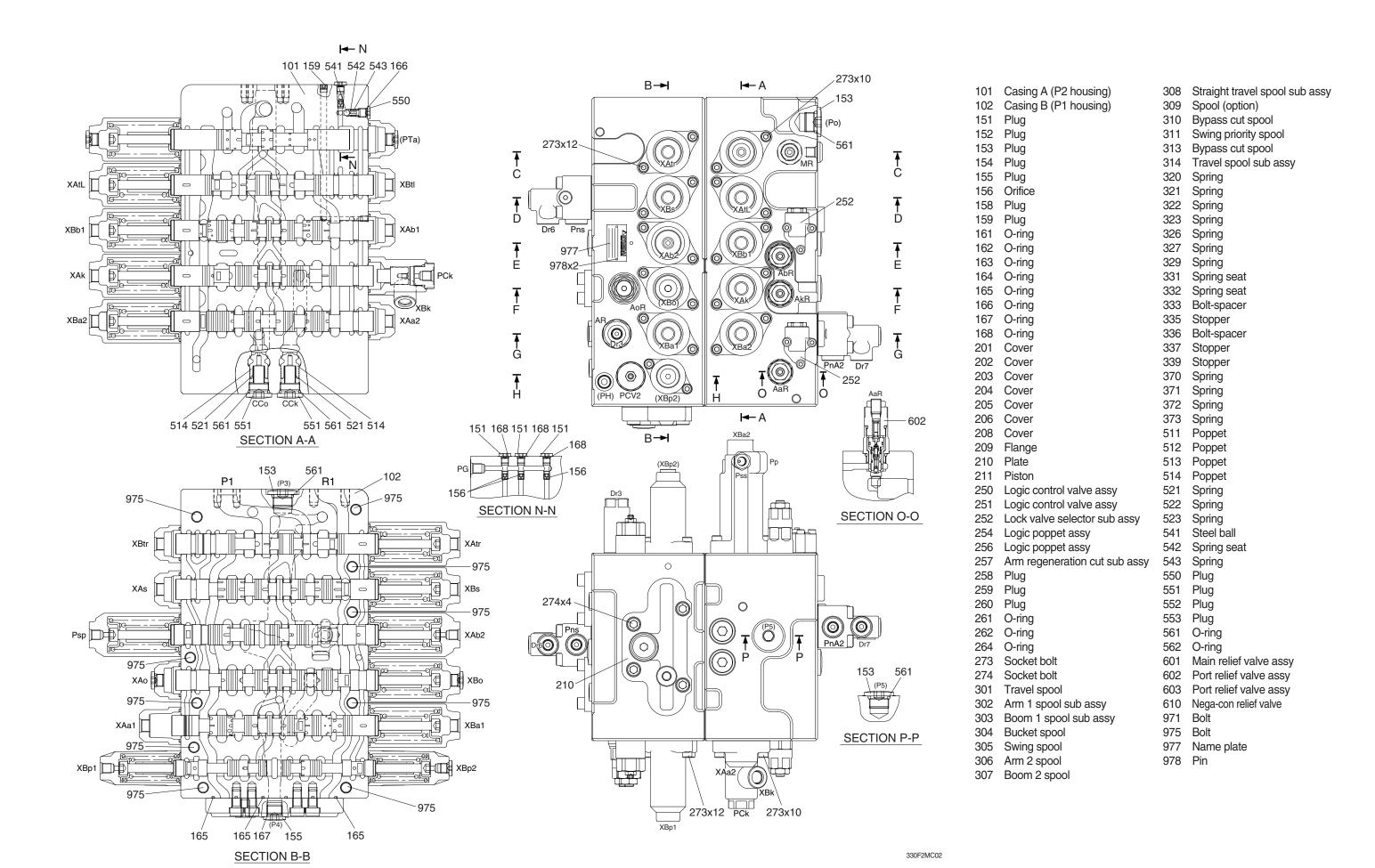
B

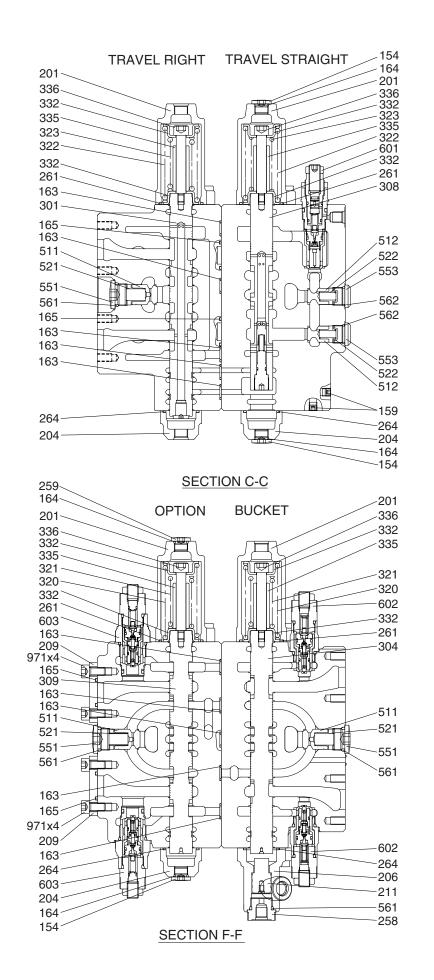
1. STRUCTURE

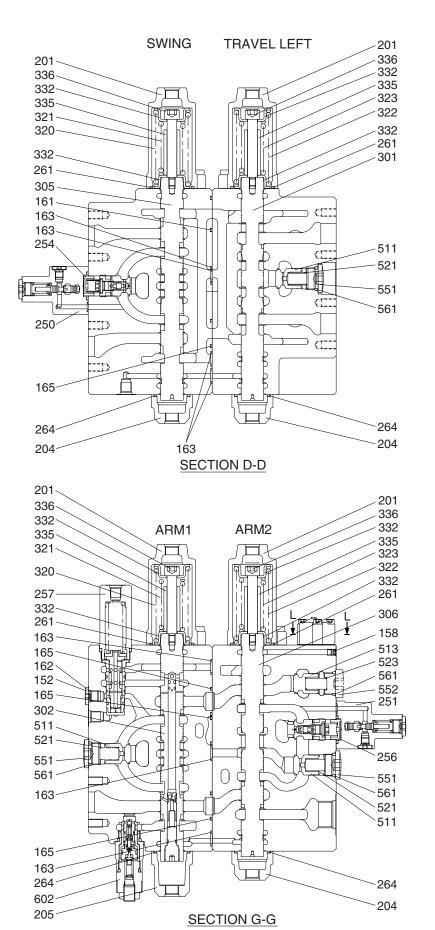


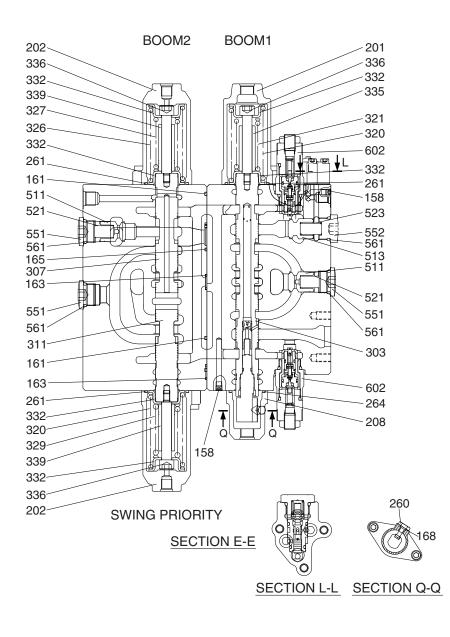
Mark	Port name	Port size	Tightening torque
			20~25 kgf · m
R2	Make up port for swing	PF 1	(115~180 lbf · ft)
XAtr XBtr (XAo) (XBo) XAk XBk XAb1 XAa2 XBa2 XAtL XBs XAs XBs XAa1 XBa1 (PH) Dr1	Travel right (reverse) pilot port Travel right (forward) pilot port Optional pilot port Bucket in pilot port Bucket out pilot port Boom up pilot port Boom down pilot port Arm out confluence pilot port Arm in confluence pilot port Travel left (reverse) pilot port Travel left (forward) pilot port Swing left pilot port Arm out pilot port Arm in pilot port Pilot port Pilot pressure port Drain port	PF 3/8	7~8 kgf · m (50.6~57.8 lbf · ft)
Px Py Pz PG Dr2 Dr3 Dr6 Dr7 Pns PaL PbL XAb2 Psp XBp1 (XBp2) (Pc1) (Pc2) PCk Pis N1 N2 PnA2	Pressure port for attachment Pressure port for travel Main relief pilot pressure port Pilot pressure port Drain port Drain port Drain port Drain port Swing logic valve pilot port Lock valve pilot port (arm rod side) Lock valve pilot port (boom head side) Boom up confluence pilot port Swing priority pilot port Bypass cut spool pilot port (P1 side) Bypass cut spool pilot port (P2 side) Posi-nega pressure port (P1 side) Posi-nega pressure port (P2 side) Bucket in stroke limiter pilot port Arm regeneration cut pilot port Arm1 Nega-con pressure port Boom1 Nega-con pressure port Arm2 logic valve pilot port	PF 1/4	3.5~3.9 kgf ⋅ m (25.3~28.2 lbf ⋅ ft)
Atr Btr (Ao) (Bo) Ak Bk Ab Bb AtL BtL As Bs Aa Ba P1 P2	Travel motor right side (reverse) port Travel motor right side (forward) port Optional port Optional port Bucket cylinder head side port Bucket cylinder rod side port Boom cylinder head side port Boom cylinder rod side port Travel motor left side (reverse) port Travel motor left side (forward) port Swing motor left port Swing motor right port Arm cylinder rod side port Arm cylinder head side port Pump port (P1 side) Pump port (P2 side)	M10	5~6.6 kgf · m (36.1~47.7 lbf · ft)
R1	Return port	M12	8.5~11.2 kgf · m (61.5~81.1 lbf · ft)

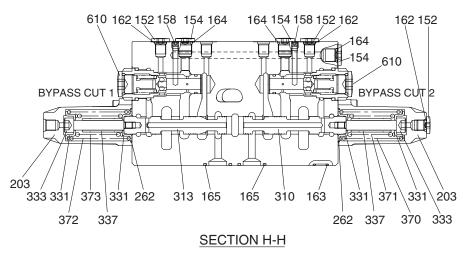
330F2MC01





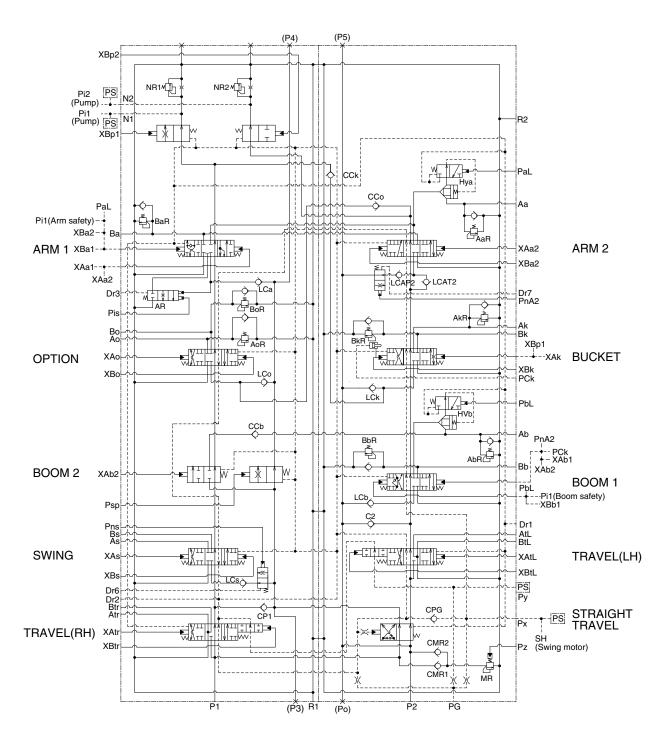






330F2MC03

2. HYDRAULIC CIRCUIT



330F2MC04

3. FUNCTION

1) CONTROL IN NEUTRAL POSITION

Main circuit

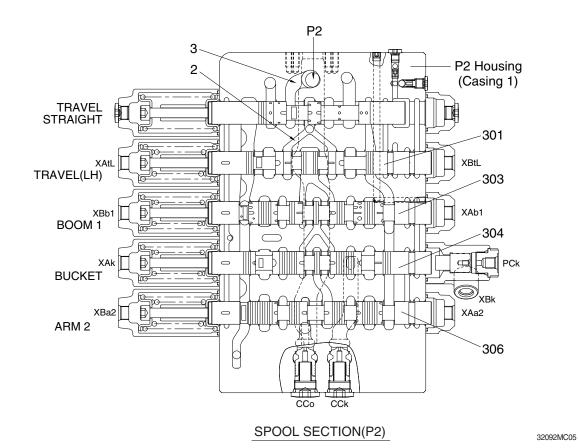
When all spools are in the neutral positions, the pressurized oil discharged from the hydraulic pump (A1) passes through Port P1, the main path (1), the bypass circuit (2) passing the spools for travel right (314), swing (305), boom confluence (boom 2; 307), option (309) and arm 1 (302), and the arm 1 side negative control relief valve (610), and returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank port (R1).

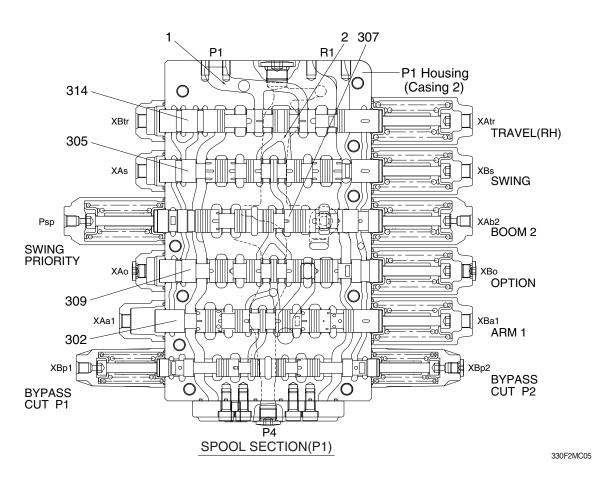
The negative control signal pressure of the arm 1 side negative control relief valve (610) is led from Port N1 to the regulator on the hydraulic pump (A1) side, and controls the pump discharge flow rate to its minimum value.

The oil discharged from the hydraulic pump (A2) passes through Port P2, the main path (3), the bypass circuit (2) passing the spools for travel left (301), boom 1 (303), bucket (304) and arm 2 (306), and the boom1 side negative control relief valve (610), and returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank port (R1).

The negative control signal pressure of the boom 1 side negative control relief valve (610) is led from Port N2 to the regulator on the hydraulic pump (A2) side, and controls the pump discharge flow rate to its minimum value.

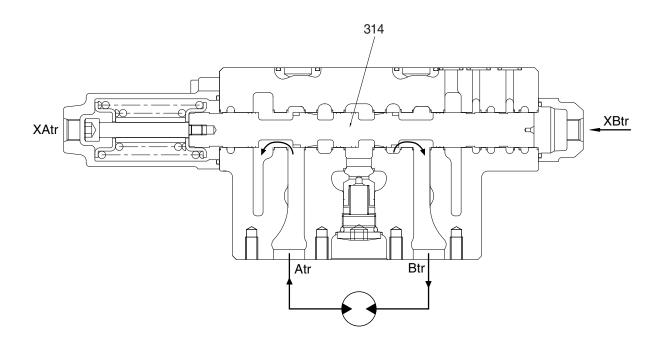
When any of nine main spools is changed over, the bypass circuit (2) is cut off and the hydraulic oil at Port N1 or N2 in the negative control circuit is shut off.





2) EACH SPOOL OPERATION

(1) Travel control



21092MC21

Pilot circuit

Since any of the travel spools (314, 301) on the left or right transfers and shuts off the side-bypass path, the pressure at Port Py increases.

Main circuit

When Pilot Port XBtr of the travel right spool (314) is pressurized, the bypass circuit (2) in the arm 1 side is shut off and the working fluid discharged from the hydraulic pump (A1) through Port Btr and flows to the travel right motor.

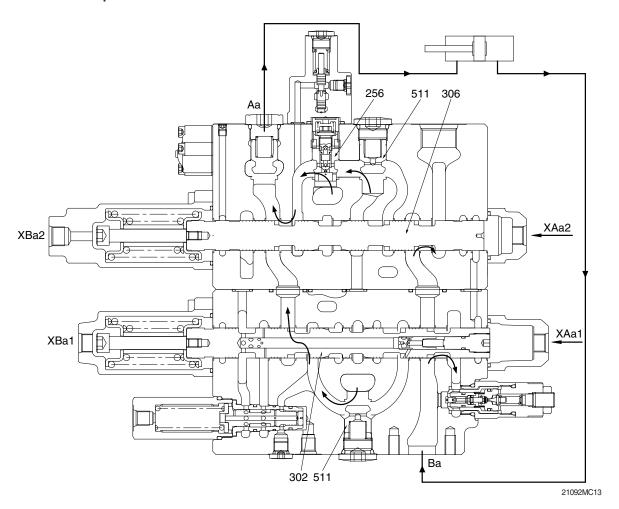
When Pilot Port XBtL of the travel left spool (301) is pressurized, the bypass circuit (2) in the boom 1 side is shut off and the working fluid discharged from the hydraulic pump (A2), similarly to that from the hydraulic pump (A1), through Port BtL and flows to the travel left motor.

On the other hand, the return oil from the right and left travel motor passes flows from Port Atr (AtL) to the travel right (left) spools (314, 301) and returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank port (R1).

In the case of the opposite operation (when the pilot pressure is applied to Ports XAtr and XAtL of the control valve), the operation is similar.

(2) Arm control

① Arm out operation



Pilot circuit

Since the arm 2 spool (306) transfers and shuts off the side-bypass path, the pressure at Port Px increases.

Main circuit

During the arm out operation, the pilot pressure enters through Ports XAa1 and XAa2. When the pressure enters through Port XAa1 and XAa2, the spools transfer in the left direction. The hydraulic oil entering through Port P1 passes through the main path (1) and flows to the bypass circuit (2), but the bypass circuit is shut off due to transfer of the arm 1 spool (302).

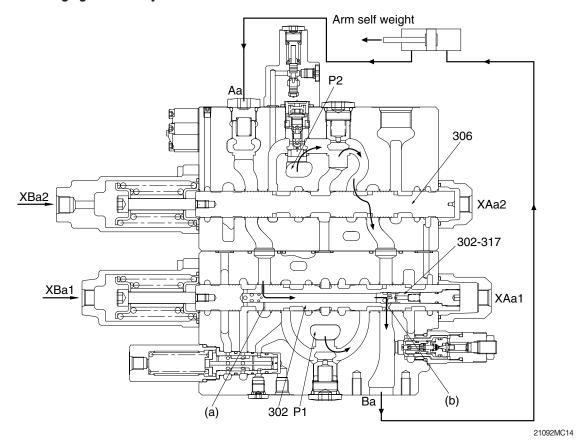
Therefore, the hydraulic oil from the parallel circuit pushes open the check valve (511) and flows through the U-shaped path to the arm 1 spool (302). Then, it flows around the periphery of the arm 1 spool (302) and the arm 2 spool (306) to Port Aa, and is supplied to the arm cylinder rod side.

On the other hand, the hydraulic oil entering through Port P2 passes in the main path (3), and flows into the bypass circuit (2), and the bypass circuit is shut off due to transfer of the arm 2 spool (306). The hydraulic oil from the parallel circuit pushes open the logic poppet (256) and the hydraulic oil from the bypass circuit (2) pushes open the check valve (511) and flows through the U-shaped path to the arm 2 spool (306). Then, it flows around the periphery of the arm 2 spool (306) in the inside path and joins into Port Aa.

Besides, the return oil from the arm cylinder head side passes through Port Ba, flows into tank line in arm 1 side and in arm 2 side, and returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank port (R1).

② Arm in operation

· During light load only



Pilot circuit

Since the arm 2 spool (306) transfers and shuts off the side-bypass path, the pressure at Port Px increases. Then, the pressure enters also through Port PaL and the release signal is sent to the lock valve (252).

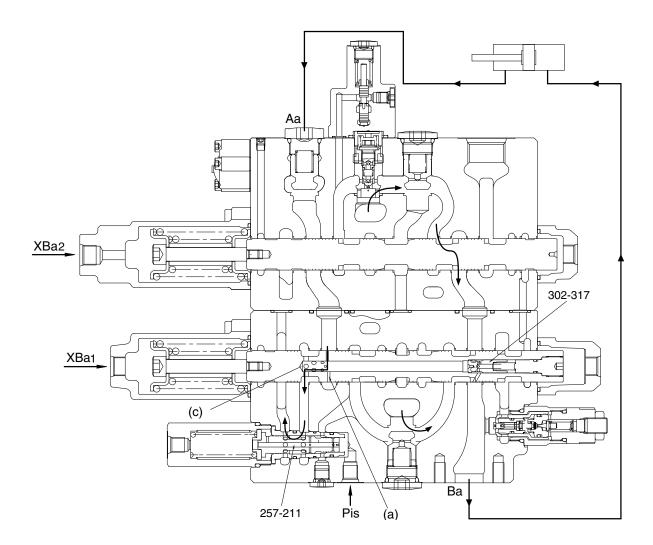
Main circuit

During the arm in operation, the pilot pressure enters through Ports XBa1 and XBa2. When the pressure enters through Port XBa1 and Port XBa2, the spools transfer in the right direction Fig. MC14. The hydraulic oil entering through Port P1 passes through the main path (1) and flows to the bypass circuit (2), but the bypass circuit is shut off due to transfer of the arm 1 spool (302). Therefore, the hydraulic oil from the parallel circuit pushes open the check valve (511) and flows through the U-shaped path to the arm 1 spool (302). Then, it flows around the periphery of the arm 1 spool (302) to Port Ba, and is supplied to the arm cylinder head side.

On the other hand, the hydraulic oil entering through Port P2 passes in the main path (3), and flows into the bypass circuit (2), and the bypass circuit is shut off due to transfer of the arm 2 spool (306). The hydraulic oil from the parallel circuit pushes open the logic poppet (256) and the hydraulic oil from the bypass circuit (2) pushes open the check valve (511) and flows through the U-shaped path to the arm 2 spool (306). Then, it flows around the periphery of the arm 2 spool (306) and the arm 1 spool (302) in the inside path and joins into Port Ba.

Besides, the return oil from the arm cylinder rod side is pressurized by self-weight of the arms and so on, and returns to Port Aa. The pressurized oil returning to Port Aa enters into the spool through the periphery hole (a) of the arm 1 spool (302). During a light load only, it pushes open the check valve (302-317) and joins into Port Ba from the spool hole (b). The rest of oil returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank port (R1). This is called the arm regeneration function.

· The pressure in the arm cylinder head side increases

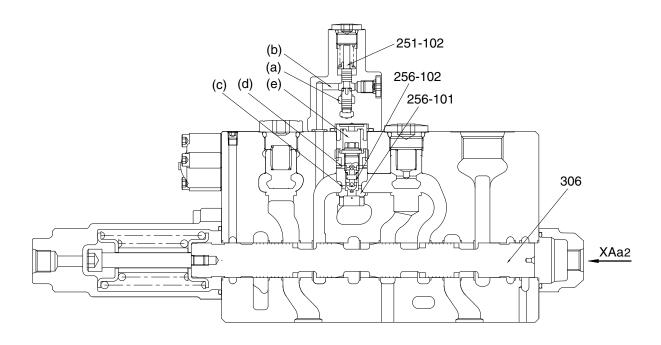


21092MC15

When the pressure in the arm cylinder head side and the U-shaped path increases, the arm regeneration cut spool (257-211) is transferred in the left direction, and at the same time the check valve (302-317) is closed by its backpressure. This shuts off the arm regeneration function, and the return oil from the arm cylinder rod side enters from Port Aa through the periphery hole (a) of the arm 1 spool (302) into the spool, flows to the arm regeneration cut valve (257) through the periphery hole (c) of the arm 1 spool (302), and returns through the tank port (R1) to the hydraulic oil tank.

When the Pilot Port Pis of the arm regeneration cut spool (257-211) is pressurized, a part of the return oil from the arm cylinder rod side flows to the arm regeneration cut valve (257) and returns through the tank port (R1) to the hydraulic oil tank. (Variable arm regeneration)

3 Arm 2 logic control valve operation



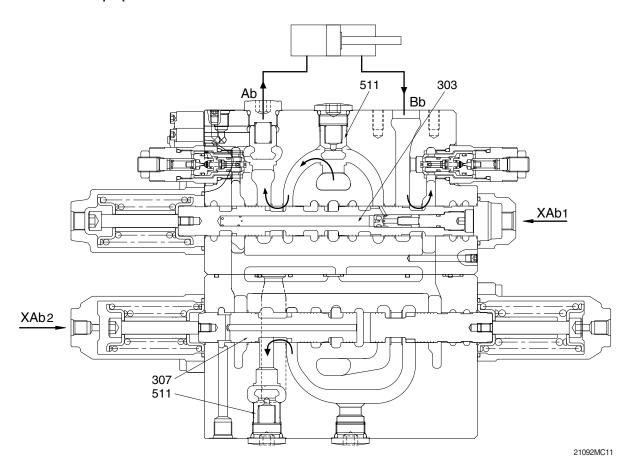
21092MC16

During both the arm in operation and the boom up operation, the pilot pressure enters through Ports XBa1, XBa2, XAb1, XAb2, PaL and PnA2. The pressure PnA2 transfers the spool (251-102) in the arm 2 logic control valve to the top direction, and the path from (a) to (b) is closed. Hereby, the pressurized oil pushes open the poppet (256-102), passes in the path (c) and (d), enters into the chamber (e), and the poppet (256-101) is pushed to the casing seat. Therefore, the most of pressurized oil entering through Port P2 flows to the boom 1 spool (303) than the arm 2 spool (306) to make the boom hoisting operation most preferential.

On the other hand, in the independent arm in operation, the pilot pressure does not enter through Ports PnA2, and the path from (a) to (b) is not closed, and the hydraulic oil of the chamber (e) flows to the path (a) and (b). The pressurized oil entering through Port P2 pushes open the poppet (256-101) and flows to the arm 2 spool (306).

(3) Boom control

① Boom up operation



Pilot circuit

Since the boom 1 spool (303) transfers and shuts off the side-bypass path, the pressure at Port Px increases.

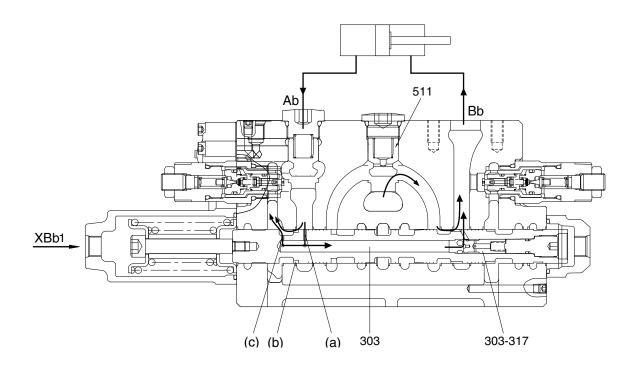
Main circuit

During the boom up operation, the pilot pressure enters through Port XAb1 and moves the boom 1 spool (303) in the left direction. The pressurized oil entering through Port P2 passes through the main path (3) and flows to the bypass circuit (2), but the bypass circuit (2) is shut off due to transfer of the boom 1 spool (303). Therefore, the pressurized oil flows into the parallel circuit, pushes open the check valve (511), and flows through the U-shaped path to the boom 1 spool (303). Then, it flows around the periphery of the boom 1 spool (303) to Port Ab, and is supplied to the boom cylinder head side.

At the same time, the pilot pressure enters also through Port XAb2 to transfer the boom 2 spool (307) in the right direction. Though the pressurized oil enters into Port P1, the bypass circuit (2) is shut off due to transfer of the boom 2 spool (307). Therefore, the hydraulic oil flows in the parallel circuit and flows through the U-shaped path to the boom 2 spool (307). Then, the hydraulic oil passes through the periphery of the boom 2 spool (307), pushes open the check valve (511), joins into Port Ab in the inside path, and is supplied to the boom cylinder head side. (Boom confluent flow)

On the other hand, the return oil from the boom cylinder rod side enters through Port Bb and returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank port (R1).

② Boom down operation



21092MC12

Pilot circuit

Since the boom 1 spool (303) transfers and shuts off the side-bypass path, the pressure at Port Px increases. Then, the pressure enters also through Port PbL and the release signal is sent to the lock valve (252).

Main circuit

During the boom down operation, the pilot pressure enters through Port XBb1 and transfers the boom 1 spool (303) in the right direction. The pressurized oil entering through Port P2 passes through the main path (3) and flows to the bypass circuit (2), but the bypass circuit (2) is shut off due to transfer of the boom 1 spool (303). Therefore, the pressurized oil flows into the parallel circuit, pushes open the check valve (511), and flows through the U-shaped path to the boom 1 spool (303). Then, it flows around the periphery of the boom 1 spool (303) to Port Bb and is supplied to the boom cylinder rod side.

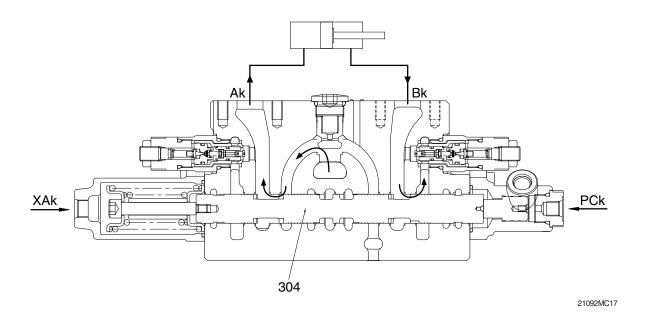
On the other hand, the return oil from the boom cylinder head side passes to the holes (a) and the notches (b) of the boom 1 spool (303).

Since this return oil has a sufficient pressure caused by the weight of the boom, it passes through the path inside the spool, pushes the poppet (303-317) in the spool in the right direction, flows around the outside of the spool. Then, it is supplied again to the boom cylinder rod side as hydraulic oil to lower the boom. (Boom regeneration)

Besides, a part of the return oil from the boom cylinder flows from the hole (c) into the tank.

(4) Bucket control

① Bucket in operation



Pilot circuit

Since the bucket spool (304) transfers and shuts off the side-bypass path, the pressure at Port Px increases. Then, the pressure enters also through Port XBp1.

Main circuit

During the bucket in operation, the pilot pressure enters through Port XAk and transfers the bucket spool (304) in the right direction. The pressurized oil entering through Port P2 passes through the main path (3) and flows through the bypass circuit (2), but the bypass circuit (2) is shut off due to transfer of the bucket spool (304). Therefore, the pressurized oil flows into the parallel circuit, pushes open the check valve (511), and flows through the U-shaped path to the bucket spool (304). Then, it flows through the periphery of the spool to Port Ak and is supplied to the bucket cylinder head side.

On the other hand, the return oil from the bucket cylinder rod side enters through Port Bk, passes around the periphery of the spool, and returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank port (R1).

During both the boom up operation and bucket in operation, the pilot pressure enters through Port PCk and the bucket spool transfers in the half stroke not full stroke. Therefore, the most of pressurized oil entering through Port P2 flows to the boom 1 spool (303) than the bucket spool (304) to make the boom up operation most preferential.

② Bucket out operation

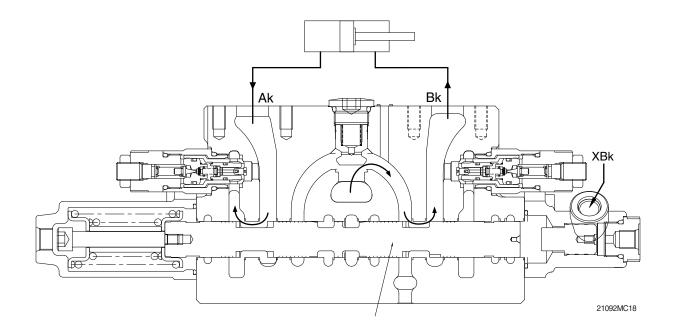
Pilot circuit

Since the bucket spool (304) transfers and shuts off the side-bypass path, the pressure at Port Px increases.

Main circuit

During the bucket out operation, the pilot pressure enters through Port XBk and transfers the bucket spool (304) in the left direction. The pressurized oil entering through Port P2 passes through the main path (3) and flows through the bypass circuit (2), but the bypass circuit (2) is shut off due to transfer of the bucket spool (304). Therefore, the pressurized oil flows into the parallel circuit, pushes open the check valve (511), and flows through the U-shaped path to the bucket spool (304). Then, it flows through the periphery of the spool to Port Bk and is supplied to the bucket cylinder rod side.

On the other hand, the return oil from the bucket cylinder head side enters through Port Ak, passes around the periphery of the spool, and returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank port (R1).



3 Bucket in confluence

During the bucket in operation, the pilot pressure enters also through Port XBp1 and transfers the bypass-cut spool (313). The pressurized oil entering through Port P1 passes through the main path (1) and flows through the bypass circuit (2), but the bypass circuit (2) is shut off due to transfer of the bypass-cut spool (313). Therefore, the pressurized oil pushes open the check valve CCk (514), and flows through inside path and the U-shaped path to the bucket spool (304).

(5) Swing control

① Swing operation

Pilot circuit

Since the swing spool (305) transfers and shuts off the side-bypass path, the pressure at Port Px increases.

Main circuit

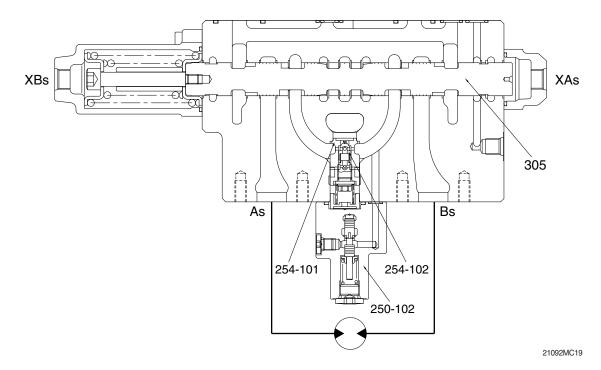
During the swing operation, the pilot pressure enters through Port XAs (or XBs) and transfers the swing spool (305). The pressurized oil entering through Port P1 passes through the main path (1) and flows through the bypass circuit (2), but the bypass circuit (2) is shut off due to transfer of the swing spool (305). Therefore, the pressurized oil flows into the parallel circuit, pushes open the check valve (511), and flows through the U-shaped path to the swing spool (305). Then, it flows through the periphery of the spool to Port As (or Bs) and is supplied to the swing motor.

On the other hand, the return oil from the swing motor enters Port Bs (or As) and returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the tank port (R1).

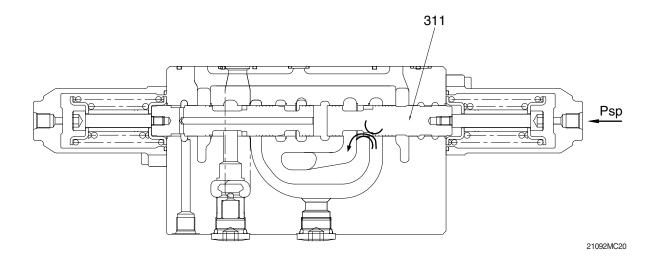
② Swing logic control valve operation

During both the swing operation and the boom up operation, the pilot pressure enters through Ports XBs (or XAs), XAb1, XAb2 and Pns. The pressure Pns transfers the spool (250-102) in swing logic control valve. Hereby, the pressurized oil pushes open the poppet (254-102), and the poppet (254-101) is pushed to the casing seat. Therefore, the most of pressurized oil entering through Port P1 flows to the boom 2 spool (307) than the swing spool (305) to make the boom up operation most preferential.

On the other hand, in the independent swing operation, the pilot pressure does not enter through Ports Pns. The pressurized oil entering through Port P1 pushes open the poppet (254-101) and flows to the swing spool (305).



3 Swing operation preference function



Pilot circuit

The pilot pressure enters through Port Psp to transfer the swing priority spool (311).

Main circuit

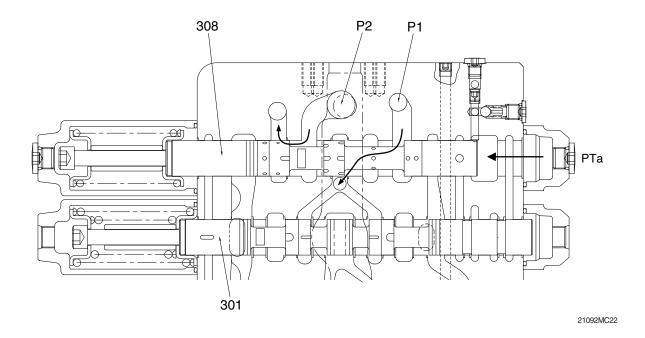
Due to transfer of the swing priority spool (311), the open area of the swing priority spool decreases, and the most of the pressurized oil entering through Port P1 flows to the swing side to make the swing operation most preferential.

(6) Travel straight operation

Simultaneous operating of both travel spools (301, 314) and other spool.

A case where both travel spools (301, 314) and swing spool (305) are changed over will be considered.

(The pilot Ports XAtL, XAtr and XAs are pressurized.)



Pilot circuit

Since the side bypass sections of both travel spools (301, 314) close and the side bypass section of the downstream-side swing closes, the pilot pressure from the port PG enters through the port PTa to transfer the travel straight spool (308).

Main circuit

After changeover of the travel straight spool (308), the port P1 and both travel spools (301, 314) are connected preferentially and the port P2 and the parallel paths of swing, boom 2, option and arm 1 / boom 1, bucket and arm 2 are connected preferentially. Therefore, the pressurized oil entering through Port P1 passes through mainly ports AtL and Atr, and flows to both travel motors separately.

On the other hand, the pressurized oil entering through Port P2 flows to Port As and is supplied to the swing motor.

When the pressure of Port P1 is lower than the pressure of Port P2, the part of oil entering through Port P2 flows into Port P1 side. Therefore, it prevents the rapid slowdown of the travel.

3) FUNCTION OF LOCK VALVE

The lock valve (252) is fitted between the arm cylinder rod side and the arm 2 spool (306). It decreases the leakage by the pressure of the cylinder.

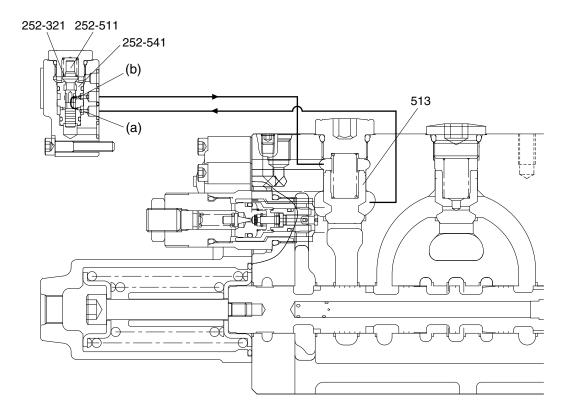
Another lock valve (252) is similarly fitted between the boom cylinder head side and the boom 1 spool (303). It decreases the leakage by the pressure of the cylinder.

(1) Neutral positions of spools

The following is the case of the boom 1 spool (303). (The case of the arm 2 spool (306) is in the same way.)

During the boom 1 spool (303) is in the neutral position, the lock valve (252) is kept in the position shown in figure. The spool (252-511) in the lock valve is pushed to the seat of the sleeve (252-541) by the force of the spring (252-321).

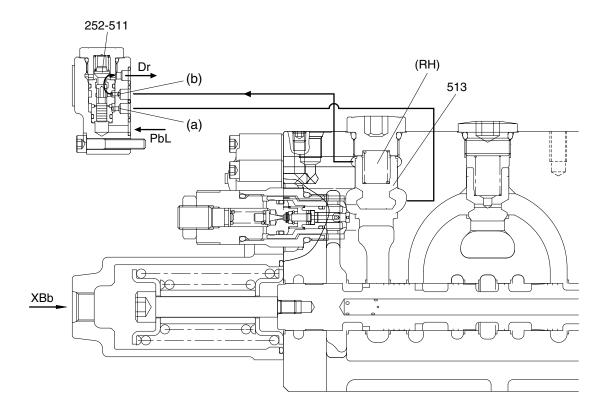
In this position, the pressurized oil from the boom cylinder head side enters through the hole (a), the periphery of the spool (252-511) in the lock valve and the hole (b), and it pushes the poppet (513) to the casing seat, and the leakage is decreased.



21092MC35

(2) Boom down operation

During the boom down operation, the pilot pressure enters through Port PbL and XBb1. The pilot pressure transfers the spool (252-511) in the lock valve assy in the top direction. By the transfer of the spool (252-511), firstly the hole (a) is blocked and the pressurized oil from the boom cylinder head side does not enter to the spring chamber (RH). Secondly, the oil in the spring chamber (RH) enters through the hole (b) and flows to drain circuit. Therefore, the poppet (513) is lifted by the pressure of the boom cylinder head side and the function of the lock valve (252) is released.



21092MC36

(3) Boom up operation

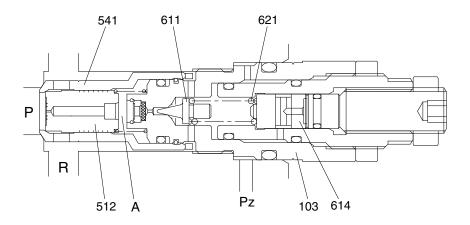
During the boom up operation, the pilot pressure enters through Port XAb1. The oil flowing from the boom 1 spool pushes open the poppet (513) and flows to Port Ab.

5) CIRCUIT PRESSURE PROTECTION

The control valve has two kinds of relief valve to limit the pressure in a circuit.

(1) Main relief valve

The main relief valve is fitted in the casing A and functions as follows.



21092MC25

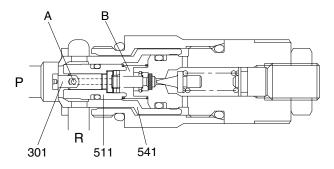
- ① The hydraulic oil is filled up in the inside space chamber (A) from the path (P) through a hole of the seat (541) and a restriction of the plunger (512), and seats the plunger (512) against the seat (541) securely.
- ② When the pressure in the path (P) becomes equal to the set load of the spring (621), the poppet (611) opens to make the hydraulic oil flow through a hole of the plug (103), around the poppet (611) and into the low pressure path (R).
- ③ Opening of the poppet (611) causes the pressure in the chamber (A) to fall and the plunger (512) to open. As the result the pressurized oil in the path (P) runs into the low pressure path (R) directly.
- ④ When the pressurized oil higher than pressure 30 kgf/cm² enters through the port Pz, it pushes the piston (614) to change the relief set pressure of the spring (621) to the high pressure.

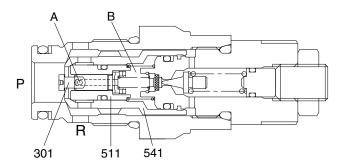
(2) Port relief valve

The port relief valve is fitted between the cylinder port and low-pressure path. In addition to the relief valve, this serves also as an anti-cavitation check valve, and functions as follows:

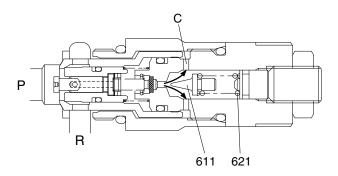
① Function as relief valve

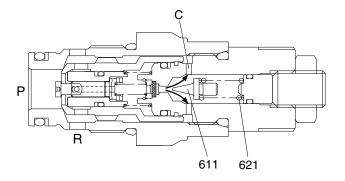
a. The pressurized oil passes through Hole A of the piston (301), is filled up in Chamber B of the inside space, and seat the plunger (511) against the seat (541) securely.



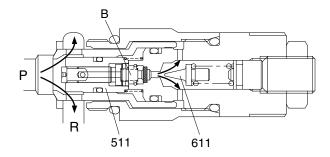


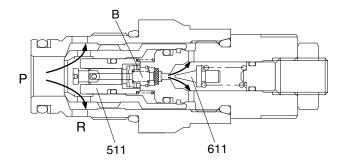
b. When the pressure in the path (P) becomes equal to the set pressure of the spring (621 or 622), the pressurized oil pushes open the poppet (611), flows around it, and flows to the low pressure path (R) through hole C.





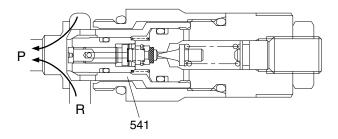
c. Opening of the poppet (611) causes the pressure in Chamber B to fall and the plunger (511) to open. As the result the pressurized oil in the path (P) runs into the low pressure path (R) directly.

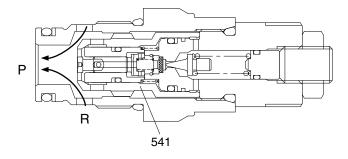




② Function as Anti-Cavitation Check Valve

When any negative pressure exists in the path (P), the oil is supplied through the path (R). When the pressure at (R) becomes higher than that in the path (P), the seat (541) moves in the right direction. Then, sufficient oil passes around the seat (541) from the path (R) to the path (P) and prevents cavitation.

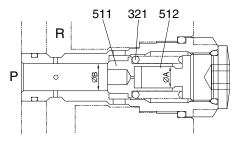




(3) Negative control relief valve

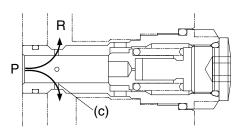
The negative control relief valve is fitted between the downstream of the center bypass path and low-pressure path, and functions as follows.

① When the pressure in the path (P) falls below the set level of the spring (321), the poppet (511) is in the condition shown in the figure. The pressure acting area of the poppet (511) is reduced to (ϕ B - ϕ A), as the area ϕ B is cancelled by the area ϕ A of the damping rod (512).



32092MC07

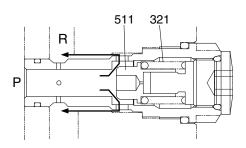
② In this condition, the pressurized oil in the path (P) runs out to the path (R) through the orifice (c).



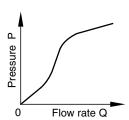
32092MC08A

③ When the pressure in the path (P) goes over the set P pressure of the spring (321), the poppet (511) opens. Then, the pressurized oil in the path (P) passes around the outside of the poppet (511) and flows to the low-pressure path (R).

The relation between the flow rate Q and pressure P of the hydraulic oil that flows from the path (P) to the low-pressure path (R) is as shown in the diagram.



32092MC09A



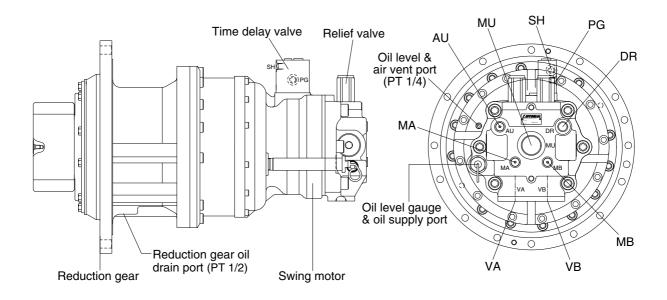
32092MC10

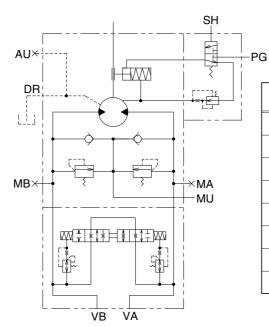
GROUP 3 SWING DEVICE

1. STRUCTURE

Swing device consists swing motor, swing reduction gear.

Swing motor include mechanical parking valve, relief valve, make up valve and time delay valve.



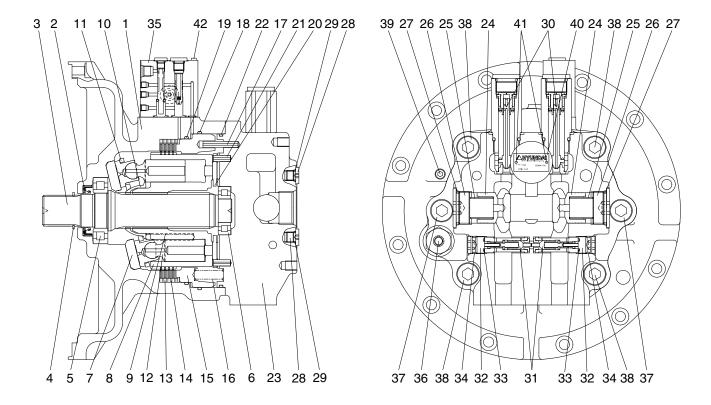


Hydraulic circuit

Port	Port name	Port size
VA	Main port	ø 20
VB	Main port	ø 20
DR	Drain port	PF 1/2
MU	Make up port	PF 1 1/4
PG	Brake release stand by port	PF 1/4
SH	Brake release port	PF 1/4
MA, MB	Gauge port	PF 1/4
AU	Air vent port	PF 1/4

300L2SM01

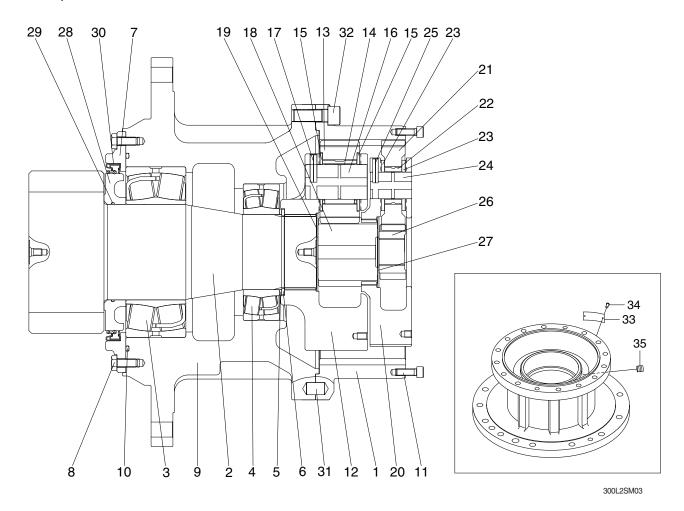
1) SWING MOTOR



300L2SM02

1	Casing	15	Parking piston	29	O-ring
2	Oil seal	16	Brake spring	30	Relief valve assy
3	Shaft	17	Spring pin	31	Reactionless valve assy
4	Snap ring	18	O-ring	32	Plug
5	Roller bearing	19	O-ring	33	O-ring
6	Needle bearing	20	Valve plate	34	O-ring
7	Swash plate	21	Spring pin	35	Time delay valve assy
8	Cylinder block	22	O-ring	36	Level gauge
9	Spring	23	Valve casing	37	Socket bolt
10	Ball guide	24	Check valve	38	Socket bolt
11	Retainer plate	25	Spring	39	Plug
12	Piston assy	26	Plug	40	Name plate
13	Friction plate	27	O-ring	41	Rivet
14	Separate plate	28	Plug	42	Socket bolt

2) REDUCTION GEAR



- 1 Ring gear2 Drive shaft
- 3 Bearing
- 4 Bearing
- 5 Thrust plate
- 6 Snap ring
- 7 Cover
- 8 Hex head bolt
- 9 Casing
- 10 O-ring
- 11 Hex socket head bolt
- 12 Carrier 2

- 13 Planetary gear 2
- 14 Needle bearing 2
- 15 Thrust washer 2
- 16 Carrier pin 2
- 17 Spring pin 2
- 18 Sun gear 2
- 19 Thrust plate 2
- 20 Carrier 1
- 21 Planetary gear 1
- 22 Needle bearing 1
- 23 Thrust washer 1
- 24 Carrier pin 1

- 25 Spring pin 1
- 26 Sun gear 1
- 27 Thrust plate 1
- 28 Sleeve
- 29 O-ring
- 30 Oil seal
- 31 Parallel pin
- 32 Hex socket head bolt
- 33 Name plate
- 34 Rivet
- 35 Plug

2. PRINCIPLE OF DRIVING

2.1 Generating the turning force

The high hydraulic supplied from a hydraulic pump flows into a cylinder block (8) through valve casing of motor (1), and valve plate (20).

The high hydraulic is built as flowing on one side of Y-Y line connected by the upper and lower sides of piston (12).

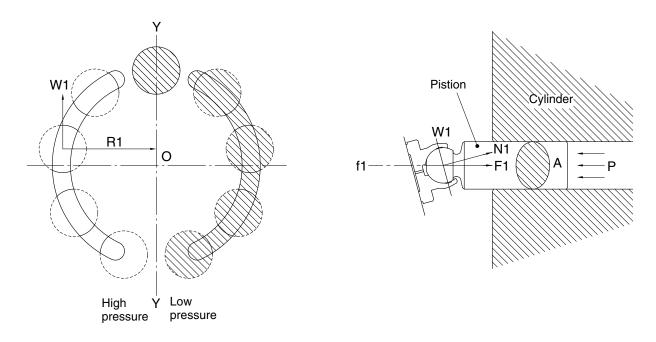
The high hydraulic can generate the force, $F1=P\times A$ (P: supplied pressure, A: water pressure area), like following pictures, working on a piston.

This force, F1, is divided as N1 thrust partial pressure and W1 radial partial pressure, in case of the plate of a tilt angle, α .

W1 generates torque, $T=W1 \times R1$, for Y-Y line connected by the upper and lower sides of the piston as following pictures.

The sum of torque (Σ W1×R1), generated from each piston (4~5 pieces) on the side of a high hydraulic, generates the turning force.

This torque transfers the turning force to a cylinder (8) through a piston; because a cylinder is combined with a turning axis and spline, a turning axis rotates and a turning force is sent.



21078TM05

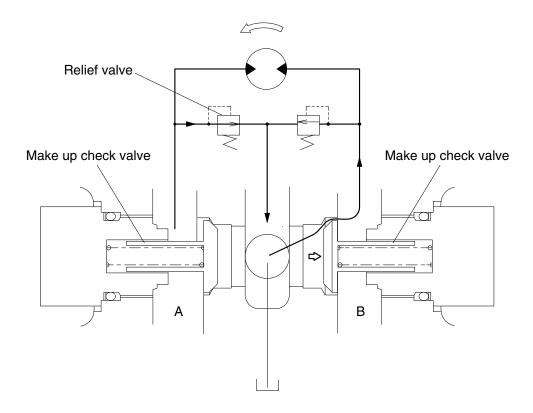
2) MAKE UP VALVE

In the system using this type of motor, there is no counter balance functioning valve and there happens the case of revolution exceeding hydraulic supply of motor. To prevent the cavitation caused by insufficient oil flow there is a make up valve to fill up the oil insufficiency.

A make up valve is provided immediately before the port leading to the hydraulic oil tank to secure feed pressure required when the hydraulic motor makes a pumping action. The boost pressure acts on the hydraulic motor's feed port via the make up valve.

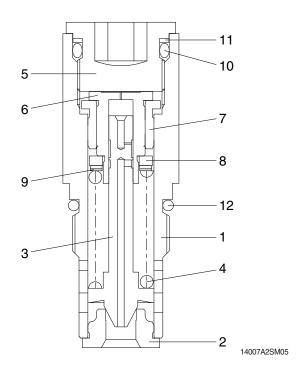
Pressurized oil into the port B, the motor rotate counterclockwise.

If the plunger of MCV moves neutral position, the oil in the motor is drain via left relief valve, the drain oil run into motor via right make up valve, which prevent the cavitation of motor.



21092SM04

3) RELIEF VALVE



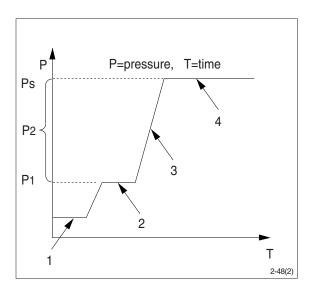
- 1 Body
- 2 Seat
- 3 Plunger
- 4 Spring
- 5 Adjusting screw
- 6 Piston
- 7 Bushing
- 8 Spring seat
- 9 Shim
- 10 O-ring
- 11 Back up ring
- 12 O-ring

(1) Construction of relief valve

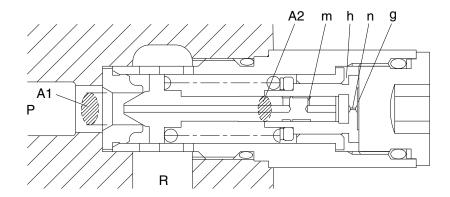
The valve casing contains two cartridge type relief valves that stop the regular and reverse rotations of the hydraulic motor. The relief valves relieve high pressure at start or at stop of swing motion and can control the relief pressure in two steps, high and low, in order to insure smooth operation.

(2) Function of relief valve

Figure illustrates how the pressure acting on the relief valve is related to its rising process. Here is given the function, referring to the figure following page.



① Ports (P,R) at tank pressure.

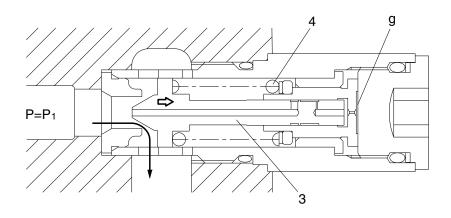


14007A2SM06

 \odot When hydraulic oil pressure (P \times A1) reaches the preset force (FSP) of spring (4), the plunger (3) moves to the right as shown.

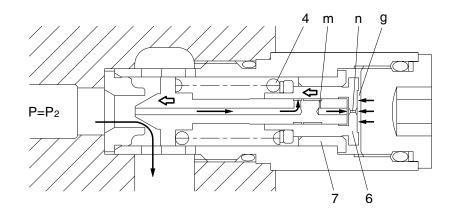
$$P1 \times A1=Fsp+Pg \times A2$$

$$P1 = \frac{Fsp + Pg \times A2}{A1}$$



14007A2SM07

③ The oil flow chamber g via orifice m and n. When the pressure of chamber g reaches the preset force (FSP) of spring (4), the piston (6) moves left and stop the piston (6) hits the bottom of bushing (7).

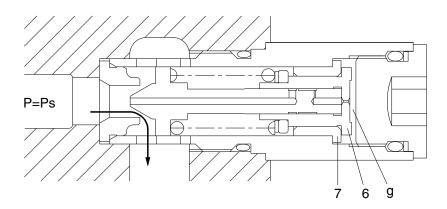


14007A2SM08

④ When piston (6) hits the bottom of bushing (7), it stops moving to the left any further. As the result, the pressure in chamber (g) equals (Ps).

$$Ps \times A1=Fsp+Ps \times A2$$

$$Ps = \frac{Fsp}{A_1-A_2}$$

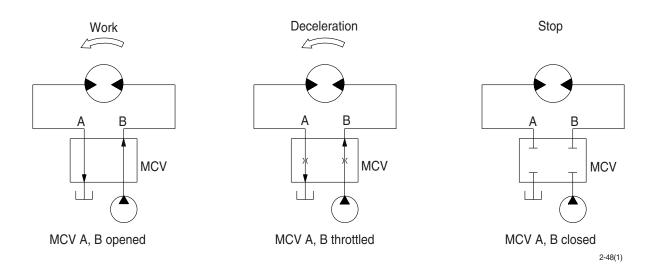


14007A2SM09

4) BRAKE SYSTEM

(1) Control valve swing brake system

This is the brake system to stop the swing motion of the excavator during operation. In this system, the hydraulic circuit is throttled by the swing control valve, and the resistance created by this throttling works as a brake force to slow down the swing motion.



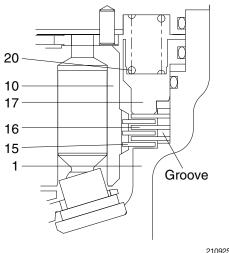
(2) Mechanical swing parking brake system

This is function as a parking brake only when all of the RCV lever (except travel pedal) are not operated.

① Brake assembly

Circumferential rotation of separate plate (16) is constrained by the groove located at housing (1). When housing is pressed down by brake spring (20) through friction plate (15), separate plate (16) and brake piston (17), friction force occurs there.

Cylinder block (10) is constrained by this friction force and brake acts, while brake releases when hydraulic force exceeds spring force.



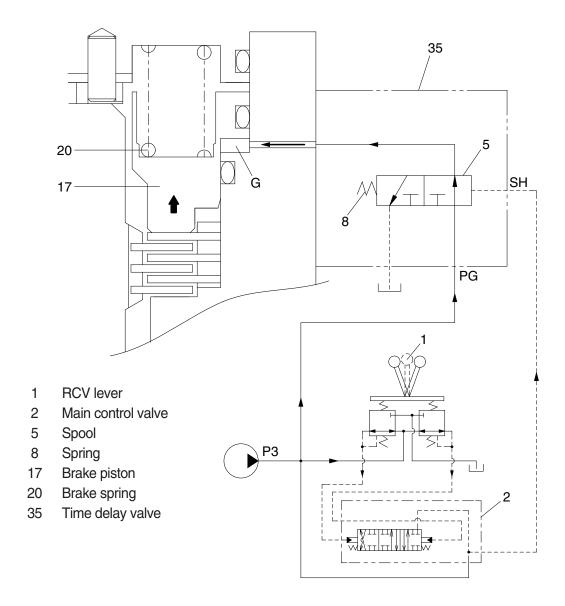
21092SM15

Housing
 Separate plate
 Cylinder block
 Brake piston
 Friction plate
 Spring

② Operating principle

a. When one of the RCV lever (1) is set to the operation position, the each spool is shifted to left or right and the pilot oil flow is blocked. Then the pilot oil go to SH of the time delay valve (35). This pressure moves spool (5) to the leftward against the force of the spring(8), so pilot pump charged oil (P3) goes to the chamber G through port PG.

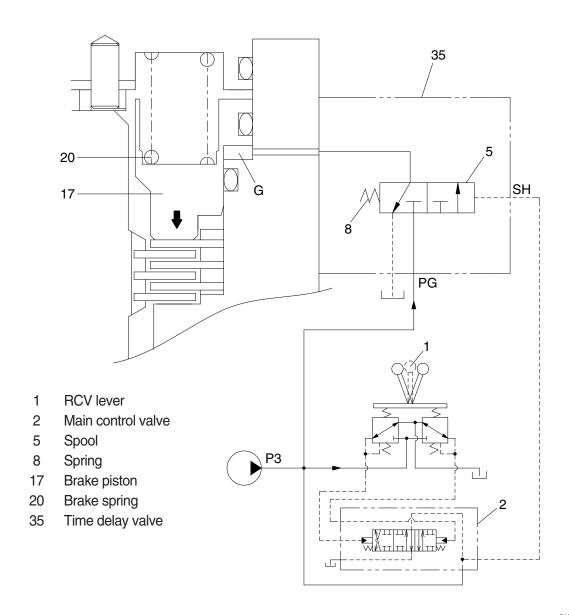
This pressure is applied to move the piston (17) to the upward against the force of the spring (20). Thus, it releases the brake force.



21092SM16

b. When all of the RCV lever (1) are set the neutral position, the spool (5) returns to right.Then, the brake piston (17) is moved lower by spring force and the return oil from the chamber G flows back to tank port.

At this time, the brake works.



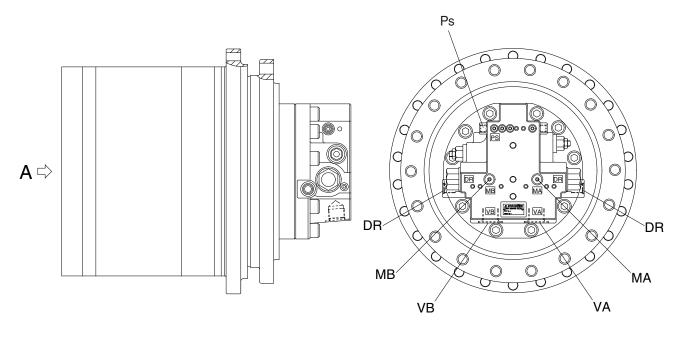
21092SM17

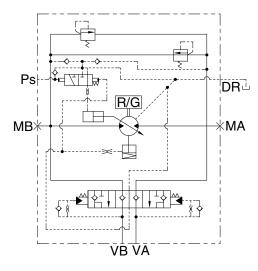
GROUP 4 TRAVEL DEVICE

1. CONSTRUCTION

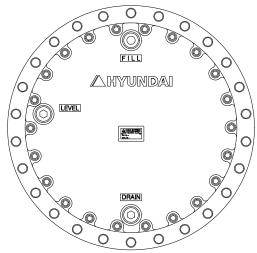
Travel device consists travel motor and gear box.

Travel motor includes brake valve, parking brake and high/low speed changeover mechanism.









<u>VIEW A</u>

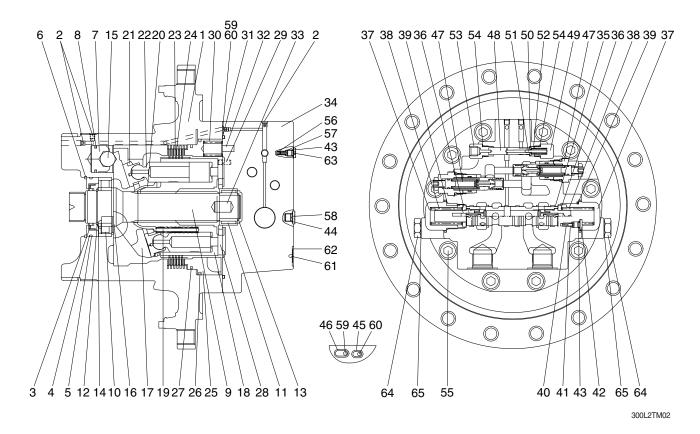
300L2TM01

Port	Port name	Port size
VA, VB	Valve port	PF 1
Ps	Pilot port	PF 1/4
DR	Drain port	PF 1/2
MA, MB	Gauge port	PF 1/4

2. SPECIFICATION

1) TRAVEL MOTOR

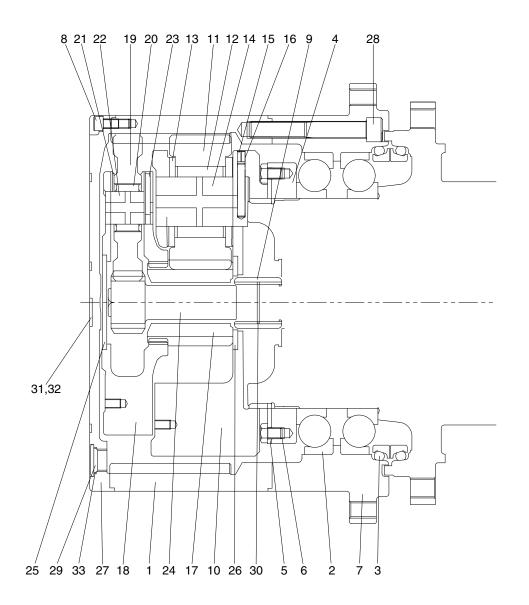
22 Piston assy



1	Casing	23	Friction plate	45	O-ring
2	Plug	24	Separated plate	46	O-ring
3	Oil seal	25	Parking piston	47	Relief valve
4	Thrust block	26	D-ring	48	Spool
5	O-ring	27	D-ring	49	Plug
6	Snap ring	28	Valve plate	50	Spring seat
7	Piston	29	Parallel pin	51	Parallel pin
8	Piston seal	30	Spring	52	Spring
9	Shaft	31	O-ring	53	Connector
10	Cylinder roller bearing	32	Spring pin	54	O-ring
11	Needle bearing	33	Parallel pin	55	Hexagon socket head bolt
12	Snap ring	34	Rear cover	56	Check valve
13	Snap ring	35	Main spool assy	57	Spring
14	Thrust plate	36	Spring seat	58	Plug
15	Steel ball	37	Plug	59	Restrictor
16	Pivot	38	Spring	60	Restrictor
17	Swash plate	39	O-ring	61	Name plate
18	Cylinder block	40	Restrictor	62	Rivet
19	Spring	41	Spring	63	Plug
20	Ball guide	42	Plug	64	Plug
21	Retainer plate	43	O-ring	65	O-ring

44 O-ring

2) TRAVEL REDUCTION GEAR



300L2TM03

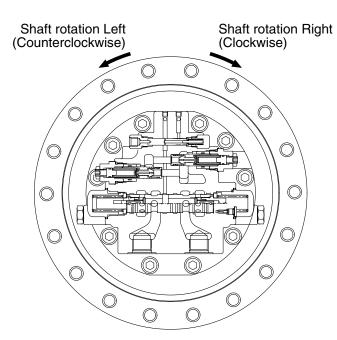
1	Gear ring	12	Needle bearing 2	23	Spring pin 1
2	Ball bearing	13	Thrust washer 2	24	Sun gear 1
3	Floating seal assy	14	Carrier pin 2	25	Thrust plate
4	Nut ring	15	Spring pin 2	26	Thrust plate
5	Lock plate	16	Solid pin 2	27	Cover
6	Hexagon socket head bolt	17	Sun gear 2	28	Hexagon socket head bolt
7	Housing	18	Carrier 1	29	Plug
8	Hexagon socket head bolt	19	Planetary gear 1	30	Snap ring
9	Coupling	20	Needle bearing 1	31	Name plate
10	Carrier 2	21	Thrust washer 1	32	Rivet
11	Planetary gear 2	22	Carrier pin 1	33	O-ring

3. OPERATION

1) MOTOR

High pressure oil delivered form hydraulic pump is led to inlet port that is provided in the brake valve portion and, through the rear cover (34) and valve plate (28), led to cylinder block (18).

The oil flow and direction of shaft rotation are indicated in table.



Inlet port	Outlet port	Direction of shaft rotation (viewing from rear cover)
VB	VA	Right (clockwise)
VA	VB	Left (counterclock wise)

300L2TM04

As shown in below figure, high pressure oil is supplied to the pistons which are on one side of the line Y-Y that connects upper and lower dead points and produces force F1.

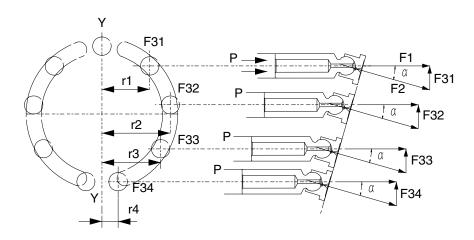
 $F1 = P \times A$ (P : pressure, A : area of piston section)

The swash plate (17) with inclined angle of α divides this force F1 into thrust force F2 and radial force F31-34.

This radial force is applied to axis Y-Y as turning force and generate drive torque of T.

$$T = r_1 \cdot F31 + r_2 \cdot F32 + r_3 \cdot F33 + r_4 \cdot F34$$

This drive torque is transmitted via cylinder block (18) to driving shaft (9).



29092TM07

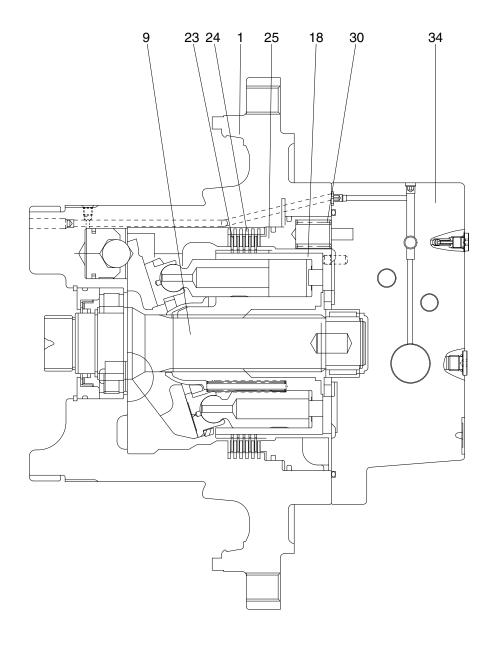
2) PARKING BRAKE

Parking brake is released when high pressure oil selected by the brake valve portion that is connected directly to the rear cover (34), is applied to the parking piston (25).

Otherwise the braking torque is always applied.

This braking torque is generated by the friction between the separated plates (24), inserted into the casing (1), and friction plates (23), coupled to cylinder block (18) by the outer splines.

When no pressure is activated on the parking piston (25), it is pushed by the brake springs (30) and it pushes friction plates (23) and separated plates (24) towards casing (1) and generates the friction force which brakes the rotation of cylinder block (18) and hence the shaft (9).



2609A2TM05

3) CAPACITY CONTROL MECHANISM

Figure typically shows the capacity control mechanism.

When high speed pilot line is charged with the pressure P_A that overcome the spring (52), the spring (52) is compressed and spool (48) shifts to the right to connect the port P and port C.

Then, the highest pressure is selected by the check valve (56) from inlet and outlet pressure of the motor and high speed pilot line pressure and pushes shifter piston (7). As a result, swash plate (17) turns around the line L which connect the two pivots (16) as shown by dotted lines. The turn stops at the stopper (1-1) of casing and swash plate (17) keeps the position.

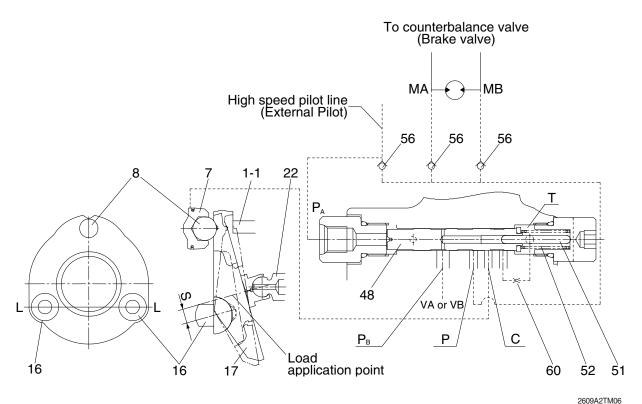
In this case, the piston stroke become shorter and motor capacity become smaller and motor rotates faster, around 1.60 times, by the same volume of oil.

When no pressure is in the high speed pilot line P_A , spool (35) is pushed back by the spring (52) and pressure that pressed the shifter piston (7) is released to the hydraulic tank through restrictor (60).

Here, nine pistons are there and they equally spaced on the swash plate (17). The force that summed up those of pistons comes to almost the center of the swash plate (17) as shown. Since the pivots (16) are off-set by S from the center, the rotating force of product S and the force moves swash plate (17) to the former position and the speed returns to low.

When the power demand exceeds the engine power, such as in steep slope climbing or turning at high speed mode, the system step down to the low speed automatically. The mechanism is that: pump pressure is led to the port $P_{\rm B}$ and this pressure activate on pin (51). When the pressure at $P_{\rm B}$ exceeds predetermined value, spool (48) returns to the left by the counter-pressure against pin (51) and the pressure on the shifter piston (7) through port C is released to the tank and the motor comes to low speed.

When P_B goes down, the spool (48) moves to the right and the speed become high.

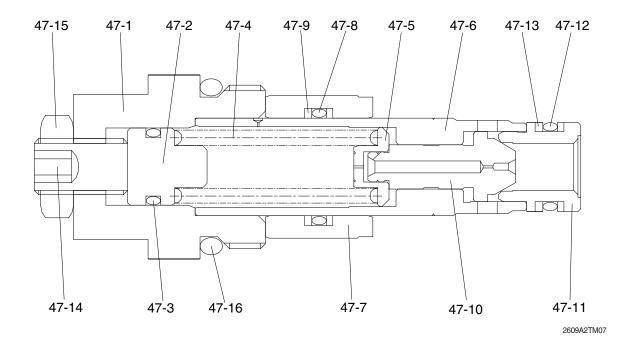


2009A211VIUC

4) OVERLOAD RELIEF VALVE

(1) Structure

This valve is screwed in the motor rear cover (34) and consists of : plug (47-1) that is screwed and fixed in the rear cover (34), poppet (47-10) and supports the poppet seat (47-11), spring (47-4) that is operating relief valve setting pressure and supports the spring seat (47-5), that is inserted in the sleeve (47-6), screw (47-14) that is adjust the spring force, nut (47-15) that fix screw (47-14), piston (47-7) that reduce the shock.



47-1 Plug	47-7 Piston	47-12 O-ring
47-2 Guide	47-8 O-ring	47-13 Back-up ring
47-3 O-ring	47-9 Back-up ring	47-14 Socket screw
47-4 Spring	47-10 Poppet	47-15 Hexagon nut
47-5 Spring seat	47-11 Poppet seat	47-16 O-ring
47-6 Sleeve		

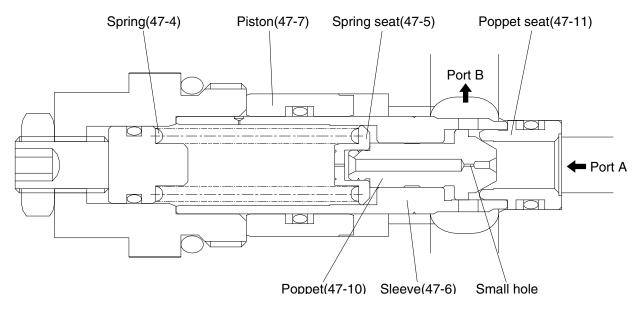
(2) Operation

Two pieces of overload valves are located at cross-over position in the counterbalance circuit of brake valve and have the following functions:

- ① When hydraulic motor starts, keep the driving pressure below predetermined value and while accelerating, bypasses surplus oil to return line.
- ② When stopping the motor, keep the brake pressure, that develops on the outlet side of motor, under the predetermined value to stop the inertial force.
- ③ To accelerate sharply while starting, and to mitigate the braking shock while stopping. For these purposes, the developed pressure is kept comparatively low for a short period, then keep the line pressure as normal value. While the pressure is low, meshing of reduction gears, crawler and sprocket etc. can be smoothly done and the shock are absorbed.

When starting, "A" port pressure of overload valve increases, this pressure is applied to the effective diameter of poppet (47-10) which seats on the poppet seat (47-11) and, at the same time, is delivered, via small hole, to the spring seat (47-5) located inside the sleeve (47-6) and the seat bore pressure increases up to "A" port pressure. The poppet (47-10) opposes to spring (47-4) by the force of the pressure exerted on the area difference between poppet seat's effective diameter and spring seat bore and keep the predetermined pressure.

When hydraulically braking, the piston (47-7) is at the left position by the driving pressure, and when "A" port pressure increases, the pressure is applied also to the piston (47-7) through the small hole in the poppet (47-10) and piston (47-7) moves rightward until it touches the stopper in rear cover. In this while, the poppet (47-10) maintains "A" port pressure at comparatively low against the spring (47-4) force and exhaust oil to "B" port side. After the piston reached to the plug, the valve acts the same as at starting.



2609A2TM08

5) BRAKE VALVE

(1) Structure

The brake valve portion mainly consists of the following parts:

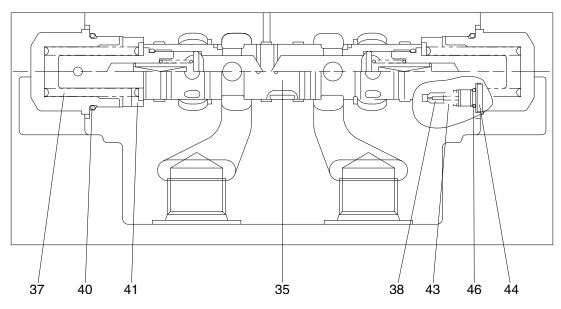
① Spool

By shifting the spool (35), the discharged oil from hydraulic motor is automatically shut off or restricted according to the condition and give the effect of holding, accelerating, stopping and counterbalance operations.

(See page 2-74, (2) Operation)

② Check valve (built in the spool)

This valve is located in the oil supplying passage to hydraulic motor, and at the same time functions to lock oil displacement. Therefore, this valve serves as not only a suction valve but also a holding valve for hydraulic motor.



2609A2TM09

35 Main spool37 Spring

38 Restrictor

40 O-ring

41

Spring seat 46

O-ring

Plug

43 Restrictor spring

(2) Operation

① Holding operation

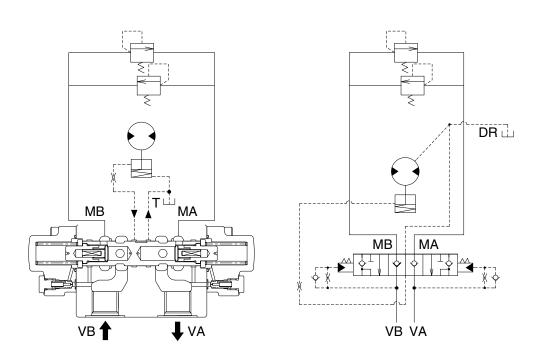
When the control valve is at neutral position, VA and VB ports are connected to the tank, and the spring (38) located on both spool ends holds the spool (35) at central position.

Therefore, the passages from VA to MA and VB to MB are closed, which result in closing MA and MB ports connected to hydraulic motor.

Since the passage to parking brake is connected to the tank line, the brake cylinder pressure is equal to the tank pressure and the brake is applied by the springs. Thus, the rotation of the motor is mechanically prevented.

If external torque is exerted on the motor shaft, the motor would not rotate as usual by this negative parking brake.

In case the brake should be released for some reason, pressure is built on MA or MB port. But, due to oil leakage inside hydraulic motor or so, high-pressure oil escapes from the closed circuit and motor rotates a bit. So, the cavitation tends to occur in the lower pressure side of the closed circuit. Then, the check valve, built in the spool (35), operates to avoid the cavitation and opens the passage from VA to MA or from VB to MB. Then the oil equivalent to the leakage is sucked from the tank line to the closed circuit.

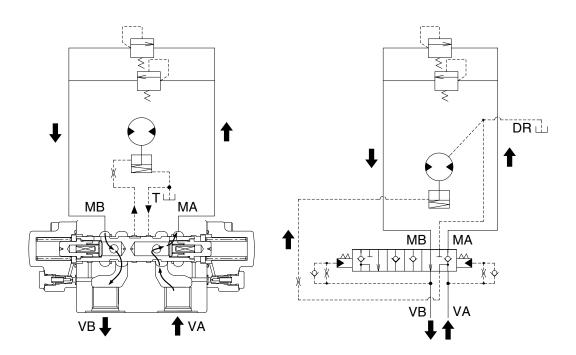


② Accelerating operation

When VA and VB ports are connected respectively to pump and tank by operating the control valve, hydraulic oil from pump is forwarded through VA port to push open the check valve provided inside spool (35), and oil flows to motor via MA port to rotate the motor.

Therefore, the pressure increases and negative brake is released by the pressure supplied from pump. At the same time, the pressure of pilot chamber increases to push and move the spool (35) leftwards, overcoming the spring (38) force. Thus, the return line from MB to VB opens to rotate the motor.

In case inertia load is too big to start rotation, accelerating pressure reaches the set pressure of relief valve and high pressure oil is being relieved while the motor gains the rotational speed. As the rotational speed goes up, the relieved volume decreases, and finally the motor rotates at a fixed speed.

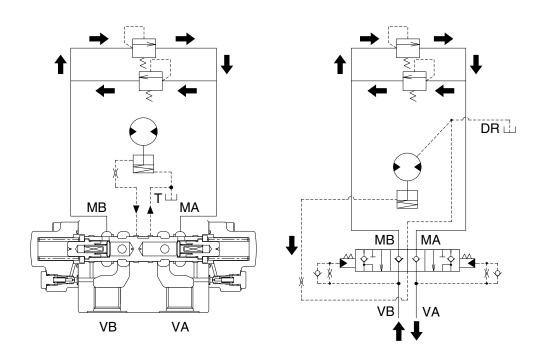


3 Stopping operation

Returning the control valve to neutral position while running the motor, the oil supply is cut off and VA and VB ports are connected to the tank line. Then the pressure of the pilot chamber located on both spool ends become equal, and the spool (35) returns to the neutral position by spring (38) force. Thus, the passage from MA to VA is closed.

Owing to the inertia force of the load, the hydraulic motor tends to continue the rotation. Here, the motor functions as a pump and forwards the oil to MB port but the passage is blocked and MB port pressure increases. Then the relief valve opens to relieve the pressure and rotational speed decelerates and at last the motor stops.

Negative brake release pressure is gradually lowered due to the restrictor and finally the brake works and the motor is mechanically stopped.



④ Counterbalance operation

Counterbalance operation is required to decelerate slowly the hydraulic motor while absorbing inertia force.

In case the hydraulic oil is gradually decreased from pump to VB port, the drive shaft of hydraulic motor tends to rotate faster than that matched to the volume of oil supply.

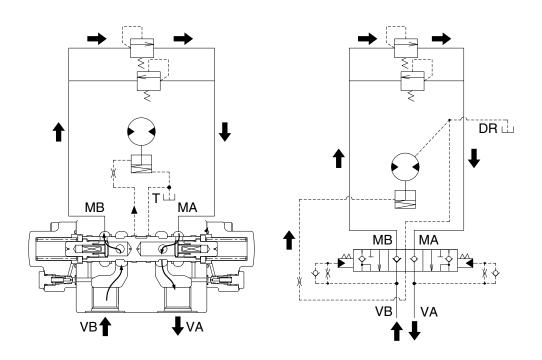
Consequently, the pilot chamber pressure on MB to VB side decreases and the spring (38) force moves the spool (35) leftwards towards neutral position.

Therefore, the area of passage from MA to VA becomes smaller and the pressure on MA side rises due to increased resistance in the passage and the motor receives hydraulic braking effect.

If the motor rotates slower than that matched to the volume of supplied oil, the pilot chamber pressure on VB port increases, and spool (35) moves rightwards to enlarge the area of passage from MA to VA. Therefore the braking effect becomes smaller and the rotational speed of motor is controlled to correspond to the volume of supplied oil.

In order to give stable counterbalance operation, the restrictors (40) are set in the pilot chamber to damp the spool (35) movement.

The parking brake is released during pressure adjusting action of the spool (35).



6) REDUCTION GEAR

Reduction unit slows down the rotating speed of motor and converts motor torque to strong rotating force

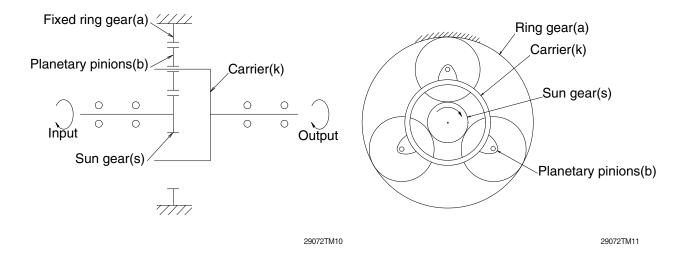
This reduction unit utilizes two stages, planetary reduction system.

Planetary reduction system consists of sun gear, planetary gears, (planetary) carriers, and ring gear.

When the sun gear (s) is driven through input shaft, planetary pinions (b), rotating on their center, also move, meshing with fixed ring gear (a), around sun gear (s).

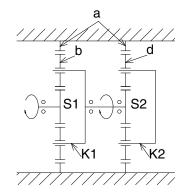
This movement is transferred to carrier (k) and deliver the torque.

This mechanism is called planetary gear mechanism.



When the sun gear S1 is driven by input shaft, planetary action occurs among gears S1, a and b and revolution of gear b transfers the rotation of carrier K1 to second sun gear S2, and also evokes planetary action between gear S2, a and d.

This time, because carrier **K2** is fixed to frame, gear **d** drives ring gear **a** and then ring gear **a** rotates to drive sprocket.



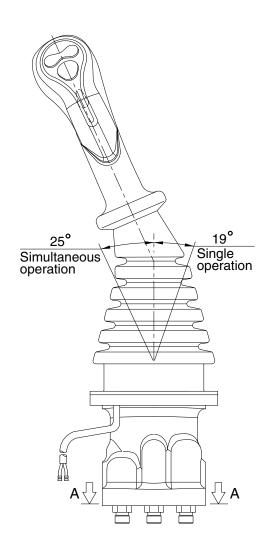
GROUP 5 RCV LEVER

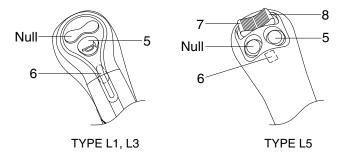
1. STRUCTURE

The casing has the oil inlet port P (primary pressure) and the oil outlet port T (tank). In addition the secondary pressure is taken out through ports 1, 2, 3 and 4 provided at the bottom face.

* Refer to the parts manual for the types of the RCV lever.

1) TYPE L1, L3, L5

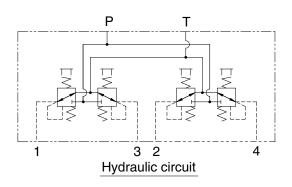


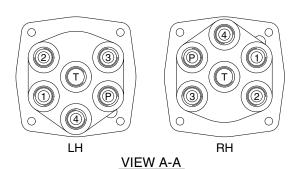


Switches

Туре	No.	LH	RH
L1, L3	5	One touch decel	Horn
	6	Power boost	Breaker
L5	5	One touch decel	Horn
	6	Power boost	Null
	7 CCW rotation		Close
	8	CW rotation	Open

* Number 7 and 8 : Option attachment



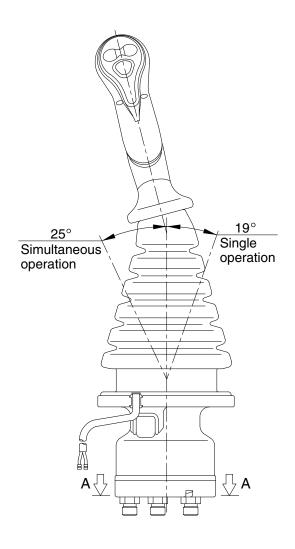


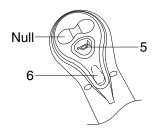
Pilot ports

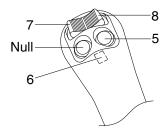
Port	LH	RH	Port size
Р	Pilot oil inlet port	Pilot oil inlet port	
Т	Pilot oil return port	Pilot oil return port	
1	Left swing port	Bucket out port	PF 3/8
2	Arm out port	Boom up port	FF 3/0
3	Right swing port	Bucket in port	
4	Arm in port	Boom down port	

300L2RL01

2) TYPE L2, L4, L6







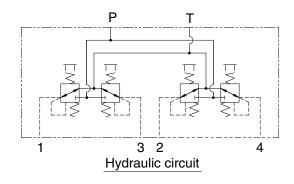
TYPE L2, L4

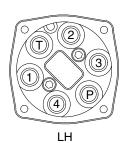
TYPE L6

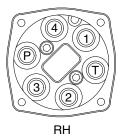
Switches

Туре	No.	LH	RH
L2, L4	5	One touch decel	Horn
	6	Power boost	Breaker
L6	5	One touch decel	Horn
	6	Power boost	Null
	7	CCW rotation	Close
	8	CW rotation	Open

* Number 7 and 8 : Option attachment







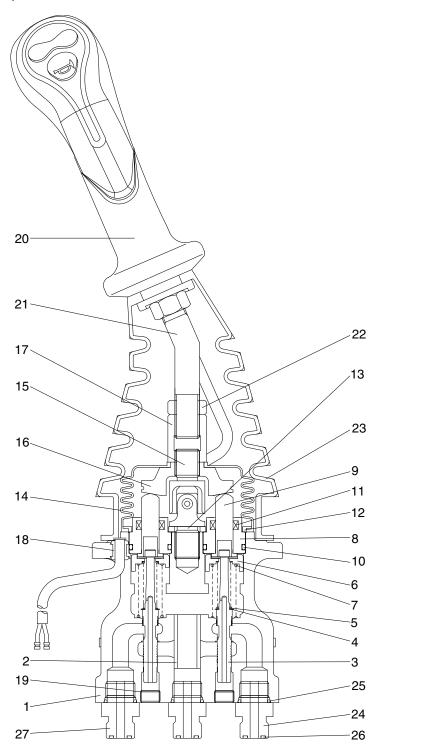
VIEW A-A

Pilot ports

Port	LH	RH	Port size
Р	Pilot oil inlet port	Pilot oil inlet port	
Т	Pilot oil return port	Pilot oil return port	
1	Left swing port	Bucket out port	PF 3/8
2	Arm out port	Boom up port	FF 3/0
3	Right swing port	Bucket in port	
4	Arm in port	Boom down port	

300L2RL05

3) CROSS SECTION



- 1 Case
- 2 Bushing
- 3 Spool
- 4 Shim
- 5 Spring
- 6 Spring seat
- 7 Spring
- 8 Plug
- 9 Push rod
- 10 O-ring
- 11 Rod seal
- 12 Plate
- 13 Spacer
- 14 Boot
- 15 Joint assembly
- 16 Swash plate
- 17 Adjusting nut
- 18 Bushing
- 19 Plug
- 20 Handle assembly
- 21 Handle bar
- 22 Nut
- 23 Boot
- 24 Last guard filter
- 25 O-ring
- 26 O-ring
- 27 Connector

300L2RL06

Item numbers are based on the type L1.

The construction of the pilot valve is shown in the attached cross section drawing. The casing has vertical holes in which reducing valves are assembled.

The pressure reducing section is composed of the spool (3), spring (5) for setting secondary pressure, return spring (7), spring seat (6) and shim (4). The spring for setting the secondary pressure has been generally so preset that the secondary pressure is 5 to 20.5 kgf/cm² (depending on the type). The spool is pushed against the push rod (9) by the return spring.

When the push rod is pushed down by tilting the handle, the spring seat comes down simultaneously and changes setting of the secondary pressure spring.

2. FUNCTIONS

1) FUNDAMENTAL FUNCTIONS

The pilot valve is a valve that controls the spool stroke, direction, etc of a main control valve. This function is carried out by providing the spring at one end of the main control valve spool and applying the output pressure (secondary pressure) of the pilot valve to the other end.

For this function to be carried out satisfactorily, the pilot valve is composed of the following elements.

- (1) Inlet port (P) where oil is supplied from hydraulic pump.
- (2) Output ports (1, 2, 3 & 4) to apply pressure supplied from inlet port to ends of control valve spools.
- (3) Tank port (T) necessary to control the above output pressure.
- (4) Spool to connect output port to inlet port or tank port.
- (5) Mechanical means to control output pressure, including springs that work on the above spools.

2) FUNCTIONS OF MAJOR SECTIONS

Item numbers are based on the type L1.

The functions of the spool (3) are to receive the supply oil pressure from the hydraulic pump at its port P, and to change over oil paths to determine whether the pressure oil of port P is led to output ports 1, 2, 3 & 4 or the output port pressure oil to tank port T.

The spring (5) works on this spool to determine the output pressure.

The change the deflection of this spring, the push rod (9) is inserted and can slide in the plug (8).

For the purpose of changing the displacement of the push rod through the swash plate (16) and adjusting nut (17) are provided the handle assy (20) that can be tilted in any direction around the fulcrum of the universal joint (15) center.

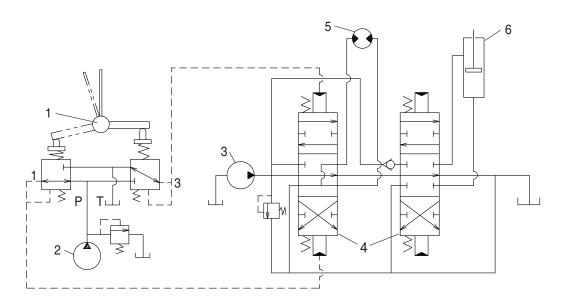
The spring (7) works on the case (1) and spring seat (6) and tries to return the push rod (9) to the zero-displacement position irrespective of the output pressure, securing its resetting to the center position.

This also has the effect of a reaction spring to give appropriate control feeling to the operator.

3) OPERATION

The operation of the pilot valve will be described on the basis of the hydraulic circuit diagram shown below and the attached operation explanation drawing.

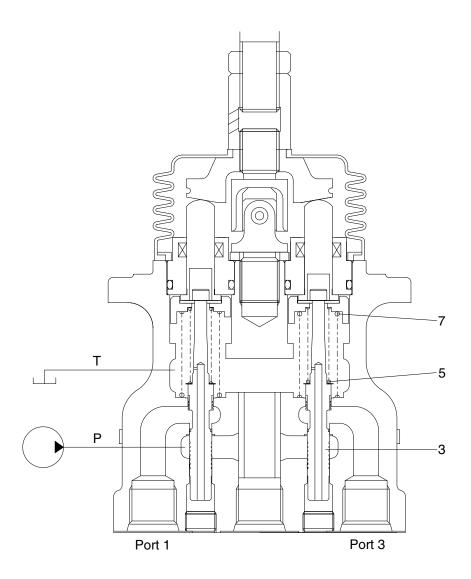
The diagram shown below is the typical application example of the pilot valve.



2-70

- 1 Pilot valve
- 2 Pilot pump
- 3 Main pump
- 4 Main control valve
- 5 Hydraulic motor
- 6 Hydraulic cylinder

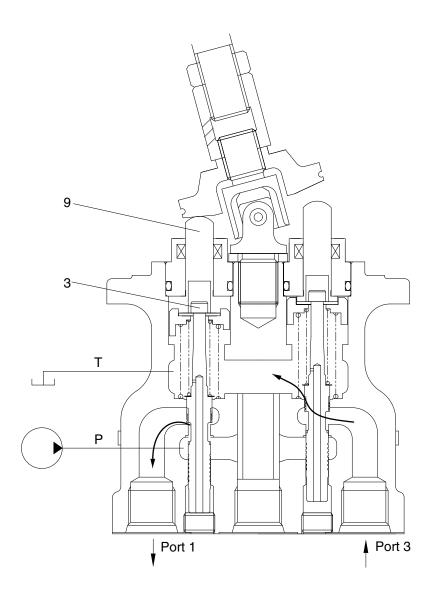
(1) Case where handle is in neutral position



300L2RL03

The force of the spring (5) that determines the output pressure of the pilot valve is not applied to the spool (3). Therefore, the spool is pushed up by the spring (7) to the position of port (1, 3) in the operation explanation drawing. Then, since the output port is connected to tank port T only, the output port pressure becomes equal to tank pressure.

(2) Case where handle is tilted



300L2RL04

When the push rod (9) is stroked, the spool (3) moves downwards.

Then port P is connected with port (1) and the oil supplied from the pilot pump flows through port (1) to generate the pressure.

When the pressure at port (1) increases to the value corresponding to the spring force set by tilting the handle, the hydraulic pressure force balances with the spring force. If the pressure at port (1) increases higher than the set pressure, port P is disconnected from port (1) and port T is connected with port (1). If it decreases lower than the set pressure, port P is connected with port (1) and port T is disconnected from port 1.

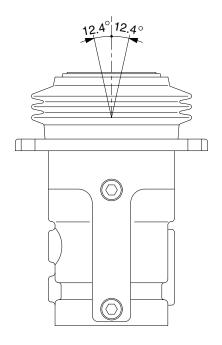
In this manner the secondary pressure is kept at the constant value.

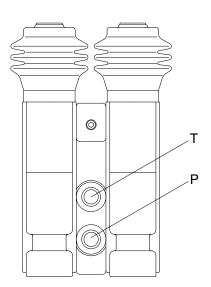
Besides, in some type, when the handle is tilted more than a certain angle, the upper end of the spool contacts with the inside bottom of the push rod and the output pressure is left to be connected with port P.

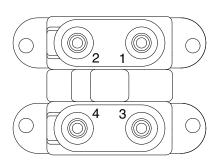
GROUP 6 RCV PEDAL

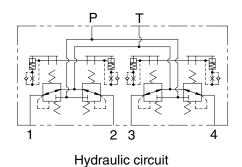
1. STRUCTURE

The casing (spacer) has the oil inlet port P (primary pressure), and the oil outlet port T (tank). In addition the secondary pressure is taken out through ports 1,2,3 and 4 provided at the bottom face.









Port size Port Port Ρ Pilot oil inlet port Τ Pilot oil return port Travel (LH, Forward) 1 PF 1/4 2 Travel (LH, Backward) 3 Travel (RH, Forward) 4 Travel (RH, Backward)

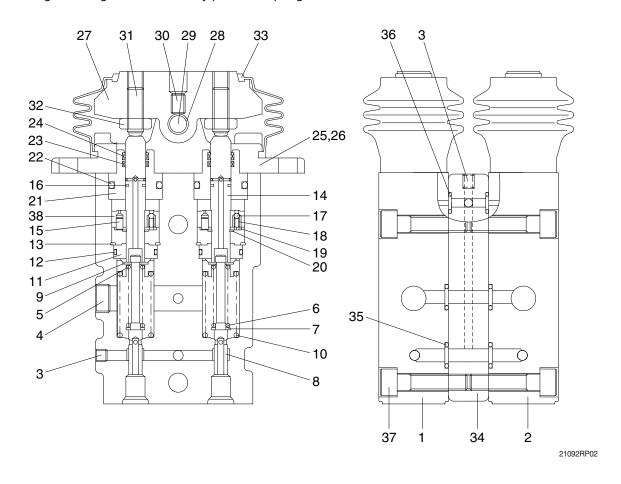
21092RP01

CROSS SECTION

The construction of the RCV pedal is shown in the below drawing. The casing has vertical holes in which reducing valves are assembled.

The pressure reducing section is composed of the spool (8), spring (6) for setting secondary pressure, return spring (10), stopper (9), and spring seat (7). The spring for setting the secondary pressure has been generally so preset that the secondary pressure is 5 to 19 kgf/cm² (depending on the type). The spool is pushed against the push rod (14) by the return spring.

When the push rod is pushed down by tilting pedal, the spring seat comes down simultaneously and changes setting of the secondary pressure spring.



Body(1)	14	Push rod	27	Cam
Body(2)	15	Spring pin	28	Bushing
Plug	16	Seal	29	Cam shaft
Plug	17	Steel ball	30	Set screw
Spring seat	18	Spring	31	Set screw
Spring	19	Plate	32	Nut
Spring seat	20	Snap ring	33	Bellows
Spool	21	Plug	34	Space
Stopper	22	O-ring	35	O-ring
Spring	23	Rod seal	36	O-ring
Rod guide	24	Dust seal	37	Socket bolt
O-ring	25	Cover	38	Piston
Snap ring	26	Socket bolt		
	Body(2) Plug Plug Spring seat Spring Spring seat Spool Stopper Spring Rod guide O-ring	Body(2) 15 Plug 16 Plug 17 Spring seat 18 Spring 19 Spring seat 20 Spool 21 Stopper 22 Spring 23 Rod guide 24 O-ring 25	Body(2) 15 Spring pin Plug 16 Seal Plug 17 Steel ball Spring seat 18 Spring Spring 19 Plate Spring seat 20 Snap ring Spool 21 Plug Stopper 22 O-ring Spring 23 Rod seal Rod guide 24 Dust seal O-ring 25 Cover	Body(2) 15 Spring pin 28 Plug 16 Seal 29 Plug 17 Steel ball 30 Spring seat 18 Spring 31 Spring 19 Plate 32 Spring seat 20 Snap ring 33 Spool 21 Plug 34 Stopper 22 O-ring 35 Spring 23 Rod seal 36 Rod guide 24 Dust seal 37 O-ring 25 Cover 38

2. FUNCTION

1) FUNDAMENTAL FUNCTIONS

The pilot valve is a valve controls the spool stroke, direction, etc of a main control valve. This function is carried out by providing the spring at one end of the main control valve spool and applying the output pressure (secondary pressure) of the pilot valve to the other end.

For this function to be carried out satisfactorily, the pilot valve is composed of the following elements.

- (1) Inlet port (P) where oil is supplied from hydraulic pump.
- (2) Output port (1, 2, 3 & 4) to apply pressure supplied from inlet port to ends of control valve spools.
- (3) Tank port (T) necessary to control the above output pressure.
- (4) Spool to connect output port to inlet port tank port.
- (5) Mechanical means to control output pressure, including springs that work on the above spools.

2) FUNCTIONS OF MAJOR SECTIONS

The functions of the spool (8) are to receive the supply oil pressure from the hydraulic pump at its port P, and to change over oil paths to determine whether the pressure oil of port P is led to output ports 1, 2, 3 & 4 or the output spool to determine the output pressure.

The spring (6) works on this spool to determine the output pressure.

The change the deflection of this spring, the push rod (14) is inserted and can slide in the plug (21). For the purpose of changing the displacement of the push rod through the cam (27) and adjusting nut (32) are provided the pedal that can be tilted in any direction around the fulcrum of the cam (27) center.

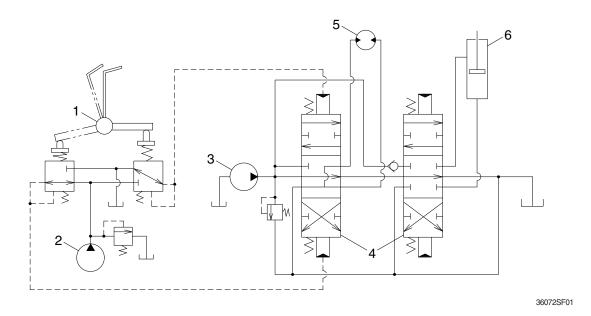
The spring (10) works on the casing (1) and spring seat (7) and tries to return the push rod (14) to the zero-displacement position irrespective of the output pressure, securing its resetting to the center position.

This also has the effect of a reaction spring to give appropriate control feeling to the operator.

3) OPERATION

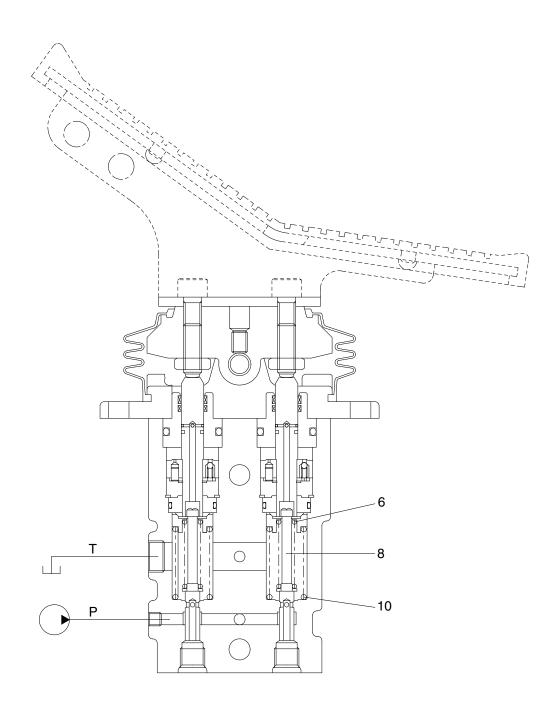
The operation of the pilot valve will be described on the basis of the hydraulic circuit diagram shown below ant the attached operation explanation drawing.

The diagram shown below is the typical application example of the pilot valve.



- 1 Pilot valve
- 2 Pilot pump
- 3 Main pump
- 4 Main control valve
- 5 Hydraulic motor
- 6 Hydraulic cylinder

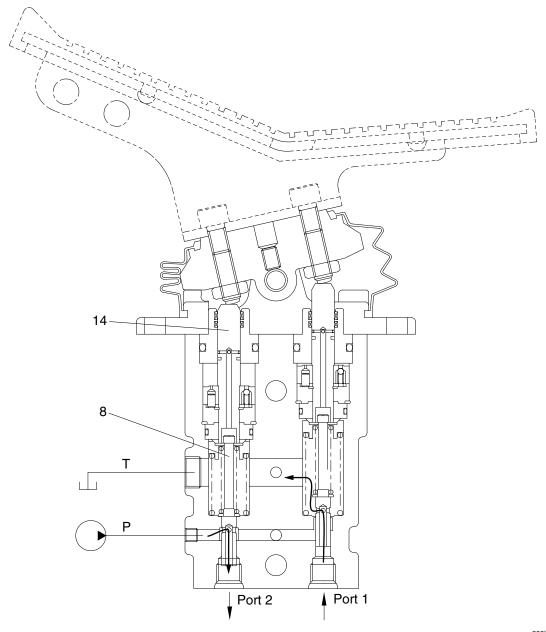
(1) Case where pedal is in neutral position



21092RP03

The force of the spring (6) that determines the output pressure of the pilot valve is not applied to the spool (8). Therefore, the spool is pushed up by the spring (10) to the position of port 2 in the operation explanation drawing. Then, since the output port is connected to tank port T only, the output port pressure becomes equal to tank pressure.

(2) Case where pedal is tilted



300L2RL08

When the push rod (14) is stroked, the spool (8) moves downwards.

Then port P is connected with port (2), and the oil supplied from the pilot pump flows through port 1 to generate the pressure.

When the pressure at port (2) increases to the value corresponding to the spring force set by tilting the pedal, the hydraulic pressure force balances with the spring force. If the pressure at port (1) increases higher than the set pressure, port P is disconnected from port (1) and port T is connected with port (2). If it decreases lower than the set pressure, port P is connected with port (2) and port T is disconnected from port (2).

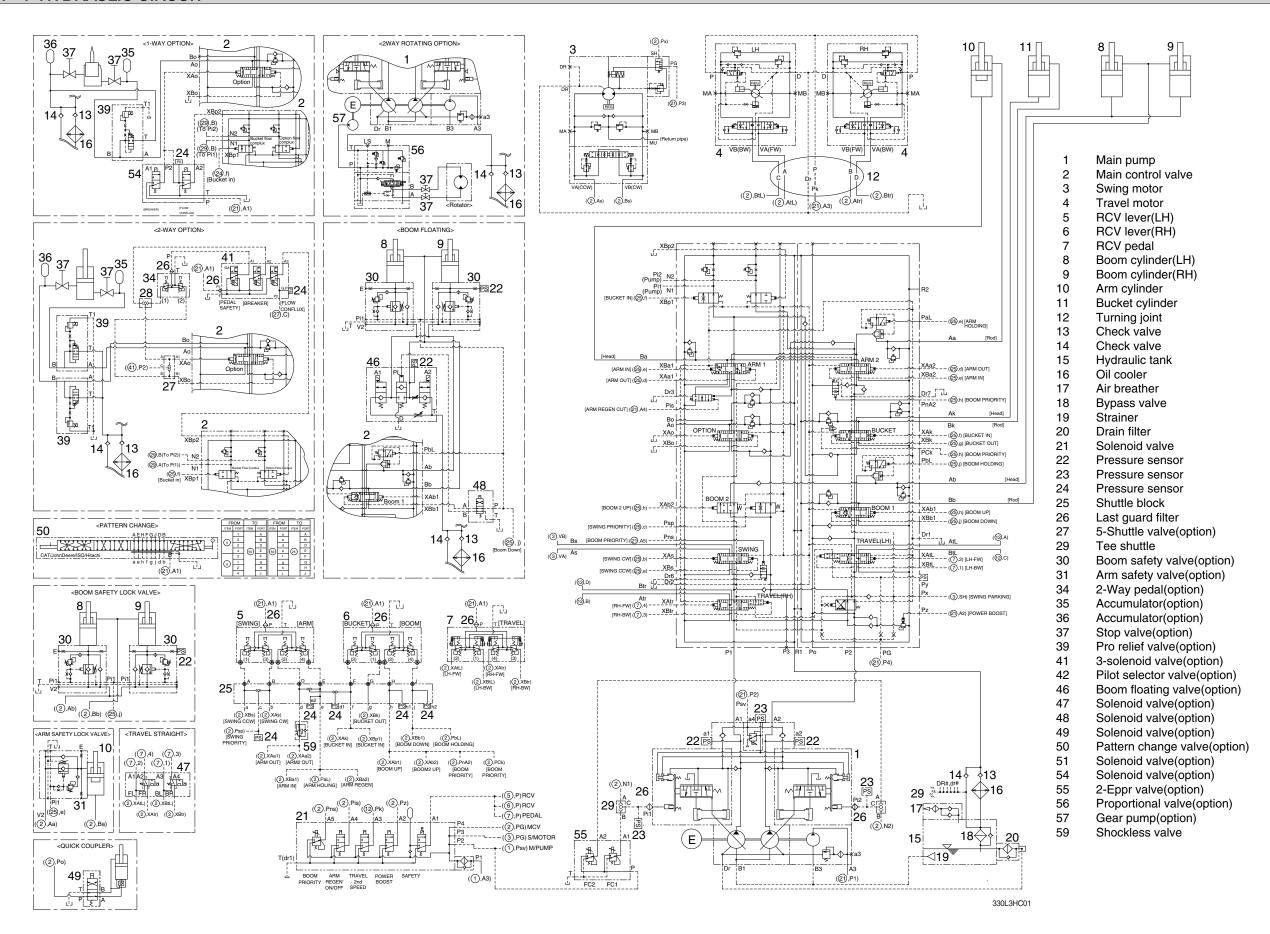
In this manner the secondary pressure is kept at the constant value.

Besides, in some type, when the pedal is tilted more than a certain angle, the upper end of the spool contacts with inside bottom of the push rod and the output pressure is left to be connected with port P.

SECTION 3 HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

Group	1	Hydraulic Circuit ·····	3-1
Group	2	Main Circuit	3-2
Group	3	Pilot Circuit	3-5
Group	4	Single Operation	3-14
Group	5	Combined Operation	3-24

GROUP 1 HYDRAULIC CIRCUIT



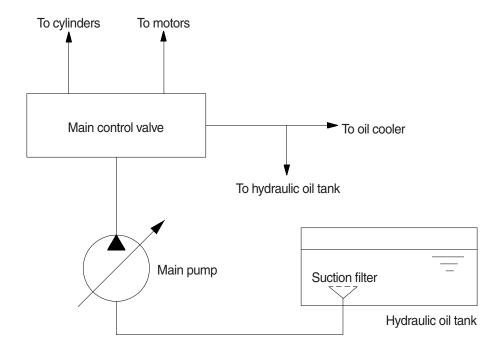
GROUP 2 MAIN CIRCUIT

The main hydraulic circuit consists of suction circuit, delivery circuit, return circuit and drain circuit.

The hydraulic system consists of one main pump, one control valve, one swing motor, four cylinders and two travel motors.

The swash plate type variable displacement tandem axial piston pump is used as the main pump and is driven by the engine at ratio 1.0 of engine speed.

1. SUCTION AND DELIVERY CIRCUIT



3-02 (290-7)

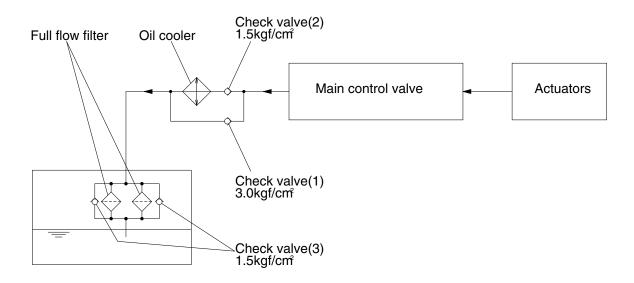
The pumps receive oil from the hydraulic tank through a suction filter. The discharged oil from the pump flows into the control valve and goes out the tank ports.

The oil discharged from the main pump flows to the actuators through the control valve.

The control valve controls the hydraulic functions.

The return oil from the actuators flows to the hydraulic tank through the control valve and the oil cooler.

2. RETURN CIRCUIT



R29073CI01

All oil from each actuator returns to the hydraulic tank through the control valve.

The bypass check valves are provided in the return circuit.

The setting pressure of bypass check valves are 1.5 kgf/cm² (21psi) and 3.0 kgf/cm² (43psi). Usually, oil returns to the hydraulic tank from the left side of control valve through oil cooler.

When oil temperature is low, viscosity becomes higher and flow resistance increases when passing through the oil cooler. The oil pressure exceeds 3.0 kgf/cm² (43psi), the oil returns directly to the hydraulic tank, resulting in the oil temperature being raised quickly at an appropriate level.

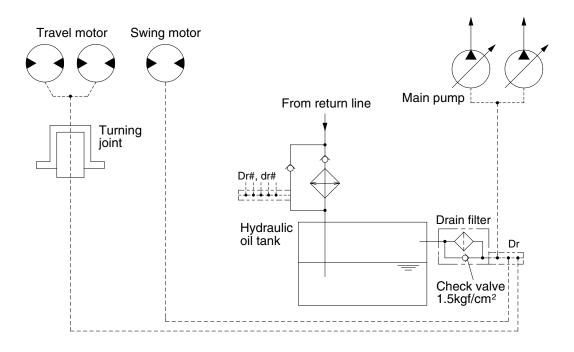
When the oil cooler is clogged, the oil returns directly to the hydraulic tank through bypass check valve (1).

The full-flow filter and bypass relief valve are provided in the hydraulic tank.

The oil from right and left side of control valve is combined and filtered by the return filter. A bypass relief valve is provided in the full-flow filter.

When the filter element is clogged, the bypass relief valve opens at 1.5 kgf/cm² (21psi) differential pressure.

3. DRAIN CIRCUIT



21093Cl02

Besides internal leaks from the motors and main pump, the oil for lubrication circulates. These oil have to be fed to the hydraulic tank passing through spin filter and full flow filter in the hydraulic tank. When the drain oil pressure exceed 1.5 kgf/cm² (21psi), the oil returns to the hydraulic tank directly.

1) TRAVEL MOTOR DRAIN CIRCUIT

Oil leaking from the right and left travel motors comes out of the drain ports provided in the respective motor casing and join with each other. These oils pass through the turning joint and return to the hydraulic tank after being filtered by full flow filter in the hydraulic tank.

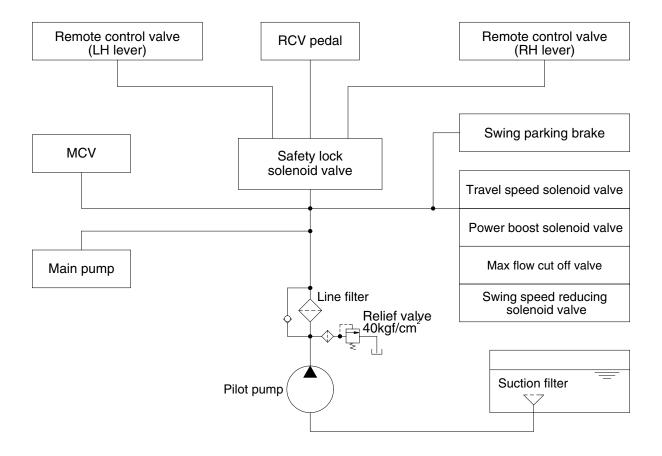
2) SWING MOTOR DRAIN CIRCUIT

Oil leaking from the swing motor come out and return to the hydraulic tank passing through a spin filter.

3) MAIN PUMP DRAIN CIRCUIT

Oil leaking from main pump come out and return to the hydraulic tank passing through spin filter.

GROUP 3 PILOT CIRCUIT



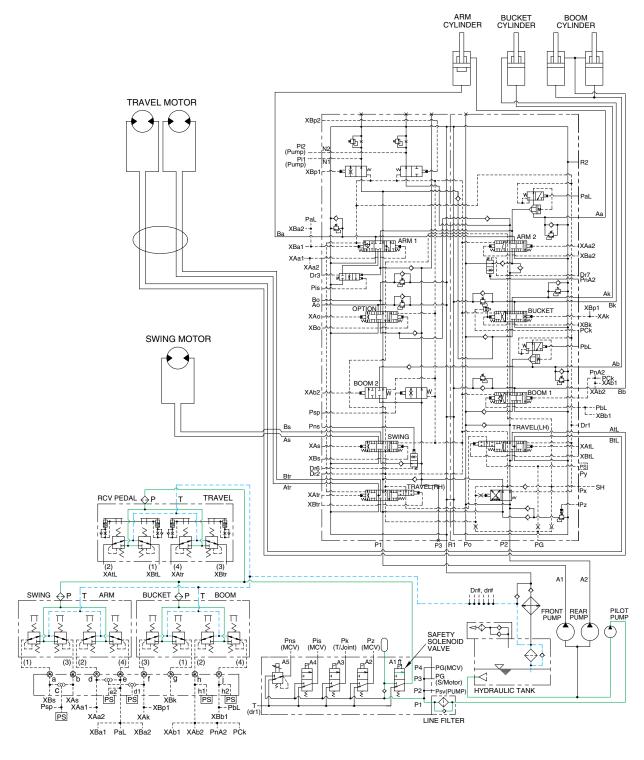
32093CI01

The pilot circuit consists of suction circuit, delivery circuit and return circuit.

The pilot pump is provided with relief valve, receives the oil from the hydraulic tank through the suction filter.

The discharged oil from the pilot pump flows to the remote control valve through line filter, EPPR valve, solenoid valve assemblies, swing parking brake, main control valve and safety lock solenoid valve.

1. SUCTION, DELIVERY AND RETURN CIRCUIT



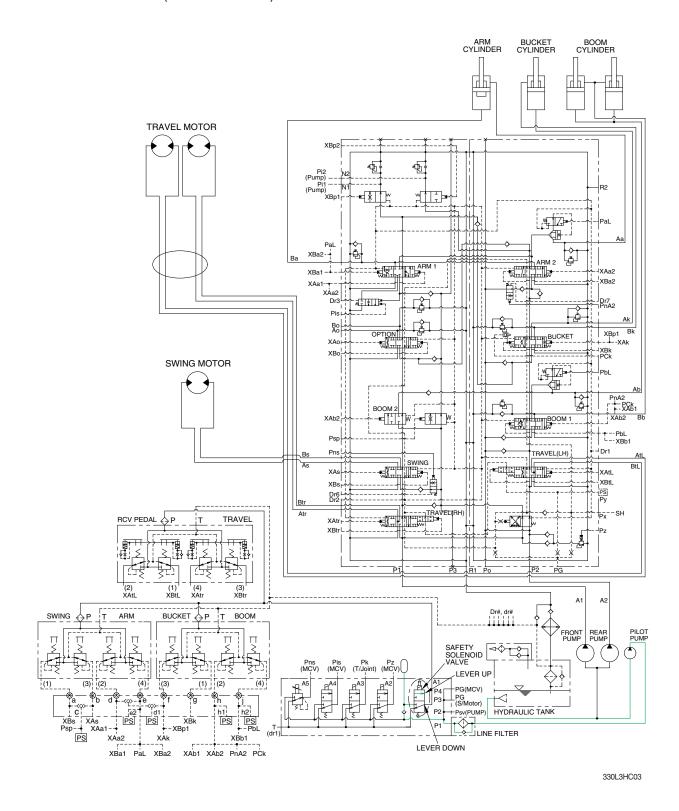
330L3HC02

The pilot pump receive oil from the hydraulic tank. The discharged oil from the pilot pump flows to the safety solenoid valve through the line filter. The oil is filtered by the line filter. The pilot relief valve is provided in the pilot pump for limiting the pilot circuit pressure.

The oil filtered by line filter flows remote control valve through safety solenoid valve.

The return oil flow into the hydraulic tank.

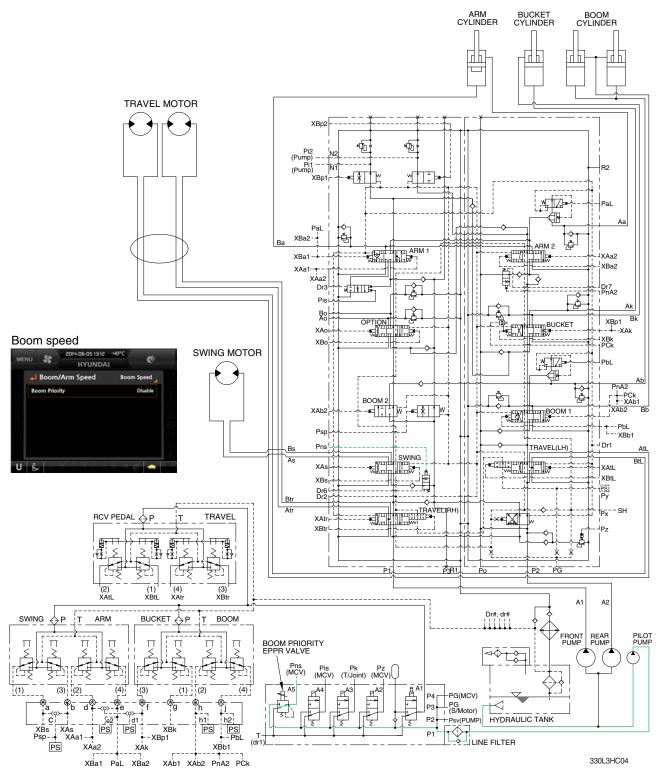
2. SAFETY VALVE (SAFETY LEVER)



When the lever of the safety solenoid valve is moved upward, oil flows into the remote control valve through solenoid valve and line filter.

When the lever of the safety solenoid valve is moved downward, oil does not flows into the remote control valve, because of blocked port.

3. BOOM PRIORITY SYSTEM



When carrying out the combined operation of swing and boom up, the boom up operating speed is lowered then normal operation.

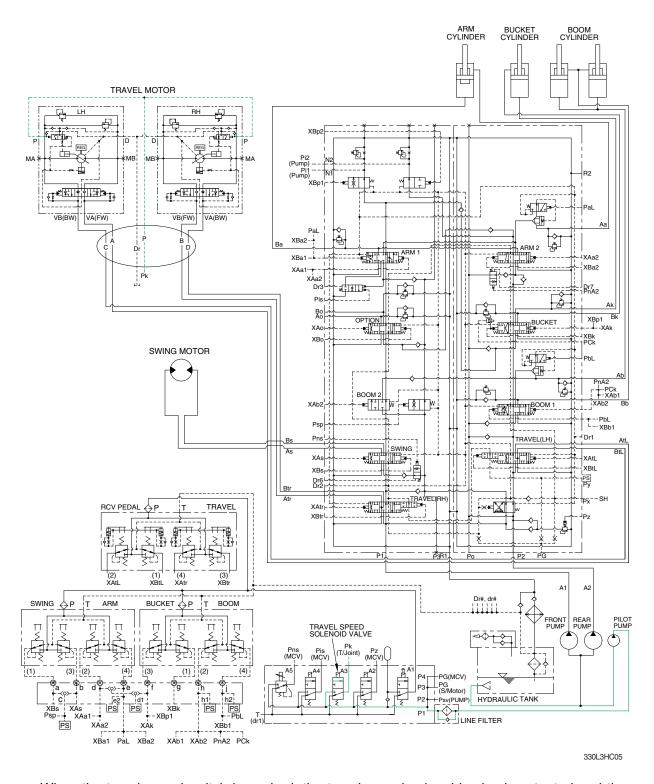
To increase working efficiency, swing speed reducing system is used.

The pilot oil from pilot pump flow into **Pns** port in main control valve through boom priority EPPR valve. **Pns** oil pressure moves swing reducing spool to lower position and oil flow rate to the swing motor decreased.

Then, the boom up speed is increased. This is called the boom priority system.

The boom up speed can be adjusted by the cluster. Refer to page 3-12 of the operator's manual.

4. TRAVEL SPEED CONTROL SYSTEM



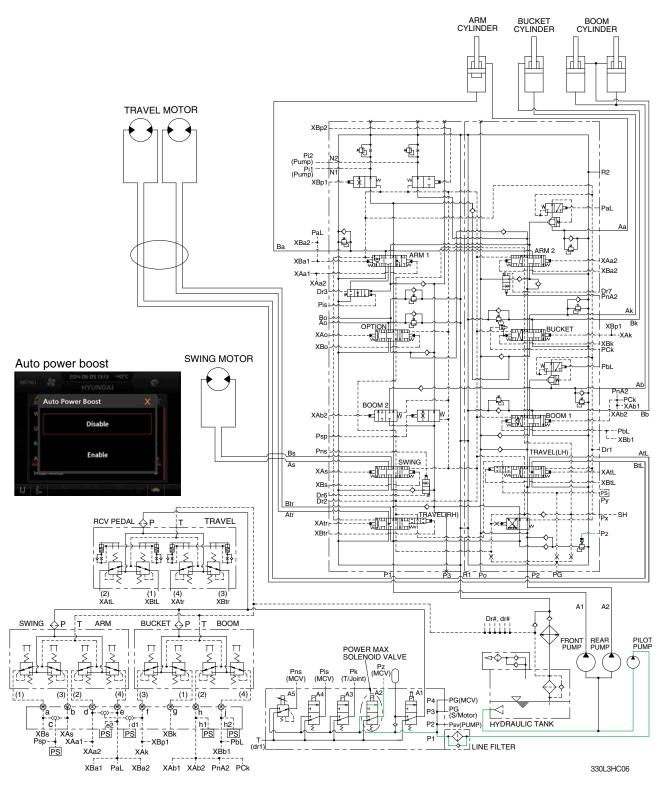
When the travel speed switch is pushed, the travel speed solenoid valve is actuated and the discharged oil from the pilot pump flows to the **P** port of pilot valve in the travel motors.

As a result, the control piston is pushed by the main oil flow, thus the displacement is minimized.

When the travel speed switch is pushed once more, the travel speed solenoid valve is return to original position by the force of spring, the hydraulic oil of P port returns to the hydraulic tank.

As a result, the control piston is returned by the main oil flow, thus the displacement is maximized.

5. MAIN RELIEF PRESSURE CHANGE CIRCUIT

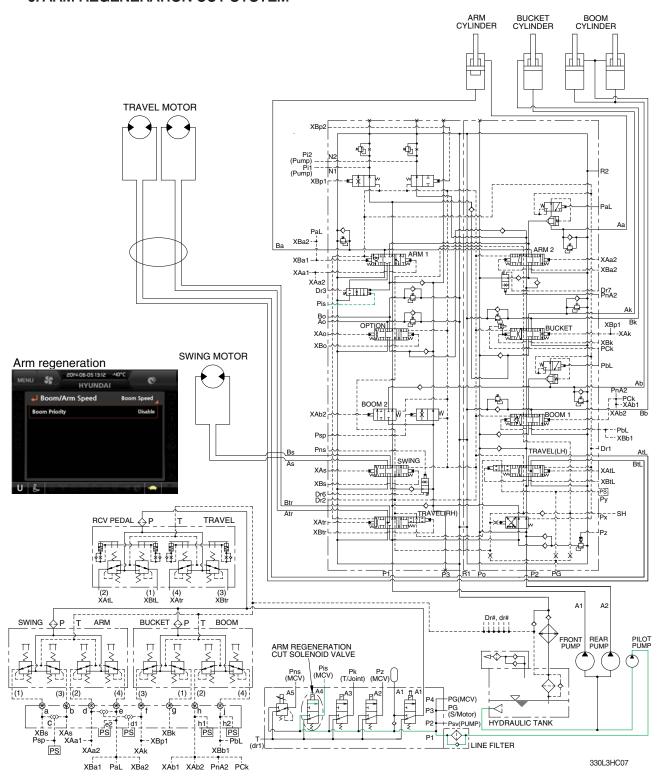


When the power boost switch on the left control lever is pushed ON, the power boost solenoid valve is actuated, the discharged oil from the pilot pump flows into **Pz** port of the main relief valve of main control valve; then the setting pressure of the main relief valve is raised from 350 kgf/cm² to 380 kgf/cm² for increasing the digging power.

And even when pressed continuously, it is canceled after 8 seconds.

When the auto power boost function is selected to enable on the cluster, the pressure of the main relief pressure is automatically increased to 380 kgf/cm² as working condition by the MCU. It is operated max 8 seconds.

6. ARM REGENERATION CUT SYSTEM



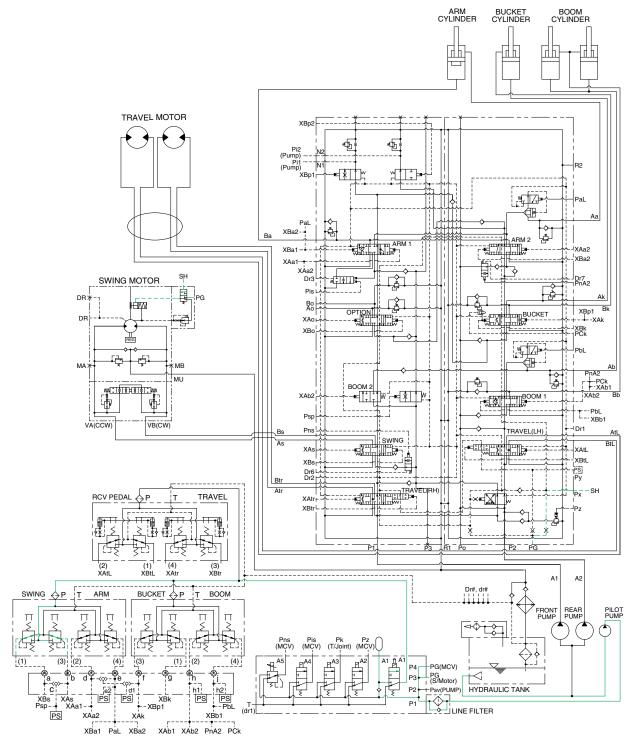
When the arm regeneration is selected to disable on the cluster, the arm regeneration solenoid valve is activated. The pilot oil from pilot pump flow into **Pis** port in main control valve through solenoid valve and the arm regeneration spool is shifted to left.

Then, the oil from arm regeneration passage returns to tank and the arm regeneration function is deactivated.

When the arm regeneration is selected to enable on the cluster, the arm regeneration function is activated and arm in operation speed is increased.

Refer to page 2-29 for the arm regeneration function.

7. SWING PARKING BRAKE RELEASE



330L3HC08

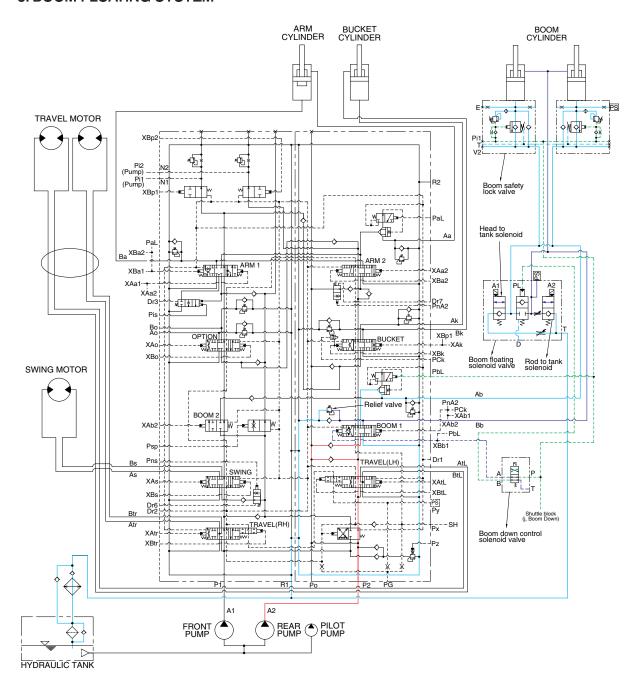
When one of the RCV lever (except travel lever) is tilted, the pilot oil flows into SH port through main control valve.

This pressure moves spool so, discharged oil from pilot valve flows to swing motor PG port.

This pressure is applied to swing motor disc, thus the brake is released.

When all of the RCV lever are set in the neutral position, oil in the swing motor disc cylinder is drained, thus the brake is applied.

8. BOOM FLOATING SYSTEM



330L3HC29

Smooth and convenient boom movement is accomplished by only arm control lever operation.

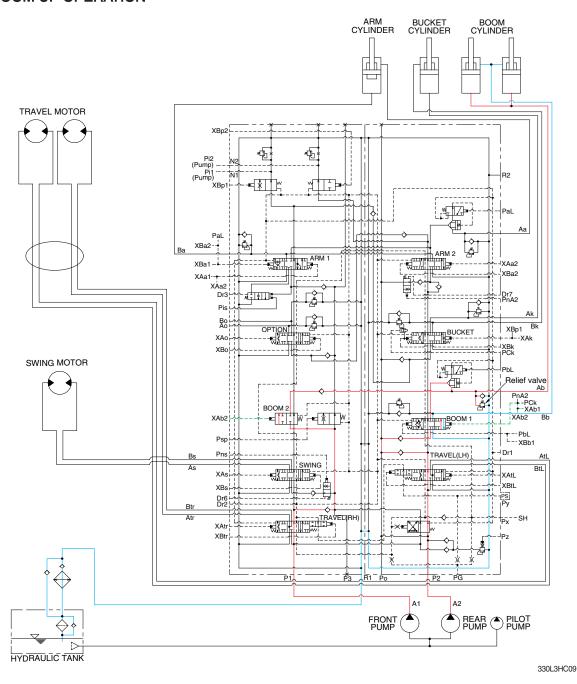
The boom floating solenoid values are equipped in the rod and head of boom cylinder that are controlled to act as floating mode.

"Rod to tank solenoid" and "Head to tank solenoid" are active. So the hydraulic oil of rod and head goes to tank, and floating is accomplished. In the mode, boom down cut-off solenoid is active so that boom down pilot pressure is cut.

For more details, refer to page 5-13.

GROUP 4 SINGLE OPERATION

1. BOOM UP OPERATION



When the right control lever is pulled back, the boom spools in the main control valve are moved to the up position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

The oil from the A1 and A2 pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the large chamber of boom cylinders.

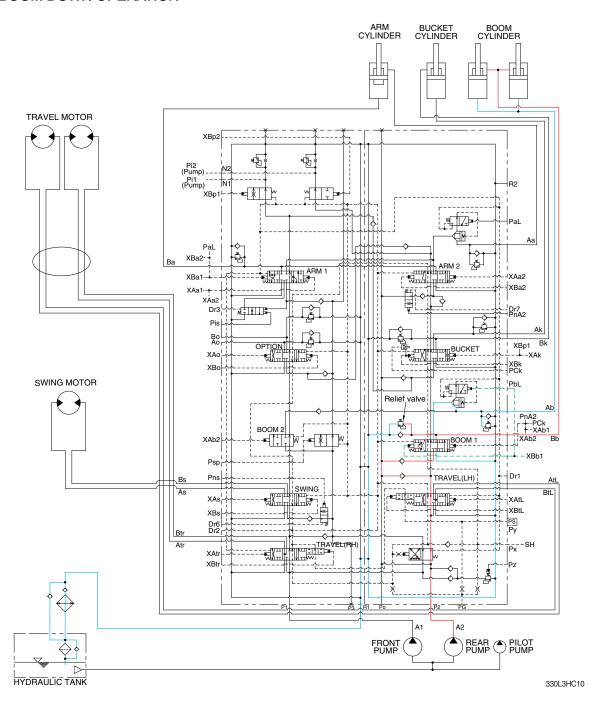
At the same time, the oil from the small chamber of boom cylinders returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the boom spool in the main control valve. When this happens, the boom goes up.

The excessive pressure in the boom cylinder head side is prevented by relief valve.

When the boom is up and the control lever is returned to neutral position, the circuit for the holding pressure at the bottom end of the boom cylinder is closed by the boom holding valve.

This prevents the hydraulic drift of boom cylinder.

2. BOOM DOWN OPERATION



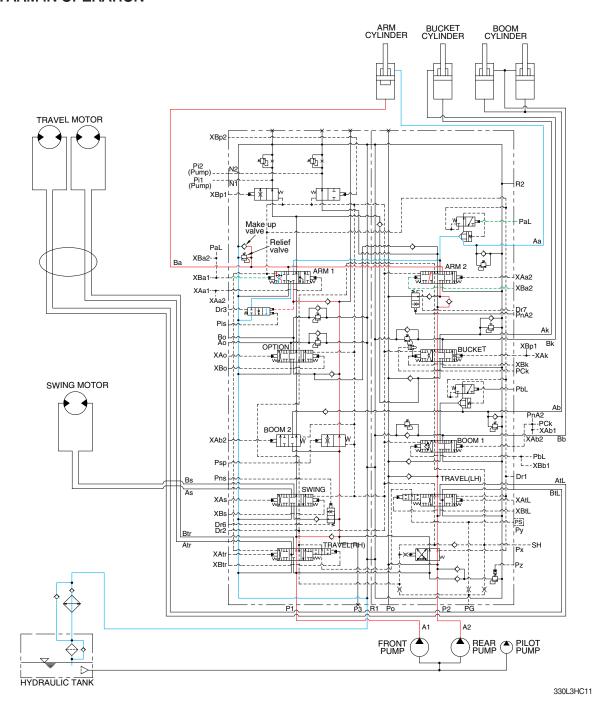
When the right control lever is pushed forward, the boom 1 spools in the main control valve are moved to the down position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

The oil from the A2 pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the small chamber of boom cylinders. At the same time, the oil from the large chamber of boom cylinders returns to the hydraulic tank through the boom spool in the main control valve.

When the down speed of boom is faster, the oil returned from the large chamber of boom cylinder combines with the oil from the rear pump, and flows into the small chamber of the boom cylinder.

This prevents cylinder cavitation by the negative pressure when the rear pump flow can not match the boom down speed. And the excessive pressure in the boom cylinder rod side is prevented by the relief valve.

3. ARM IN OPERATION



When the left control lever is pulled back, the arm spools in the main control valve are moved to the roll in position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

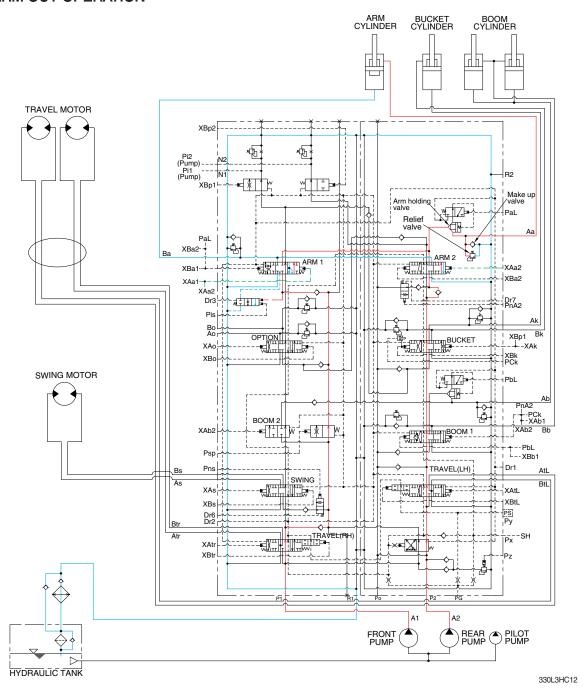
The oil from the A1 and A2 pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the large chamber of arm cylinder.

At the same time, the oil from small chamber of arm cylinder returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the arm spool in the main control valve. When this happens, the arm rolls in.

The excessive pressure in the arm cylinder head side is prevented by relief valve.

The cavitation which will happen to the head side of the arm cylinder is also prevented by the makeup valve in the main control valve.

4. ARM OUT OPERATION



When the left control lever is pushed forward, the arm spools in the main control valve are moved to the roll out position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

The oil from the A1 and A2 pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the small chamber of arm cylinder.

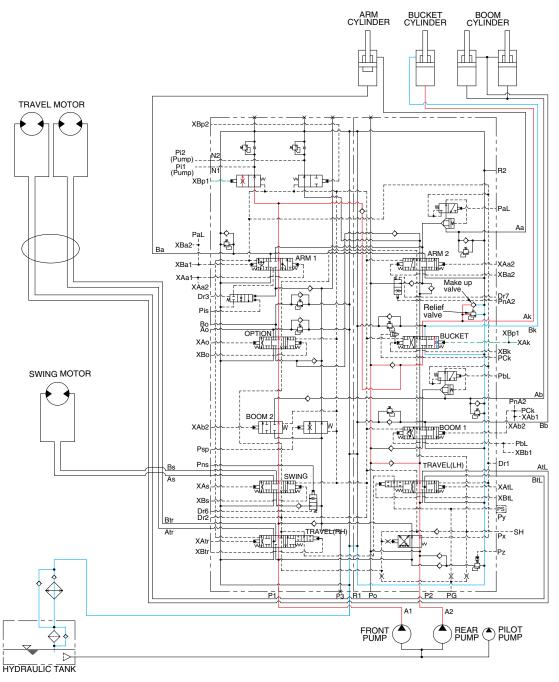
At the same time, the oil from the large chamber of arm cylinder returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the arm spools in the main control valve. When this happens, the arm rolls out.

The excessive pressure in the arm cylinder rod side is prevented by relief valve.

When the arm is roll out and the control lever is returned to neutral position, the circuit for the holding pressure at the rod side of the arm cylinder is closed by the arm holding valve.

The cavitation which will happen to the rod side of the arm cylinder is also prevented by the make-up valve in the main control valve.

5. BUCKET IN OPERATION



330L3HC13

When the right control lever is pulled left, the bucket spool in the main control valve is moved to the roll in position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

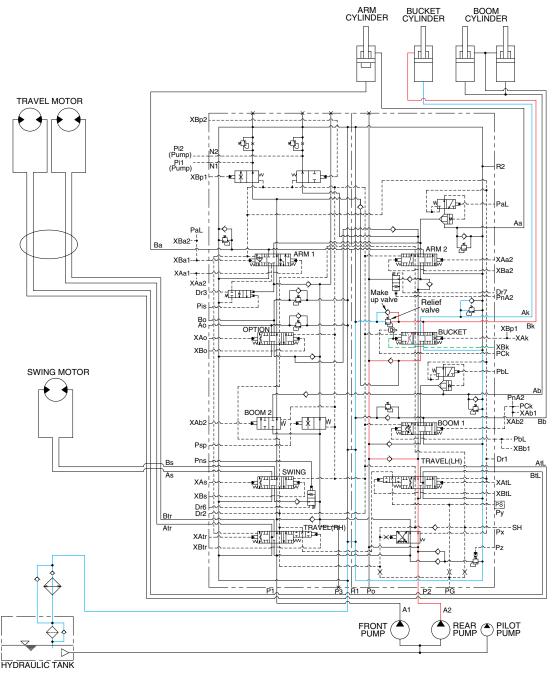
The oil from the A2 pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the large chamber of bucket cylinder. The oil form the A1 pump flows into the large chamber of bucket cylinder through confluence oil passage in the main control valve by bypass cut pilot pressure (XBp1).

At the same time, the oil from the small chamber of bucket cylinder returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the boom spool in the main control valve. When this happens, the bucket rolls in.

The excessive pressure in the bucket cylinder head side is prevented by relief valve.

The cavitation which will happen to the head side of the bucket cylinder is also prevented by the make-up valve in the main control valve.

6. BUCKET OUT OPERATION



330L3HC14

When the right control lever is pushed right, the bucket spool in the main control valve is moved to the roll out position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

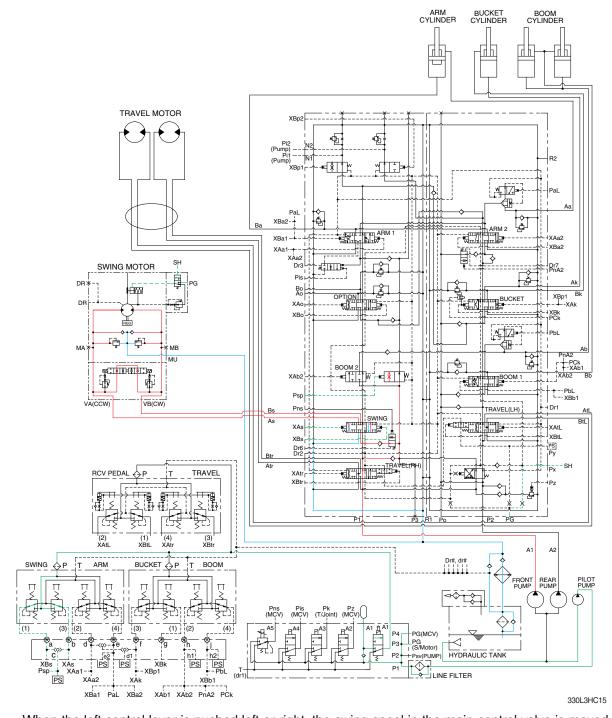
The oil from the A2 pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the small chamber of bucket cylinder.

At the same time, the oil from the large chamber of bucket cylinder returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the bucket spool in the main control valve. When this happens, the bucket rolls out.

The excessive pressure in the bucket cylinder rod side is prevented by relief valve.

The cavitation which will happen to the rod side of the bucket cylinder is also prevented by the makeup valve in the main control valve.

7. SWING OPERATION



When the left control lever is pushed left or right, the swing spool in the main control valve is moved to the left or right swing position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

Also the swing operation preference function is operated by the pilot pressure Psp (refer to page 2-36).

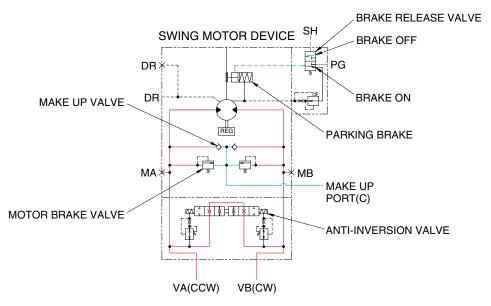
The oil from the A1 pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the swing motor.

At the same time, the return oil from the swing motor returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the swing spool in the main control valve.

When this happens, the upper structure swings to the left or right.

The swing parking brake, make up valve and the motor brake valve are provided in the swing motor. The cavitation which will happen to the swing motor is also prevented by the make up valve in the swing motor itself.

SWING CIRCUIT OPERATION



TO/FROM MAIN CONTROL VALVE

330L3HC16

1) MOTOR BRAKE VALVE

Motor brake valve for the swing motor limits to cushion the starting and stopping pressure of swing operation and controls the swing motor operating pressure.

2) MAKE UP VALVE

The make up valves prevent cavitation by supplying return oil to the vacuum side of the motor.

3) PARKING BRAKE

This is function as a parking brake only when all of the RCV lever (except travel pedal) are not operated.

PARKING BRAKE "OFF" OPERATION

The parking brake is released by the pilot pressure oil from the pilot pump.

When the RCV lever placed in the operating position, the pilot oil flows into SH port through the MCV. This pressure transferred to the brake release valve and the brake release valve is change over. Then the pilot oil pressure PG lift the brake piston and release the parking brake.

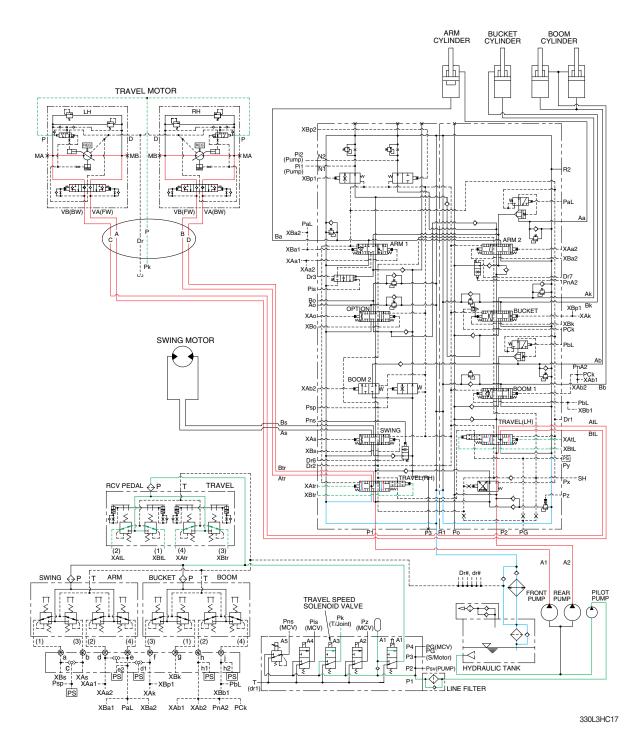
PARKING BRAKE "ON" OPERATION

When all of the RCV lever placed in the neutral position, the pressure of the pilot oil passage down. Then the brake release valve returned to the neutral position and the oil is returned from the brake piston to the tank. And the brake is set to 'ON".

4) ANTI-INVERSION VALVE

This anti-inversion valve absorbs shocks produced as swing motion stops and reduced oscillation cause by swing motion.

8. TRAVEL FORWARD AND REVERSE OPERATION



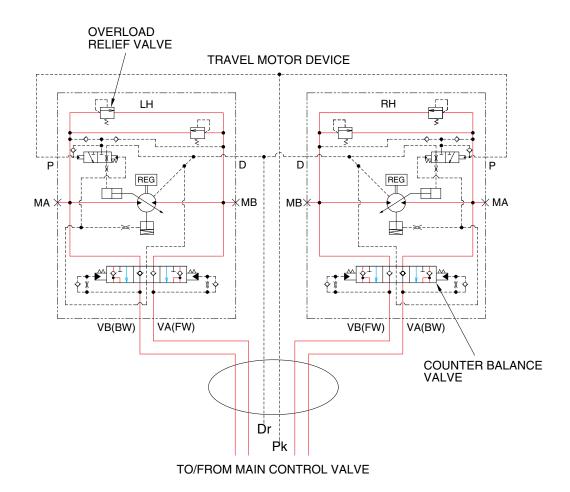
When the travel levers are pushed forward or reverse position, the travel spools in the main control valve are moved to the forward or reverse travel position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

The oil from the each pump flows into the main control valve and then goes to the each travel motor through the turning joint.

The return oil from both travel motors returns to the hydraulic oil tank through the turning joint and the travel spools in the main control valve.

When this happens, the machine moves to the forward or reverse.

TRAVEL CIRCUIT OPERATION



330L3HC18

Valves are provided on travel motors to offer the following functions.

1) COUNTER BALANCE VALVE

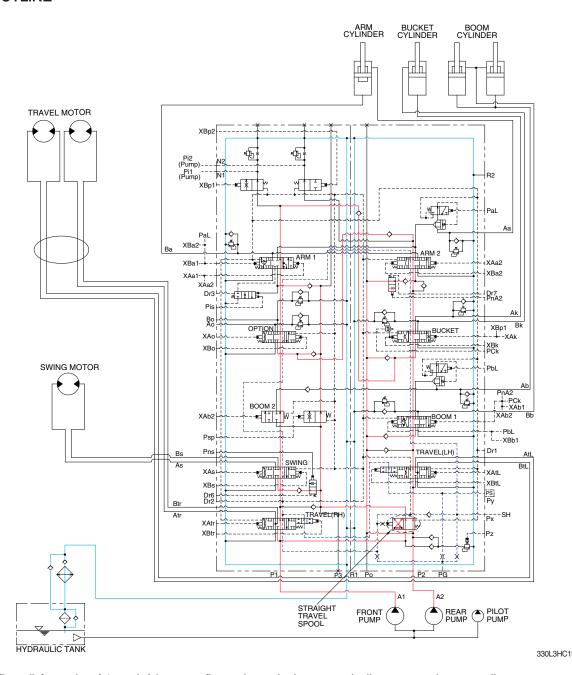
When stopping the motor of slope descending, this valve to prevent the motor over run.

2) OVERLOAD RELIEF VALVE

Relief valve limit the circuit pressure below 350 kgf/cm² to prevent high pressure generated at a time of stopping the machine. Stopping the motor, this valve sucks the oil from lower pressure passage for preventing the negative pressure and the cavitation of the motor.

GROUP 5 COMBINED OPERATION

1. OUTLINE



The oil from the A1 and A2 pump flows through the neutral oil passage, bypass oil passage and confluence oil passage in the main control valve. Then the oil goes to each actuator and operates them. Check valves and orifices are located on these oil passage in the main control valve. These control the oil from the main pumps so as to correspond to the operation of each actuator and smooth the combined operation.

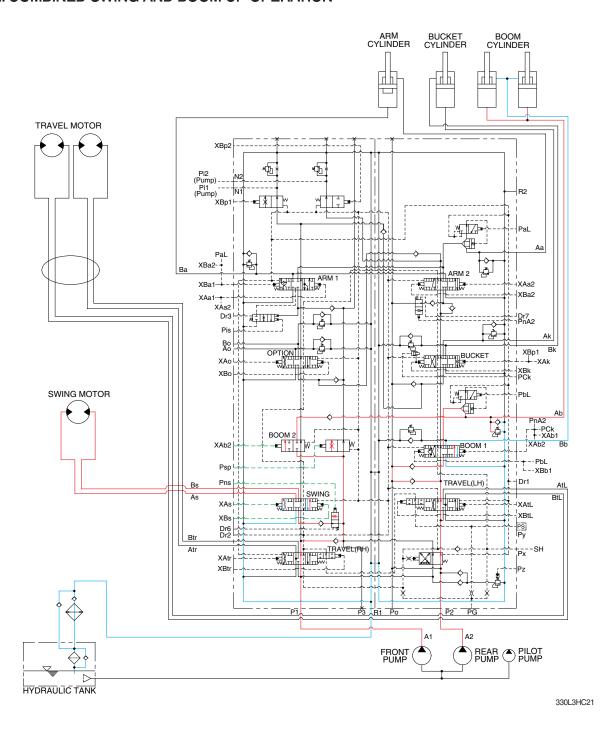
STRAIGHT TRAVEL SPOOL

This straight travel spool is provided in the main control valve.

If any actuator is operated when traveling, the straight travel spool is pushed to the right by the pilot oil pressure.

Consequently, the left and right travel oil supply passage are connected, and equivalent amount of oil flows into the left and right travel motors. This keeps the straight travel.

2. COMBINED SWING AND BOOM UP OPERATION



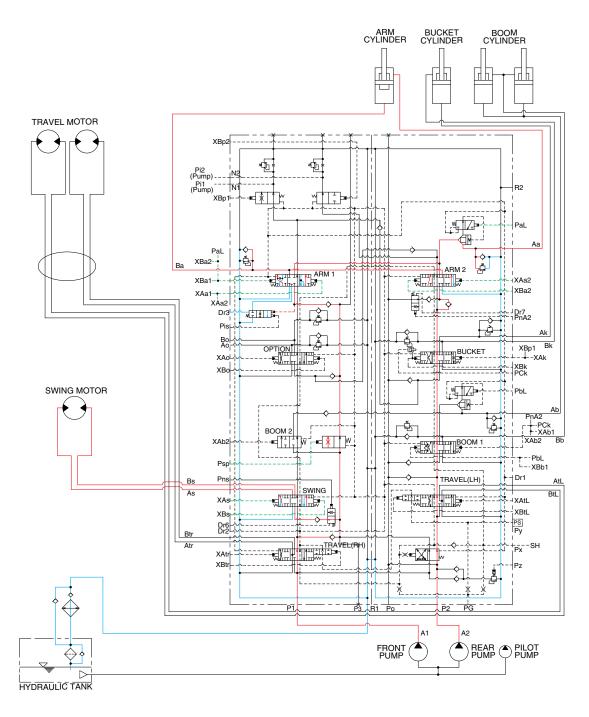
When the swing and boom up functions are operated, simultaneously the swing spool and boom spools in the main control valve are moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

The oil from the A1 pump flows into the swing motor through swing spool and the boom cylinder through boom 2 spool.

The oil from the A2 pump flows into the boom cylinders through the boom 1 spool in the right control valve. The upper structure swings and the boom is operated.

Refer to page 3-8 for the boom priority system.

3. COMBINED SWING AND ARM OPERATION



330L3HC22

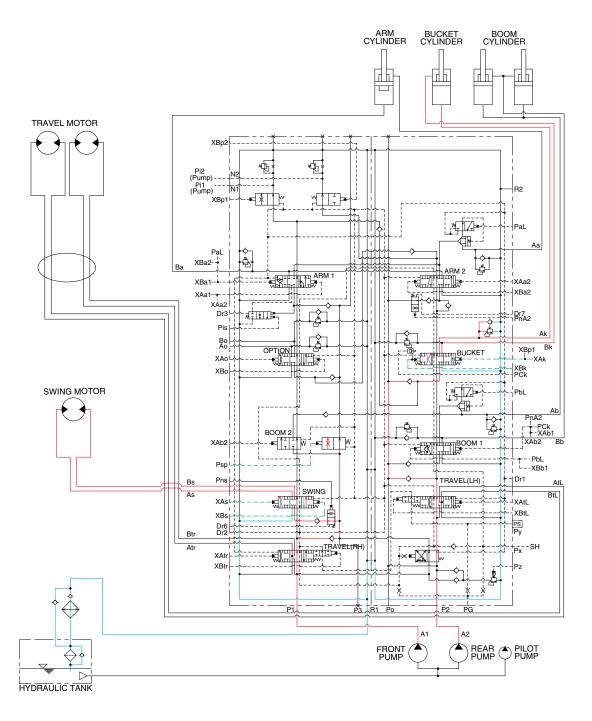
When the swing and arm functions are operated, simultaneously the swing spool and arm spools in the main control valve are moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

The oil from the A1 pump flows into the swing motor through swing spool and the arm cylinder through arm 1 spool.

The oil from the A2 pump flows into the arm cylinder through the arm 2 spool of the right control valve. The upper structure swings and the arm is operated.

Refer to page 2-35 for the swing operation preference function.

4. COMBINED SWING AND BUCKET OPERATION



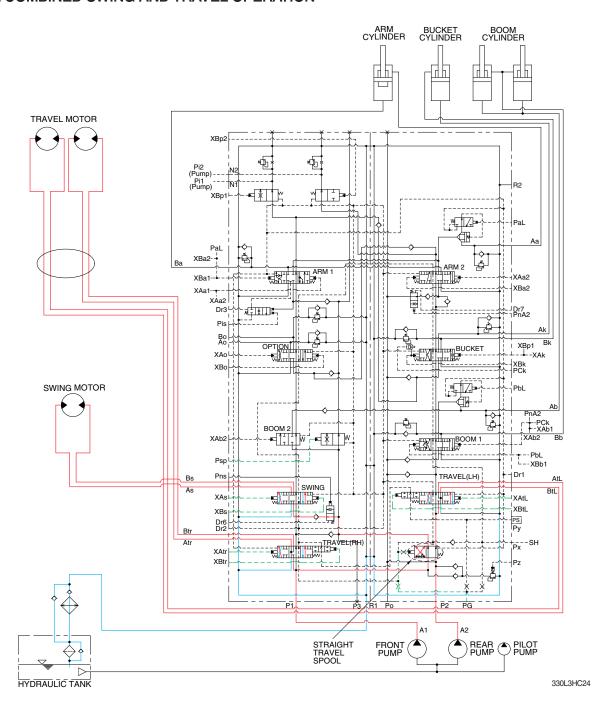
330L3HC23

When the swing and bucket functions are operated, simultaneously the swing spool and bucket spool in the main control valve are moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve.

The oil from the A1 pump flows into the swing motor through the swing spool in the left control valve. The oil from the A2 pump flows into the bucket cylinder through the bucket spool in the right control valve.

The upper structure swings and the bucket is operated.

5. COMBINED SWING AND TRAVEL OPERATION



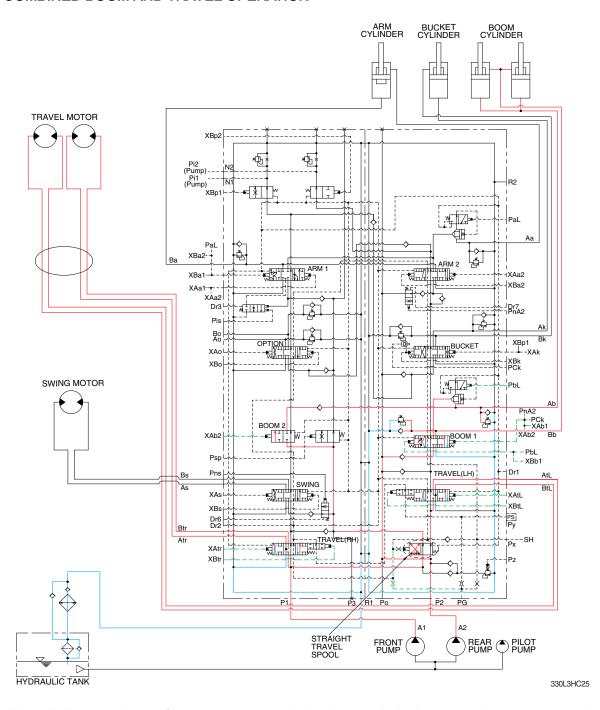
When the swing and travel functions are operated, simultaneously the swing spool and travel spools in the main control valve are moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve and straight travel spool is pushed to the right by the pilot oil pressure from the pilot pump.

The oil from the A1 pump flows into the travel motors through the RH travel spool of the left control valve and the LH travel spool of the right control valve via the straight travel spool.

The oil from the A2 pump flows into the swing motor through the swing spool and travel motor through the LH travel spool via the check valve and orifice in the straight travel spool.

The upper structure swings and the machine travels straight.

6. COMBINED BOOM AND TRAVEL OPERATION



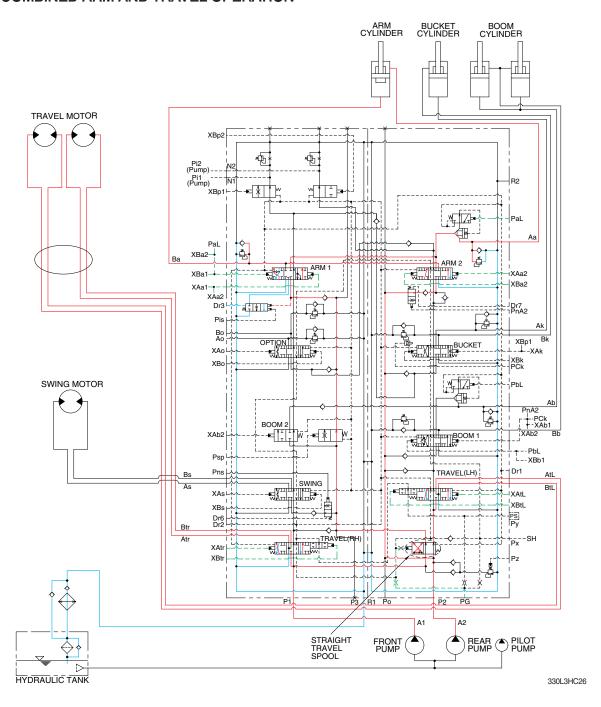
When the boom and travel functions are operated, simultaneously the boom spools and travel spools in the main control valve are moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve and the straight travel spool is pushed to the right by the oil pressure from pilot pump.

The oil from the A1 pump flows into the travel motors through the RH travel spool of the left control valve and the LH travel spool of the right control valve via the straight travel spool.

The oil from the A2 pump flows into the boom cylinders through the boom 2 spool and boom 1 spool via the parallel and confluence oil passage in case boom up operation. Also, the oil from the rear pump flows into the travel motors through the LH travel spool via the check valve and orifice in the straight travel spool.

The boom is operated and the machine travels straight.

7. COMBINED ARM AND TRAVEL OPERATION



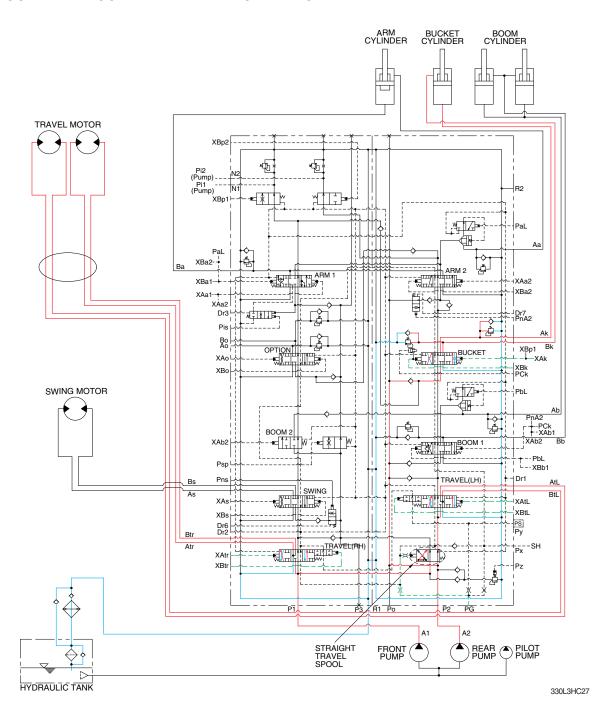
When the arm and travel functions are operated, simultaneously the arm spools and travel spools in the main control valve are moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve and the straight travel spool is pushed to the right by the oil pressure from pilot pump.

The oil from the A1 pump flows into the travel motors through the RH travel spool of the left control valve and the LH travel spool of the right control valve via the straight travel spool.

The oil from the A2 pump flows into the arm cylinders through the arm 1 spool and arm 2 spool via the parallel and confluence oil passage. Also, the oil from the A2 pump flows into the travel motors through the LH travel spool via the check valve and orifice in the straight travel spool.

The arm is operated and the machine travels straight.

8. COMBINED BUCKET AND TRAVEL OPERATION

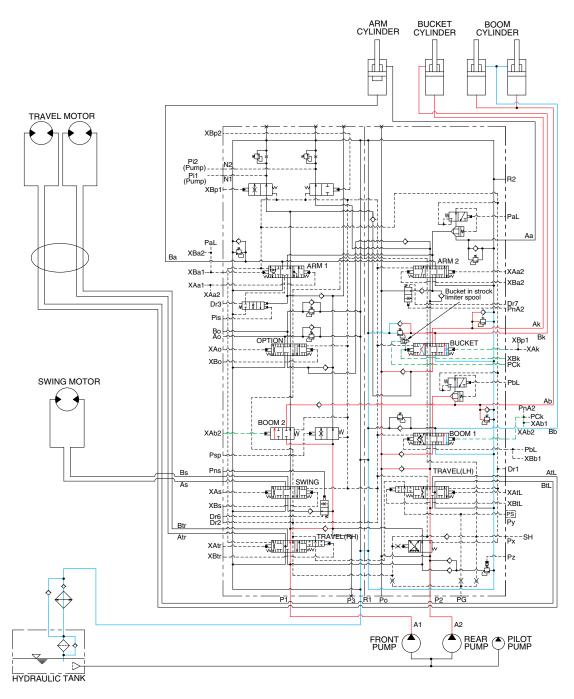


When the bucket and travel functions are operated, simultaneously the bucket spool and travel spools in the main control valve are moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve, and the straight travel spool is pushed to the right by the oil pressure from pilot pump. The oil from the A1 pump flows into the travel motors through the RH travel spool of the left control valve and the LH travel spool of the right control valve via the straight travel spool of the control valve.

The oil from the A2 pump flows into the bucket cylinder through the bucket spool via the confluence oil passage. Also, the oil from the A2 pump flows into the travel motors through the LH travel spool via the check valve and orifice in the straight travel spool.

The bucket is operated and the machine travels straight.

9. COMBINED BOOM UP AND BUCKET OPERATION



330L3HC28

When the boom up and bucket functions are operated, simultaneously each spool in the main control valve is moved to the functional position by the pilot oil pressure from the remote control valve. Also, the boom up operation preference function is operated by the pilot pressure PCk (refer to page 2-33).

The oil from the A1 pump flows into the boom cylinders through the boom 2 spool in the left control valve. The oil from the A2 pump flows into the boom cylinders and bucket cylinder through the boom 1 spool, bucket spool and the parallel and confluence oil passage in the right control valve. The boom and bucket are operated.

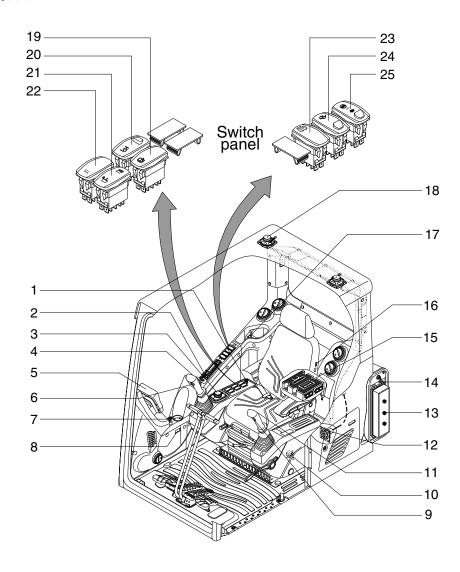
SECTION 4 ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

Group	1	Component Location ·····	4-1
Group	2	Electrical Circuit	4-3
Group	3	Electrical Component Specification	4-23
Group	4	Connectors	4-32

SECTION 4 ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

GROUP 1 COMPONENT LOCATION

1. LOCATION 1



300L4EL15

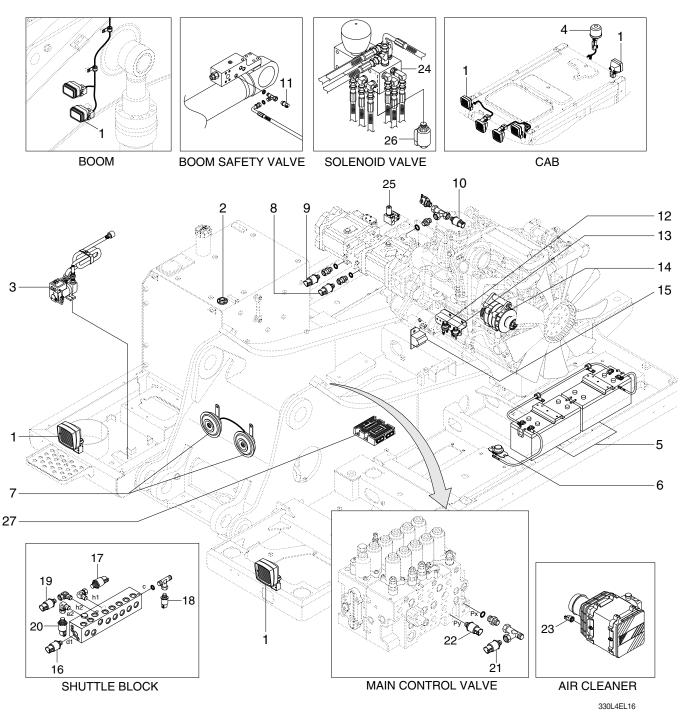
1	Cigar lighter
2	Radio & USB player
3	Haptic controller
4	Horn switch
5	Cluster
6	Breaker operation switch
7	Starting switch
8	Service meter
9	Power max switch

11	One touch decel switch
12	RS232 & J1939 service socket
13	Fuse & relay box
14	Master switch
15	Machine control unit
16	Seat heater switch
17	Service socket
18	Speaker

10 Emergency engine stop switch

19	Lower wiper & washer switch		
20	Boom floating switch		
21	Swing lock/fine switch		
22	Travel straight switch		
23	Air compressor switch		
24	Quick clamp switch		
25	SCR system cleaning switch		

2. LOCATION 2

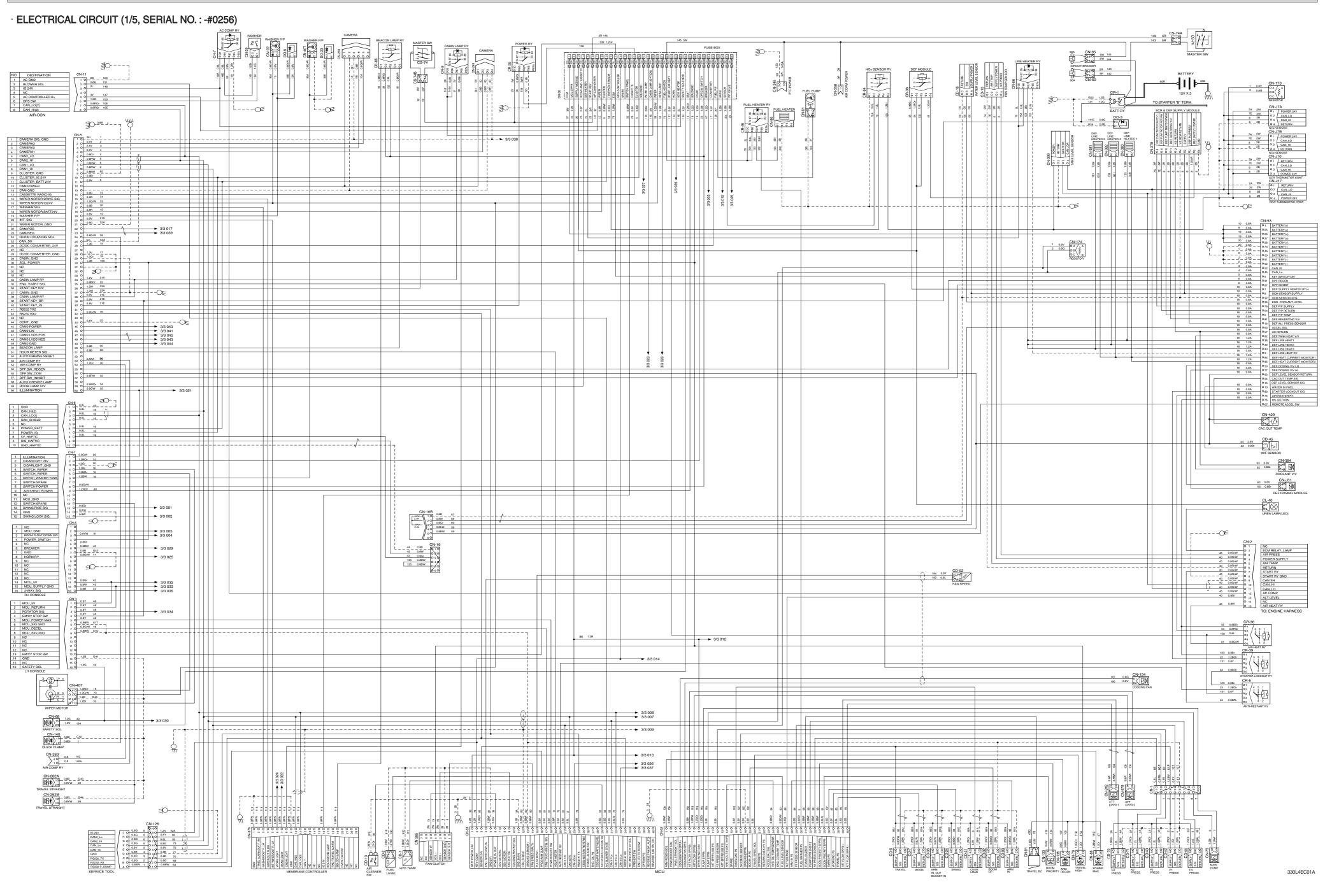


- 1 Lamp
- 2 Fuel sender
- 3 Fuel filler pump
- 4 Beacon lamp
- 5 Battery
- 6 Battery relay
- 7 Horn
- 8 P1 pressure sensor
- 9 P2 pressure sensor

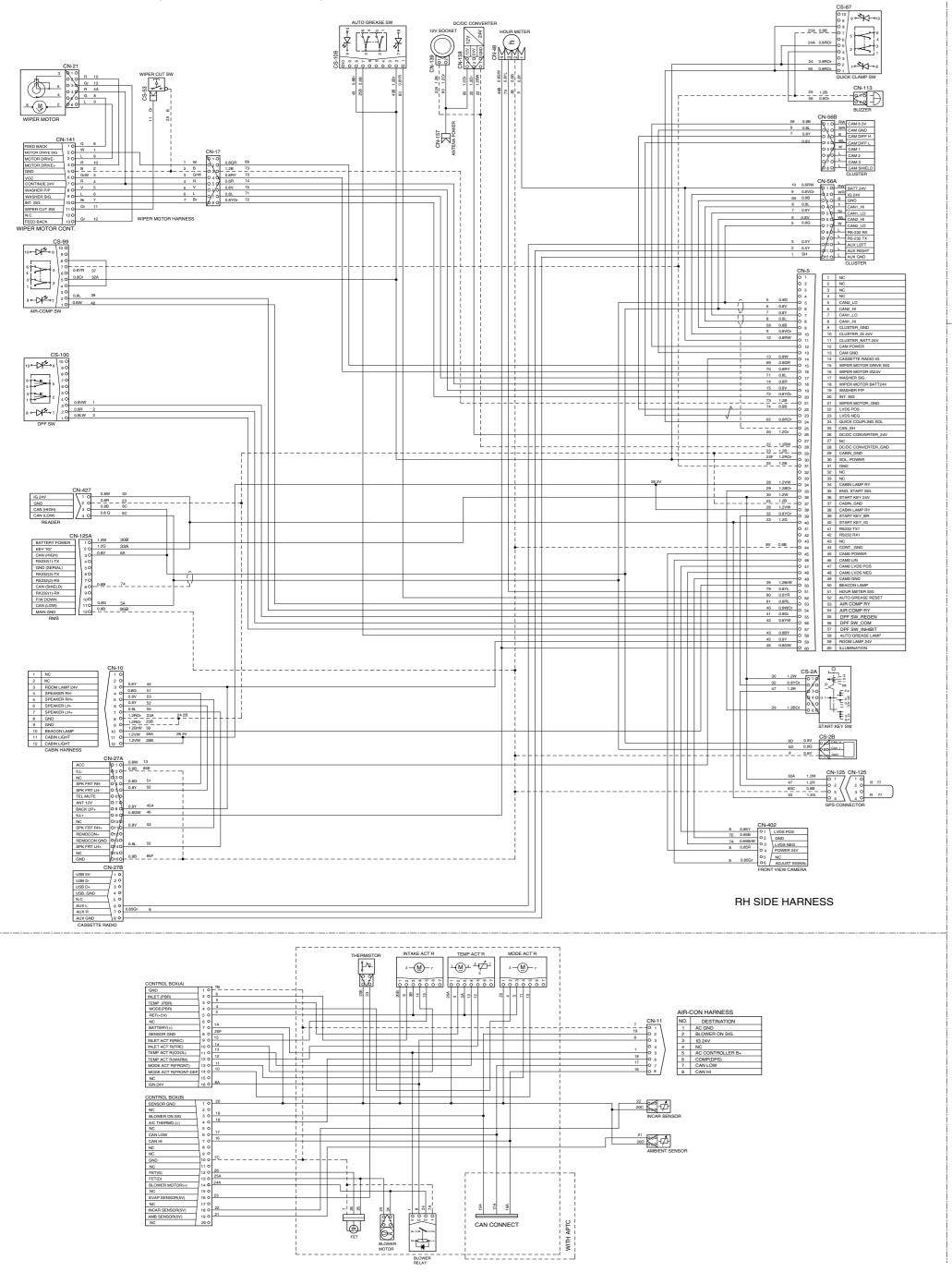
- 10 EPPR pressure sensor
- 11 Overload pressure sensor
- 12 Start relay
- 13 Heater relay
- 14 Alternator
- 15 Travel alarm buzzer
- 16 Arm/Bucket in pressure sensor
- 17 Boom up pressure sensor
- 18 Swing pressure sensor

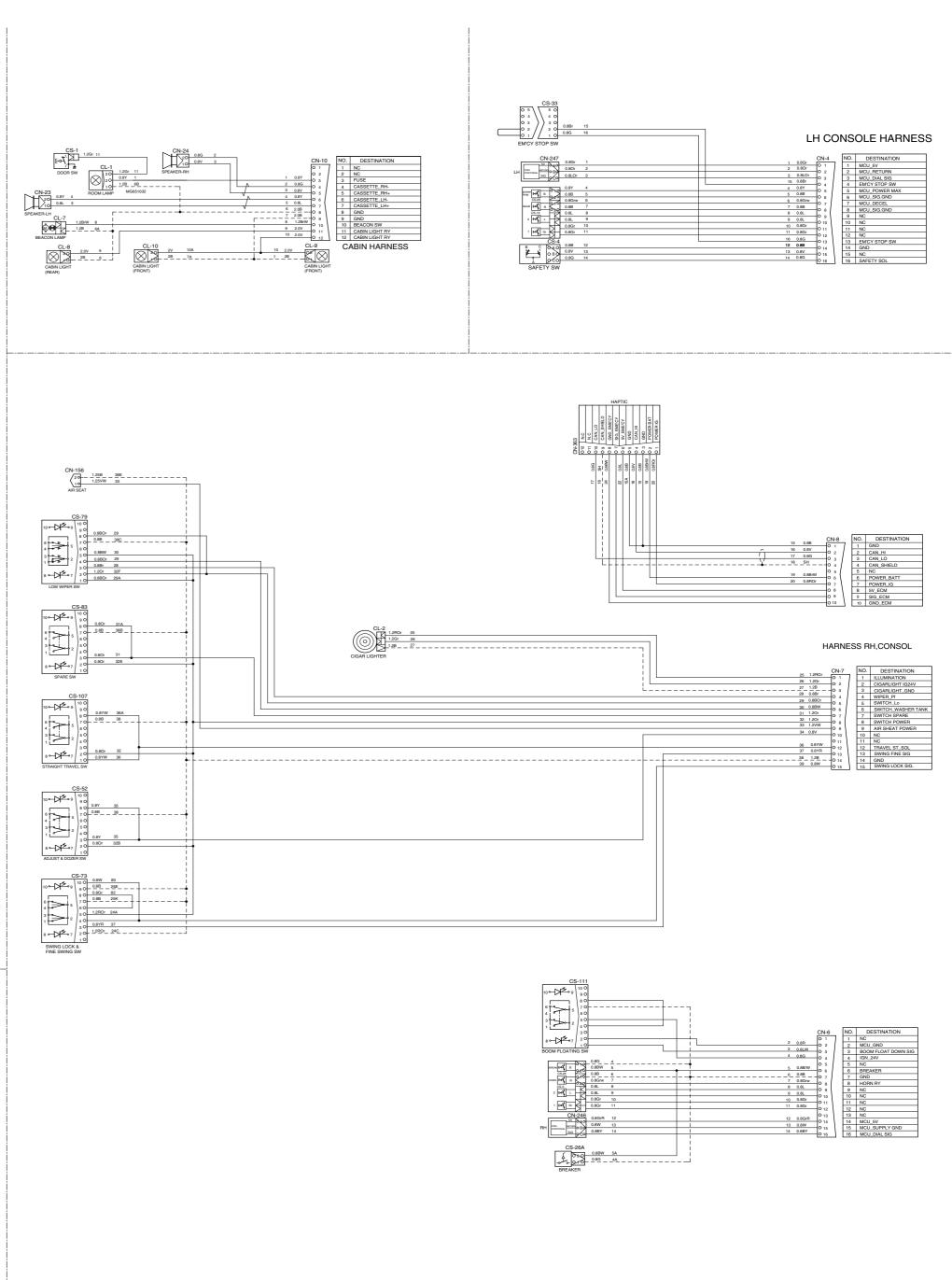
- 19 Boom down pressure sensor
- 20 Arm in/swing pressure sensor
- 21 Attach pressure sensor
- 22 Travel pressure sensor
- 23 Air cleaner sensor
- 24 Solenoid valve
- 25 Pump EPPR valve
- 26 Boom priority EPPR valve
- 27 MCU

GROUP 2 ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT



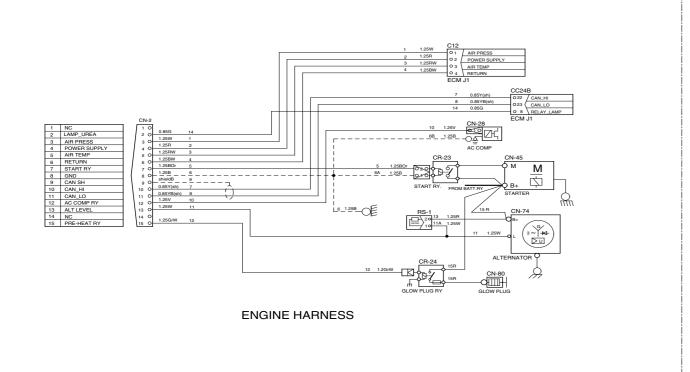
· ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT (2/5, SERIAL NO.: -#0256)

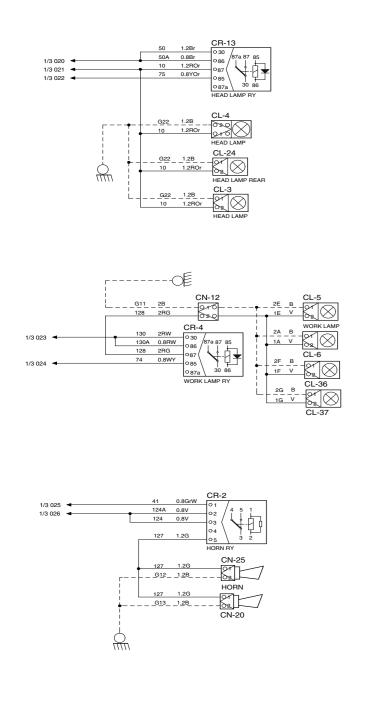


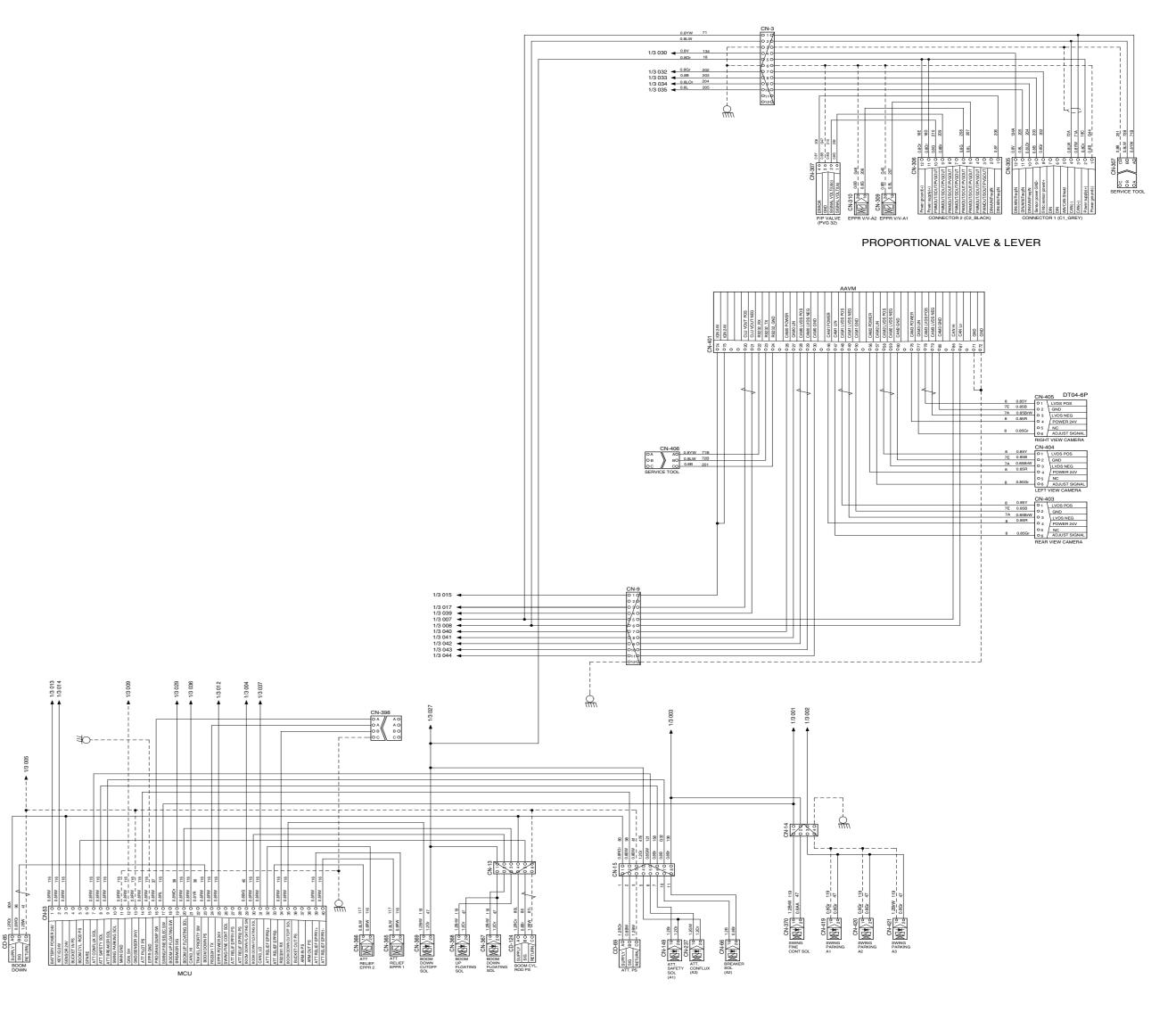


330L4EC02A

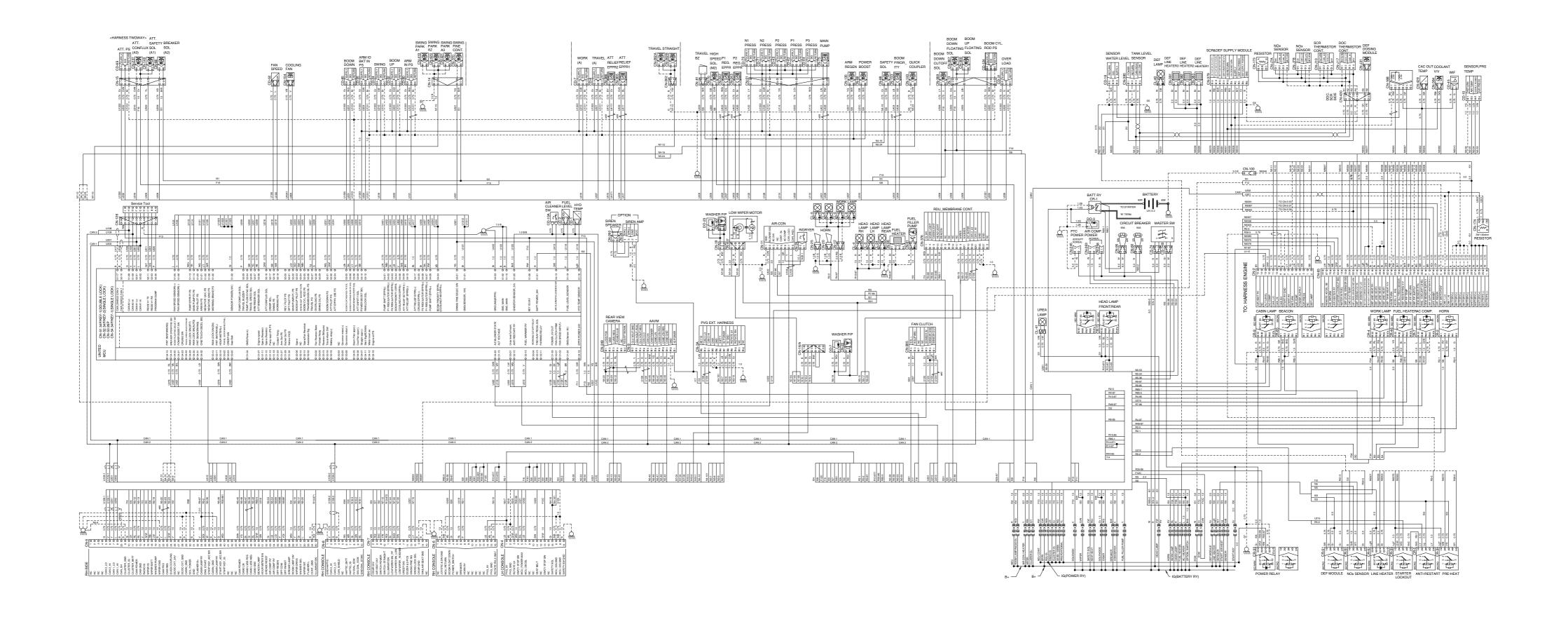
· ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT (3/5, SERIAL NO.: -#0256)



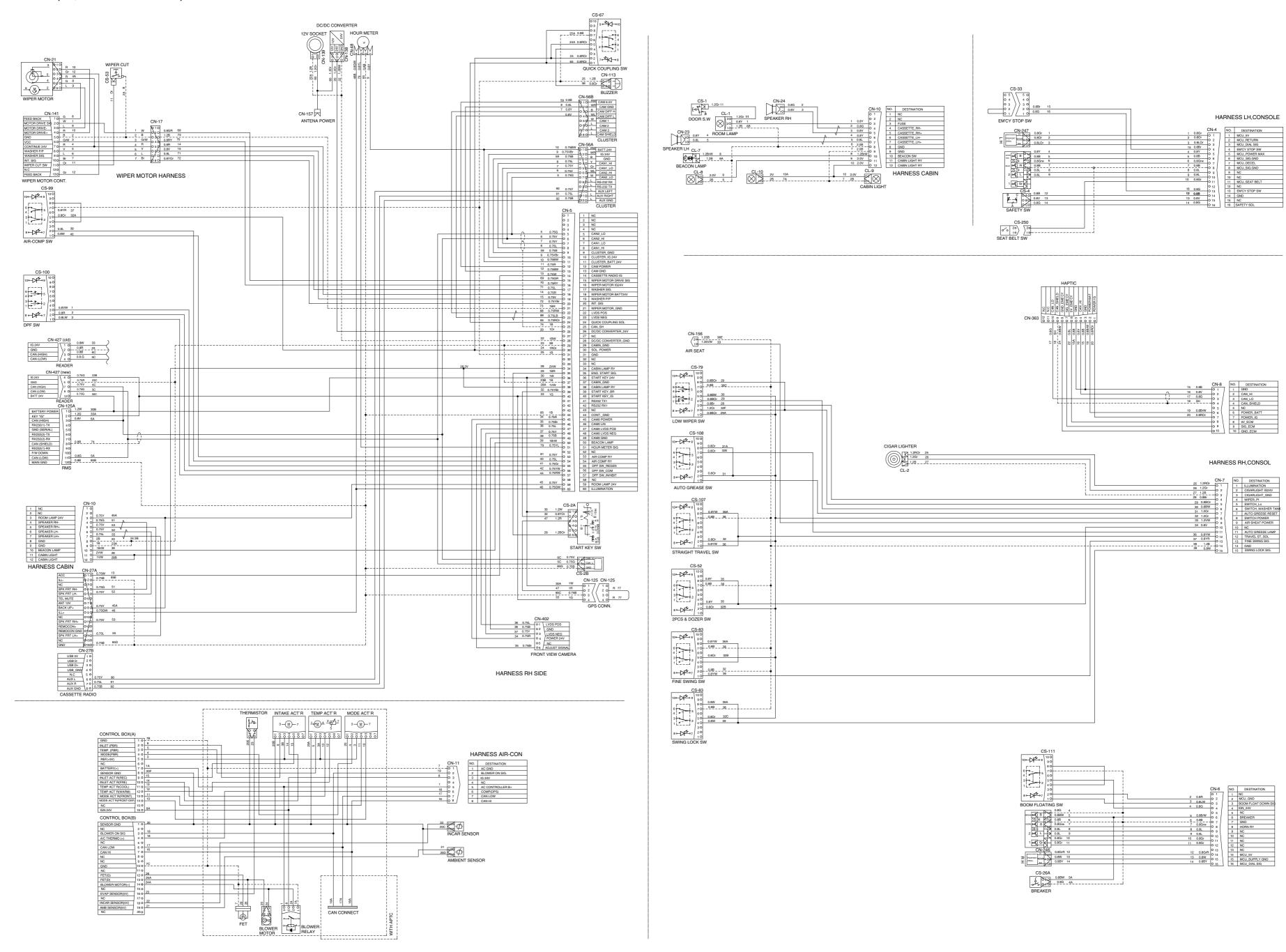




330L4EC03A



ELECTRICAL CIRCUIT (5/5, SERIAL NO.: #0257-)

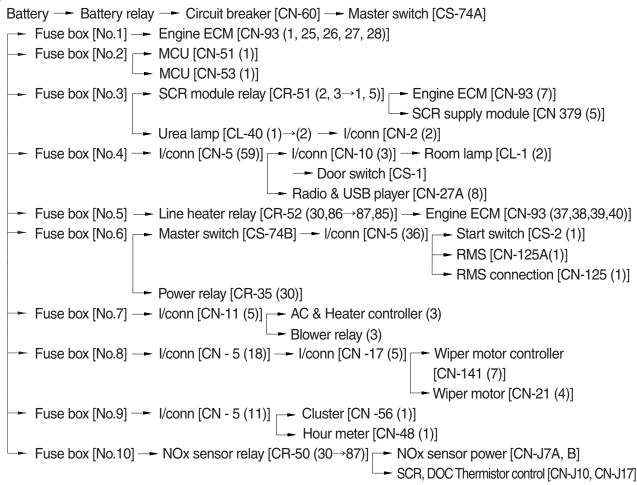


MEMORANDUM

1. POWER CIRCUIT

The negative terminal of battery is grounded to the machine chassis through master switch. When the start switch is in the OFF position, the current flows from the positive battery terminal as shown below.

1) OPERATING FLOW



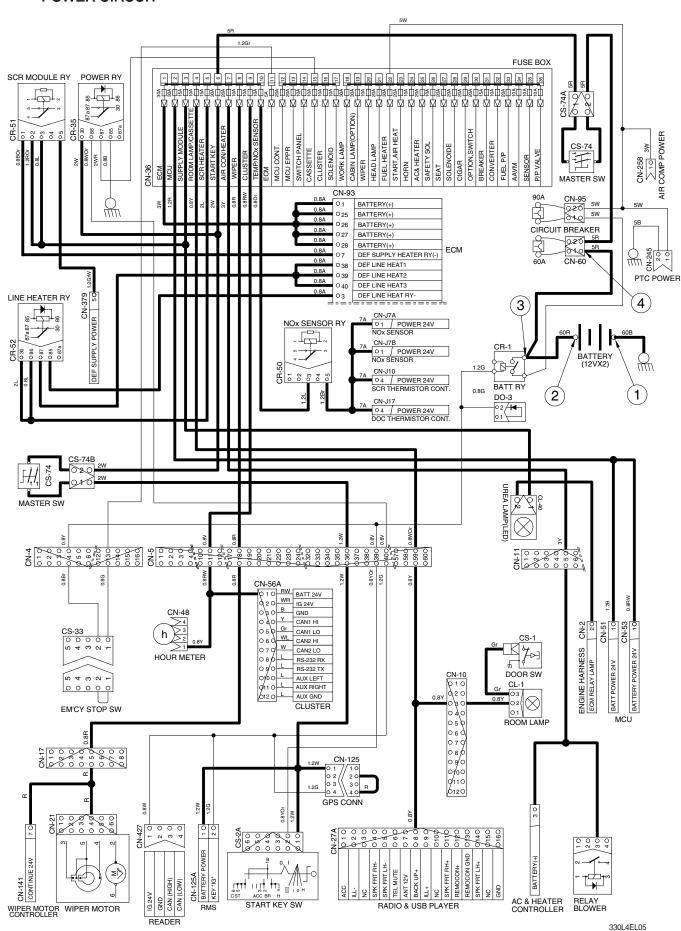
I/conn : Intermediate connector

2) CHECK POINT

Engine	Start switch	Check point	Voltage
	OFF	① - GND (battery 1EA)	10~12.5V
OFF		② - GND (battery 2EA)	20~25V
OFF		③ - GND (battery 2EA)	20~25V
		④ - GND (fusible link)	20~25V

% GND: Ground

POWER CIRCUIT



2. STARTING CIRCUIT

1) OPERATING FLOW

```
Battery(+) terminal — Battery relay [CR-1] — Circuit breaker [CN-60] — Master switch [CS-74A] — Fuse box [No.6] — Master switch [CS-74B] — I/conn [CN-5(36)] — Start switch [CS-2(1)]
```

(1) When start key switch is in ON position

```
Start switch ON [CS-2 (2)] → I/conn [CN-5 (39)]

Battery relay [CR-1] → Battery relay operating (all power is supplied with the electric component)

I/conn [CN-4 (4)] → Emergency engine stop sw [CS-33 (2)→(1)] → I/conn [CN-4 (13)]

Fuse box [No. 11]

Start switch ON [CS-2 (3)] → RMS [CN-125A (2)

RMS conn [CN-125 (2)→(4)]

I/conn [CN-5 (40)] → Power relay [CR-35 (86) → (87)]

Fuse box [No.15]

I/conn [CN-427 (1)]
```

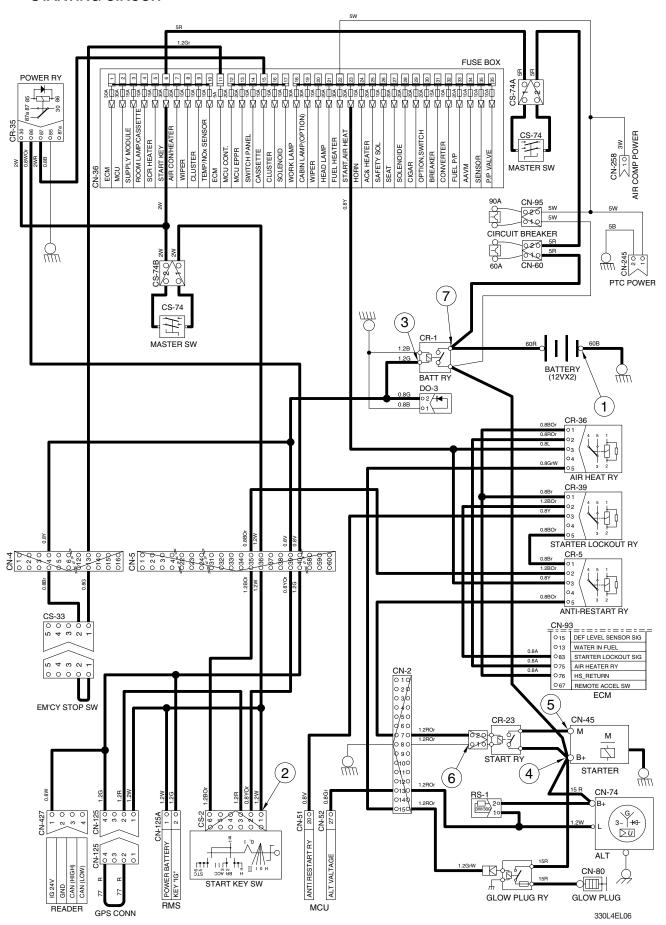
(2) When start key switch is in START position

```
Start switch START [CS-2 (6)] \longrightarrow I/conn [CN-5 (35)] \longrightarrow Anti-restart relay [CR-5 (2) \rightarrow (5)] \longrightarrow I/conn [CN-2 (7)] \longrightarrow Start relay [CR-23]
```

2) CHECK POINT

Engine	Start switch	Check point	Voltage
		① - GND (battery)	
		② - GND (start key)	
		③ - GND (battery relay M4)	
OPERATING	START	④ - GND (starter B ⁺)	20~25V
		⑤ - GND (starter M)	
		⑥ - GND (start relay)	
		⑦ - GND (battery relay M8)	

STARTING CIRCUIT



3. CHARGING CIRCUIT

When the starter is activated and the engine is started, the operator releases the key switch to the ON position.

Charging current generated by operating alternator flows into the battery through the battery relay [CR-1].

The current also flows from alternator to each electrical component and controller through the fuse box.

1) OPERATING FLOW

(1) Warning flow

Alternator "L" terminal — I/conn [CN-2 (13)] — MCU alternator level [CN-52 (27)] — Cluster charging warning lamp (Via serial interface)

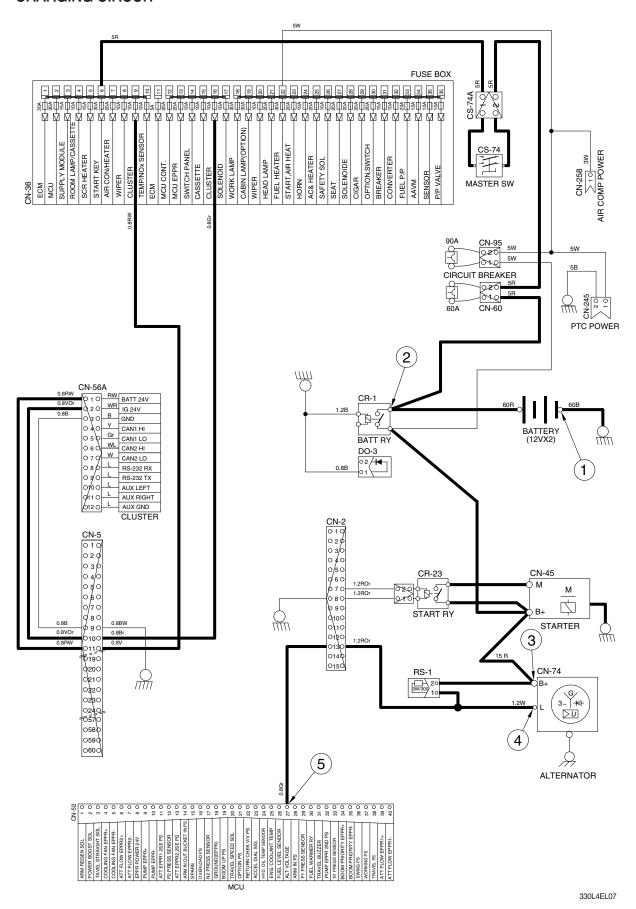
(2) Charging flow

2) CHECK POINT

Engine	Start switch	Check point	Voltage
		① - GND (battery voltage)	
		② - GND (battery relay)	
Run	ON	③ - GND (alternator B ⁺ terminal)	20~25V
		④ - GND (alternator L terminal)	
		⑤ - GND (MCU)	

*** GND: Ground**

CHARGING CIRCUIT



4. HEAD AND WORK LIGHT CIRCUIT

1) OPERATING FLOW

Fuse box (No.21) — Head light relay [CR-13 (30, 86)] Fuse box (No.18) — Work light relay [CR-4 (30, 86)]

(1) Head light switch ON

Head light switch ON [CN-376 (7)] — Head light relay [CR-13 (85) \rightarrow (87)] — Head light ON [CL-3 (1), CL-4 (1), CL-24 (1)] — I/conn [CN-7 (1)] — Cigar light [CL-2] — I/conn [CN-5 (60)] — Radio & USB player illumination ON [CN-27A (9)]

(2) Work light switch ON

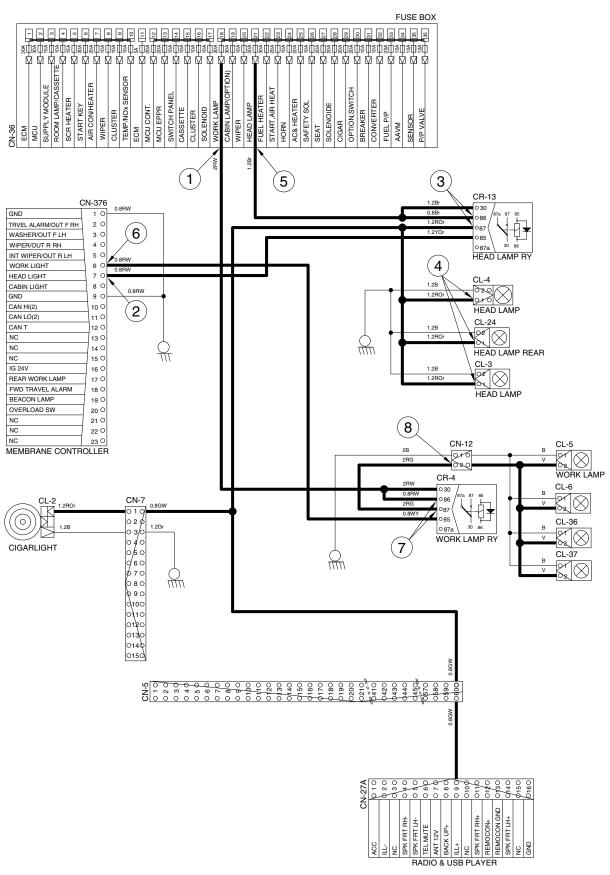
Work light switch ON [CN-376 (6)] → Work light relay [CR-4 (85) → (87)] → I/conn [CN-12 (2)] → Work light ON [CL-5 (2), CL-6 (2), CL-36 (2), CL-37 (2)]

2) CHECK POINT

Engine	Start switch	Check point	Voltage
		① - GND (fuse box)	
	ON	② - GND (switch power output)	
		③ - GND (head light relay)	00.057
CTOD		④ - GND (head light)	
STOP		⑤ - GND (fuse box)	20~25V
		⑥ - GND (switch power output)	
		⑦ - GND (work light relay)	
		8 - GND (work light)	

***** GND : Ground

HEAD AND WORK LIGHT CIRCUIT



330L4EL08

5. BEACON LAMP AND CAB LIGHT CIRCUIT

1) OPERATING FLOW

```
Fuse box (No.30) — Beacon lamp relay [CR-36 (2, 3)] Fuse box (No.19) — Cab light relay [CR-9 (30, 86)]
```

(1) Beacon lamp switch ON

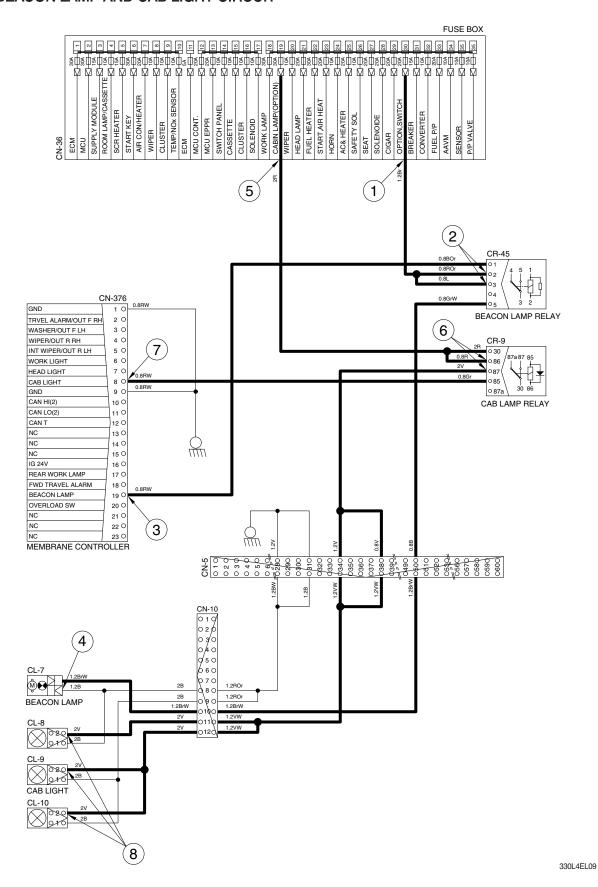
(2) Cab light switch ON

2) CHECK POINT

Engine	Start switch	Check point	Voltage
		① - GND (fuse box)	
	ON	② - GND (beacon lamp relay)	00.057
		③ - GND (switch power output)	
CTOD		④ - GND (beacon lamp)	
STOP	ON	⑤ - GND (fuse box)	20~25V
		⑥ - GND (cabin light relay)	
		⑦ - GND (switch power output)	
		8 - GND (cab light)	

*** GND: Ground**

BEACON LAMP AND CAB LIGHT CIRCUIT



6. WIPER AND WASHER CIRCUIT

1) OPERATING FLOW

(1) Key switch ON

Fuse box (No.14) → Membrance controller [CN-376 (16)]

(2) Wiper switch ON (Intermittent)

Wiper switch ON [CN-376 (5)] → I/conn [CN-5 (20)] → I/conn [CN-17 (8)]

— Wiper motor controller [CN-141 (10)→(3)] — Wiper motor [CN-21 (6)] — Intermittently operating

(3) Wiper switch ON (continual)

Wiper switch ON [CN-376(4)] → I/conn[CN-5(15)] → I/conn[CN-17(2)]

— Wiper motor controller [CN-141(2) → (4)] — Wiper motor [CN-21(2)] — Continual operating

(4) Washer switch ON

Washer switch ON [CN-376 (3)] → I/conn [CN-5 (17)] → I/conn [CN-17 (7)]

- → Wiper motor controller [CN-141 (9) → (8)] → I/conn [CN-17 (6)] → I/conn [CN-5 (19)]
- → Washer pump [CN-22 (1)] → Washer operating

Wiper switch ON [CN-376 (4)] → I/conn[CN-5 (15)] → I/conn[CN-17 (2)]

— Wiper motor controller [CN-141 (2) → (4)] — Wiper motor [CN-21 (2)] — Continual operating

(5) Auto parking (when switch OFF)

Switch OFF [CN-376 (4)] - Wiper motor parking position by wiper motor controller

2) OPERATING FLOW (LOW WIPER)

(1) Key switch ON

Fuse box (No. 30) → I/conn [CN-7 (8)] → Low wiper switch [CS-79 (1, 5)]

(2) Wiper switch ON (1st)

Wiper switch ON [CS-79 (2 \rightarrow 3)] \longrightarrow I/conn [CN-7 (4)] \longrightarrow Wiper motor [CN-407 (1)] \longrightarrow Wiper operating

(3) Wiper switch ON (2nd)

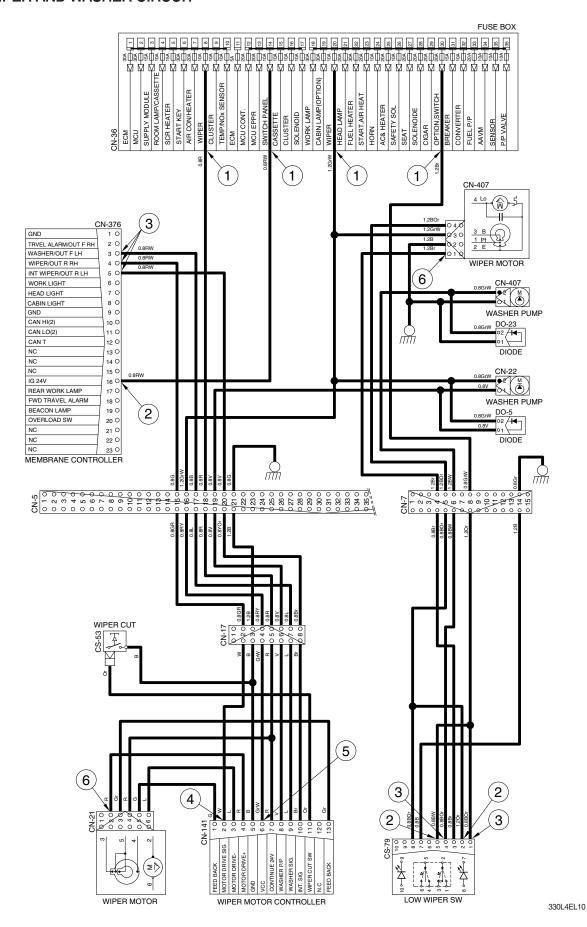
Wiper switch ON [CS-79 (5 \rightarrow 4)] \longrightarrow I/conn [CN-7 (6)] \longrightarrow Washer pump [CN-407 (2)] \longrightarrow Washer operating

3) CHECK POINT

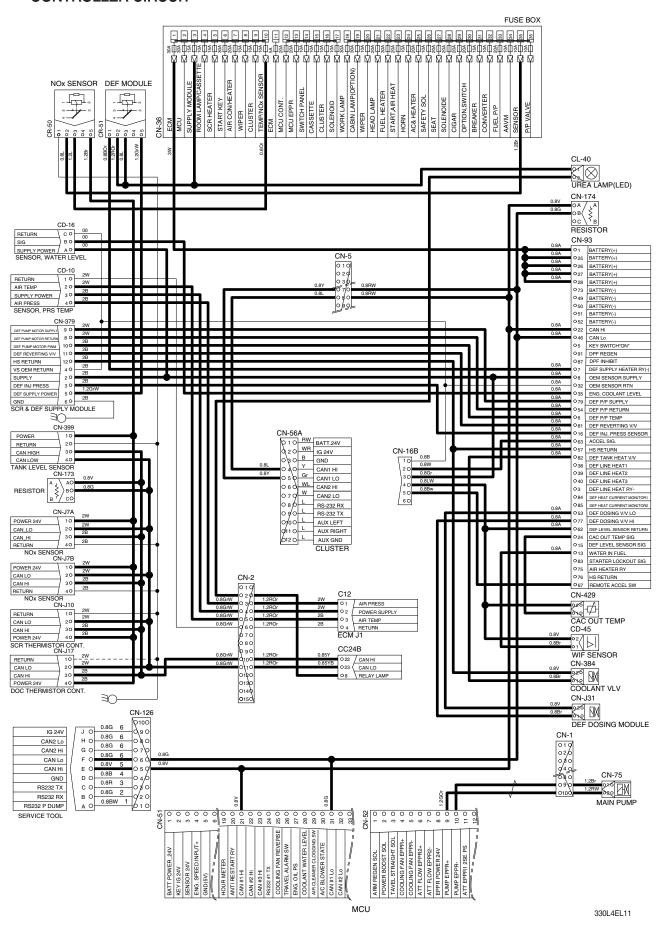
Engine	Start switch	Check point	Voltage
		① - GND (fuse box)	20~25V
		② - GND (switch power input)	
STOP	ON	③ - GND (switch power output)	0 ~ 5V
0101		④ - GND (wiper power input)	0 4 3 4
		⑤ - GND (wiper power output)	24V
		⑥ - GND (wiper motor)	0 or 24V

***** GND : Ground

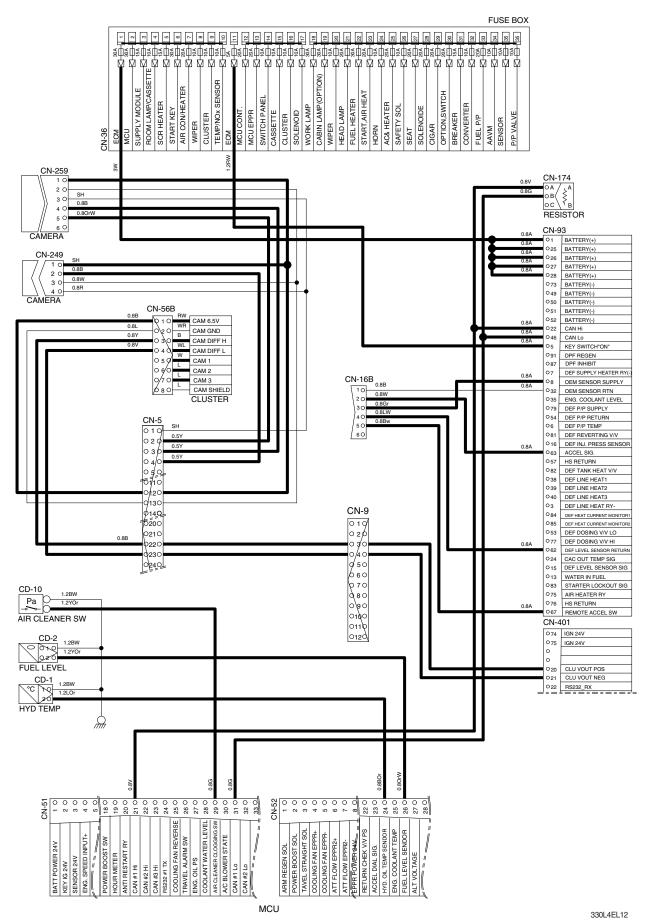
WIPER AND WASHER CIRCUIT



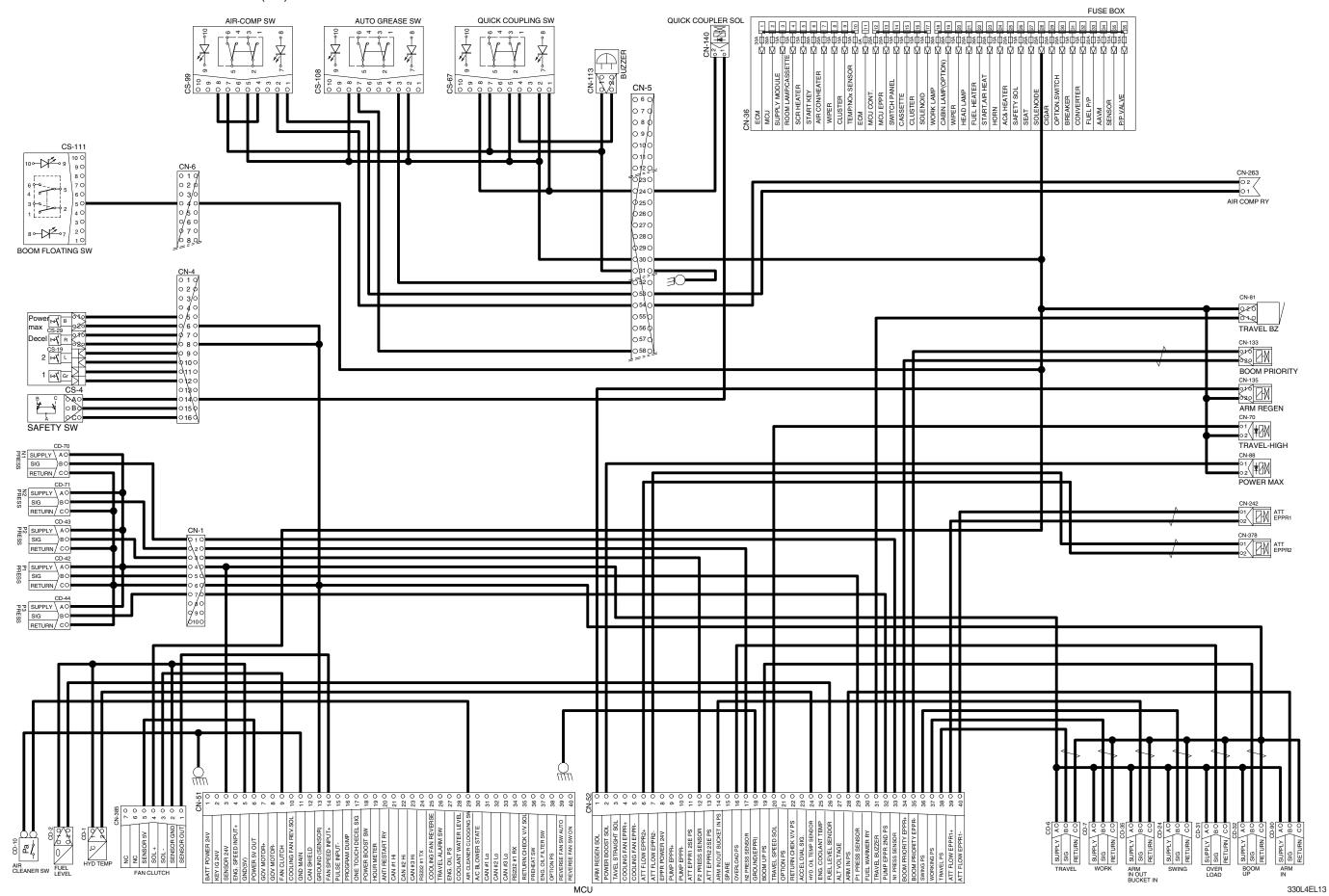
CONTROLLER CIRCUIT



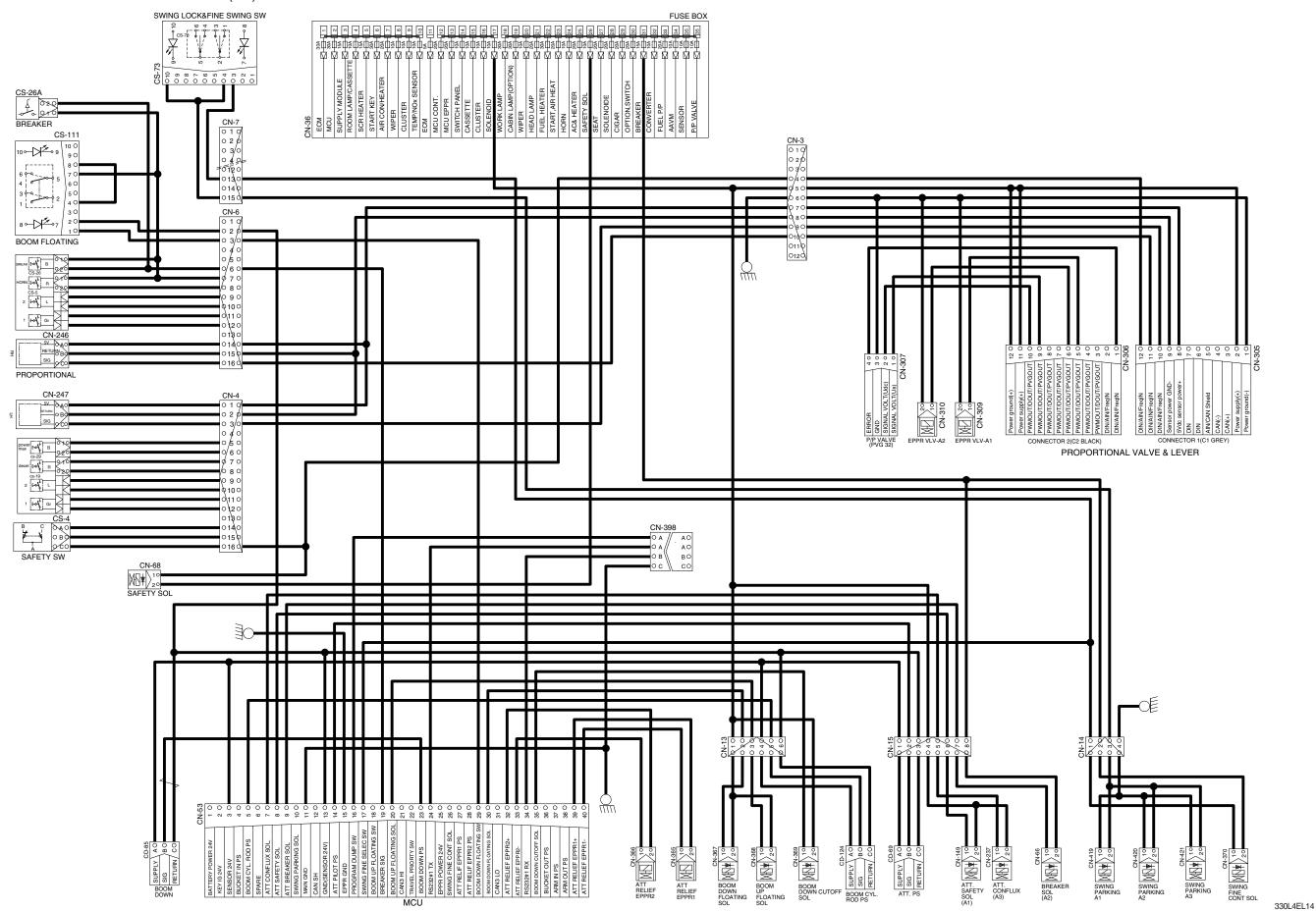
MONITORING CIRCUIT



ELECTRIC CIRCUIT FOR HYDRAULIC (1/2)



ELECTRIC CIRCUIT FOR HYDRAULIC (2/2)



GROUP 3 ELECTRICAL COMPONENT SPECIFICATION

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Battery		12V × 160Ah (2EA)	 * Check specific gravity 1.280 over : Over charged 1.280 ~ 1.250 : Normal 1.250 below : Recharging
Battery relay	CR-1	Rated load: 24V 100A (continuity) 1000A (30seconds)	 Check coil resistance(M4 to M4) Normal : About 50 Ω Check contact Normal : ∞ Ω
Glow plug relay	CR-24	24V 200A	* Check contact Normal : 0.942 Ω (For terminal 1-GND)
Start key	CS-2	B-BR : 24V 1A B-ACC : 24V 10A B-ST : 24V 40A	* Check contact OFF: $\infty \Omega$ (for each terminal) ON: 0Ω (for terminal 1-3 and 1-2) START: 0Ω (for terminal 1-5)
Pressure sensor	O A SUPPLY O B SIG O C RETURN CD-6 CD-7 CD-16 CD-24 CD-31 CD-32 CD-35 CD-42 CD-43 CD-44 CD-69 CD-70 CD-71 CD-85 CD-90 CD-124	8~30V	* Check contact Normal : 0.1 Ω
Resistor	O A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A A	4W	* Check resistance A-B : 120 Ω

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Glow plug	CN-80	24V 200A	* Check resistance0.25~0.12 Ω
Temperature sensor (hydraulic)	°C 20	-	 Check resistance 50°C : 804 Ω 80°C : 310 Ω 100°C : 180 Ω
Air cleaner pressure switch	Pa CD-10	(N.O TYPE)	* Check contact High level : $\infty \Omega$ Low level : 0Ω
Fuel sender	CD-2	-	* Check resistance Full: 50 Ω 6/12: 350 Ω 11/12: 100 Ω 5/12: 400 Ω 10/12: 150 Ω 4/12: 450 Ω 9/12: 200 Ω 3/12: 500 Ω 8/12: 250 Ω 2/12: 550 Ω 7/12: 300 Ω 1/12: 600 Ω Empty warning: 700 Ω
Relay (air con blower)	3 4 40 30 20 1 2 10	24V 20A	* Check resistance Normal : About 200 Ω (for terminal 1-3) 0 Ω (for terminal 2-4)
Relay	CR-2 CR-5 CR-36 CR-39 CR-45 CR-50 CR-51	24V 16A	* Check resistance Normal : About 160 Ω (for terminal 1-2) 0Ω (for terminal 3-4) $\infty\Omega$ (for terminal 3-5)

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Relay	CR-4 CR-7 CR-9 CR-13 CR-35 CR-46 CR-50 CR-52	24V 16A	% Check resistance Normal : About 160 Ω (for terminal 85-86) 0Ω (for terminal 30-87a) $\infty\Omega$ (for terminal 30-87)
Solenoid valve	CN-66 CN-68 CN-70 CN-88 CN-135 CN-140 CN-149 CN-237 CN-262 CN-367 CN-368 CN-369 CN-370 CN-384 CN-419 CN-420 CN-421 CN-J31	24V 1A	* Check resistance Normal : 15~25 Ω (for terminal 1-2)
EPPR valve	CN-75 CN-133 CN-154 CN-242 CN-309 CN-310 CN-365 CN-366 CN-378	700mA	* Check resistance Normal: 15~25 Ω (for terminal 1-2)
Speaker	O 1 O 2 CN-23(LH) CN-24(RH)	20W	* Check resistance Normal : A few Ω
Switch (locking type)	CS-52 CS-67 CS-83 CS-99 CS-107 CS-108 CS-111	24V 1.5A	* Check contact Normal ON : 0 Ω (for terminal 3-7, 4-8) ∞ Ω (for terminal 7-9, 8-10) OFF: ∞ Ω (for terminal 3-7, 4-8) 0 Ω (for terminal 7-9, 8-10)
Room lamp	3 O 2 O 1 O CL-1	24V 10W	% Check disconnection Normal : $1.0 \ \Omega$ ON : $0 \ \Omega$ (For terminal 1-2) $\infty \ \Omega$ (For terminal 1-3) OFF : $\infty \ \Omega$ (For terminal 1-2) $0 \ \Omega$ (For terminal 1-3)

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Head lamp, Work lamp, Cab lamp	CL-3 CL-4 CL-5 CL-6 CL-8 CL-9 CL-10 CL-24 CL-36 CL-37	24V 65W (H3 Type)	** Check disconnection Normal : 1.2 Ω
Beacon lamp	CL-7	21V 70W (H1 Type)	* Check disconnection Normal : A few Ω
Fuel filler pump	○1 ○	24V 10A 35 <i>l</i> /min	** Check resistance Normal : 1.0 Ω
Hour meter	4 3 2 h	16~32V	Check operation Supply power(24V) to terminal No.2 and connect terminal No.1 and ground
Horn	CN-20 CN-25	DC22~28V 2A	Check operation Supply power(24V) to each terminal and connect ground.
Safety switch	2 3 1 0 2 0 1 CS-4	24V 15A (N.C TYPE)	% Check contact Normal : 0Ω (for terminal 1-2) $\infty \Omega$ (for terminal 1-3) Operating : $\infty \Omega$ (for terminal 1-2) 0Ω (for terminal 1-3)

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Wiper cut switch	CS-53	24V (N.O TYPE)	** Check contact Normal : 0 Ω (one pin to ground)
Receiver dryer	P 2 0 CN-29	24V 2.5A	
Radio & USB player	2 P- GND 1LL GND 1LL GND 2 PO 3 O SPEK FRT LH+ SPEK FRT LH+ O 1 O ANT 12V BACK UP+ O 1 O NC NC SPEK FRT LH+ O 1 O NC NC SPEK FRT LH+ O 1 O NC NC SPEK FRT LH+ O 1 O NC NC SPEK FRT LH+ O 1 O NC SPEK FRT LH+ O 1 O NC SPEK FRT LH+ O 1 O NC O 1 O O 1 O O 1 O O 2 O O 1 O O 2 O O 1 O O 2 O O 1 O O 2 O O 1 O O 2 O O 1 O O 2 O O 1 O O 2 O O 1 O O 2 O O 1 O O 2 O O 3 O O 4 O O 5 O O 6 O O 7 O O 1 O O 1 O O 1 O O 2 O O 1 O O 1 O O 2 O O 1 O O 2 O O 3 O O 4 O O 5 O O 6 O O 6 O O 7 O O 7 O O 8 O O 1 O O	24V 2A	** Check voltage 20~25V (for terminal 1-3, 3-8)
Washer pump	M 2 CN-22 CN-408	24V 3.8A	* Check contact Normal: 10.7 Ω (for terminal 1-2)
Wiper motor	3 0 10 0 20 0 30 0 40 0 60 0 60 0 60 0 60 0 60 0 6	24V 2A	* Check disconnection Normal : 7 Ω (for terminal 2-6)
DC/DC Converter	0 3 0 12V 12V 24V GND 24V CN-138	12V 3A	% Check voltage24V (for terminal 1-2)12V (for terminal 1-3)

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Cigar lighter	CL-2	24V 5A 1.4W	 Check coil resistance Normal : About 1M Ω Check contact Normal : ∞ Ω Operating time : 5~15sec
Alternator	CN-74 CN-74	Denso 24V 95A	** Check contact Normal : 0 Ω (for terminal B+-L) Normal : 24~27.5V
Starter	M M M CN-45	Denso 24V 7.8kW	Check contact Normal: 0.1 Ω
Travel alarm	CN-81	24V 0.5A	* Check contact Normal : 5.2 Ω
Aircon compressor	CN-28 =	24V 79W	Check contact Normal: 13.4 Ω
Start relay	CR-23	24V 300A	Check contact Normal: 0.94 Ω (for terminal 1-2)

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Blower motor	2 <u>M</u>	24V 9.5A	** Check resistance Normal: 2.5 Ω (for terminal 1-2)
Duct sensor (switch)	200	1°C OFF 4°C ON	* Check resistance Normal : 0 Ω (for terminal 1-2), the atmosphere temp : Over 4°C
Door switch	CS-1	24V 2W	* Check resistance Normal : About 5M Ω
Switch (power max, one touch decel, horn, breaker)	CS-5 CS-19 CS-26 CS-29	24V 6A	** Check resistance Normal: ∞ Ω
Circuit breaker	CS-60 CS-95	60A	 Check disconnection Normal: 0 Ω (connect ring terminal and check resist between terminal 1 and 2)
Master switch	CS-74A, CS-74B	6-36V	Check disconnection Normal: 0.1 Ω

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
Quick clamp buzzer	CN-113	24V 200mA 107±4dB	
Socket	O1 O2 CN-139	12V 10A	
Switch	CS-73 CS-79 CS-100	24V 8A	% Check contact Normal ON : 0Ω (for terminal 3-7, 4-8) Ω (for terminal 7-9, 8-10) OFF : Ω (for terminal 3-7, 4-8) Ω (for terminal 7-9, 8-10)
Fuel heater	CN-96	-	
DEF/AdBlue® line heater	O 1 O 2 O CN-381 CN-382 CN-383	-	
WIF sensor	©2 ©1 CD-45	-	

Part name	Symbol	Specifications	Check
DEF/AdBlue® sensor	O1 POWER 24V O2 CAN LO O3 CAN HI O4 RETURN CN-399 CN-J7A CN-J7B CN-J10 CN-J17	-	
CAC out temperature sensor	CN-429	-	
DEF/AdBlue® fill up warning lamp (LED)	CL-40	-	
Proportional valve sensor	SIG CO-246 CN-247	-	

GROUP 4 CONNECTORS

1. CONNECTOR DESTINATION

Connector	T	No. of	Darkinskins	Connecto	or part No.
number	Type	pin	Destination	Female	Male
CN-1	AMP	10	I/conn (Frame harness-Pump PS harness)	S816-010002	S816-110002
CN-2	AMP	15	I/conn (Frame harness-Engine harness)	2-85262-1	368301-1
CN-3	TYCO	12	I/conn (Frame harness-Pro vlv harness)	174661-2	368537-1
CN-4	AMP	16	I/conn (Console harness LH-Frame harness)	368047-1	368050-1
CN-5	DEUTSCH	60	I/conn (Side harness RH-Frame harness)	DRB16-60SAE-L018	DRB12-60P-L018
CN-6	AMP	16	I/conn (Console harness RH-Frame harness)	368047-1	368050-1
CN-7	AMP	15	I/conn (Console harness RH-Frame harness)	2-85262-1	2-85262-1
CN-8	AMP	10	I/conn (Console harness RH-Frame harness)	S816-010002	S816-110002
CN-9	DEUTSCH	12	I/conn (AAVM harness-Frame harness)	DT06-12SA-P021	DT04-12PA-P021
CN-10	DEUTSCH	12	I/conn (Cab harness-Side harness RH)	DT06-12S-EP06	DT04-12PA-P021
CN-11	DEUTSCH	8	I/conn (Frame harness-Aircon harness)	DT06-8S-EP06	-
CN-12	DEUTSCH	2	I/conn (Frame harness-Boom wire harness)	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E004
CN-13	AMP	8	Boom floating	174262-2	174264-2
CN-15	AMP	8	I/conn (Frame harness-Breaker sol)	174982-2	174984-2
CN-16	AMP	6	Emergency engine start & speed control	S816-006002	S816-106002
CN-17	AMP	8	I/conn (Wiper harness-Side harness RH)	S816-008002	S816-108002
CN-18	AMP	2	Washer tank 2	174352-2	174354-2
CN-20	MOLEX	2	Horn	36825-0211	-
CN-21	AMP	6	Wiper motor	S810-006202	-
CN-22	KET	2	Washer tank 1	MG640605	-
CN-23	KET	2	Speaker-LH	MG610070	-
CN-24	KET	2	Speaker-RH	MG610070	-
CN-25	DEUTSCH	2	Horn	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-27A	KUM	16	Radio & USB player	PK145-16017	-
CN-27B	AMP	8	Radio & USB player	-	174984-2
CN-28	KUM	1	Aircon compressor	NMWP01F-B	-
CN-29	KET	2	Receiver dryer	MG640795	-
CN-36	-	-	Fuse & relay box	21Q7-10910	-
CN-45	RING-TERM	-	Starter motor B+	S820-108000	-
CN-48	KET	1	Hour meter	2-520193-2	-
CN-51	DEUTSCH	40	MCU	DRC26-40SA	-
CN-52	DEUTSCH	40	MCU	DRC26-40SB	-
CN-53	DEUTSCH	40	MCU	DRC26-40SC	-
CN-56A	AMP	12	Cluster	-	174663-2
CN-56B	AMP	8	Cluster	-	174984-2
CN-60	YAZAKI	2	Circuit breaker	7222-4220-30	-
CN-61	DEUTSCH	2	Fuel filler pump	DT06-2S-EP06	-

Connector	T	No. of	Destruction	Connecto	or part No.
number	Type	pin	Destination	Female	Male
CN-66	DEUTSCH	2	Breaker solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-68	DEUTSCH	2	Safety solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-70	DEUTSCH	2	Travel high solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-74	RING-TERM	1	Alternator "L" terminal	S820-108000	-
CN-75	AMP	2	Pump EPPR	S816-002002	-
CN-80	RING-TERM	-	Glow plug	S820-306000	-
CN-81	DEUTSCH	2	Travel buzzer solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-88	DEUTSCH	2	Power max solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-93	DELPHI	60	ECM	13964577	-
CN-95	YAZAKI	2	Circuit breaker	-	7222-4220-30
CN-100	KET	1	ECM ground	MG640944-5	-
CN-113	KET	2	Buzzer	MG651205-5	-
CN-125	Econoseal J	4	RMS connector	S816-004002	S816-104002
CN-125A	DEUTSCH	12	RMS	DT06-12S-P021	DT04-12PA-P021
CN-126	TYCO	10	Service tool	2-1418390-1	S816-110002
CN-133	DEUTSCH	2	Boom priority solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-135	DEUTSCH	2	Arm regeneration solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-138	FASTEN	3	DC/DC Converter	S810-003202	-
CN-139	FASTEN	2	12V socket	172434-2	-
CN-140	DEUTSCH	2	Quick clamp solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005
CN-141	AMP	13	Wiper motor controller	172498-1	-
CN-147	AMP	4	Fuel heater	2-967325-3	-
CN-149	DEUTSCH	2	Attach safety solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-154	DEUTSCH	2	Cooling fan	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-156	DEUTSCH	2	Air seat	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005
CN-157	AMP	1	Antena power	S822-014002	-
CN-173	DEUTSCH	3	Resistor	DT06-3S-EP06	DT04-3P-EP10
CN-174	DEUTSCH	3	Resistor	DT06-3S-EP06	DT04-3P-EP10
CN-237	DEUTSCH	2	Attach conflux solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-242	DEUTSCH	2	Attach EPPR 1	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-243	DEUTSCH	2	Attach EPPR 2	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-245	FCI	4	PTC power	180900-0	-
CN-246	DEUTSCH	3	Proportional valve-RH	DT06-3S	DT04-3P
CN-247	DEUTSCH	3	Proportional valve-LH	DT06-3S	DT04-3P
CN-249	DEUTSCH	4	Rear view camera	DT06-4S-EP06	DT04-4P-E005
CN-258	KET	1	Air compressor power	MG640944-5	MG650943-5
CN-259	AMP	6	Camera	S816-006002	S816-106002
CN-262	AMP	2	Straight travel solenoid	174352-2	174354-2
CN-262A	DEUTSCH	2	Straight travel solenoid 1	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005
CN-262B	DEUTSCH	2	Straight travel solenoid 2	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005

Connector	Time	No. of	Doctination	Connecto	or part No.
number	Type	pin	Destination	Female	Male
CN-263	DEUTSCH	2	Air compressor relay	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005
CN-305	DEUTSCH	12	Proportional-Connector-1	DTM06-12SA	-
CN-306	DEUTSCH	12	Proportional-Connector-2	DTM06-12SB	-
CN-307	DEUTSCH	3	Proportional-Service tool	DT06-3S-E005	DT06-3P-EP06
CN-308	AMP	4	Proportional-PVG32	2-967059-1	-
CN-309	DEUTSCH	2	Proportional-EPPR valve-A1	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-310	DEUTSCH	2	Proportional-EPPR valve-A2	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-363	AMP	12	Haptic controller	174045-2	-
CN-365	DEUTSCH	2	Attach EPPR valve-LH	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005
CN-366	DEUTSCH	2	Attach EPPR valve-RH	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005
CN-367	AMP	2	Boom down floating solenoid	85202-1	-
CN-368	DEUTSCH	2	Boom up floating solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005
CN-369	DEUTSCH	2	Boom down cut off solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005
CN-370	DEUTSCH	2	Swing fine control solenoid	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005
CN-376	TYCO	23	Membrane controller	7706087-2	-
CN-379	TYCO	2	SCR & DEF/AdBlue® supply module	2-1703639-1	-
CN-381	DELPHI	2	Line heater 1	C-0936059-01	-
CN-382	DELPHI	2	Line heater 2	C-0936059-01	-
CN-383	DELPHI	2	Line heater 3	C-0936059-01	-
CN-384	DEUTSCH	2	Coolant valve	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-385	-	7	Fan clutch	965570	-
CN-398	DEUTSCH	4	RS232	DT04-4S-E005	DT06-4P-E005
CN-399	TYCO	4	DEF/AdBlue® tank level sensor	1-967325-1	-
CN-402	DEUTSCH	6	Front view camera	DT06-6S-P021	DT04-6P-P021
CN-403	DEUTSCH	6	Rear view camera	DT06-6S-EP06	DT04-6P-EP14
CN-404	DEUTSCH	6	LH view camera	DT06-6S-EP06	DT04-6P-EP14
CN-405	DEUTSCH	6	RH view camera	DT06-6S-EP06	DT04-6P-EP14
CN-406	DEUTSCH	3	RS-232 (AAVM)	DT06-3S-EP06	DT06-3P-E005
CN-407	DEUTSCH	4	Low wiper motor	DT04-4S-EP06	DT06-4P-E005
CN-408	FCI	4	Washer tank	MG640795	-
CN-419	DEUTSCH	2	Swing parking-A1	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-420	DEUTSCH	2	Swing parking-A2	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CN-421	DEUTSCH	2	Swing parking-A3	DT06-2S-EP06	-
ON 407	MOLEY	4	Decides DMO	039012040	026013096
CN-427	MOLEX	12	Reader-RMS	5557-12R	5559-12P
CN-429	DELPHI	4	CAC Out temp	12162197	-
CN-J7A	TYCO	4	DOC Nox sensor	2-1418390-1	-
CN-J7B	TYCO	4	SCR Nox sensor	1-1418390-1	-
CN-J10	TYCO	4	SCR Thermistor	3-1418390-1	-
CN-J17	TYCO	4	DOC Thermistor	4-1418390-1	-
CN-J31	BOSCH	2	DEF/AdBlue® dosing module	1-928-403-874	-

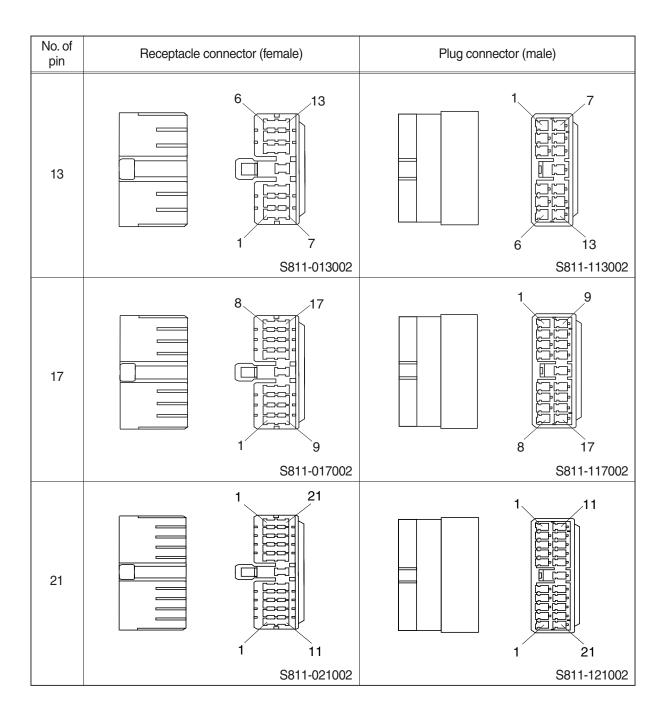
Connector	Time	No. of	Doctination	Connecto	or part No.
number	Type	pin	Destination	Female	Male
· Relay	,				
CR-1	RING-TERM	-	Battery relay	ST710289-2	-
CR-2	-	5	Horn relay	-	-
CR-4	-	5	Working lamp relay	-	-
CR-5	-	5	Anti restart relay	-	-
CR-7	-	5	Aircon compressor relay	-	-
CR-9	-	5	Cabin lamp relay	-	-
CR-13	-	5	Head lamp relay	-	-
CR-23	KET	2	Start relay	S814-002001	S814-102001
CR-24	RING TERM	1	Preheat relay	S822-014000	-
CR-35	-	5	Power relay	-	-
CR-36	-	5	Preheat relay	-	-
CR-39	-	5	Starter lock out relay	-	-
CR-45	-	5	Beacon lamp relay	-	-
CR-46	-	5	Fuel warmer relay	-	-
CR-50	-	5	NOx sensor relay	-	-
CR-51	-	5	DEF/AdBlue® module relay	-	-
CR-52	-	5	Line heater relay	-	-
· Switch					
CS-1	SHUR	1	Door switch	S822-014002	S822-114002
CS-2	WP	6	Start key switch	S814-006100	-
CS-4	DEUTSCH	3	Safety switch	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CS-5	DEUTSCH	2	Horn switch	-	DT04-2P-E005
CS-19	DEUTSCH	2	One touch decel switch	-	DT04-2P-E005
CS-26	DEUTSCH	2	Breaker switch	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CS-26A	AMP	2	Breaker pedal switch	S816-002002	S816-102002
CS-29	DEUTSCH	2	Power max switch	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CS-33	AMP	6	Emergency engine stop switch	S816-006002	S816-106002
CS-52	CARLING	10	Dozer & 2PCS boom switch	VC2-01	-
CS-53	AMP	1	Wiper cut switch	S822-014002	-
CS-67	CARLING	10	Quick clamp switch	VC2-01	-
CS-73	CARLING	10	Swing lock & fine switch	VC2-01	-
CS-74A	TYCO	23	Master switch	7706087-2	-
CS-74B	DEUTSCH	2	Master switch	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CS-78	CARLING	10	Lower wiper switch	VC2-01	-
CS-83	CARLING	10	Spare switch	VC2-01	-
CS-99	CARLING	10	Air compressor switch	VC2-01	-
CS-100	CARLING	10	SCR system cleaning switch	VC2-01	-
CS-107	CARLING	10	Travel straight switch	VC2-01	-

Connector	Time	No. of	Destination	Connecto	or part No.
number	Type	pin	Destination	Female	Male
CS-108	CARLING	10	Auto grease switch	VC2-01	-
CS-111	CARLING	10	Boom floating switch	VC2-01	-
· Light	1	•			1
CL-1	KET	3	Room lamp	MG651032	-
CL-2	AMP	1	Cigar light	S822-014002	S822-114002
CL-3	DEUTSCH	2	Head lamp-LH	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P
CL-4	DEUTSCH	2	Head lamp-RH	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P
CL-5	DEUTSCH	2	Work lamp-LH	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P
CL-6	DEUTSCH	2	Work lamp-RH	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P
CL-7	SHUR	1	Beacon lamp	S822-014002	S822-114002
CL-8	DEUTSCH	2	Cab light-LH	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P
CL-9	DEUTSCH	2	Cab light-RH	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P
CL-10	DEUTSCH	2	Cab light	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P
CL-24	DEUTSCH	2	Head lamp	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P-E005
CL-36	DEUTSCH	2	Work lamp	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P
CL-37	DEUTSCH	2	Work lamp	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P
CL-40	DEUTSCH	2	DEF/AdBlue® lamp	DT06-2S-EP06	DT04-2P
CL-41	AMP	2	DEF/AdBlue® fill up warning lamp	S822-01400	-
· Sensor, se	endor				
CD-1	AMP	2	Hydraulic oil temp sender	85202-1	-
CD-2	DEUTSCH	2	Fuel sender	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CD-6	DEUTSCH	3	Travel pressure switch	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-7	DEUTSCH	3	Working pressure switch	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-10	AMP	4	Air cleaner switch	6098-0144	-
CD-16	AMP	3	Water level sensor	12110293	-
CD-24	DEUTSCH	3	Swing sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-31	DEUTSCH	3	Overload sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-32	DEUTSCH	3	Boom up sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-35	DEUTSCH	3	Arm & bucket in sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-42	DEUTSCH	3	Pump pressure 1	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-43	DEUTSCH	3	Pump pressure 2	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-44	DEUTSCH	3	Pump pressure 3	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-45	DEUTSCH	2	WIF sensor	DT06-2S-EP06	-
CD-52	AMP	2	Fan rpm sensor	174352-2	-
CD-69	DEUTSCH	3	Attach pressure sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-70	DEUTSCH	3	N1 pressure sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-71	DEUTSCH	3	N2 pressure sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-85	DEUTSCH	3	Boom down sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	DT06-3P-E005
CD-90	DEUTSCH	3	Arm in sensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-
CD-124	DEUTSCH	3	Boom cylinder rod pressure snensor	DT06-3S-EP06	-

2. CONNECTION TABLE FOR CONNECTORS

1) PA TYPE CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
5	2 5 1 3	2 5
7	\$811-005000 3 7 1 4 \$811-00700	3 7
9	4 9 1 5 S811-00900	1 5
11	5 11 1 6 S811-01100	1 6 5 11 2 S811-111002

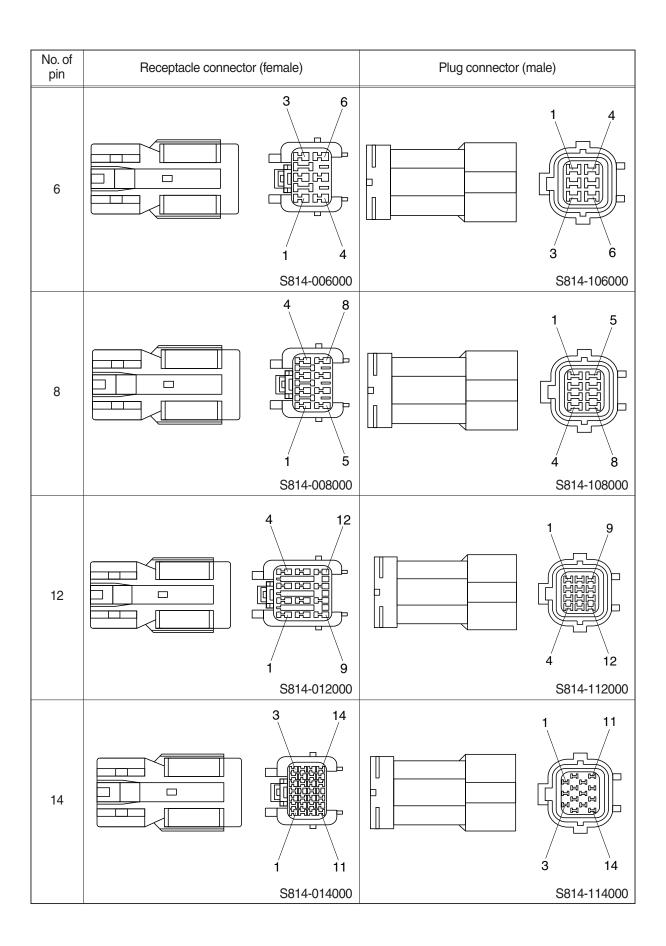


2) J TYPE CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle conne	ector (female)	Plug connector	r (male)
2		S816-002001		2 1 S816-102001
3		3 1 S816-003001		3 1 2 S816-103001
4		3 1 4 2 S816-004001		3 1 S816-104001
8		6 3 1 8 5 2 S816-008001		8 5 2 0000 6 3 1 S816-108001

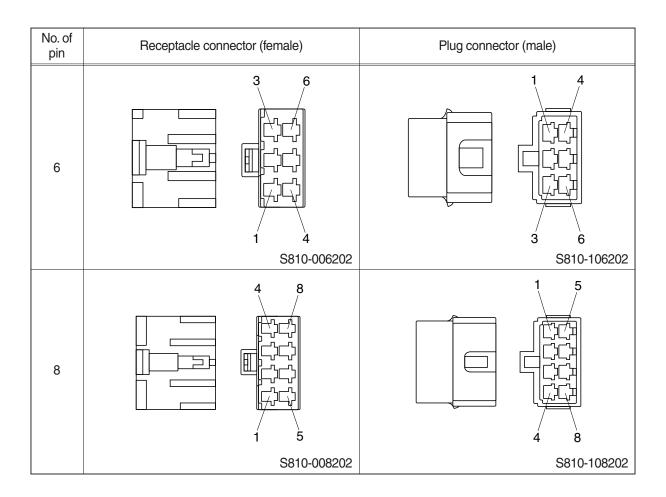
3) SWP TYPE CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector	(female)	Plug connector (n	nale)
1		S814-001000		S814-101000
2		2 1 S814-002000		1 2 S814-102000
3		3 2 1 S814-003000		1 2 3 S814-103000
4		2 4 1 3 S814-004000		1 3 2 4 S814-104000

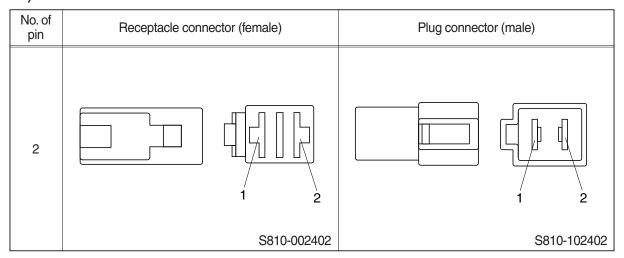


4) CN TYPE CONNECTOR

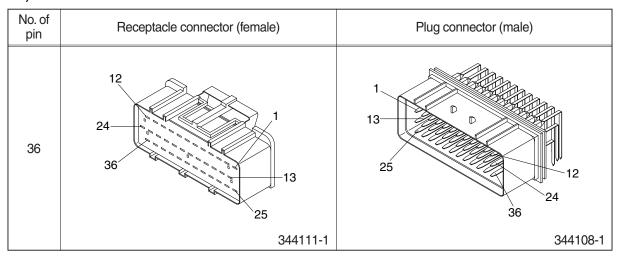
No. of pin	Receptacle connecto	or (female)	Plug connector (male)
1		1		1
		S810-001202		S810-101202
2		1		1
		S810-002202		S810-102202
3		1 2		1 3
		S810-003202		S810-103202
4		2 4		1 3
		S810-004202		S810-104202



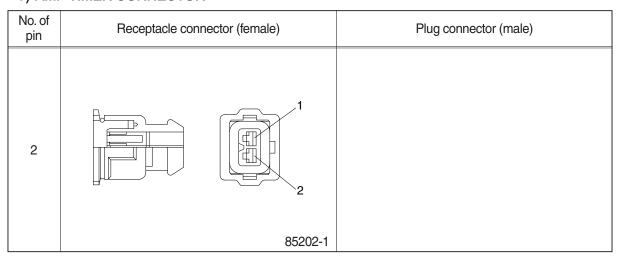
5) 375 FASTEN TYPE CONNECTOR



6) AMP ECONOSEAL CONNECTOR



7) AMP TIMER CONNECTOR



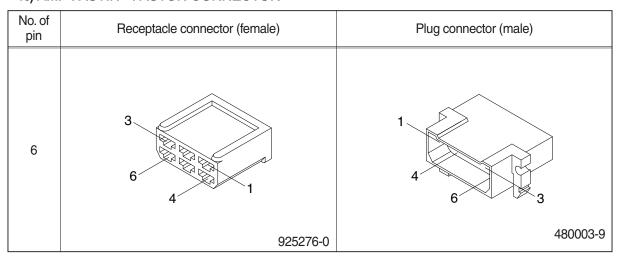
8) AMP 040 MULTILOCK CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
12	7	
	174045-2	

9) AMP 070 MULTILOCK CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
14	1 7 14 173852	

10) AMP FASTIN - FASTON CONNECTOR



11) KET 090 CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	1	
	MG610070	

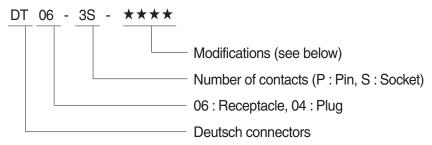
12) KET 090 WP CONNECTORS

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	1 2 MG640605	
2	1 2	
	MG640795	

13) KET SDL CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
14	7	
	MG610406	

14) DEUTSCH DT CONNECTORS



Modification

E003: Standard end cap - gray

E004 : Color of connector to be black E005 : Combination - E004 & E003

EP04: End cap

EP06: Combination P012 & EP04

P012: Front seal enhancement - connectors color to black for 2, 3, 4 & 6pin

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2		1 2
	DT06-2S	DT04-2P
3	1 2 3	2 1 1 3
	DT06-3S	DT04-3P
4	1 4 2 3	3 2
	DT06-4S	DT04-4P

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
6		4 3
	DT06-6S	DT04-6P
8	5 4 8 1	1 8
	DT06-8S	DT04-8P
12	7 6	1 12
	DT06-12S	DT04-12P

15) MOLEX 2CKTS CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	1 2	
	35215-0200	

16) ITT SWF CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
10	1 9	
	SWF593757	

17) MWP NMWP CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
1	1	
	NMWP01F-B	

18) ECONOSEAL J TYPE CONNECTORS

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
1	S816-001002	S816-101002
2	1 2 S816-002002	2 1 S816-102002
3	S816-003002	3 2 1 S816-103002
4	3 4 S816-004002	2 1 4 3 \$816-104002

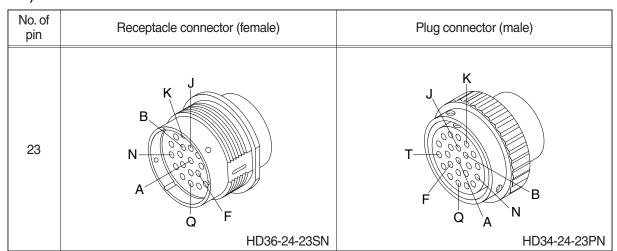
No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
6	3 4 6 S816-006002	3 1 6 4 S816-106002
8	5 8 S816-008002	4 1 8 5 S816-108002
10	5 6 10 S816-010002	5 10 6 S816-110002
12	7 12 S816-012002	6 1 12 7 S816-112002

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)		
15	3 15 HERELEAN 1 13	15 3 BBB 10 BB 10		
	368301-1	2-85262-1		

19) METRI-PACK TYPE CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (female)	Plug connector (male)
2	1 12040753	
	12040/53	

20) DEUTSCH HD30 CONNECTOR



21) DEUTSCH MCU CONNECTOR

40 21 5 6 10 10 20 31 35 36 40 30 PDC000 400 A/P	No. of pin	Receptacle connector (Female)	Plug connector (Male)
DRG26-40SA/B	40	11 21 21 31 35 36	

22) DEUTSCH SERVICE TOOL CONNECTOR

9 F G B	No. of pin	Receptacle connector (Female)	Plug connector (Male)
HD10-9-96P	9	E A B B H	

23) AMP FUEL WARMER CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (Female)	Plug connector (Male)
4	3 2 2	
	2-967325-3	

24) DEUTSCH ENGINE ECM CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (Female)	Plug connector (Male)
50	11 5 6 10 21 20 41 45 46 50 40 DRC26-50S-04	

25) DEUTSCH INTERMEDIATE CONNECTOR

No. of pin	Receptacle connector (Female)	Plug connector (Male)
60	1 13 25 31 37 49 24 30 36 49 48 60 DRB16-60SAE-L018	

SECTION 5 MECHATRONICS SYSTEM

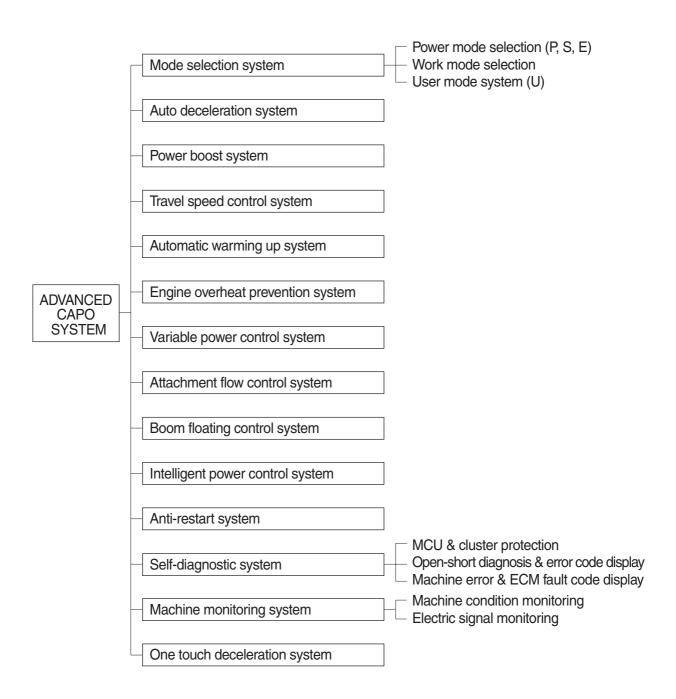
Group	1	Outline	5-1
Group	2	Mode Selection System ·····	5-3
Group	3	Automatic Deceleration System	5-6
Group	4	Power Boost System ····	5-7
Group	5	Travel Speed Control System	5-8
Group	6	Automatic Warming Up System	5-9
Group	7	Engine Overheat Prevention System ·····	5-10
Group	8	Variable Power Control System ·····	5-11
Group	9	Attachment Flow Control System ·····	5-12
Group	10	Boom Floating Control System ····	5-13
Group	11	Intelligent Power Control System	5-14
Group	12	Anti-Restart System ·····	5-16
Group	13	Self-Diagnostic System ·····	5-17
Group	14	Engine Control System ····	5-55
Group	15	EPPR Valve	5-56
Group	16	Monitoring System ····	5-61
Group	17	Fuel Warmer System ·····	5-96

SECTION 5 MECHATRONICS SYSTEM

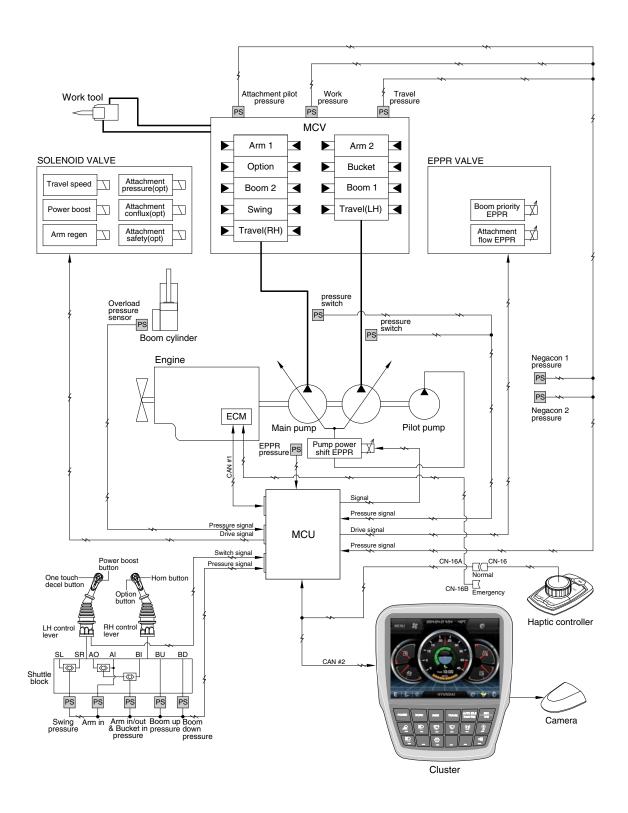
GROUP 1 OUTLINE

The ADVANCED CAPO (Computer Aided Power Optimization) system controls engine and pump mutual power at an optimum and less fuel consuming state for the selected work by mode selection, auto-deceleration, power boost function, etc. It monitors machine conditions, for instance, engine speed, coolant temperature, hydraulic oil temperature, and hydraulic oil pressure, etc.

It consists of a MCU, a cluster, an ECM, EPPR valves, and other components. The MCU and the cluster protect themselves from over-current and high voltage input, and diagnose malfunctions caused by short or open circuit in electric system, and display error codes on the cluster.



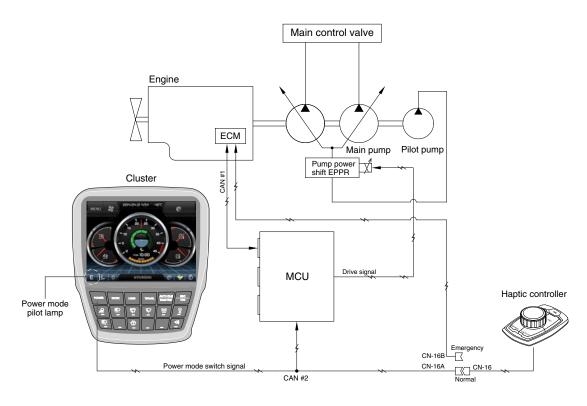
SYSTEM DIAGRAM



330L5MS01

GROUP 2 MODE SELECTION SYSTEM

1. POWER MODE SELECTION SYSTEM



300L5MS02

Mode selection system (micro computer based electro-hydraulic pump and engine mutual control system) optimizes the engine and pump performance.

The combination of 3 power modes (P, S, E) and acceleration mode (10 set) of haptic controller makes it possible to use the engine and pump power more effectively corresponding to the work conditions from a heavy and great power requesting work to a light and precise work.

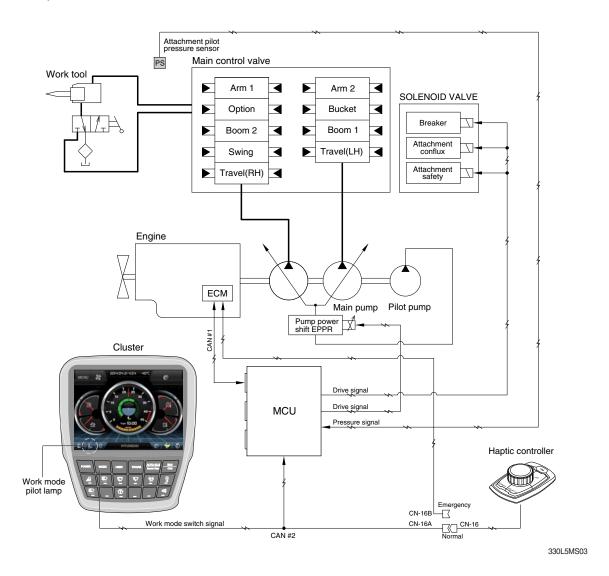
		Engine rpm			Power shift by EPPR valve				
Power	Application	Standard		Option		Standard		Option	
mode		Unload	Load	Unload	Load	Current (mA)	Pressure (kgf/cm²)	Current (mA)	Pressure (kgf/cm²)
Р	Heavy duty power	1700±50	1800±50	1800±50	1750±50	280±30	7 (~2)	280±30	4 (~4)
S	Standard power	1600±50	1700±50	1700±50	1650±50	305±30	9 (~4)±3	260±30	6 (~6)±3
E	Economy operation	1550±50	1650±50	1550±50	1650±50	340±30	11 (~6)±3	340±30	11 (~6)±3
AUTO DECEL	Engine deceleration	1000±100	-	1000±100	-	700±30	38±3	700±30	38±3
One touch decel	Engine quick deceleration	900±100	-	900±100	-	700±30	38±3	700±30	38±3
KEY START	Key switch start position	900±100	-	900±100	-	700±30	38±3	700±30	38±3

* Power shift (Standard/Option) can be changed by "Service menu" in "Management" on the cluster.

※ (~*): Load

2. WORK MODE SELECTION SYSTEM

Work mode consists of the general operation (bucket) and the optional attachment (breaker, crusher).



1) GENERAL WORK MODE (bucket)

This mode is used to general digging work.

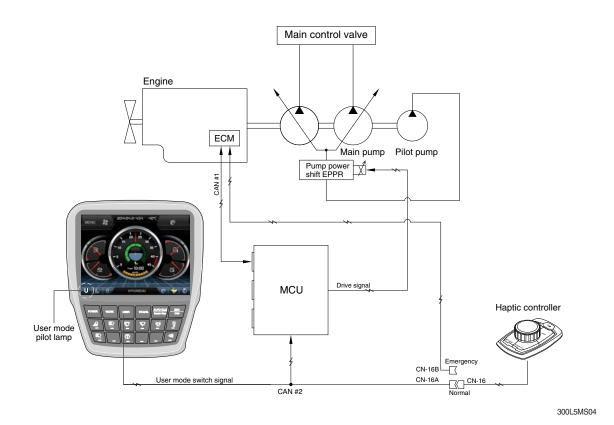
2) ATT WORK MODE (breaker, crusher)

It controls the pump flow and system pressure according to the operation of breaker or crusher.

Description	General mode	Work tool		
Description	Bucket	Breaker	Crusher	
Attachment safety solenoid	OFF	-	ON	
Attachment conflux solenoid	OFF	ON/OFF	ON/OFF	
Attachment flow EPPR current	100 mA	100~700 mA	100~700 mA	
Breaker solenoid★	OFF	ON	-	

[★] When breaker operating button is pushed.

3. USER MODE SELECTION SYSTEM

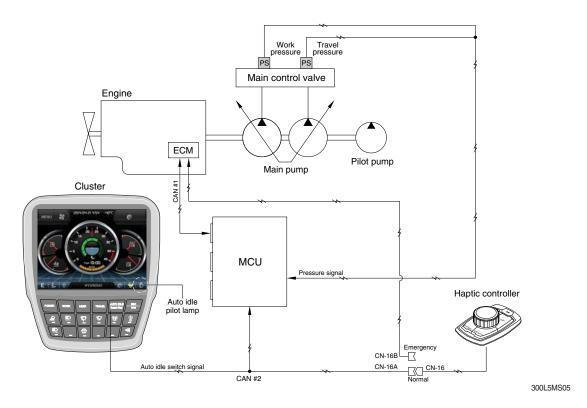


1) High idle rpm, auto idle rpm and EPPR pressure can be adjusted and memorized in the U-mode.

2) LCD segment vs parameter setting

Step (▮)	Engine speed (rpm)	Idle speed (rpm)	Power shift (bar)
1	1300	800	0
2	1400	850	3
3	1450	900	6
4	1500	950	9
5	1550	1000 (auto decel)	12
6	1600	1050	16
7	1650	1100	20
8	1700	1150	26
9	1750	1200	32
10	1800	1250	38

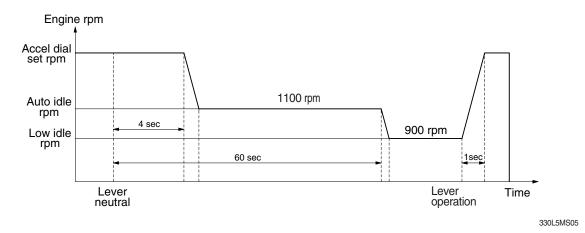
GROUP 3 AUTOMATIC DECELERATION SYSTEM



1. WHEN AUTO IDLE PILOT LAMP ON

When all of the work equipment control levers including swing and travel levers are at neutral for 4 seconds, MCU sends throttle command to ECM to reduce the engine speed to 1100 rpm. If the control levers are at neutral for 1 minute, MCU reduces the engine speed to 900 rpm. As the result of reducing the engine speed, fuel consumption and noise are effectively cut down during non-operation of the control levers.

When the Auto idle pilot lamp is turned off by pressing the switch or any control lever is operated, the reduced engine speed rises upto the speed before deceleration in a second.

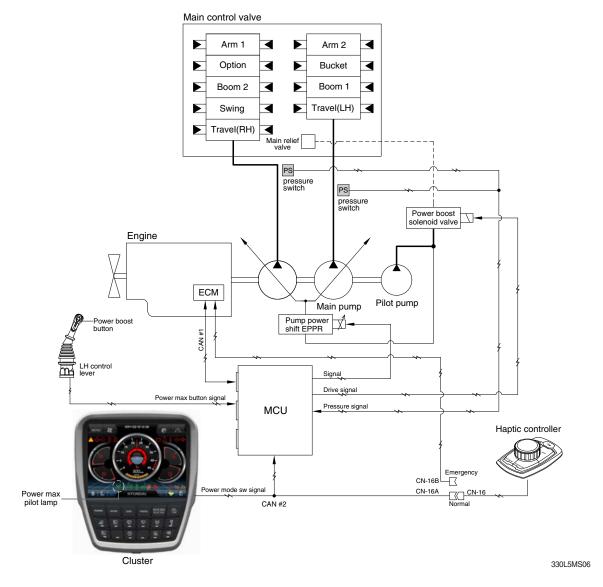


2. WHEN AUTO IDLE PILOT LAMP OFF

The engine speed can be set as desired using the accel dial switch, and even if the control levers are neutral, the engine speed is not reduced.

Auto idle function can be activated when accel dial position is over 4.

GROUP 4 POWER BOOST SYSTEM

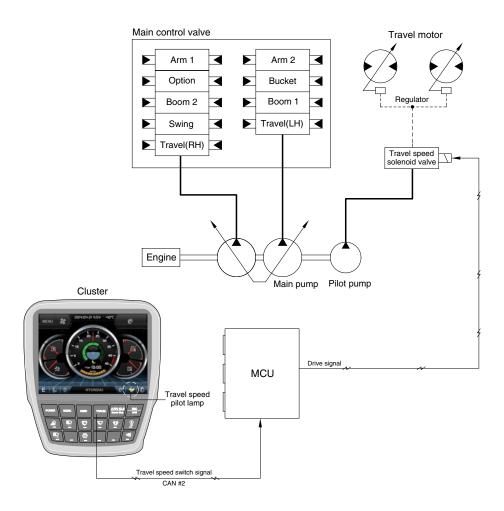


- When the power boost switch on the left control lever knob is pushed ON, the power mode is set P mode and maximum digging power is increased by 10 %.
- When the power boost function is activated, the power boost solenoid valve pilot pressure raises the set pressure of the main relief valve to increase the digging power.

Description Condition		Function
Activated	Power boost switch : ON Accel dial : over 8	- Power mode : P - Accel dial power : 9 - Power boost solenoid : ON - Power boost pilot Imap : ON - Operating time : max 8 seconds
Canceled	Power boost switch : OFF	 Pre-set power mode Power boost solenoid : OFF Power boost pilot lamp : OFF

When the auto power boost is set to Enable and power mode is set to P mode on the cluster, the digging power is automatically increased as working conditions by the MCU. It is operated max 8 seconds.

GROUP 5 TRAVEL SPEED CONTROL SYSTEM



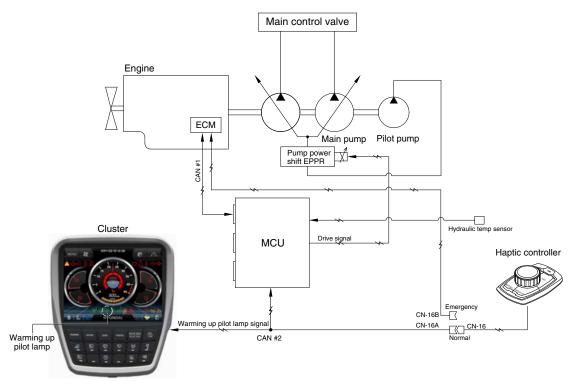
330L5MS07

Travel speed can be switched manually by pressing the travel speed switch on the cluster.

Speed	Travel speed solenoid valve	Lamp on cluster	Operation
Low	OFF Turtle Low speed, high driving torque in the travel motor		Low speed, high driving torque in the travel motor
High	ON	Rabbit	High speed, low driving torque in the travel motor

Mercal Market Strate (Low)

GROUP 6 AUTOMATIC WARMING UP SYSTEM



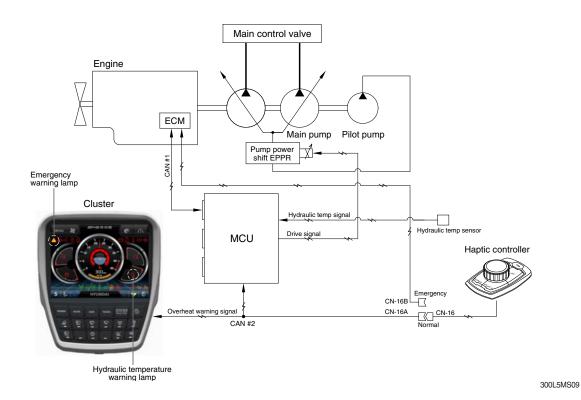
300L5MS08

- The MCU receives the engine coolant temperature from the ECM, and if the coolant temperature is below 30°C, it increases the engine speed from key start rpm to 1200 rpm. At this time the mode does not change. If the coolant temperature sensor has fault, the hydraulic oil temperature signal is substituted.
- 2. In case of the coolant temperature increases up to 30°C, the engine speed is decreased to key start speed. And if an operator changes power mode set during the warming up function, the MCU cancels the automatic warming up function.

3. LOGIC TABLE

Description	Condition	Function
Actuated	- Coolant temperature : below 30°C (after engine run)	- Power mode : Default (E mode) - Warming up time : 10 minutes (max) - Warming up pilot lamp : ON
Canceled	 Coolant temperature: Above 30°C Warming up time: Above 10 minutes Changed power mode set by operator RCV lever or pedal operating Auto idle cancel If any of the above conditions is applicable, the automatic warming up function is canceled 	- Power mode : set mode - Warming up pilot lamp : OFF

GROUP 7 ENGINE OVERHEAT PREVENTION SYSTEM

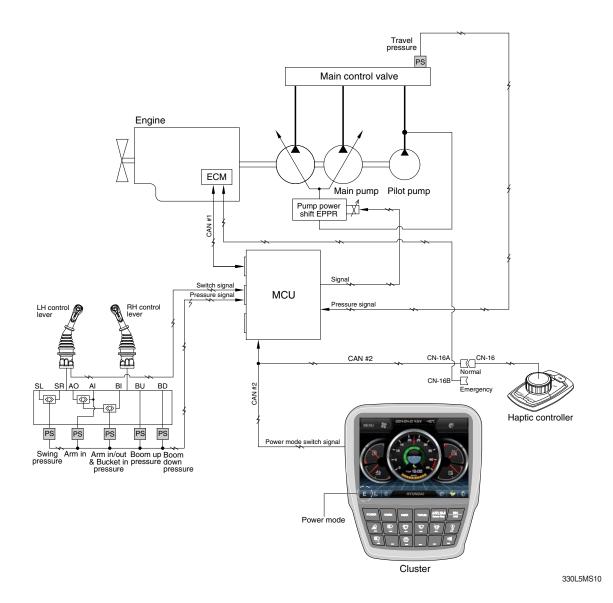


1. If the engine coolant temperature or the hydraulic oil temperature is overheated over 100°C, the warning lamp is ON and the pump input torque or the engine speed is reduced as below logic table.

2. LOGIC TABLE

Descrip	otion	Condition	Function		
	Activated	- Coolant temperature : Above 103°C	- Warning lamp : ON , buzzer : OFF - Pump input torque is reduced.		
First step	Activated	- Hydraulic oil temperature : Above 100°C	- Warning lamp & buzzer : ON - Pump input torque is reduced.		
warning	Canceled	- Coolant temperature : Less than 100°C - Hydraulic oil temperature : Less than 95°C	- Return to pre-set the pump absorption torque.		
Second stop	Activated	- Coolant temperature : Above 107°C - Hydraulic oil temperature : Above 105°C	Emergency warning lamp pops up on the center of LCD and the buzzer sounds.Engine speed is reduced after 10 seconds.		
Second step warning	Canceled	- Coolant temperature : Less than 103°C - Hydraulic oil temperature : Less than 100°C	 Return to pre-set the engine speed. Hold pump absorption torque on the first step warning. 		

GROUP 8 VARIABLE POWER CONTROL SYSTEM



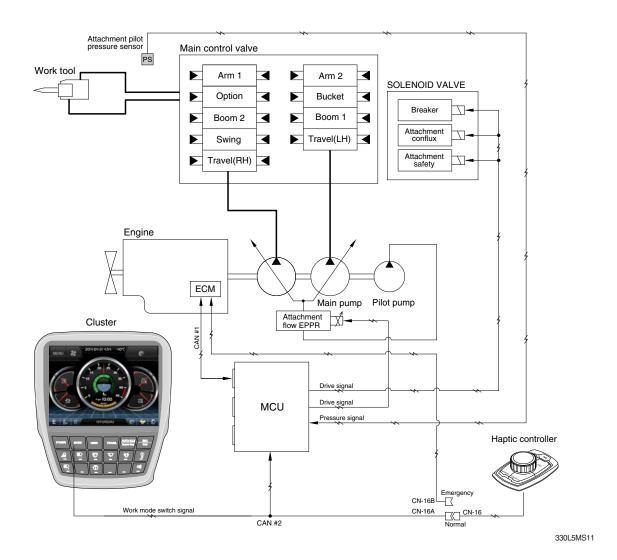
The variable power control system controls the engine and pump mutual power according to RCV lever stroke and pump load.

It makes fuel saving and smooth control at precise work.

Description	Working condition
Power mode	P, S, E
Work mode	General (bucket)
Pressure sensor	Normal

* The variable power control function can be activated when the power mode is set to all power mode.

GROUP 9 ATTACHMENT FLOW CONTROL SYSTEM

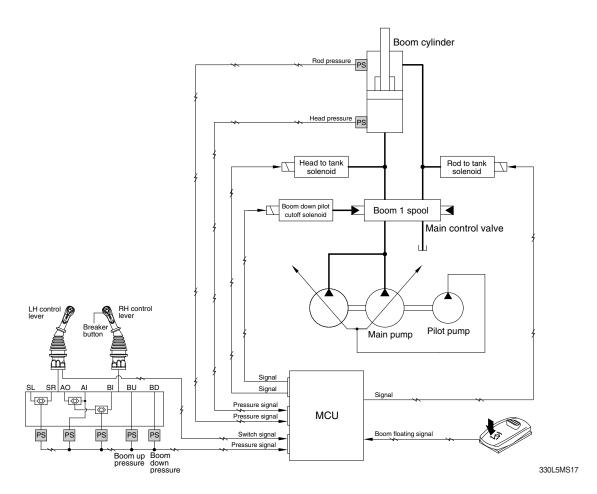


· The system is used to control the pump delivery flow according to set of the work tool on the cluster by the attachment flow EPPR valve.

Description	Work tool		
Description	Breaker	Crusher	
Flow level	100 ~ 220 lpm	100 ~ 520 lpm	
Attach safety solenoid	-	ON	
Attach conflux solenoid	ON/OFF	ON/OFF	
Breaker solenoid*	ON	-	

- * Refer to the page 5-79 for the attachment kinds and max flow.
- ★ When breaker operating button is pushed.

GROUP 10 BOOM FLOATING CONTROL SYSTEM



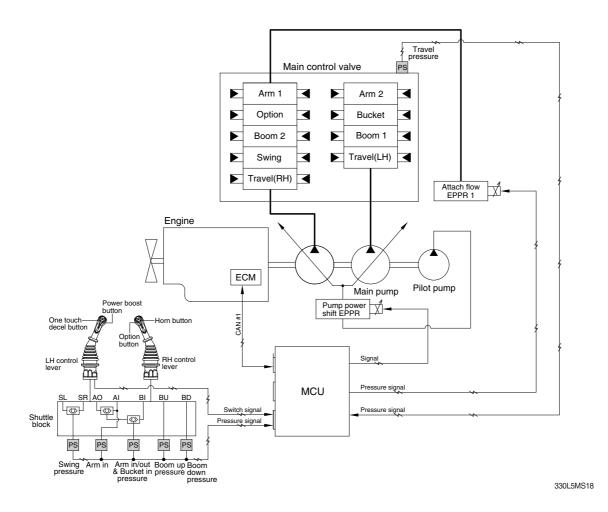
· Boom floating automatically controls boom cylinder along the ground by operating arm cylinder only.

Desc	ription	One divine	Franklina		
Work mode*1	Floating mode	Condition	Function		
	Boom up floating*2	Floating mode sw : ON	Rod to tank solenoid : ON Head to tank solenoid : OFF Boom down cutoff solenoid : OFF		
General mode	Boom up/down floating*2	Floating mode sw : ON Breaker button : Pressed Boom down pilot pressure > 25 bar Boom up pilot pressure < 5 bar	Rod to tank solenoid : ON Head to tank solenoid : ON Boom down cutoff solenoid : ON		
Breaker mode	Boom down floating	Floating mode sw : ON Breaker button : Pressed Boom down pilot pressure > 25 bar Boom up pilot pressure < 5 bar	Rod to tank solenoid : OFF Head to tank solenoid : ON Boom down cutoff solenoid : ON		
Temporarily canceled		During operation of boom floating Boost sw : Pressed	Rod to tank solenoid : OFF Head to tank solenoid : OFF Boom down cutoff solenoid : OFF		

^{*1} Boom floating is not activated when work mode is crusher mode.

^{*2} These functions are activated just in case the excavator is not in jack up status.

GROUP 11 INTELLIGENT POWER CONTROL SYSTEM



1. When the requirement of pump flow rate is low, IPC mode controls pump flow rate to improve fuel efficiency.

Condition ^{★1}	Function
IPC mode : ON*2 Boom up	
Arm in Not travel motion Not swing motion	Limitation of pump flow rate : Activated
None of upper condition	Limitation of pump flow rate : Canceled

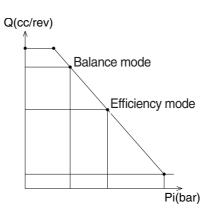
^{★1} AND condition

^{*2} IPC mode ON/OFF is selected at "Mode setup > IPC mode". See next page.

2. IPC MODE SELECTION

IPC mode ON/OFF and the levels of flow rate limit can be selected at "Mode setup > IPC mode"

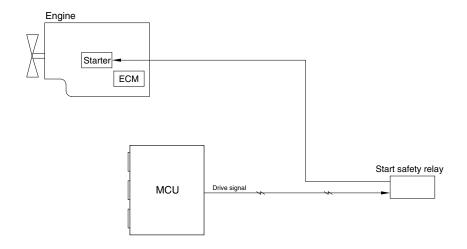




290F3CD311

IPC mode	Description
Balance mode (default)	IPC mode ON, limit level 1
Efficiency mode	IPC mode ON, limit level 2
Speed mode	IPC mode OFF

GROUP 12 ANTI-RESTART SYSTEM



300L5MS12

1. ANTI-RESTART FUNCTION

After a few seconds from the engine starts to run, MCU turns off the start safety relay to protect the starter from inadvertent restarting.

GROUP 13 SELF-DIAGNOSTIC SYSTEM

1. OUTLINE

When any abnormality occurs in the ADVANCED CAPO system caused by electric parts malfunction and by open or short circuit, the MCU diagnoses the problem and sends the error codes to the cluster and also stores them in the memory.

2. MONITORING

1) Active fault



· The active faults of the MCU, engine ECM or air conditioner can be checked by this menu.

2) Logged fault



· The logged faults of the MCU, engine ECM or air conditioner can be checked by this menu.

3) Delete logged fault



• The logged faults of the MCU, engine ECM or air conditioner can be deleted by this menu.

3. MACHINE ERROR CODES TABLE

DTC		Di di Oli di	Ap	plicat	ion		
HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria	G	С	W		
	3	10 seconds continuous, Hydraulic Oil Temp. Measurement Voltage > 3.8V	•				
101	4	10 seconds continuous, Hydraulic Oil Temp. Measurement Voltage < 0.3V					
	(Resu	llts / Symptoms)					
	1. Mo	nitor – Hydraulic oil temperature display failure					
	2. Co	ntrol Function – Fan revolutions control failure					
	•	king list)					
	1. CD	-1 (#2), CN-52 (#24) Checking Open/Short					
	2. CD	-1 (#1), CN-51 (#5) Checking Open/Short					
	0	10 seconds continuous, Working Press. Sensor					
		Measurement Voltage > 5.2V					
	1	10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Working Press. Sensor Measurement					
	'	Voltage < 0.8V					
	4	10 seconds continuous, Working Press. Sensor					
		Measurement Voltage < 0.3V					
105	(Results / Symptoms)						
105	Monitor – Working Press. display failure						
	2. Control Function – Auto Idle operation failure, Engine variable horse power control operation						
		failure					
	(Chec	king list)					
	1. CD	-7 (#B) – CN-52 (#37) Checking Open/Short					
	2. CD-7 (#A) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short						
	3. CD	-7 (#C) – CN-51 (#13) Checking Open/Short					
	0	10 seconds continuous, Travel Oil Press. Sensor					
	<u> </u>	Measurement Voltage > 5.2V					
	1	10 seconds continuous, 0.3V ≤ Travel Oil Press. Sensor Measurement					
	'	Voltage < 0.8V					
	4	10 seconds continuous, Travel Oil Press. Sensor					
		Measurement Voltage < 0.3V					
100	(Resu	llts / Symptoms)					
108	1. Mo	Monitor – Travel Oil Press. display failure					
	2. Co	ntrol Function – Auto Idle operation failure, Engine variable horse power control	opera	ation			
		failure, IPC operation failure, Driving alarm operation failure					
	(Chec	king list)					
	1. CD	-6 (#B) – CN-52 (#38) Checking Open/Short					
		2. CD-6 (#A) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short					
	3. CD	-6 (#C) - CN-51 (#13) Checking Open/Short					

* Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General C : Crawler Type W : Wheel Type

DTC	;	Discounting Office in	Ap	Application			
HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria	G	С	W		
	0	10 seconds continuous, Main Pump 1 (P1) Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V	•				
	1	10 seconds continuous, 0.3V ≤ Main Pump 1 (P1) Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V	•				
	4	10 seconds continuous, Main Pump 1 (P1) Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V	•				
120	1. Mor 2. Cor (Chec 1. CD- 2. CD-	lts / Symptoms) nitor – Main Pump 1 (P1) Press. display failure ntrol Function – Automatic voltage increase operation failure, Overload at compe failure king list) -42 (#B) – CN-52 (#29) Checking Open/Short -42 (#A) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short	ensat	ion co	ontrol		
	3. CD-	42 (#C) – CN-51 (#13) Checking Open/Short		·			
	0	10 seconds continuous, Main Pump 2 (P2) Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V	•				
	1	10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Main Pump 2 (P2) Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V	•				
	4	10 seconds continuous, Main Pump 2 (P2) Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V	•				
404	(Results / Symptoms)						
121	 Monitor – Main Pump 2 (P2) Press. display failure Control Function – Automatic voltage increase operation failure, Overload at compensation control 						
	1. CD- 2. CD-	king list) -43 (#B) – CN-52 (#12) Checking Open/Short -43 (#A) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short -43 (#C) – CN-51 (#13) Checking Open/Short					
	1	(when you had conditions mounting pressure sensor) $10 \ \ \text{seconds continuous}, \ 0.3V \leq \text{Overload Press. Sensor Measurement} \\ \text{Voltage} < 0.8V$	•				
	4	(when you had conditions mounting pressure sensor) 10 seconds continuous, Overload Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V	•				
122	(Resu	lts / Symptoms)					
	1. Monitor – Overload Press. display failure						
	2. Control Function – Overload warning alarm failure						
	l '	king list) -31 (#R) – CN-52 (#16) Checking Open/Short					
	1. CD-31 (#B) – CN-52 (#16) Checking Open/Short 2. CD-31 (#A) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short						
		-31 (#C) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short					

 $\ensuremath{\,\%\,}$ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

DTC	,	Diamonatic Criteria		plicat	ion			
HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria	G	С	W			
	0	10 seconds continuous, Negative 1 Press. Sensor						
	U	Measurement Voltage > 5.2V						
	1	10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Negative 1 Press. Sensor Measurement						
		Voltage < 0.8V						
	4	10 seconds continuous, Negative 1 Press. Sensor						
100	(Pool	Measurement Voltage < 0.3V ilts / Symptoms)						
123	`	nitor – Negative 1 Press. display failure						
		ntrol = Negative 11 less, display failure htrol Function – IPC operation failure, Option attachment flow control operation f	ailure	1				
		sking list)	andre	,				
	٠,	-70 (#B) – CN-52 (#33) Checking Open/Short						
		-70 (#A) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short						
		-70 (#C) – CN-51 (#13) Checking Open/Short						
	_	10 seconds continuous, Negative 2 Press. Sensor						
	0	Measurement Voltage > 5.2V						
	1	10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Negative 2 Press. Sensor Measurement						
	1	Voltage < 0.8V						
	4	10 seconds continuous, Negative 2 Press. Sensor						
	•	Measurement Voltage < 0.3V						
124	(Results / Symptoms)							
		1. Monitor – Negative 2 Press. display failure						
	Control Function – Option attachment flow control operation failure							
	(Checking list)							
		1. CD-71 (#B) – CN-52 (#17) Checking Open/Short						
		-71 (#A) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short -71 (#C) – CN-51 (#13) Checking Open/Short						
	3. OD	10 seconds continuous, Boom Up Pilot Press. Sensor						
	0	Measurement Voltage > 5.2V						
		10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Boom Up Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement						
	1	Voltage < 0.8V						
	4	10 seconds continuous, Boom Up Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement < 0.3V	•					
	(Resu	llts / Symptoms)						
127	,	nitor – Boom Up Pilot Press. display failure						
	2. Coi	ntrol Function – Engine/Pump variable horse power control operation failure, IPC	Соре	ration	ı			
		failure, Boom first operation failure						
	(Chec	eking list)						
	1. CD	-32 (#B) – CN-52 (#19) Checking Open/Short						
	2. CD	2. CD-32 (#A) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short						
	3. CD	-32 (#C) – CN-5 1(#13) Checking Open/Short						

 $\ensuremath{\,\%\,}$ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General C : Crawler Type W : Wheel Type

DTC	,	Dia was akin Oritaria	Ар	plicati	ion
HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria	G	С	W
	0	(when you had conditions mounting pressure sensor) 10 seconds continuous, Boom Down Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V	•		
	1	(when you had conditions mounting pressure sensor) 10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Boom Down Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V	•		
128	4	(when you had conditions mounting pressure sensor) 10 seconds continuous, Boom Down Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V	•		
	1. Moi 2. Cor (Chec 1. CD 2. CD	Its / Symptoms) nitor – Boom Down Pilot Press. display failure ntrol Function – Boom floating operation failure king list) -85 (#B) – CN-53 (#23) Checking Open/Short -85 (#A) – CN-53 (#3) Checking Open/Short -85 (#C) – CN-53 (#13) Checking Open/Short			
	0	10 seconds continuous, Arm In Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 4.8V 10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Arm In Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement	•		
	4	Voltage < 0.8V 10 seconds continuous, Arm In Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V	•		
129	1. Moi 2. Cor (Chec 1. CD- 2. CD-	Its / Symptoms) nitor – Arm In Pilot Press. display failure ntrol Function – IPC operation failure king list) -90 (#B) – CN-52 (#28) Checking Open/Short -90 (#A) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short -90 (#C) – CN-51 (#13) Checking Open/Short			
133	0	10 seconds continuous, Arm In/Out & Bucket In Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V 10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Arm In/Out & Bucket In Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V	•		
	4	10 seconds continuous, Arm In/Out & Bucket In Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V	•		
	1. Moi 2. Cor (Chec 1. CD 2. CD	Its / Symptoms) nitor – Arm In/Out & Bucket In Pilot Press. display failure ntrol Function – Engine variable horse power control operation failure king list) -35 (#B) – CN-52 (#14) Checking Open/Short -35 (#A) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short -35 (#C) – CN-51 (#13) Checking Open/Short			

* Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

DTC	;	Discounting Office in	Ар	plicat	ion				
HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria G		G C					
	0	10 seconds continuous, Swing Pilot Press. Sensor							
	0	Measurement Voltage > 5.2V							
	1	10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Swing Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement							
	'	Voltage < 0.8V							
	4	10 seconds continuous, Swing Pilot Press. Sensor							
		Measurement Voltage < 0.3V							
135	(Resu	Its / Symptoms)							
		nitor – Swing Pilot Press. display failure							
		ntrol Function – IPC operation, Boom first operation failure							
	,	king list)							
		-24 (#B) – CN-52 (#36) Checking Open/Short							
		-24 (#A) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short							
	3. CD	-24 (#C) – CN-51 (#13) Checking Open/Short							
		Monitor – Select Attachment(breaker / crusher)							
	0	10 seconds continuous, Attachment Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement							
		Voltage > 5.2V							
	1	Monitor – Select Attachment(breaker / crusher)							
		10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Attachment Pilot Press. Sensor							
		Measurement Voltage < 0.8V							
	4	Monitor – Select Attachment(breaker / crusher)							
138		10 seconds continuous, Attachment Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement							
100		Voltage < 0.3V							
	,	lts / Symptoms)							
		nitor – Attachment Pilot Press. display failure							
		2. Control Function – Option attachment flow control operation failure							
	`	king list)							
		-69 (#B) – CN-53 (#14) Checking Open/Short							
		-69 (#A) – CN-53 (#3) Checking Open/Short							
	3. CD	-69 (#C) – CN-53 (#13) Checking Open/Short							
	1	10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Option Pilot Press. Sensor Measurement							
		Voltage < 0.8V							
	4	10 seconds continuous, Option Pilot Press. Sensor							
		Measurement Voltage < 0.3V							
	١,	lts / Symptoms)							
139	1. Monitor – Option Pilot Press. display failure								
		ntrol Function – Auto Idle operation failure							
	,	king list)							
		-100 (#B) – CN-52 (#21) Checking Open/Short							
	2. CD-100 (#A) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short								
	3. CD	-100 (#C) – CN-1 (#6) Checking Open/Short							

 $\ensuremath{\,\mathbb{X}\,}$ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

 $\mbox{G : General} \qquad \qquad \mbox{C : Crawler Type} \qquad \qquad \mbox{W : Wheel Type}$

DTC		Dia manatia Critaria	Ap	plicat	ion
HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria	G	С	W
HCESPN 140	5 6	(Detection) (When Pump EPPR Current is more than 10 mA) 10 seconds continuous, Pump EPPR drive current < 0 mA (Cancellation) (When Pump EPPR Current is more than 10 mA) 3 seconds continuous, Pump EPPR drive current ≥10 mA (Detection) 10 seconds continuous, Pump EPPR drive current > 1.0A (Cancellation)	•	С	W
	1. Cor (Chec	3 seconds continuous, Pump EPPR drive current ≤ 1.0 A lts / Symptoms) ntrol Function – Pump horse power setting specification difference (Fuel efficiency/speed specification failure) eking list) -75 (#2) – CN-52 (#9) Checking Open/Short -75 (#1) – CN-52 (#10) Checking Open/Short			
141	5	(Model Parameter) mounting Boom Priority EPPR (Detection) (When Boom Priority EPPR Current is more than 10 mA) 10 seconds continuous, Boom Priority EPPR drive current < 0 mA (Cancellation) (When Boom Priority EPPR Current is more than 10 mA) 3 seconds continuous, Boom Priority EPPR drive current ≥ 10 mA	•		
	6	(Detection) 10 seconds continuous, Boom Priority EPPR drive current > 1.0 A (Cancellation) 3 seconds continuous, Boom Priority EPPR drive current ≤ 1.0 A	•		
	1. Cor (Chec 1. CN	olts / Symptoms) Introl Function – Boom first control operation failure Eking list) Introl Function – Boom first control operation failure Introl Function failure			

 $\ensuremath{\,\%\,}$ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General C : Crawler Type W : Wheel Type

DTC		Dia supostia Critaria	Application					
HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria	G	С	W			
	5	(Detection) (When Travel EPPR Current is more than 10 mA) 10 seconds continuous, Travel EPPR drive current = 0 mA (Cancellation) (When Travel EPPR Current is more than 100 mA) 3 seconds continuous, Travel EPPR drive current ≥ 10 mA			•			
143	6	(Detection) 10 seconds continuous, Travel EPPR drive current > 1.0 A (Cancellation) 3 seconds continuous, Travel EPPR drive current ≤ 1.0 A			•			
	`	Its / Symptoms)						
	Control Function – cruise control operation failure (Checking list)							
	1. CN-246 (#2) – CN-54 (#39) Checking Open/Short							
	2. CN	-246 (#1) – CN-51 (#40) Checking Open/Short						
145	5	 (Model Parameter) mounting Remote Cooling Fan EPPR (Detection) (When Remote Cooling Fan EPPR Current is more than 10 mA) 10 seconds continuous, Remote Cooling Fan EPPR drive current = 0 mA (Cancellation) (When Remote Cooling Fan EPPR Current is more than 10 mA) 3 seconds continuous, Remote Cooling Fan EPPR drive current ≥ 10 mA 	•					
	6	(Detection) 10 seconds continuous, Remote Cooling Fan EPPR drive current > 1.0 A (Cancellation) 3 seconds continuous, Remote Cooling Fan EPPR drive current ≤ 1.0 A	•					
	1. Cor (Chec 1. CD	lts / Symptoms) htrol Function – Remote fan control operation failure king list) -52 (#1) – CN-51 (#9) Checking Open/Short -52 (#2) – CN-51 (#14) Checking Open/Short						

 $\ensuremath{\,\mathbb{X}\,}$ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

DTC		Diagnostic Critoria	Ap	plicat	ion
HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria	G	С	W
	4	(Detection) (When Working Cutoff Relay is Off) 10 seconds continuous, Working Cutoff Relay drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V (Cancellation) (When Working Cutoff Relay is Off) 3 seconds continuous, Working Cutoff Relay drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V			•
164	6	(Detection) (When Working Cutoff Relay is On) 10 seconds continuous, Working Cutoff Relay drive current > 6.5 A (Cancellation) (When Working Cutoff Relay is On) 3 seconds continuous, Working Cutoff Relay drive current ≤ 6.5 A			•
,	(Resu	Ilts / Symptoms)			
	(Chec	ntrol Function – (Wheel Excavator) In driving mode, attachment hydraulic pilot p failure sking list) -47 (#85) – CN-54 (#9) Checking Open/Short -47 (#30, #86) – CN-45 (#B+ term) Checking Open/Short	16550	iie cu	LOII
166	4	(Detection) (When Power Max Solenoid is Off) 10 seconds continuous, Power Max Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V (Cancellation) (When Power Max Solenoid is Off) 3 seconds continuous, Power Max Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V	•		
	6	(Detection) (When Power Max Solenoid is On) 5 seconds continuous, Power Max Solenoid drive current > 4.5 A (Cancellation) (When Power Max Solenoid is On) 3 seconds continuous, Power Max Solenoid drive current ≤ 4.5 A	•		
	1. Col (Chec 1. CN	ults / Symptoms) ntrol Function – Voltage increase operation failure king list) -88 (#1) – CN-52 (#2) Checking Open/Short -88 (#2) – CN-45 (#B+ term) Checking Open/Short			

* Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

DTC		Dia supantia Cuitauia	Application				
HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria	G	С	W		
167		(Detection) (When Travel Speed Solenoid is Off) 10 seconds continuous, Travel Speed Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V (Cancellation) (When Travel Speed Solenoid is Off) 3 seconds continuous, Travel Speed Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V		•			
	4	(When Parking mode is not) (Detection) (When Travel Speed Solenoid is Off) 10 seconds continuous, Travel Speed Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V (Cancellation) (When Travel Speed Solenoid is Off) 3 seconds continuous, Travel Speed Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V			•		
	6	(Detection) (When Travel Speed Solenoid is On) 10 seconds continuous, Travel Speed Solenoid drive current > 4.5 A (Cancellation) (When Travel Speed Solenoid is On) 3 seconds continuous, Travel Speed Solenoid drive current ≤ 4.5 A	•				
	(Result 1. Control (Check 1. CN 2. CN						

 $\ensuremath{\,\%\,}$ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

DTC		Diagnostia Critaria	Application		
HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria	G	С	W
	4	Monitor – Selecting attachment(breaker / crusher) (Detection) (When Attachment Conflux Solenoid is Off) 10 seconds continuous, Attachment Conflux Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V (Cancellation) (When Attachment Conflux Solenoid is Off) 3 seconds continuous, Attachment Conflux Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V	•		
169	6	(Detection) (When Attachment Conflux Solenoid is On) 10 seconds continuous, Attachment Conflux Solenoid drive Current > 6.5 A (Cancellation) (When Attachment Conflux Solenoid is On) 3 seconds continuous, Attachment Conflux Solenoid drive Current ≤ 6.5 A	•		
	,	lts / symptoms) htrol Function – Option attachment flow control – Joining operation failure			
	(Eco	breaker mode, crusher mode)			
	(Chec	king list)			
	1. CD	-237 (#1) – CN-53 (#7) Checking Open/Short			
	2. CD	-237 (#2) – CR-35 (#87) Checking Open/Short			
170	4	(Model Parameter) mounting Arm Regenerating Solenoid (Detection) (When Arm Regeneration Solenoid is Off) 10 seconds continuous, Arm Regeneration Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V (Cancellation) (When Arm Regeneration Solenoid is Off) 3 seconds continuous, Arm Regeneration Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V	•		
	6	(Detection) (When Arm Regeneration Solenoid is On) 10 seconds continuous, Arm Regeneration Solenoid drive current > 4.5 A (Cancellation) (When Arm Regeneration Solenoid is On) 3 seconds continuous, Arm Regeneration Solenoid drive current ≤ 4.5 A	•		
	(Detec				
	(When	n Arm Regeneration Solenoid is On) conds continuous, Arm Regeneration Solenoid drive current > 4.5 A ellation) n Arm Regeneration Solenoid is On)			
		onds continuous, Arm Regeneration Solenoid drive current ≤ 4.5 A			

 $\ensuremath{\,\mathbb{X}\,}$ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

DTC		Discountie Office	Ap	plicat	ion			
HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria	G	С	W			
	4	Monitor – Selecting attachment(crusher) (Detection) (When Attachment Safety Solenoid is Off) 10 seconds continuous, Attachment Safety Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V (Cancellation) (When Attachment Safety Solenoid is Off) 3 seconds continuous, Attachment Safety Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V	•					
171	6	(Detection) (When Attachment Safety Solenoid is On) 10 seconds continuous, Attachment Safety Solenoid drive current > 6.5 A (Cancellation) (When Attachment Safety Solenoid is On) 3 seconds continuous, Attachment Safety Solenoid drive current ≤ 6.5 A	•					
	(Resu	Its / Symptoms)						
	Control Function – Option attachment flow control – Option spool pilot pressure cut off failure							
	(crusher mode)							
	(Checking list)							
	1. CD-149 (#1) – CN-53 (#8) Checking Open/Short							
	2. CD	-149 (#2) – CR-35 (#87) Checking Open/Short						
179	6	Monitor – Selecting attachment(breaker / crusher) (Detection) (When Breaker Operating Solenoid is Off) 10 seconds continuous, Attachment Safety Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V (Cancellation) (When Breaker Operating Solenoid is Off) 3 seconds continuous, Attachment Safety Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V (Detection) (When Breaker Operating Solenoid is On) 10 seconds continuous, Attachment Safety Solenoid drive current > 6.5 A (Cancellation)	•					
	1. Cor (Chec 1. CD	(When Breaker Operating Solenoid is On) 3 seconds continuous, Attachment Safety Solenoid drive current ≤ 6.5 A Its / Symptoms) Itrol Function – Option attachment flow control – Breaker operation failure (breaking list) -66 (#1) – CN-53 (#9) Checking Open/Short -66 (#2) – CN-45 (#B+ term) Checking Open/Short -66 (#C) – CN-51 (#13) Checking Open/Short	ıker m	node)				

 $\ensuremath{\,\%\,}$ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

DTC		Diagnostic Critoria	Application		
HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria	G	С	W
181	4	(Model Parameter) mounting Reverse Cooling Fan Solenoid (Detection) (When Reverse Cooling Fan Solenoid is Off) 10 seconds continuous, Reverse Cooling Fan Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V (Cancellation) (When Reverse Cooling Fan Solenoid is Off) 3 seconds continuous, Reverse Cooling Fan Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V	•		
	6	(Detection) (When Reverse Cooling Fan Solenoid is On) 10 seconds continuous, Reverse Cooling Fan Solenoid drive current > 4.5 A (Cancellation) (When Reverse Cooling Fan Solenoid is On) 3 seconds continuous, Reverse Cooling Fan Solenoid drive current ≤ 4.5 A	•		
	(Resu	lts / Symptoms)			
	1. Cor	ntrol Function – Cooling Fan reverse control operation failure (not applicable)			
	5	(Detection) (When Attachment Flow EPPR 1 current is equal or more than 300 mA) 10 seconds continuous, Attachment Flow EPPR drive current < 100 mA (Cancellation) (When Attachment Flow EPPR 1 current is equal or more than 300 mA) 3 seconds continuous, Attachment Flow EPPR drive current ≥ 100 mA	•		
188	6	(Detection) 10 seconds continuous, Attachment Flow EPPR 1 drive current > 1.0 A (Cancellation) 3 seconds continuous, Attachment Flow EPPR 1 drive current ≤ 1.0 A	•		
	1. Cor (Chec 1. CN	lts / Symptoms) htrol Function – IPC operation failure, Option attachment flow control operation filling list) -242 (#2) – CN-52 (#39) Checking Open/Short -242 (#1) – CN-52 (#40) Checking Open/Short	failure)	

 $\ensuremath{\,\%\,}$ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General C : Crawler Type W : Wheel Type

DTC	,	Diamontia Critoria	Ap	plicat	ion
HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria	G	С	W
	5	(Detection) (When Attachment Flow EPPR 2 current is equal or more than 300 mA) 10 seconds continuous, Attachment Flow EPPR drive current < 100 mA (Cancellation) (When Attachment Flow EPPR 2 current is equal or more than 300 mA) 3 seconds continuous, Attachment Flow EPPR drive current ≥ 100 mA	•		
189	6	(Detection) 10 seconds continuous, Attachment Flow EPPR 2 drive current > 1.0 A (Cancellation) 3 seconds continuous, Attachment Flow EPPR 2 drive current ≤ 1.0 A	•		
	1. Cor (Chec 1. CN	lts / Symptoms) ntrol Function – Option attachment flow control operation failure king list) -243 (#2) – CN-52 (#6) Checking Open/Short -243 (#1) – CN-52 (#7) Checking Open/Short			,
	0	HW145 10 seconds continuous, Attachment flow control EPPR 1 press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V HW145			
	1	10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Attachment flow control EPPR 1 press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V HW145			
196	4	10 seconds continuous, Attachment flow control EPPR 1 press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V			
	1. Cor (Chec 1. CD- 2. CD-	Its / Symptoms) Its /			
200	0 1 4	10 seconds continuous, Pump EPPR Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V 10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Pump EPPR Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V 10 seconds continuous, Pump EPPR Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V	•		
	1. Moi 2. Cor	Its / Symptoms) nitor – Pump EPPR Press. display failure ntrol Function – Pump input horse power control failure, Overload at compensat operation failure efficiency/speed performance failure)	tion co	ontrol	
	(Chec 1. CD 2. CD	king list) -44 (#B) – CN-52 (#32) Checking Open/Short -44 (#A) – CN-51 (#3) Checking Open/Short -44 (#C) – CN-51 (#13) Checking Open/Short			

 $\ensuremath{\,\mathbb{X}\,}$ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

DTC		Dia suppostia Cuitavia	Ap	plicat	ion
HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria	G	С	W
	0	(Mounting pressure sensor) 10 seconds continuous, Boom Cylinder Rod Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V	•		
	1	(Mounting pressure sensor) 10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Boom Cylinder Rod Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V	•		
205	4	(Mounting pressure sensor) 10 seconds continuous, Boom Cylinder Rod Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V	•		
	1. Mo 2. Col (Chec 1. CD 2. CD	ults / Symptoms) nitor – Boom Cylinder Rod Press. display failure ntrol Function – Boom floating control operation failure sking list) -124 (#B) – CN-53 (#5) Checking Open/Short -124 (#A) – CN-53 (#3) Checking Open/Short -124 (#C) – CN-53 (#13) Checking Open/Short			
218	4	Mounting pressure sensor (HCESPN128 or HCESPN 205) (Detection) (When Boom Up Floating Solenoid is Off) 10 seconds continuous, Boom Up Floating Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V (Cancellation) (When Boom Up Floating Solenoid is Off) 3 seconds continuous, Boom Up Floating Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V	•		
	6	(Detection) (When Boom Up Floating Solenoid is On) 10 seconds continuous, Boom Up Floating Solenoid drive current > 6.5 A (Cancellation) (When Boom Up Floating Solenoid is On) 3 seconds continuous, Boom Up Floating Solenoid drive current ≤ 6.5 A	•		
	1. Col (Chec 1. CD	ults / Symptoms) ntrol Function – Boom floating control operation failure king list) -368 (#1) – CN-53 (#20) Checking Open/Short -368 (#2) – CR-35 (#87) Checking Open/Short			

※ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

G : General C : Crawler Type W : Wheel Type

DTC		Diagnostia Critaria		Application		
HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria	G	С	W	
	4	Mounting pressure sensor (HCESPN 128 or 205) (Detection) (When Boom Down Pilot Pressure Cutoff Solenoid is Off) 10 seconds continuous, Boom Down Pilot Pressure Cutoff Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V (Cancellation) (When Boom Down Pilot Pressure Cutoff Solenoid is Off) 3 seconds continuous, Boom Down Pilot Pressure Cutoff Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V	•			
220	6	(Detection) (When Boom Down Pilot Pressure Cutoff Solenoid is On) 10 seconds continuous, Boom Down Pilot Pressure Cutoff Solenoid drive current > 6.5 A (Cancellation) (When Boom Down Pilot Pressure Cutoff Solenoid is On) 3 seconds continuous, Boom Down Pilot Pressure Cutoff Solenoid drive current ≤ 6.5 A	•			
	,	llts / Symptoms)				
		ntrol Function – Boom floating control operation failure				
	,	king list) -369 (#1) – CN-53 (#35) Checking Open/Short				
		-369 (#1) – CR-35 (#87) Checking Open/Short				
221	5	Monitor – Selecting attachment(breaker / crusher) (Detection) (When ATT Relief Setting EPPR 1 Current is equal or more than 10 mA) 10 seconds continuous, ATT Relief Setting EPPR 1 drive current = 0 mA (Cancellation) ATT Relief Setting EPPR 1 Current is equal or more than 10 mA) 3 seconds continuous, ATT Relief Setting EPPR 1 drive current ≥ 10 mA	•			
	6	(Detection) 10 seconds continuous, ATT Relief Setting EPPR 1 drive current > 1.0 A (Cancellation) 3 seconds continuous, ATT Relief Setting EPPR 1 drive current ≤ 1.0 A	•			
	1. Col (Chec 1. CD	ults / Symptoms) htrol Function – Option attachment flow control – P1 relief pressure setting failur sking list) -365 (#2) – CN-53 (#39) Checking Open/Short -365 (#1) – CN-53 (#40) Checking Open/Short	е			

 $\ensuremath{\,\mathbb{X}\,}$ Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

DTC		Di di Oni	Ap	plicat	ion	
HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria		С	W	
	5	Monitor – Selecting attachment(crusher) (Detection) (When ATT Relief Setting EPPR 2 Current is equal or more than 10 mA) 10 seconds continuous, ATT Relief Setting EPPR 2 drive current = 0 mA (Cancellation) (When ATT Relief Setting EPPR 2 Current is equal or more than 10 mA) 3 seconds continuous, ATT Relief Setting EPPR 2 drive current ≥ 10mA	•			
222	6	(Detection) 10 seconds continuous, ATT Relief Setting EPPR 2 drive current > 1.0 A (Cancellation) 3 seconds continuous, ATT Relief Setting EPPR 2 drive current ≤ 1.0 A	•			
	1. Cor (Chec 1. CD	Its / Symptoms) htrol Function – Option attachment flow control – P2 relief pressure setting fail king list) -366 (#2) – CN-53 (#32) Checking Open/Short -366 (#1) – CN-53 (#33) Checking Open/Short	ure			
	3	10 seconds continuous, Fuel Level Measurement Voltage > 3.8V				
	4	10 seconds continuous, Fuel Level Measurement Voltage < 0.3V				
301	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Fuel remaining display failure (Checking list) 1. CD-2 (#2) – CN-52 (#26) Checking Open/Short 2. CD-2 (#1) – CN-51 (#5) Checking Open/Short					
	4	(Model Parameter) mounting Fuel Warmer Relay (Detection) (When Fuel Warmer Relay is Off) 10 seconds continuous, Fuel Warmer Relay drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V (Cancellation) (When Fuel Warmer Relay is Off) 3 seconds continuous, Fuel Warmer Relay drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V	•			
325	6 (Resu	(Detection) (When Fuel Warmer Relay is On) 10 seconds continuous, Fuel Warmer Relay drive current > 4.5 A (Cancellation) (When Fuel Warmer Relay is On) 3 seconds continuous, Fuel Warmer Relay drive current ≤ 4.5 A Its / Symptoms)	•			
	(Chec	ntrol Function – Fuel warmer operation failure king list) -46 (#85) – CN-52 (#30) Checking Open/Short -46 (#86) – CN-45 (#B+ term) Checking Open/Short				

 ${\sf G:General} \qquad \qquad {\sf C:Crawler\,Type} \qquad \qquad {\sf W:Wheel\,Type}$

DTC		Diagnostic Criteria		plicat	ion
HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria		С	W
	0	10 seconds continuous, Transmission Oil Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V			•
	1	10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Transmission Oil Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V			•
504	4	10 seconds continuous, Transmission Oil Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V			•
501	1. Mo (Chec 1. CD 2. CD	ults / Symptoms) nitor – Transmission Oil Press. display failure, Transmission Oil low pressure wasking list) -5 (#B) – CN-54 (#27) Checking Open/Short -5 (#A) – CN-54 (#3) Checking Open/Short -5 (#C) – CN-54 (#13) Checking Open/Short	arninç	g failu	ŕe
	0	10 seconds continuous, Brake Oil Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V			•
	1	10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Brake Oil Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V			•
500	4	10 seconds continuous, Brake Oil Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V			•
503	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Monitor – Brake Oil Press. display failure, Brake Oil low pressure warning failure (Checking list) 1. CD-3 (#B) – CN-54 (#4) Checking Open/Short 2. CD-3 (#A) – CN-54 (#3) Checking Open/Short 3. CD-3 (#C) – CN-54 (#13) Checking Open/Short				
	0	10 seconds continuous, Working Brake Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V			•
	1	10 seconds continuous, 0.3V≤ Working Brake Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.8V			•
=-	4	10 seconds continuous, Working Brake Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V			•
505	1. Mo (Chec 1. CD 2. CD	ults / Symptoms) nitor – Working Brake Oil Press. display failure, Working Brake Oil low pressure sking list) -38 (#B) – CN-54 (#5) Checking Open/Short -38 (#A) – CN-54 (#3) Checking Open/Short -38 (#C) – CN-54 (#13) Checking Open/Short	warr	ning fa	illure

DTC		Diagnostic Critoria	Ap	plicat	ion
HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria G (Detection)		С	W
	4	(Detection) (When Parking Relay is Off) 10 seconds continuous, Parking Relay drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V (Cancellation) (When Parking Relay is Off) 3 seconds continuous, Parking Relay drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V			•
514	6	(Detection) (When Parking Relay is On) 10 seconds continuous, Parking Relay drive current > 6.5 A (Cancellation) (When Parking Relay is On) 3 seconds continuous, Parking Relay drive current ≤ 6.5 A			•
	(Results / Symptoms) 1. Control Function – Parking Relay operation failure (Checking list) 1. CR-66 (#1) – CN-54 (#20) Checking Open/Short 2. CR-66 (#2) – CN-45 (#B+ term) Checking Open/Short				
	4	(Detection) (When Traveling Cutoff Relay is Off) 10 seconds continuous, Traveling Cutoff Relay drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V (Cancellation) (When Traveling Cutoff Relay is Off) 3 seconds continuous, Traveling Cutoff Relay drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V			•
517	6	(Detection) (When Traveling Cutoff Relay is On) 10 seconds continuous, Traveling Cutoff Relay drive current > 6.5 A (Cancellation) (When Traveling Cutoff Relay is On) 3 seconds continuous, Traveling Cutoff Relay drive current ≤ 6.5 A			•
	1. Cor (Chec 1. CR	lts / Symptoms) htrol Function – Traveling Cutoff Relay operation failure king list) -47 (#85) – CN-54 (#9) Checking Open/Short -47 (#86) – CN-45 (#B+ term) Checking Open/Short			

* Some error codes are not applied to this machine.

 ${\sf G:General} \qquad \qquad {\sf C:Crawler\:Type} \qquad \qquad {\sf W:Wheel\:Type}$

DTC		Diagnostic Critoria	Ap	plicat	ion
HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria (Detection)		С	W
	4	(Detection) (When Ram Lock Solenoid is Off) 10 seconds continuous, Ram Lock Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V (Cancellation) (When Ram Lock Solenoid is Off) 3 seconds continuous, Ram Lock Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V			•
525	6	(Detection) (When Ram Lock Solenoid is On) 10 seconds continuous, Ram Lock Solenoid drive current > 6.5 A (Cancellation) (When Ram Lock Solenoid is On) 3 seconds continuous, Ram Lock Solenoid drive current ≤ 6.5 A			•
	(Resu	Its / Symptoms)			
	 Control Function – Ram lock control operation failure (Checking list) CN-69 (#1) – CN-54 (#8) Checking Open/Short CN-69 (#2) – CN-45 (#B+ term) Checking Open/Short 				
	4	(Detection) (When Creep Solenoid is Off) 10 seconds continuous, Creep Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V (Cancellation) (When Creep Solenoid is Off) 3 seconds continuous, Creep Solenoid drive unit Measurement Voltage > 3.0V			•
527	6	(Detection) (When Creep Solenoid is On) 10 seconds continuous, Creep Solenoid drive current > 6.5 A (Cancellation) (When Creep Solenoid is On) 3 seconds continuous, Creep Solenoid drive current ≤ 6.5 A			•
	1. Cor (Chec 1. CN	lts / Symptoms) ntrol Function – Creep mode operation failure king list) -206 (#1) – CN-54 (#7) Checking Open/Short -206 (#2) – CN-45 (#B+ term) Checking Open/Short			,

DTC		Diagnostia Critoria		plicat	ion
HCESPN	Diagnostic Criteria		G	С	W
	0	10 seconds continuous, Travel Forward Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage > 5.2V			•
	1	10 seconds continuous, $0.3V \le$ Travel Forward Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage $< 0.8V$			•
	4	10 seconds continuous, Travel Forward Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V			•
530	(Resu	Its / Symptoms)			
	1. Mor	nitor – Travel Forward Press. display failure			
	2. Cor	ntrol Function – Driving interoperability power control operation failure			
	(Chec	king list)			
	1. CD	-73 (#B) – CN-54 (#6) Checking Open/Short			
	2. CD	-73 (#A) – CN-54 (#3) Checking Open/Short			
	3. CD	-73 (#C) - CN-54 (#13) Checking Open/Short			
	1	10 seconds continuous, $0.3V \le$ Travel Reverse Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage $< 0.8V$			•
	4	10 seconds continuous, Travel Reverse Press. Sensor Measurement Voltage < 0.3V			•
	(Resu	Its / Symptoms)		,	
531	1. Mor	nitor – Travel Reverse Press. display failure			
	2. Cor	ntrol Function – Driving interoperability power control operation failure			
	(Chec	king list)			
	1. CD	-74 (#B) – CN-54 (#23) Checking Open/Short			
	2. CD	-74 (#A) – CN-54 (#3) Checking Open/Short			
	3. CD	-74 (#C) – CN-54 (#13) Checking Open/Short			
	0	10 seconds continuous, Battery input Voltage > 35V			
	1	10 seconds continuous, Battery input Voltage < 18V			
705	(Resu	Its / Symptoms)			
700	Control Function – Startup impossibility				
	(Checking list)				
	1. CS-	-74A (#1) – CN-51 (#1) Checking Open/Short			
		(When Engine is equal or more than 400 rpm) 10 seconds continuous,			
	1	Alternator Node L Measurement Voltage < 18V			
		(In case 12v goods, Alternator Node L Measurement Voltage < 9V)			
707	(Resu	Its / Symptoms)			
	1. Cor	ntrol Function – Battery charging circuit failure			
	(Chec	king list)			
	1. CS-	-74A (#1) – CN-51 (#2) Checking Open/Short			

DTC		Discounting Office in	Application		
HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria		С	W
	2	(Model Parameter) Mounting Acc. Dial			
	3	10 seconds continuous, Acc. Dial Measurement Voltage > 5.2V			
	4	(Model Parameter) Mounting Acc. Dial			
		10 seconds continuous, Acc. Dial Measurement Voltage < 0.3V			
714	(Resu	lts / Symptoms)			
	1. Mo	nitor – Acc. Dial Voltage display failure			
	2. Cor	ntrol Function – Engine rpm control failure			
	(Chec	king list)			
	1. CN	-7 (#15) – CN-52 (#23) Checking Open/Short			
		(Detection)			
		(When Travel Alarm (Buzzer) Sound is Off)			
		10 seconds continuous, Travel Alarm (Buzzer) Sound Relay drive unit			
	4	Measurement Voltage ≤ 3.0V			
	4	(Cancellation)			
		(When Travel Alarm (Buzzer) Sound Relay is Off)			
		3 seconds continuous, Travel Alarm (Buzzer) Sound Relay drive unit			
		Measurement Voltage > 3.0V			
		(Detection)			
		(When Travel Alarm (Buzzer) Sound is On)			
722		10 seconds continuous, Travel Alarm (Buzzer) Sound Relay drive			
		current > 4.5 A			
	6	(Cancellation)			
		(When Travel Alarm (Buzzer) Sound is On)			
		3 seconds continuous, Travel Alarm (Buzzer) Sound Relay drive			
		current ≤ 4.5 A			
	(Resu	llts / Symptoms)			
	1. Cor	ntrol Function – Driving alarm operation failure			
		king list)			
	1. CN	-81 (#1) – CN-52 (#31) Checking Open/Short			
	2. CN	-81 (#2) – CN-45 (#B+ term) Checking Open/Short			
		(When mounting the A/C Controller)			
	2	60 seconds continuous, A/C Controller Communication Data Error			
	(Resu	llts / Symptoms)			
831	,	ntrol Function – A/C Controller operation failure			
•		king list)			
	l ,	-11 (#8) – CN-51 (#22) Checking Open/Short			
		-11 (#7) – CN-51 (#32) Checking Open/Short			
	2	60 seconds continuous, Cluster Communication Data Error			
		lts / Symptoms)			
	,	ntrol Function – Cluster operation failure			
840		king list)			
	,	-56A (#7) – CN-51 (#22) Checking Open/Short			
		-56A (#6) – CN-51 (#32) Checking Open/Short			
	Z. UN				

 ${\sf G:General} \qquad \qquad {\sf C:Crawler\,Type} \qquad \qquad {\sf W:Wheel\,Type}$

DTC		Dia sus actio Oritaria	Ap	Application		
HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria		С	W	
	2	10 seconds continuous, ECM Communication Data Error	•			
	(Resu	Its / Symptoms)	_			
841	1. Cor	ntrol Function – ECM operation failure				
041	(Chec	king list)				
	1. CN	-93 (#22) – CN-51 (#21) Checking Open/Short				
	2. CN	-93 (#46) – CN-51 (#31) Checking Open/Short				
	2	(When mounting the I/O Controller 1)				
		60 seconds continuous, I/O Controller 1 Communication Data Error				
	(Resu	Its / Symptoms)				
845	1. Cor	ntrol Function – I/O Controller 1 operation failure				
	(Chec	king list)				
	1. CN	-53 (#21) – CN-51 (#23) Checking Open/Short				
	2. CN	-53 (#31) – CN-51 (#33) Checking Open/Short				
	2	(When mounting the Haptic Controller)				
		60 seconds continuous, Haptic Controller Communication Data Error				
	(Resu	Its / Symptoms)				
848	1. Cor	ntrol Function – Haptic Controller operation failure				
	l '	king list)				
		-8 (#2) – CN-51 (#22) Checking Open/Short				
	2. CN	-8 (#3) – CN-51 (#32) Checking Open/Short				
	2	(When mounting the RMCU)				
		60 seconds continuous, RMCU communication Data Error				
	l ,	luts / Symptoms)				
850		ntrol Function – RMCU operation failure				
	l ,	king list)				
		-125 (#3) – CN-51 (#22) Checking Open/Short				
	2. CN	-125 (#11) – CN-51 (#32) Checking Open/Short				
	2	(When mounting the I/O Controller 2)				
		60 seconds continuous, I/O Controller 2 communication Data Error				
004	l ,	Its / Symptoms)				
861		ntrol Function – I/O Controller 2 operation failure				
	,	king list)				
		-54 (#21) – CN-51 (#23) Checking Open/Short -54 (#31) – CN-51 (#33) Checking Open/Short				
	Z. UN	-54 (#51) - 614-51 (#55) Griecking Open/Short				

DTC		Diamagatia Odhada	Application				
HCESPN	FMI	Diagnostic Criteria		С	W		
	2	(When mounting the AAVM)					
		60 seconds continuous, AAVM communication Data Error					
	(Resu	lts / Symptoms)					
866	1. Cor	ntrol Function – AAVM operation failure					
	(Chec	king list)					
		-401 (#86) – CN-51 (#22) Checking Open/Short					
	2. CN	-401 (#87) – CN-51 (#32) Checking Open/Short					
	2	60 seconds continuous, RDU communication Data Error					
	(Resu	lts / Symptoms)					
867	1. Cor	ntrol Function – RDU operation failure					
007	(Chec	king list)					
	1. CN-376 (#10) – CN-51 (#22) Checking Open/Short						
	2. CN	-376 (#18) – CN-51 (#32) Checking Open/Short					
	2	60 seconds continuous, Switch Controller communication Data Error					
	(Results / Symptoms)						
868	Control Function – Switch Controller operation failure						
	(Chec	king list)					
	1. CN	-56A (#7) - CN-51 (#22) Checking Open/Short					
	2. CN	-56A (#6) – CN-51 (#32) Checking Open/Short					
	2	(When mounting the BKCU)					
		60 seconds continuous, BKCU communication Data Error					
	(Resu	Its / Symptoms)					
869	1. Cor	ntrol Function – BKCU operation failure					
	`	king list)					
		-2B (#A) – CN-51 (#22) Checking Open/Short					
	2. CS	-2B (#B) – CN-51 (#32) Checking Open/Short					

4. ENGINE FAULT CODE

	TAGET CODE	
Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
111 629 12	Engine control module critical internal failure - Bad intelligent device or component. Error internal to the ECM related to memory hardware failures or internal ECM voltage supply circuits.	Engine may not start or may be difficult to start.
115 612 2	Engine magnetic crankshaft speed/position lost both of two signals - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The ECM has detected the primary and backup speed sensor signals are connected backwards.	The engine will shut down or will not start.
122 102 3	Intake manifold 1 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the intake manifold pressure circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
123 102 4	Intake manifold 1 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low Source. Low signal voltage or open circuit detected at the intake manifold pressure circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
124 102 16	Intake manifold 1 pressure - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Intake manifold pressure is above the maximum operating limit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
125 102 18	Intake Manifold 1 Pressure - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. Intake manifold pressure is below the minimum operating limit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
131 91 3	Accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at accelerator pedal position number 1 circuit.	The engine will operate in limp home mode.
132 91 4	Accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at accelerator pedal position number 1 signal circuit.	The engine will operate in limp home mode.
133 974 3	Remote accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at remote accelerator pedal position signal circuit.	Remote accelerator will not operate.
134 974 4	Remote accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at remote accelerator pedal position signal circuit.	Remote accelerator will not operate.
135 100 3	Engine oil rifle pressure 1 sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the engine oil pressure circuit.	None on performance.
141 100 4	Engine oil rifle pressure 1 sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage or open circuit detected at the engine oil pressure circuit.	None on performance.

 $[\]ensuremath{\,\%\,}$ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
143 100 18	Engine oil rifle pressure - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Engine oil pressure signal indicates engine oil pressure is below the engine protection warning limit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
144 110 3	Engine coolant temperature 1 sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage or open circuit detected at engine coolant temperature circuit.	Fan will stay ON if controlled by ECM.
145 110 4	Engine coolant temperature 1 sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at engine coolant temperature circuit.	Fan will stay ON if controlled by ECM.
146 110 16	Engine coolant temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Engine coolant temperature is above engine protection warning limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red stop lamp starts flashing.
151 110 0	Engine coolant temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level. Engine coolant temperature signal indicates engine coolant temperature above engine protection critical limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red stop lamp starts flashing.
153 105 3	Intake manifold 1 temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at intake manifold air temperature circuit.	Fan will stay ON if controlled by ECM.
154 105 4	Intake manifold 1 temperature sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at intake manifold air temperature circuit.	Fan will stay ON if controlled by ECM.
155 105 0	Intake manifold 1 temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level. Intake manifold air temperature signal indicates intake manifold air temperature above engine protection critical limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red stop lamp starts flashing.
175 3464 3	Electronic throttle control actuator driver circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. A short circuit to battery or open circuit has been detected in the engine intake air throttle actuator signal circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
176 3464 4	Electronic throttle control actuator driver circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. A short circuit to ground has been detected in the engine intake air throttle actuator signal circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
177 3464 7	Electronic throttle control actuator - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The engine intake air throttle actuator has failed the auto zero span check.	Possible reduced engine performance.

^{*} Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
187 3510 4	Sensor supply 2 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at the sensor supply number 2 circuit.	Engine power derate.
195 111 3	Coolant level sensor 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at engine coolant level circuit.	None on performance.
196 111 4	Coolant level sensor 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at engine coolant level circuit.	None on performance.
197 111 18	Coolant level - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Low coolant level has been detected.	Engine power derate.
221 108 3	Barometric pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at barometric pressure circuit.	Engine power derate.
222 108 4	Barometric pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at barometric pressure circuit.	Engine power derate.
227 3510 3	Sensor supply 2 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at sensor supply number 2 circuit.	Engine power derate.
234 190 0	Engine crankshaft speed/position - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level. Engine speed signal indicates engine speed above engine protection limit.	Engine power derate.
238 3511 4	Sensor supply 3 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected on the +5 volt sensor supply circuit to the engine speed sensor.	Engine may run rough, may stop running, may not start, or may be difficult to start.
239 3511 3	Sensor supply 3 circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High voltage detected on the 5 volt sensor supply circuit to the engine speed sensor.	Engine may run rough, may stop running, may not start, or may be difficult to start.
241 84 2	Wheel-based vehicle speed - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The ECM lost the vehicle speed signal or is reading an erratic value.	Engine speed limited to ,maximum engine speed without VSS parameter value. Cruise control, gear-down protection, and road speed governor will not work.
245 647 4	Fan control circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the fan control circuit when commanded on.	The fan may stay on continuously or not run at all.
249 171 3	Ambient air temperature sensor 1 circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at ambient air temperature circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.

 $[\]ensuremath{\,\%\,}$ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
256 171 4	Ambient air temperature sensor 1 circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at ambient air temperature circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
271 1347 4	Fuel pump pressurizing assembly 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the fuel pump actuator circuit.	Engine power derate.
272 1347 3	Fuel pump pressurizing assembly 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage or open circuit detected at the fuel pump actuator circuit.	Engine may run rough, may stop running, may not start, or may be difficult to start.
285 639 9	SAE J1939 multiplexing PGN timeout error - Abnormal update rate. The ECM expected information from a multiplexed device but did not receive it soon enough or did not receive it at all.	At least one multiplexed device will not operate properly.
286 639 13	SAE J1939 multiplexing configuration error - Out of calibration. The ECM expected information from a multiplexed device but only received a portion of the necessary information.	At least one multiplexed device will not operate properly.
288 974 19	Sae J1939 multiplexing remote accelerator pedal or lever position sensor circuit - Received network data in error. The oem vehicle electronic control unit (VECM) detected a fault with the remote accelerator.	Remote accelerator will not operate.
295 108 2	Barometric pressure - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. An error in the barometric pressure sensor signal was detected by the ECM.	Engine power derate.
322 651 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 1 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. Current detected at injector 1 when voltage is turned OFF.	Engine power derate.
323 655 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 5 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. Current detected at injector 5 when voltage is turned OFF.	The current to the injector is shut OFF. Engine power derate.
324 653 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 3 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. Current detected at injector 3 when voltage is turned OFF.	The current to the injector is shut OFF. Engine power derate.
325 656 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 6 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. Current detected at injector 6 when voltage is turned OFF.	The current to the injector is shut OFF. Engine power derate.
331 652 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 2 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. Current detected at injector 2 when voltage is turned OFF.	The current to the injector is shut OFF. Engine power derate.

[※] Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
332 654 5	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 4 circuit - Current below normal, or open circuit. Current detected at injector 4 when voltage is turned OFF.	The current to the injector is shut OFF. Engine power derate.
334 110 2	Engine coolant temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The engine coolant temperature sensor is reading an erratic value at initial key ON.	None on performance.
338 1267 3	Idle shutdown vehicle accessories relay driver circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. Open circuit or short to voltage source detected at the idle shutdown vehicle accessory/ignition bus relay circuit.	Vehicle accessories or ignition bus loads controlled by the idle shutdown relay will not power up.
339 1267 4	Idle shutdown vehicle accessories relay driver circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at the idle shutdown vehicle accessory or ignition bus relay circuit when commanded ON.	Vehicle accessories or ignition bus loads controlled by the idle shutdown relay will not power up.
343 629 12	Engine control module warning internal hardware failure - Bad intelligent device or component. ECM power supply errors have been detected.	Engine power derate.
346 630 12	Engine control module calibration memory software - Bad intelligent device or component. Invalid switch configuration adjustable parameter setting have been detected by the engine control module (ECM).	Various optional switch inputs to the ECM may not operate correctly.
351 627 12	Injector power supply - Bad intelligent device or component. The ECM measured injector boost voltage is low.	Engine power derate.
352 3509 4	Sensor supply 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at sensor supply number 1 circuit.	Engine power derate.
383 729 5	Engine intake air heater 1 circuit - Current below normal or open circuit. A malfunctioning engine intake air heater circuit has been detected.	Engine may not start or may be difficult to start.
386 3509 3	Sensor supply 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at sensor supply number 1 circuit.	Engine power derate.
415 100 1	Engine oil rifle pressure - Data valid but below normal operational range - Most severe level. Oil pressure signal indicates oil pressure below the engine protection critical limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, engine will shut down 30 seconds after red stop lamp starts flashing.
418 97 15	Water in fuel indicator - Data valid but above normal operational range - Least severe level. water has been detected in the fuel filter.	None on performance.

[※] Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
427 639 9	J1939 data link - Abnormal update rate. Communication between the engine control module (ECM) and another device on the SAE J1939 data link has been lost.	Engine will only idle.
428 97 3	Water in fuel indicator sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at the water in fuel circuit.	None on performance. No water in fuel warning available.
435 100 2	Engine oil rifle pressure - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The engine oil pressure sensor is reading an erratic value.	None on performance.
436 105 2	Intake manifold 1 temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The intake manifold temperature sensor is reading an erratic value at initial key on or while the engine is running.	Possible reduced engine performance.
441 168 18	Battery 1 voltage - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. ECM supply voltage is below the minimum system voltage level.	Engine may run rough, may stop running, may not start, or may be difficult to start.
442 168 16	Battery 1 Voltage - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. ECM supply voltage is above the maximum system voltage level.	None on performance.
449 157 0	Injector metering rail 1 pressure - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level. The ECM has detected that fuel pressure in the fuel rail is higher than the normal operating fuel system pressure.	Possible reduced engine performance.
451 157 3	Injector metering rail 1 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the rail fuel pressure sensor circuit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.
452 157 4	Injector metering rail 1 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the rail fuel pressure sensor circuit.	Power and/or speed derate.
483 1349 3	Injector metering rail 2 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the fuel rail 2 pressure sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
484 1349 4	Injector metering rail 2 pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the fuel rail 2 pressure sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
515 3514 3	Sensor supply 6 circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High voltage detected on the +5 volt sensor supply circuit to the fuel rail pressure sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.

[※] Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
516 3514 4	Sensor supply 6 circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected on the +5 volt sensor supply circuit to the fuel rail pressure sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
553 157 16	Injector metering rail 1 pressure - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. The ECM has detected that fuel pressure is higher than commanded pressure.	Possible reduced engine performance.
555 101 16	Crankcase pressure - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. The crankcase breather filter requires maintenance.	None on performance.
556 101 0	Crankcase pressure - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level. The crankcase breather filter requires maintenance.	None on performance.
559 157 18	Injector metering rail 1 pressure - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. The ECM has detected that fuel pressure is lower than commanded pressure.	Possibly hard to start or low power. Engine could possibly not start.
584 677 3	Starter relay driver circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. Open circuit or high voltage detected at starter lockout circuit.	Either the engine will not start or the engine will not have starter lockout protection.
585 677 4	Starter relay driver circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at starter lockout circuit.	Either the engine will not start or the engine will not have starter lockout protection.
595 103 16	Turbocharger 1 speed - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. High turbocharger speed has been detected by the ECM.	Possible reduced engine performance.
596 167 16	Electrical charging system voltage - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. High battery voltage detected by the battery voltage monitor feature.	None on performance.
597 167 18	Electrical charging system voltage - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Low battery voltage detected by the battery voltage monitor feature.	None on performance.
649 1378 31	Engine oil change interval - Condition exists. Change engine oil and filter.	None on performance.
687 103 18	Turbocharger 1 speed - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Low turbocharger speed detected by the ECM.	Possible reduced engine performance.
689 190 2	Engine crankshaft speed/position - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The ECM has detected an error in the engine speed signal.	Possible reduced engine performance.

 $[\]ensuremath{\,\mathbb{X}\,}$ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
691 1172 3	Turbocharger 1 compressor inlet temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at turbocharger compressor inlet air temperature circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
692 1172 4	Turbocharger 1 compressor inlet temperature circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at turbocharger compressor inlet air temperature circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
693 1172 2	Turbocharger 1 compressor intake temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. A temperature too high or low for the operating conditions has been detected by the turbocharger compressor intake temperature sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
731 723 7	Engine speed / position camshaft and crankshaft misalignment - Mechanical system not responding properly or out of adjustment. Engine position signal from the crankshaft position sensor and camshaft position sensor do not match.	Possible reduced engine performance.
755 157 7	Injector metering rail 1 pressure - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The ECM has detected a difference in the 2 fuel rail pressure signals.	Possible reduced engine performance.
778 723 2	Engine camshaft speed / position sensor - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The ECM has detected a loss of signal from the camshaft position sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
784 1590 2	Adaptive cruise control mode - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Loss of communication with adaptive cruise control.	Adaptive cruise control will not operate. Standard cruise control may not operate.
1117 627 2	Power supply lost with ignition on - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Supply voltage to the ECM fell below 6.2 volts momentarily, or the ECM was not allowed to power down correctly (retain battery voltage for 30 seconds after key OFF).	Possible reduced engine performance.
1139 651 7	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 1 - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The ECM has detected an error with the injection timing or quantity.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1141 652 7	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 2 - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The ECM has detected an error with the injection timing or quantity.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1142 653 7	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 3 - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The ECM has detected an error with the injection timing or quantity.	Possible reduced engine performance.

^{*} Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
1143 654 7	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 4 - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The ECM has detected an error with the injection timing or quantity.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1144 655 7	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 5 - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The ECM has detected an error with the injection timing or quantity.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1145 656 7	Injector solenoid driver cylinder 6 - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The ECM has detected an error with the injection timing or quantity.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1228 27 2	EGR valve position - Data erratic, intermittent, or Incorrect. The EGR valve is unable to meet commanded position.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1239 2623 3	Accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 2 circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at accelerator pedal position number 2 signal circuit.	The engine will operate in limp home mode.
1241 2623 4	Accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 2 circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at accelerator pedal position number 2 signal circuit.	The engine will operate in limp home mode.
1242 91 2	Accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 1 and 2 - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Accelerator position sensor number 1 and number 2 are reading different values.	The engine will only idle.
1515 91 19	Sae J1939 multiplexed accelerator pedal or lever sensor system - Received network data in error. The J1939 multiplexing controller has indicated a malfunction of the multiplexed accelerator pedal.	The engine will only idle.
1654 1323 31	Engine misfire cylinder 1- Condition exists. Engine misfire has been detected in cylinder number 1.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1655 1324 31	Engine misfire cylinder 2 - Condition exists. Engine misfire has been detected in cylinder number 2.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1656 1325 31	Engine misfire cylinder 3 - Condition exists. Engine misfire has been detected in cylinder number 3.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1657 1326 31	Engine misfire cylinder 4 - Condition exists. Engine misfire has been detected in cylinder number 4.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1658 1327 31	Engine misfire cylinder 5 - Condition exists. Engine misfire has been detected in cylinder number 5.	Possible reduced engine performance.

 $[\]ensuremath{\,\times\,}$ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
1659 1328 31	Engine misfire cylinder 6 - Condition exists. Engine misfire has been detected in cylinder number 6.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1668 1761 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1669 1761 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the catalyst tank level sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1673 1761 1	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level - Data valid but below normal operating range - Most severe level. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level has fallen below the critical warning level.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1677 3031 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature sensor - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1678 3031 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature sensor - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage or open circuit detected at the diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1679 3031 2	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature sensor has indicated a tank temperature too high or too low for the ambient conditions.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1682 3362 31	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit input lines - Condition exists. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit is unable to prime.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1683 3363 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank heater - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank heater circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1684 3363 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank heater - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank heater circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.

 $[\]ensuremath{\,\%\,}$ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
1691 5298 18	Aftertreatment diesel oxidation catalyst conversion efficiency - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The temperature increase across the aftertreatment catalyst is lower than expected.	Possible frequent need for aftertreatment regeneration.
1695 3513 3	Sensor supply 5 - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at sensor supply 5 circuit in the oem harness.	the engine will operate in limp home mode.
1696 3513 4	Sensor supply 5 - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at sensor supply number 5 circuit in the oem harness.	the engine will operate in limp home mode.
1712 3363 18	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank heater - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank heater is unable to thaw the frozen diesel exhaust fluid.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1713 3363 16	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank heater - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The diesel exhaust fluid tank heater is continuously in the on position.	None on performance.
1718 1322 31	Engine misfire for multiple cylinders - Condition exists. Engine misfire has been detected in multiple cylinder numbers.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1776 2634 3	Power relay driver circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at power relay driver circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1777 2634 4	Power relay driver circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. An open circuit or low voltage has been detected at the power relay circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1843 101 3	Crankcase pressure circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the crankcase pressure circuit.	None on performance.
1844 101 4	Crankcase pressure circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the crankcase pressure circuit.	None on performance.
1866 411 2	Exhaust gas recirculation valve delta pressure - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. An error in the EGR delta pressure signal was detected at initial key on or the sensor failed the autozero test.	possible reduced engine performance.
1867 412 2	Engine gas recircuilation temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Engine misfire has been detected in multiple cylinder numbers.	Possible reduced engine performance.

^{*} Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
1879 3251 3	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter differential pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment differential pressure sensor circuit.	possible reduced engine performance.
1881 3251 4	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter differential pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage or open circuit detected at the aftertreatment differential pressure sensor circuit.	possible reduced engine performance.
1883 3251 2	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter differential pressure sensor - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter differential pressure sensor is reading an erratic value at initial key on or during engine operation.	possible reduced engine performance.
1885 3216 4	Aftertreatment intake NOx sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. An internal circuit error has been detected by the aftertreatment intake NOx sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1887 3226 4	Aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. An internal circuit error has been detected by the aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1896 2791 13	EGR valve controller - Out of calibration. The EGR valve has failed the automatic calibration procedure at initial key ON.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1921 3251 0	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter differential pressure - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The soot load of the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter has exceeded the recommended limits.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1922 3251 0	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter differential pressure - Data valid but above normal operating range - Most severe level. The soot load of the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter has exceeded the recommended limits. Engine protection derate is enabled.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1938 3597 1	Ecu power output supply voltage 1 - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Low battery voltage detected by the VGT actuator.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1942 101 2	Crankcase pressure - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The ECM has detected that the crankcase pressure signal is reading an erratic value at initial key ON or during engine operation.	None on performance.

 $[\]ensuremath{\,\%\,}$ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
1961 2791 0	EGR valve control circuit calculated over temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Least severe level. High EGR valve driver temperature has been detected.	Possible reduced engine performance.
1962 641 0	VGT Actuator driver over temperature (calculated) - Data valid but above normal operating range - Least severe level. High internal VGT actuator temperature has been detected.	None on performance.
1974 101 16	Crankcase pressure - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The crankcase breather filter requires maintenance.	None on performance.
1993 4795 31	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter missing - Condition exists. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter in the exhaust system is not present.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2182 1072 3	Engine brake actuator driver 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage or an open circuit detected at the engine brake solenoid number 1 signal circuit.	Possible reduced engine braking performance.
2183 1072 4	Engine brake actuator driver 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at the engine brake solenoid number 1 signal circuit.	Possible reduced engine braking performance.
2185 3512 3	Sensor supply 4 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at 5 VDC sensor supply circuit to the accelerator pedal position sensor.	Engine will only idle.
2186 3512 4	Sensor supply 4 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at 5 VDC sensor supply circuit to the accelerator pedal position sensor.	Engine will only idle.
2198 641 11	VGT Actuator driver circuit - Root cause not known. Intermittent communication between the smart VGT controller and the ECM has been detected. The VGT controller is not interpreting the J1939 message from the ECM correctly.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2265 1075 3	Electric lift pump for engine fuel supply circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage or an open circuit detected at the fuel lift pump signal circuit.	Engine may not start or may be difficult to start.
2266 1075 4	Electric lift pump for engine fuel supply circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage or an open circuit detected at the fuel lift pump signal circuit.	Engine may not start or may be difficult to start.

 $[\]ensuremath{\,\%\,}$ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
2272 27 4	EGR Valve position circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage has been detected at the EGR valve position sensor circuit	Possible reduced engine performance.
2273 411 3	Exhaust gas recirculation valve delta pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the EGR differential pressure sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2274 411 4	Exhaust gas recirculation valve delta pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the EGR differential pressure sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2288 103 15	Turbocharger 1 speed - Data valid but above normal operating range - Least severe level. High turbocharger speed has been detected by the ECM.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2311 633 31	Electronic fuel injection control valve circuit - Condition exists. Fuel pump actuator circuit resistance too high or too low, or an intermittent connection has been detected.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2321 190 2	Engine crankshaft speed / position - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Crankshaft engine speed sensor intermittent synchronization.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2322 723 2	Engine camshaft speed / position sensor - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. Camshaft engine speed sensor intermittent synchronization.	None on performance.
2349 2791 5	EGR Valve control circuit - Current below normal or open circuit. Motor terminal or motor coil open circuit has been detected by the ECM.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2353 2791 6	EGR Valve control circuit - Current above normal or grounded circuit. A short circuit to ground has been detected in the EGR valve motor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2363 1073 4	Engine brake actuator driver output 2 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at the engine brake solenoid number 2 signal circuit.	Possible reduced engine braking performance.
2367 1073 3	Engine brake actuator driver output 2 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. Open circuit or high voltage detected at the engine brake solenoid number 2 signal circuit.	Possible reduced engine braking performance.
2372 95 16	Fuel filter differential pressure - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Excessive fuel flow restriction to the high pressure fuel pump has been detected.	Possible reduced engine performance.

 $[\]ensuremath{\,\%\,}$ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
2373 1209 3	Exhaust gas pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the exhaust gas pressure circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2374 1209 4	Exhaust gas pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the exhaust gas pressure circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2375 412 3	Exhaust gas recirculation temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at EGR temperature circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2376 412 4	Exhaust gas recirculation temperature sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at EGR temperature circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2377 647 3	Fan control circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. Open circuit or high voltage detected at the fan control circuit.	The fan can stay on continuously or not run at all.
2387 641 7	VGT Actuator driver circuit (motor) - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The smart VGT controller has detected incorrect stop limits, or the VGT is unable to move to the closed position.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2398 171 2	Ambient air temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The ambient air temperature sensor is reading an erratic value.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2448 111 17	Coolant level - Data valid but below normal operational range - Least severe level. Low engine coolant level detected.	none on performance.
2449 641 13	Vgt actuator controller - Out of calibration. The VGT actuator has been installed incorrectly.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2468 102 3	Engine crankshaft speed/position - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The engine speed has exceeded a critical limit.	Engine will be shut down.
2554 1209 2	Exhaust gas pressure - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. The exhaust gas pressure sensor is reading an erratic value.	possible reduced engine performance.
2555 729 3	Intake air heater 1 circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High voltage detected at the intake air heater signal circuit.	The intake air heaters may be ON or OFF all the time.
2556 729 4	Intake air heater 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low voltage detected at the intake air heater signal circuit.	The intake air heaters may be ON or OFF all the time.
2634 641 12	VGT Actuator controller - Bad intelligent device or component. An internal error has been detected by the smart VGT controller.	Possible reduced engine performance.

^{*} Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
2636 641 9	VGT Actuator driver circuit - abnormal update rate. No communications on the J1939 data link between the engine ECM and the smart VGT controller.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2638 5298 17	Aftertreatment diesel oxidation catalyst conversion efficiency - Data valid but below normal operating range - Least severe level. The temperature increase across the aftertreatment diesel oxidation catalyst is lower than expected.	Possible frequent need for aftertreatment regeneration.
2639 3251 15	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter differential pressure - Data valid but above normal operating range - Least severe level. The soot load of the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter has exceeded the recommended limits.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2646 110 32	Engine coolant temperature - Condition exists. The EGR valve was closed to reduce engine coolant temperature.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2718 520325 31	Brake switch and accelerator pedal position incompatible - Condition exists. The ECM has detected the brake pedal and accelerator pedal were depressed simultaneously.	The engine will operate in limp home mode.
2771 3226 9	Aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor - Abnormal update rate. No communications or an invalid data transfer rate detected on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2777 3703 31	Particulate trap active regeneration inhibited due to inhibit switch - Condition exists. Regeneration of the diesel particulate filter has been prevented due to the permit switch being disabled.	Possible frequent need for aftertreatment regeneration.
2961 412 15	Exhaust gas recirculation temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Least severe level. EGR temperature has exceeded the engine protection limit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2962 412 16	Exhaust gas recirculation temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Moderately severe level. EGR temperature has exceeded the engine protection limit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2963 110 15	Engine coolant temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Least severe level. Engine coolant temperature is above the engine protection warning limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the Engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.
2964 105 15	Intake manifold 1 temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Least severe level. Intake manifold air temperature signal indicates intake manifold air temperature is above engine protection warning limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the Engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.

^{*} Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
2973 102 2	Intake manifold 1 pressure - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The intake manifold pressure sensor is reading an erratic value.	Possible reduced engine performance.
2976 3361 2	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. An internal error has been detected in the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3133 3610 3	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet pressure sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet pressure sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3134 3610 4	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet pressure sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet pressure sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3135 3610 2	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet pressure - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet pressure sensor is reading an erratic value at initial key ON or during engine operation.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3146 4363 3	Aftertreatment SCR outlet temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the SCR outlet temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3147 4363 4	Aftertreatment SCR outlet temperature sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the SCR outlet temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3148 4363 2	Aftertreatment SCR outlet temperature sensor - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The SCR outlet temperature sensor is not changing with engine operating conditions.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3151 4794 31	Aftertreatment SCR catalyst system missing - Condition exists. The aftertreatment SCR catalyst in the exhaust system is not present.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3165 4363 0	Aftertreatment SCR outlet temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level. The SCR outlet temperature sensor reading has exceeded the maximum engine protection temperature limit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3168 3936 16	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter system - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The system has detected a malfunction in the filtering capability of the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter.	None on performance.

 $[\]ensuremath{\,\mathbb{X}\,}$ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3186 1623 9	Tachograph output shaft speed - Abnormal update rate. No communication or an invalid data transfer rate has been detected on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the tachograph output shaft speed sensor.	None on performance.
3213 1623 19	Tachograph output shaft speed - Received network data in error. The J1939 multiplexing controller has indicated a malfunction of the tachograph output shaft speed sensor.	None on performance.
3228 3216 2	Aftertreatment Intake NOx sensor - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. An incorrect NOx sensor reading has been detected by the aftertreatment intake NOx sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3232 3216 9	Aftertreatment Intake NOx sensor - Abnormal update rate. No communication or an invalid data transfer rate has been detected on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the aftertreatment intake NOx sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3235 4363 16	Aftertreatment SCR outlet temperature - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The SCR outlet temperature sensor reading has exceeded the maximum temperature limit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3237 4340 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater 1 circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid line heater 1 circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3238 4340 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater 1 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid line heater 1 circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3239 4342 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater 2 circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid line heater 2 circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3241 4342 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater 2 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid line heater 2 circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3242 3363 7	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank heater - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid temperature did not increase when the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank heater was commanded ON.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3243 3060 18	Engine cooling system monitor - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The engine is not warming up as expected.	None on performance.

 $[\]ensuremath{\,\%\,}$ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code		
J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3251 4765 16	Aftertreatment diesel oxidation catalyst intake temperature - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The diesel oxidation catalyst intake temperature sensor reading has exceeded the maximum temperature limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the Engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.
3253 3242 16	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature sensor reading has exceeded the maximum engine protection temperature limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the Engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.
3254 3242 15	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature - Data valid but above normal operating range - Least severe level. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature sensor reading has exceeded the maximum engine protection temperature limit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3255 3246 16	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature sensor reading has exceeded the maximum engine protection temperature limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.
3256 3246 15	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature - Data valid but above normal operating range - Least severe level. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature sensor reading has exceeded the maximum engine protection temperature limit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3258 4340 5	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater 1 circuit - Current below normal or open circuit. Open circuit detected in the diesel exhaust fluid line heater 1.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3261 4342 5	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater 2 circuit - Current below normal or open circuit. Open circuit detected in the diesel exhaust fluid line heater 2.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3311 3242 0	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature - Data valid but above normal operating range - Most severe level. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature sensor reading has exceeded the maximum engine protection temperature limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.
3312 3246 0	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature - Data valid but above normal operating range - Most severe level. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature sensor reading has exceeded the maximum engine protection temperature limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.

 $[\]ensuremath{\,\%\,}$ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3313 4765 4	Aftertreatment diesel oxidation catalyst intake temperature sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the catalyst intake sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3314 4765 3	Aftertreatment diesel oxidation catalyst intake temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the catalyst intake temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3315 4765 2	Aftertreatment diesel oxidation catalyst intake temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The aftertreatment diesel oxidation catalyst intake temperature sensor is not changing with engine operating conditions.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3316 3242 4	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3317 3242 3	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage or open circuit detected at the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3318 3242 2	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter intake temperature is not changing with engine operating conditions.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3319 3246 3	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage or open circuit detected at the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3321 3246 4	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature sensor circuit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3322 3246 2	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The aftertreatment diesel particulate filter outlet temperature is not changing with engine operating conditions.	Possible reduced engine performance.

 $[\]ensuremath{\,\%\,}$ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3326 91 9	SAE J1939 Multiplexed accelerator pedal or lever sensor system - Abnormal update rate. The ECM expected information from a multiplexed accelerator pedal or lever sensor but did not receive it soon enough or did not receive it at all.	Engine will only idle.
3328 191 9	Transmission output shaft speed - Abnormal update rate. No communication or an invalid data transfer rate has been detected on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the transmission output shaft speed sensor.	None on performance.
3338 5395 18	Engine idle fuel quantity - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The fueling quantity at idle is lower than expected.	Engine may run rough, may stop running, may not start, or may be difficult to start.
3342 4752 18	Engine exhaust gas recirculation cooler efficiency - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The EGR cooler is not cooling the recirculated exhaust gas sufficiently.	None on performance.
3343 5285 18	Engine charge-air cooler efficiency - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The engine charge air cooler is not cooling the intake air flow sufficiently.	None on performance.
3361 102 10	Intake manifold 1 pressure - Abnormal rate of change. The VGT position reading is stuck.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3366 111 18	Coolant level - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. Very low engine coolant level detected.	None on performance.
3374 1818 31	Roll over protection brake control active - Condition exists. The ECM received a message from the anti-lock braking (ABS) controller, inhibiting cruise control operation.	Cruise control could possibly not operate.
3375 5397 31	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter regeneration too frequent - Condition exists. The system has detected the need for an active regeneration has occurred too soon following the last active regeneration.	None on performance.
3376 5319 31	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter incomplete regeneration - Condition exists. The system has detected that the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter differential pressure is too high following an active regeneration.	Possible frequent need for aftertreatment regeneration.
3382 3058 18	Engine exhaust gas recirculation (EGR) system - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. Measured egr flow is lower than commanded.	Possible reduced engine performance.

 $[\]ensuremath{\,\times\,}$ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code	_	
J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3383 3058 16	Engine exhaust gas recirculation (EGR) system - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe Level. Measured EGR flow is higher than commanded.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3394 4766 18	Aftertreatment 1 diesel oxidation catalyst outlet gas temperature - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The diesel oxidation catalyst outlet Temperature is below the operating limit	Possible frequent need for aftertreatment regeneration.
3396 3750 31	Diesel particulate filter 1 conditions not met for active regeneration - Condition exists. The aftertreatment temperatures are not warm enough for aftertreatment injection.	Possible frequent need for aftertreatment regeneration.
3418 191 19	Transmission output shaft speed - Received network data in error. The J1939 multiplexing controller has indicated a malfunction of the transmission output shaft speed sensor.	None on performance.
3422 4344 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater 3 circuit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid line heater 3 circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3423 4344 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater 3 circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid line heater 3 circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3425 4344 5	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater 3 circuit - Current below normal or open circuit. Open circuit detected in the diesel exhaust fluid line heater 3.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3488 563 9	Anti-lock braking (ABS) controller - Abnormal update rate. No communication or an invalid data transfer rate has been detected on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the anti-lock braking (ABS) controller.	None on performance.
3492 251 10	Real time clock - Abnormal rate of change. The real time clock indicates a stuck engine off timer.	None on performance.
3494 1081 7	Engine wait to start lamp - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. Wait to Start lamp has malfunction.	None on performance.
3497 1761 17	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level - Data valid but below normal operating range - Least severe level. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level is low.	None on performance.
3498 1761 18	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level is very low.	None on performance.

 $[\]ensuremath{\,\%\,}$ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3525 84 19	Wheel-based vehicle speed - Received network data in error. The J1939 multiplexing controller has indicated a malfunction of the wheel-based vehicle speed sensor.	Engine speed limited to maximum engine speed without VSS parameter value. Cruise control, gear-down protection, and road speed governor will not work.
3526 84 9	Wheel-Based vehicle speed - Abnormal update rate. No communication or an invalid data transfer rate has been detected on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the wheel-based vehicle speed sensor.	Engine speed limited to maximum engine speed without VSS parameter value. Cruise control, gear-down protection, and road speed governor will not work.
3527 558 19	Accelerator pedal or lever idle validation switch - Received network data in error. The J1939 multiplexing controller has indicated a malfunction of the accelerator pedal or lever idle validation switch.	The engine will only idle.
3528 558 9	Accelerator pedal or lever idle validation switch - Abnormal update rate. No communication or an invalid data transfer rate has been detected on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the accelerator pedal or lever idle validation switch.	Engine will only idle.
3531 171 9	Ambient air temperature - Abnormal update rate. No communication or an invalid data transfer rate has been detected on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the ambient air temperature sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3532 171 19	Ambient air temperature - Received network data in error. The J1939 multiplexing controller has indicated a malfunction of the ambient air temperature sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3539 51 3	Engine intake throttle actuator position sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the engine intake air throttle position sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3541 51 4	Engine intake throttle actuator position sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the engine intake air throttle position sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3542 51 2	Engine intake throttle actuator position sensor - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. The engine intake air throttle posistion feedback is erratic or incorrect.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3545 3226 10	Aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor circuit - Abnormal rate of change. The aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor reading is not valid.	None on performance.
3547 4096 31	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank empty - Condition exists. The diesel exhaust fluid tank is empty.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3555 1081 9	Engine wait to start lamp - Abnormal update rate. A loss of communication has been detected.	None on performance.

[※] Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3556 1081 19	Engine wait to start lamp - Received network data in error. The ECM received an invalid signal on the SAE J1939 datalink.	None on performance.
3558 3361 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3559 3361 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3562 5491 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater relay - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid line heater relay.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3563 5491 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid line heater relay - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid line heater relay.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3567 5394 5	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing valve - Current below normal or open circuit. A circuit error has been detected in the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing valve circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3568 5394 7	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid (DEF) Dosing valve - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. A mechanical malfunction has been detected in the DEF dosing valve.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3571 4334 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid pressure sensor - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid pressure sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3572 4334 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid pressure sensor - Voltage below normal or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid pressure sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3574 4334 18	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid pressure sensor - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. Low diesel exhaust fluid pressure has been detected in the dosing unit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3575 4334 16	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid pressure sensor - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit has detected a blockage in the diesel exhaust fluid return flow.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3577 4376 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid return valve - Voltage above normal or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid return valve.	Possible reduced engine performance.

^{*} Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3578 4376 4	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid return valve - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the diesel exhaust fluid return valve.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3582 4364 18	Aftertreatment SCR catalyst conversion efficiency - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. NOx conversion across the SCR catalyst is too low.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3583 5031 10	Aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor heater - Abnormal rate of change. The aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor heater is unable to maintain its normal operating temperature.	None on performance.
3596 4334 2	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid pressure sensor - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The diesel exhaust fluid pressure sensor has reported a reading too high or low for the operating conditions.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3649 5024 10	Aftertreatment Intake NOx sensor heater - Abnormal rate of change. The aftertreatment intake NOx sensor heater is unable to maintain its normal operating temperature.	None on performance.
3681 3228 2	Aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor power supply - Data erratic, intermittent, or incorrect. The aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor indicates that the power supply to the sensor is incorrect.	None on performance.
3682 3218 2	Aftertreatment Intake NOx sensor power supply - Data erratic, entermittent or encorrect. The aftertreatment intake NOx sensor indicates that the power supply to the sensor is incorrect.	None on performance.
3697 630 12	Engine control module calibration memory - Bad intelligent device or component. Error internal to the ECM related to engine software failures.	Engine may not start or may be difficult to start.
3712 5246 0	Aftertreatment SCR operator inducement - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level. Critical SCR related fault codes have been active for an extended period of time and require immediate attention.	Vehicle speed will be limited to 8 km [5 miles] per hour.
3714 1569 31	Engine protection torque derate - Condition exists. Critical fault codes related to engine operation are active.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3715 188 16	Engine speed at idle - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The engine speed at idle has exceeded the governed idle speed.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3716 188 18	Engine speed at idle - Data valid but below normal operational range - Moderately severe level. Engine is not maintaining the governed idle speed.	None on performance.

 $[\]ensuremath{\,\mathbb{X}\,}$ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3717 3226 13	Aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor - Out of calibration. A calibration mismatch between the aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor and the ECM has been detected.	None on performance.
3718 3216 13	Aftertreatment intake NOx - Out of calibration. A calibration mismatch between the aftertreatment intake NOx sensor and the ECM has been detected.	None on performance.
3724 168 17	Battery 1 voltage - Data valid but below normal operating range - Least severe level. Low voltage to the EGR valve device driver has been detected.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3725 3216 10	Aftertreatment Intake NOx sensor - Abnormal rate of change. The aftertreatment intake NOx sensor reading is not valid.	None on performance.
3727 5571 7	High pressure common rail fuel pressure relief valve - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. The fuel rail high-pressure relief valve has opened at a lower than expected pressure.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3737 1675 31	Engine starter mode overcrank protection - Condition exists. The starter motor has been temporarily disabled in order to prevent starter damage.	Starter operation is prohibited until the starter motor has adequately cooled.
3741 5571 0	High pressure common rail fuel pressure relief valve - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level. The fuel rail pressure relief valve has opened due to high fuel rail pressure.	Engine may run rough, may stop running, may not start, or may be difficult to start.
3748 3216 20	Aftertreatment intake NOx sensor - Data not rational - Drifted high. An offset in the intake NOx sensor reading has been detected.	None on performance.
3749 3226 20	Aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor - Data not rational - Drifted high. An offset in the outlet NOx sensor reading has been detected.	None on performance.
3838 2978 9	Estimated engine parasitic losses - Percent torque - Abnormal update rate. A loss of communication has been detected.	None on performance.
3843 5603 9	Cruise control disable command - Abnormal update rate. No communication or an invalid data transfer rate has been detected on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the cruise control.	None on performance.
3844 5605 31	Cruise control pause command - Condition exists. The adaptive cruise control has dropped out and must be manually engaged.	Cruise control could possibly not operate.
3845 5603 31	Cruise control disable command - Condition exists. The adaptive cruise control has dropped out and must be manually engaged.	Cruise control could possibly not operate.

 $[\]ensuremath{\,\%\,}$ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
3899 5848 4	Aftertreatment 1 SCR Intermediate NH3 sensor - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. A circuit error has been detected in the NH3 sensor.	None on performance.
3911 5848 9	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate NH3 sensor - Abnormal update rate. Loss of communication with the aftertreatment SCR intermediate NH3 sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3912 5853 10	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate NH3 sensor heater - Abnormal rate of change. A malfunction of the aftertreatment SCR intermediate NH3 sensor heater has been detected.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3932 5851 16	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate NH3 gas sensor power supply - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. High battery voltage supply detected at the aftertreatment SCR intermediate NH3 sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3933 5851 18	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate NH3 gas sensor power supply - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. Low battery voltage supply detected at the aftertreatment SCR intermediate NH3 sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3934 5851 2	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate NH3 gas sensor power supply - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. Intermittent battery voltage supply detected at the aftertreatment SCR intermediate NH3 sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3935 5848 13	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate NH3 sensor - Out of calibration. Incorrect trim resistance has been detected in the aftertreatment SCR intermediate NH3 sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3936 5848 12	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate NH3 sensor - Bad intelligent device or component. An internal error of the aftertreatment SCR intermediate NH3 sensor has been detected.	Possible reduced engine performance.
3937 5848 10	Aftertreatment 1 SCR Intermediate NH3 sensor - Abnormal rate of change. The aftertreatment SCR intermediate NH3 sensor reading is NOT valid.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4149 2623 8	Accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 2 circuit frequency - Abnormal frequency or pulse width or period. The accelerator pedal position sensor reading is out of range.	The engine will operate in limp home mode.
4151 5742 9	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module - Abnormal update rate. No communications on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.

^{*} Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
J1939 FMI 4152 5743 9	Aftertreatment selective catalytic reduction temperature sensor module - Abnormal update rate. No communications on the J1939 data link between the ECM and the aftertreatment SCR temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4155 5746 3	Aftertreatment 1 diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater relay - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater relay circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4156 5746 4	Aftertreatment 1 diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater relay - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater relay circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4157 4376 7	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid return valve - Mechanical system not responding or out of adjustment. A stuck aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid return valve has been detected.	None on performance.
4158 5742 12	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module - Bad intelligent device or component. An internal error has been detected in the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4159 5743 12	Aftertreatment selective catalytic reduction temperature sensor module - Bad intelligent device or component. An internal error has been detected in the aftertreatment SCR temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4161 5742 3	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High battery supply voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4162 5742 4	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low battery supply voltage detected at the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4163 5742 16	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module- Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. High internal temperature detected in the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.

 $[\]ensuremath{\,\times\,}$ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
4164 5743 3	Aftertreatment selective catalytic reduction temperature sensor module - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High battery supply voltage detected at the aftertreatment SCR temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4165 5743 4	Aftertreatment selective catalytic reduction temperature sensor module - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low battery supply voltage detected at the aftertreatment SCR temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4166 5743 16	Aftertreatment selective catalytic reduction temperature sensor module - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. High internal temperature detected in the aftertreatment SCR temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4168 5745 3	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater is detected to be stuck on.	None on performance.
4169 5745 5	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. The aftertreatment diesel exhasut fluid dosing unit heater is detected to be stuck off.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4171 5745 18	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit failed to thaw.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4213 3695 2	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter regeneration inhibit switch - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. The diesel particulate filter regeneration permit switch is stuck in the OFF or INHIBIT position.	Possible frequent need for aftertreatment regeneration.
4215 563 31	Anti-lock braking (ABS) Active - Condition exists. Cruise control was paused due to an anti-wheel slip message from teh ABS controller.	Adaptive cruise control will not operate. Standard cruise control may not operate.
4244 4337 2	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing temperature - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing temperature is irrational.	None on performance.
4245 5798 2	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater temperature - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater temperature is irrational.	None on performance.

 $[\]ensuremath{\,\%\,}$ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
4249 4337 10	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing temperature - Abnormal rate of change. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit temperature is stuck.	None on performance.
4251 5798 10	Aftertreatment 1 diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater temperature - Abnormal rate of change. The aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid dosing unit heater temperature sensor reading is stuck.	None on performance.
4252 1081 31	Engine wait to start lamp - Condition exists. The received signal does not match the commanded signal.	None on performance.
4259 5742 11	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module - Root cause not known. Intermittent battery voltage supply detected at the aftertreatment diesel particulate filter temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4261 5743 11	Aftertreatment selective catalytic reduction temperature sensor module - Root cause not known. Intermittent battery voltage supply detected at the aftertreatment SCR temperature sensor module.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4279 5848 21	Aftertreatment 1 SCR Intermediate NH3 - Data not rational - Drifted low. An in range low failure has been detected.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4281 5848 2	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate NH3 - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. The aftertreatment SCR intermediate NH3 sensor reading is stuck.	None on performance.
4284 5793 9	Desired engine fueling state - Abnormal update rate. A valid message from the transmission ECU has NOT been received.	Engine may not start or may be difficult to start.
4289 91 8	Accelerator pedal or lever position sensor 1 circuit frequency - Abnormal frequency or pulse width or period. The accelerator pedal position sensor reading is out of range.	The engine will operate in limp home mode.
4293 5097 3	Engine brake active lamp - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the brake lamp relay driver circuit.	None on performance.
4294 5097 4	Engine brake active lamp - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the brake lamp relay driver circuit.	None on performance.
4452 520668 31	Aftertreatment outlet NOx sensor closed loop operation - Condition exists. The maximum dosing adjustment has been reached.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4453 520669 31	Aftertreatment intermediate NH3 sensor closed loop operation - Condition exists. The maximum dosing adjustment has been reached.	None on performance.

 $[\]ensuremath{\,\%\,}$ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
4517 237 13	Vehicle Identification number - Out of calibration. The vehicle identification number has not been programmed into the ECM.	None on performance.
4518 5862 3	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate gas temperature sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the aftreatment SCR intermediate temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4519 5862 4	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate gas temperature sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the aftertreatment SCR intermediate temperature sensor circuit.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4521 5862 2	Aftertreatment SCR Intermediate gas temperature sensor - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. The aftertreatment SCR intermediate temperature sensor reading is irrational.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4524 5862 0	Aftertreatment SCR intermediate gas temperature - Data valid but above normal operational range - Most severe level. The aftertreatment SCR intermediate temperature sensor reading is above the engine protection limit.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.
4525 5862 16	Aftertreatment 1 SCR intermediate gas temperature - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. High SCR Intermediate temperature detected.	Progressive power and/or speed derate increasing in severity from time of alert. If the engine protection shutdown feature is enabled, the engine will shut down 30 seconds after the red STOP lamps starts flashing.
4526 521 2	Brake pedal position - Data erratic, intermittent or incorrect. The values of the 2 brake switch signals do not match.	None on performance.
4572 3031 9	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature - Abnormal update rate. The ECM lost communication with the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4584 3936 14	Aftertreatment diesel particulate filter system - Special instructions. The incorrect aftertreatment diesel particulate filter system has been installed with the engine.	Engine will be shut down.
4585 4792 14	Aftertreatment 1 SCR catalyst system - Special instructions. The incorrect SCR system has been Installed.	Engine will be shut down.
4612 520701 31	Engine intake manifold pressure system monitor - Condition exists. The engine is unable to meet the air handling system commands.	Possible reduced engine performance.

[※] Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
4658 4331 18	Aftertreatment SCR actual dosing reagent quantity - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. Low aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid flow detected.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4691 5585 18	Engine injector metering rail 1 cranking pressure - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The fuel rail pressure during cranking is too low for the engine to start.	Engine may not start or may be difficult to start.
4713 5357 31	Engine fuel injection quantity error for multiple cylinders - Condition exists. A malfunction of all fuel injectors has been detected.	Engine may run rough, may stop running, may not start, or may be difficult to start.
4726 1239 16	Engine fuel leakage - Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. Fuel rail pressure decay has been detected.	Engine may run rough, may stop running, may not start, or may be difficult to start.
4727 157 15	Injector metering rail 1 pressure - Data valid but above normal operating range - Least severe level. A self pumping condition has been detected in the fuel system.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4728 1209 18	Exhaust gas pressure - Data valid but below normal operating range - Moderately severe level. The commanded VGT position and exhaust pressure were not met.	None on performance.
4731 3031 13	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank temperature sensor - Out of calibration. The received datalink message was not valid.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4732 1761 13	Aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level sensor - Out of calibration. The received datalink message was not valid.	None on performance.
4739 1761 11	Aftertreatment 1 diesel exhaust fluid tank level sensor - Root cause not known. An unknown error has been detected with the aftertreatment diesel exhaust fluid tank level sensor.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4769 1761 10	Aftertreatment 1 diesel exhaust fluid tank level sensor - Abnormal rate of change. A valid diesel exhaust fluid tank level reading has NOT been received.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4841 520728 16	Cold start injector metering rail 1 pressure- Data valid but above normal operating range - Moderately severe level. High fuel rail pressure detected.	Engine may run rough, may stop running, may not start, or may be difficult to start.
4865 6303 3	Engine coolant level 2 sensor circuit - Voltage above normal, or shorted to high source. High signal voltage detected at the engine coolant level 2 circuit.	None on performance.

 $[\]ensuremath{\,\%\,}$ Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

Fault code J1939 SPN J1939 FMI	Reason	Effect (only when fault code is active)
4866 6303 4	Engine coolant level 2 sensor circuit - Voltage below normal, or shorted to low source. Low signal voltage detected at the engine coolant level 2 circuit.	·
4956 520750 13	Engine variable geometry turbo (VGT) software - Out of calibration. VGT software does not match application.	Possible reduced engine performance.
4957 520750 31	Engine variable geometry turbo (VGT) software - Condition exists. The VGT actuator and ECM software is not compatible.	Possible reduced engine performance.

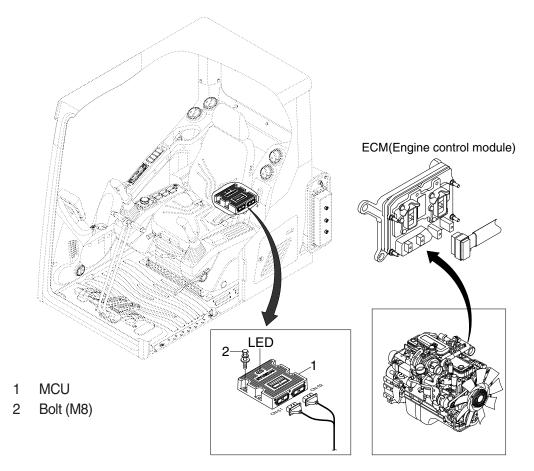
[※] Some fault codes are not applied to this machine.

5. AAVM FAULT CODE

Fault Code	Description		
A01	AAVM Communication Error -AAVM		
A02	AAVM Communication Error -Front Camera		
A03	AAVM Communication Error -Rear Camera		
A04	AAVM Communication Error -Left Camera		
A05	AAVM Communication Error -Right Camera		
A06	Manual Setting Fail		
A07	No MCU CID		
A08	MCU CID Format Error		
A09	AAVM Hardware Error -AAVM		
A10	AAVM Hardware Error -Front Camera		
A11	AAVM Hardware Error -Rear Camera		
A12	AAVM Hardware Error -Left Camera		
A13	AAVM Hardware Error -Right Camera		
A14	MCU CID Model is not registered		
A15	MCU CID Model can't be applied		

GROUP 14 ENGINE CONTROL SYSTEM

1. MCU and Engine ECM (Electronic Control Module)



330L5MS13

2. MCU ASSEMBLY

- To match the pump absorption torque with the engine torque, MCU varies EPPR valve output pressure, which control pump discharge amount whenever feedbacked engine speed drops under the reference rpm of each mode set.
- 2) Three LED lamps on the MCU display as below.

LED lamp	Trouble	Service
G is turned ON	Normal	-
G and R are turned ON	Trouble on MCU	· Change the MCU
G and Y are turned ON Trouble on serial		· Check if serial communication
	communication line	lines between MCU and cluster are disconnected
Three LED are turned OFF Trouble on MCU power		· Check if the input power wire (24 V, GND) of MCU
		is disconnected
		· Check the fuse

G: green, R: red, Y: yellow

GROUP 15 EPPR VALVE

1. PUMP EPPR VALVE

1) COMPOSITION

EPPR (Electro Proportional Pressure Reducing) valve consists of electro magnet and spool valve installed at main pump.

(1) Electro magnet valve

Receive electric current from MCU and move the spool proportionally according to the specific amount of electric current value.

(2) Spool valve

Is the two way direction control valve for pilot pressure to reduce main pump flow. When the electro magnet valve is activated, pilot pressure enters into flow regulator of main pump.

(3) Pressure and electric current value for each mode

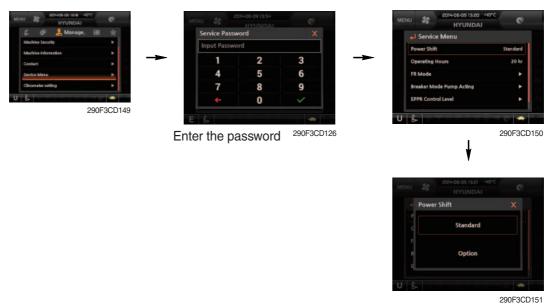
Mode		Pressure		Electric current	Engine rpm
		kgf/cm²	psi	(mA)	(at accel dial 10)
	Р	7	100	280 ± 30	1700 ± 50
Standard	S	9 ± 3	128 ± 40	305 ± 30	1600 ± 50
	E	11 ± 3	156 ± 40	340 ± 30	1550 ± 50
	Р	4	57	230 ± 30	1800 ± 50
Option	S	6 ± 3	85 ± 40	260 ± 30	1700 ± 50
	Е	11 ± 3	156 ± 40	340 ± 30	1550 ± 50

2) HOW TO SWITCH THE POWER SHIFT (STANDARD ↔ OPTION) ON THE CLUSTER

You can switch the EPPR valve pressure set by selecting the power shift (standard ↔ option).

- Management

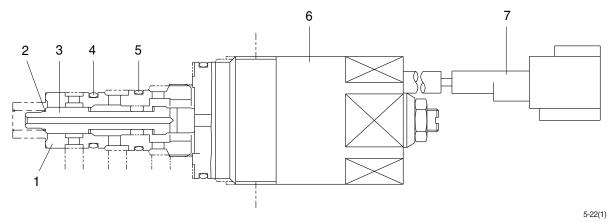
· Service menu



· Power shift (standard/option): Power shift pressure can be set by option menu.

3) OPERATING PRINCIPLE (pump EPPR valve)

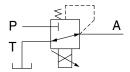
(1) Structure



- 1 Sleeve
- 2 Spring
- 3 Spool

- O-ring
- O-ring

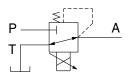
- 6 Solenoid valve
- 7 Connector

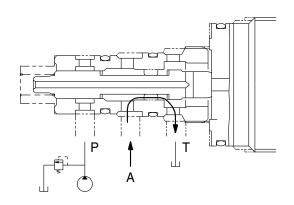


- Pilot oil supply line (pilot pressure)
- Return to tank
- Secondary pressure to flow regulator at main pump

(2) Neutral

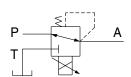
Pressure line is blocked and A oil returns to tank.

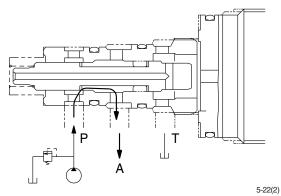




(3) Operating

Secondary pressure enters into A.





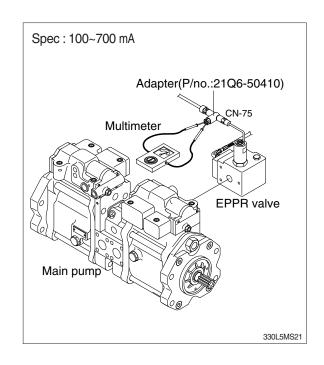
4) EPPR VALVE CHECK PROCEDURE

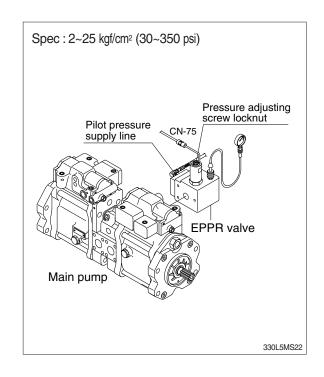
(1) Check electric current value at EPPR valve

- ① Disconnect connector CN-75 from EPPR valve.
- ② Insert the adapter to CN-75 and install multimeter as figure.
- ③ Start engine.
- 4 Set S-mode and cancel auto decel mode.
- (5) Position the accel dial at 10.
- 6 If rpm display show approx 1600 ± 50 rpm check electric current at bucket circuit relief position.
- ⑦ Check electric current at bucket circuit relief position.



- ① Remove plug and connect pressure gauge as figure.
 - · Gauge capacity: 0 to 50 kgf/cm² (0 to 725 psi)
- ② Start engine.
- 3 Set S-mode and cancel auto decel mode.
- 4 Position the accel dial at 10.
- \bigcirc If tachometer show approx 1600 \pm 50 rpm check pressure at relief position of bucket circuit by operating bucket control lever.
- 6 If pressure is not correct, adjust it.
- 7 After adjust, test the machine.





2. BOOM PRIORITY EPPR VALVE

1) COMPOSITION

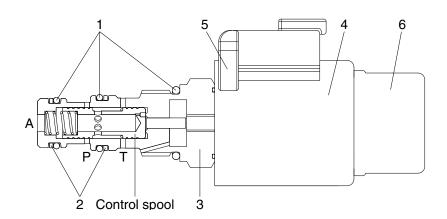
The boom priority EPPR valve is built in a manifold and mainly consisting of valve body and coil. This EPPR valve installed under the solenoid valve.

2) CONTROL

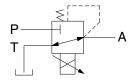
The boom priority EPPR valve has to be controlled by a specific electronic amplifier card, which is supplying the coil with a current 580 mA at 30 Ω and 24 V.

3) OPERATING PRINCIPLE

(1) Structure



21095MS14



P : Pilot supply line

T: Return to tank

A: Secondary pressure to flow MCV

1 O-ring

3 Valve body

5 Connector

2 Support ring

4 Coil

6 Cover cap

(2) Operation

In de-energized mode the inlet port (P) is closed and the outlet port (A) is connected to tank port (T).

In energized mode the solenoid armature presses onto the control spool with a force corresponding to the amount of current. This will set a reduced pressure at port A. The setting is proportional to the amount of current applied.

(3) Maximum pressure relief

If a pressure from outside is applied on port A the valve may directly switch to tank port (T) and protect the system before overload.

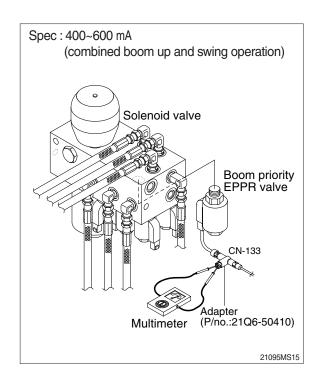
2) EPPR VALVE CHECK PROCEDURE

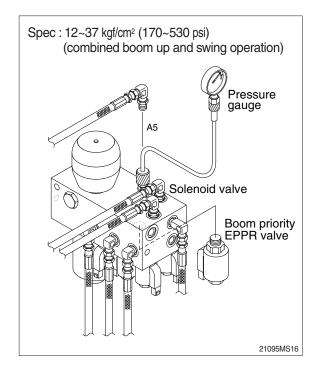
(1) Check electric current value at EPPR valve

- ① Disconnect connector CN-133 from EPPR valve.
- ② Insert the adapter to CN-133 and install multimeter as figure.
- ③ Start engine.
- Set S-mode and cancel auto decel mode.
- ⑥ Check electric current in case of combined boom up and swing operation.

(2) Check pressure at EPPR valve

- ① Remove hose from A5 port and connect pressure gauge as figure.
 - · Gauge capacity: 0 to 50 kgf/cm² (0 to 725 psi)
- ② Start engine.
- 3 Set S-mode and cancel auto decel mode.
- ④ If rpm display approx 1600±50 rpm check pressure (In case of combined boom up and swing operation).
- (5) If pressure is not correct, adjust it.
- ⑥ After adjust, test the machine.





GROUP 16 MONITORING SYSTEM

1. OUTLINE

Monitoring system consists of the monitor part and switch part.

The monitor part gives warnings when any abnormality occurs in the machine and informs the condition of the machine.

Various select switches are built into the monitor panel, which act as the control portion of the machine control system.

2. CLUSTER

1) MONITOR PANEL

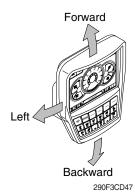


220F3CD02

* The warning lamp pops up and/or blinks and the buzzer sounds when the machine has a problem.

The warning lamp blinks until the problem is cleared. Refer to page 5-65 for details.

- This cluster is adjustable.
 - · Vertical (forward/backward) : each 15°
 - · Horizontal (left only): 8°



5-61

2) CLUSTER CHECK PROCEDURE

(1) Start key: ON

① Check monitor

- a. Buzzer sounding for 4 seconds with HYUNDAI logo on cluster.
- * If the ESL mode is set to the enable, enter the password to start engine.
- ② After initialization of cluster, the operating screen is displayed on the LCD. Also, self diagnostic function is carried out.
 - a. Engine rpm display: 0 rpm
 - b. Engine coolant temperature gauge: White range
 - c. Hydraulic oil temperature gauge: White range
 - d. Fuel level gauge: White range

③ Indicating lamp state

- a. Power mode pilot lamp: E mode or U mode
- b. Work mode pilot lamp : General operation mode (bucket)
- c. Travel speed pilot lamp: Low (turtle)

(2) Start of engine

① Check machine condition

- a. RPM display indicates at present rpm
- b. Gauge and warning lamp: Indicate at present condition.
- * When normal condition : All warning lamp OFF
- c. Work mode selection: General work
- d. Power mode selection: E mode or U mode
- e. Travel speed pilot lamp: Low (turtle)

2 When warming up operation

- a. Warming up pilot lamp: ON
- b. After engine started, engine speed increases to 1200 rpm.
- * Others same as above.

③ When abnormal condition

- a. The warning lamp lights up and the buzzer sounds.
- b. If BUZZER STOP switch is pressed, buzzer sound is canceled but the lamp warning lights up until normal condition.
- * The pop-up warning lamp moves to the original position and blink when the buzzer stop switch is pushed. Also the buzzer stops.

3. CLUSTER CONNECTOR

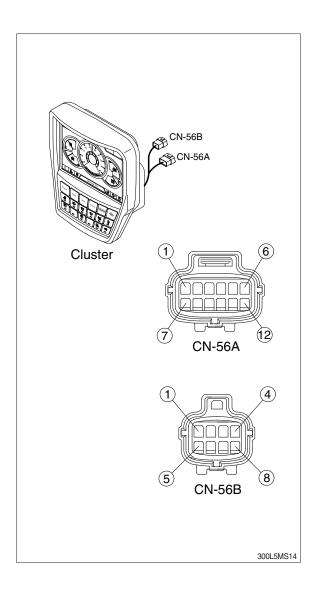
1) CN-56A

No.	Name	Signal
1	Battery 24V	20~32V
2	Power IG (24V)	20~32V
3	GND	-
4	CAN 1 (H)	0~5V
5	CAN 1 (L)	0~5V
6	CAN 2 (H)	20~32V
7	CAN 2 (L)	20~32V
8	RS-232 (RX)	±15V
9	RS-232 (TX)	±15V
10	Aux left	0~5V
11	Aux right	0~5V
12	Aux GND	-

2) CN-56B

No.	Name	Signal
1	CAM 6.5V	6.3~6.7V
2	CAM GND	-
3	CAM DIFF (H)	0~5V
4	CAM DIFF (L)	0~5V
5	CAM 1	NTSC signal
6	CAM 2	NTSC signal
7	CAM 3	NTSC signal
8	CAM shield	-

NTSC : National Television System Committee



2) GAUGE

(1) Operation screen

When you first turn starting switch ON, the operation screen will appear.





290F3CD51

- 1 RPM / Speed gauge
- 2 Engine coolant temperature gauge
- 3 Hydraulic oil temperature gauge
- 4 Fuel level gauge

- 5 DEF/AdBlue® level gauge
- 6 Tripmeter display
- 7 Eco guage
- 8 Accel dial gauge
- Operation screen type can be set by the screen type menu of the display.
 Refer to page 5-86 for details.

(2) RPM / Speed gauge



① This display the engine speed.

(3) Engine coolant temperature gauge



① This gauge indicates the temperature of coolant.

 \cdot White range : 40-107°C (104-225°F)

· Red range : Above 107°C (225°F)

② If the indicator is in the red range or lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds turn OFF the engine and check the engine cooling system.

* If the gauge indicates the red range or lamp blinks in red even though the machine is on the normal condition, check the electric device as that can be caused by the poor connection of electricity or sensor.

(4) Hydraulic oil temperature gauge



290F3CD54

- ① This gauge indicates the temperature of hydraulic oil.
 - · White range: 40-105°C(104-221°F)
 - · Red range : Above 105°C(221°F)
- ② If the indicator is in the red range or limit lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds reduce the load on the system. If the gauge stays in the red range, stop the machine and check the cause of the problem.
- * If the gauge indicates the red range or lamp blinks in red even though the machine is on the normal condition, check the electric device as that can be caused by the poor connection of electricity or sensor.

(5) Fuel level gauge



- ① This gauge indicates the amount of fuel in the fuel tank.
- ② Fill the fuel when the red range, or | lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds.
- * If the gauge indicates the red range or lamp blinks in red even though the machine is on the normal condition, check the electric device as that can be caused by the poor connection of electricity or sensor.

(6) DEF/AdBlue® Level gauge



- ① This gauge indicates the amount of liquid in the DEF/AdBlue® tank
- ② Fill the DEF/AdBlue® when the red range, or 😂 lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds.
- ③ Do not pour DEF/AdBlue® any more when the DEF/AdBlue® fill up warning lamp lights ON.
- ※ Refer to page 5-70.
- * If the gauge indicates the red range or lamp blinks in red even though the machine is on the normal condition, check the electric device as that can be caused by the poor connection of electricity or sensor.

(7) Tripmeter display



- ① This displays the engine the tripmeter.
- Refer to page 5-88 for details.

(8) Eco gauge



290F3CD58

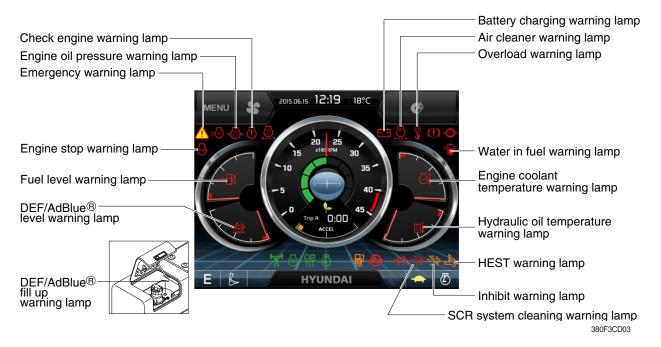
- ① This gauge indicates the fuel consumption rate and machine load status. So that operators can be careful with fuel economy.
- ② The fuel consumption rate or machine load is higher, the number of segment is increased.
- ③ The color of Eco gauge indicates operation status.
 - · White: Idle operation
 - · Green : Economy operation
 - · Yellow : Non-economy operation at a medium level.
 - · Red : Non-economy operation at a high level.

(9) Accel dial gauge



① This gauge indicates the level of accel dial.

3) WARNING LAMPS



Warning lamps and buzzer

··· Training lampo		
Warnings	When error happened	Lamps and buzzer
All warning lamps except below	Warning lamp pops up on the center of the LCD and the buzzer sounds	The pop-up warning lamp moves to the original position and blinks, and the buzzer stops when; the buzzer stop switch is pushed the knob of the haptic controller is pushed the lamp of the LCD is touched
مند المناسبة	Warning lamp pops up on the center of the LCD and the buzzer sounds	The pop-up warning lamp moves to the original position and light ON or blinks, and the buzzer stops when; the buzzer stop switch is pushed the knob of the haptic controller is pushed the lamp of the LCD is touched Refer to page 5-70 for details.
	Warning lamp pops up on the center of the LCD and the buzzer sounds	The pop-up warning lamp moves to the original position and lights ON, and the buzzer stops when 2 seconds elapsed.
=[3>	Warning lamp pops up on the center of the LCD and the buzzer sounds	The pop-up warning lamp moves to the original position and blinks, and the buzzer stops when 2 seconds elapsed.
	Warning lamp pops up on the center of the LCD and the buzzer sounds	* Refer to page 5-66 for details.

^{*} Refer to page 5-75 for the buzzer stop switch and operator's manual page 3-57 for the haptic controller.

(1) Engine coolant temperature warning lamp



① Engine coolant temperature warning is indicated two steps.

- 103°C over : The 🔄 lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds.
- 107°C over: The \(\hat{1} \) lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds.
- ② The pop-up , lamps move to the original position and blinks when the buzzer stop switch stops and , lamps keep blink.
- 3 Check the cooling system when the lamps keep blink.

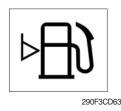
(2) Hydraulic oil temperature warning lamp



① Hydraulic oil temperature warning is indicated two steps.

- 100°C over : The lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds.
- 105°C over: The /i lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds.
- 2 The pop-up [], [] lamps move to the original position and blinks when the buzzer stop switch stops and [], [] lamps keep blink.
- ③ Check the hydraulic oil level and hydraulic oil cooling system.

(3) Fuel level warning lamp



- ① This warning lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds when the level of fuel is below 55 ℓ (14.5 U.S. gal).
- ② Fill the fuel immediately when the lamp blinks.

(4) Emergency warning lamp



① This warning lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds when each of the below warnings is happened.

- Engine coolant overheating (over 107°C)
- Hydraulic oil overheating (over 105°C)
- MCU input voltage abnormal
- Cluster communication data error
- Engine ECM communication data error
- ** The pop-up warning lamp moves to the original position and blinks when the buzzer stop switch buzzer stops.
- ② When this warning lamp blinks, machine must be checked and serviced immediately.

(5) Engine oil pressure warning lamp



290F3CD65

- ① This warning lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds when the engine oil pressure is low.
- ② If the lamp blinks, shut OFF the engine immediately. Check oil level.

(6) Check engine warning lamp

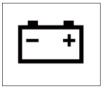


290F3CD66

- ① This warning lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds when the communication between MCU and engine ECM on the engine is abnormal, or if the cluster received specific fault code from engine ECM.
- ② Check the communication line between them.

 If the communication line is OK, then check the fault codes on the cluster.

(7) Battery charging warning lamp



290F3CD67

- ① This warning lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds when the battery charging voltage is low.
- ② Check the battery charging circuit when this lamp blinks.

(8) Air cleaner warning lamp



290F3CD68

- ① This warning lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds when the filter of air cleaner is clogged.
- ② Check the filter and clean or replace it.

(9) Overload warning lamp (opt)



290F3CD69

- ① When the machine is overload, the overload warning lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds during the overload switch is ON. (if equipped)
- 2 Reduce the machine load.

(10) Engine stop warning lamp



- ① This warning lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds when 30 minutes elapsed with empty condition of the DEF/AdBlue® tank, stop the engine immediately and check the DEF/AdBlue® tank.
- ② Fill the DEF/AdBlue® immediately in the DEF/AdBlue® tank.
- * Refer to page 5-70.
- ③ This lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds when the stationary SCR system cleaning is not performed.
- * Refer to page 5-68.
- * Please contact your HD Hyundai Construction Equipment service center or local dealer.

(11) SCR (selective catalytic reduction) system cleaning warning lamp



290F3CD70

① This warning lamp lights ON or blinks when the SCR system cleaning is needed as table below.

	Warning lamp		
SCR	Check engine	Stop engine	
= <u>=</u> =3>	<u>(I)</u>	STOP	Description
Off	Off	Off	Automatic SCR system cleaning
Blink	Off	Off	The status of a manual (stationary) SCR system cleaning when the SCR system cleaning switch has been activated. **Refer to page 5-69.**
On	On	Off	 The aftertreatment SCR system needs to be cleaned immediately. Engine power will be reduced automatically if action is not taken. ** The SCR system cleaning can be accomplished by: Changing to more challengine duty cycle. Performing a manual SCR system cleaning.
On	On	On	 These lamps will be ON when a stationary (manual) SCR system cleaning is not performed. Stop the engine immediately. Please contact your HD Hyundai Construction Equipment service center or local dealer.

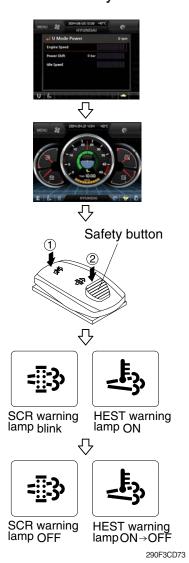
(12) SCR system cleaning inhibit warning lamp



- ① This warning lamp indicates, when illuminated, the SCR system cleaning switch is pushed inhibit position, therefore automatic and manual SCR system cleaning can not occur.
- * Refer to the operator's manual page 3-36 for the SCR system cleaning switch.

2609A3CD20

Manual SCR system cleaning



- Manual SCR system cleaning applies if the machine is in a fireproof area.
- * To stop a manual SCR system cleaning before it has completed, set to the SCR system cleaning switch to the inhibit position or turn OFF the engine.
- ① Stop and park the machine.

- ② Pull the safety button and push the switch to position ② to initiate the manual SCR system cleaning.
- * Refer to the operator's manual page 3-36 for the SCR system cleaning switch operation.
- The engine speed may increase to 950~1050 rpm and SCR system cleaning begins and it will take approximately 20~60 minutes.
- The SCR system cleaning warning lamp will blink and HEST warning lamp will light ON during the SCR system cleaning is operating.
- ① The SCR system cleaning and/or HEST warning lamp will light OFF when the SCR system cleaning is completed.

(13) HEST (High exhaust system temperature) warning lamp



2609A3CD21

- ① This warning lamp indicates, when illuminated, that exhaust temperatures are high due to SCR system cleaning.
- ② The lamp will also illuminate during a manual SCR system cleaning.
- When this lamp is illuminated, be sure the exhaust pipe outlet is not directed at any surface or material that can melt, burn, or explode.
- ♠ When this lamp is illuminated, the exhaust gas temperature could reach 800°C [1500°F], which is hot enough to ignite or melt common materials, and to burn people.
- * The lamp does not signify the need for any kind of equipment or engine service; It merely alerts the equipment operator to high exhaust temperatures. It will be common for the lamp to illuminate on and off during normal equipment operation as the engine completes SCR system cleaning.

(14) DEF/AdBlue® level warning lamp

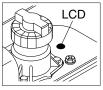


- ① This warning lamp indicates when ON or blinking, that the DEF/AdBlue® level is low as table below.
- It is recommended that the DEF/AdBlue® tank be filled completely full of the DEF/AdBlue® in order to correct any fault conditions.

290F3CD257

Warning lamp			
DEF/AdBlue® level	Check engine	Stop engine	Description
- <u>*</u> -3;	<u>(I)</u>	STOP	Description
On	Off	Off	The DEF/AdBlue® level has fallen below the initial warning level (10%).
Blink	Off	Off	The DEF/AdBlue® level has fallen below the critical warning level (5%).
Blink	On	Off	 The DEF/AdBlue® level has fallen below the initial derate level (2.5%). The engine power will be limited automatically.
Blink	On	On	 This is happened when 30 minutes elapsed with empty conditions (0%) of the DEF/AdBlue® tank. The engine will enter the final derate level which may include low idle lock or engine shutdown with restart limitations. In order to remove the final derate, the DEF/AdBlue® tank must be filled to above 10 persent gauge reading.

(15) DEF/AdBlue® fill up warning lamp



290F3CD272

- ① This lamp lights ON when the DEF/AdBlue® tank is completely filled with DEF/AdBlue®.
- * Fill the tank with the DEF/AdBlue® after start switch ON and then turn OFF the start switch.
- Moreover DEF/AdBlue® any more when this lamp lights ON. Otherwise DEF/AdBlue® tank may freeze and burst in winter season.

(16) Water in fuel warning lamp



- ① This warning lamp pops up and the buzzer sounds when the water separator is full of water or malfunctioning.
- When this lamp blinks, stop the machine and spill water out of the separator.

4) PILOT LAMPS



(1) Mode pilot lamps

No	Mode	Pilot lamp	Selected mode
		P	Heavy duty power work mode
1	Power mode	S	Standard power mode
		E	Economy power mode
2	User mode	U	User preferable power mode
3	Work mode	5	General operation - IPC speed mode
			General operation - IPC balance mode
		\$	General operation - IPC efficiency mode
			Breaker operation mode
		Ŕ	Crusher operation mode
		1	Lifting mode
4	Travel mode	-	Low speed traveling
	navermode	(High speed traveling
5	Auto idle mode		Auto idle

(2) Power max pilot lamp



- ① The lamp will be ON when pushing power max switch on the LH RCV lever.
- ② The power max function is operated maximum 8 seconds.
- * Refer to the operator's manual page 3-38 for power max function.

290F3CD78

(3) Preheat pilot lamp



290F3CD79

- ① Turning the start key switch ON position starts preheating in cold weather.
- ② Start the engine after this lamp is OFF.

(4) Warming up pilot lamp



290F3CD80

- ① This lamp is turned ON when the coolant temperature is below 30°C(86°F).
- ② The automatic warming up is cancelled when the engine coolant temperature is above 30°C, or when 10 minutes have passed since starting the engine.

(5) Decel pilot lamp



290F3CD81

- ① Operating one touch decel switch on the RCV lever makes the lamp ON.
- ② Also, the lamp will be ON and engine speed will be lowered automatically to save fuel consumption when all levers and pedals are at neutral position, and the auto idle function is selected.
- One touch decel is not available when the auto idle pilot lamp is turned ON.
- * Refer to the operator's manual page 3-38.

(6) Fuel warmer pilot lamp



290F3CD82

- ① This lamp is turned ON when the coolant temperature is below 10°C (50°F) or the hydraulic oil temperature 20°C (68°F).
- ② The automatic fuel warming is cancelled when the engine coolant temperature is above 60°C, and the hydraulic oil temperature is above 45°C since the start switch was ON position.

(7) Maintenance pilot lamp



290F3CD83

- ① This lamp will be ON when the consuming parts are needed to change or replace. It means that the change or replacement interval of the consuming parts remains below 30 hours.
- ② Check the message in maintenance information of main menu. Also, this lamp lights ON for 3 minutes when the start switch is ON position.
- ※ Refer to the page 5-82.

(8) Entertainment pilot lamp



290F3CD84

- ① This lamp is on when audio or video files are playing.
- \times Refer to the page 5-87.

(9) Smart key pilot lamp (opt)



290F3CD214

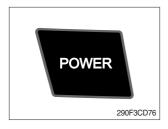
- ① This lamp is ON when the engine is started by the start button.
- ② This lamp is red when the a authentication fails, green when succeeds.
- * Refer to the page 5-83

5) SWITCHES



When some of the switches are selected, the pilot lamps are displayed on the LCD. Refer to the page 5-71 for details.

(1) Power mode switch



- ① This switch is to select the machine power mode and selected power mode pilot lamp is displayed on the pilot lamp position.
 - · P : Heavy duty power work.
 - · S : Standard power work.
 - · E : Economy power work.
- ② The pilot lamp changes $E \rightarrow S \rightarrow P \rightarrow E$ in order.

(2) Work mode switch



- ① This switch is to select the machine work mode, which shifts from general operation mode to optional attachment operation mode or lifting mode.
 - · 💪 : General operation mode
 - · 🔊 : Breaker operation mode (if equipped)
 - : Crusher operation mode (if equipped)
 - · 🏡: Lifting mode
 - Not installed: Breaker or crusher is not installed and lifting mode is not activated.
- Refer to the operator's manual page 4-7 for details.

(3) User mode switch



- ① This switch is used to memorize the current machine operating status in the MCU and activate the memorized user mode.
 - · Memory: Automatically saved after key OFF.
 - · Action : Push this switch.
 - · Cancel : Push this switch once more.
- ② Refer to the page 5-79 for another set of user mode.

(4) Travel speed switch



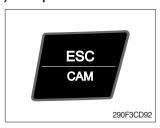
- ① This switch is used to select the travel speed alternatively.
 - · + : Low speed · + : High speed
- * Do not change the setting of the travel speed switch.
 Machine stability may be adversely affected.
- ▲ Personal injury can result from sudden changes in machine stability.

(5) Auto idle/ buzzer stop switch



- ① This switch is used to activate or cancel the auto idle function.
 - · Pilot lamp ON : Auto idle function is activated.
 - · Pilot lamp OFF: Auto idle function is cancelled.
- ② The buzzer sounds when the machine has a problem. In this case, push this switch and buzzer stops, but the warning lamp blinks until the problem is cleared.

(6) Escape/Camera switch



- ① This switch is used to return to the previous menu or parent menu.
- ② In the operation screen, pushing this switch will display the view of the camera on the machine (if equipped).

 Please refer to page 5-88 for the camera.
- ③ If the camera is not installed, this switch is used only ESC function.

(7) Work light switch



- ① This switch is used to operate the work light.
- ② The pilot lamp is turned ON when operating the switch.

(8) Head light switch



- ① This switch is used to operate the head light.
- ② The pilot lamp is turned ON when operating the switch.

(9) Intermittent wiper switch



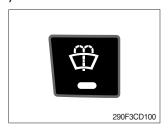
- ① This switch is used to wipe operates intermittently.
- ② The pilot lamp is turned ON when operating the switch.

(10) Wiper switch



- $\ensuremath{\textcircled{1}}$ This switch is used to operate the window wiper.
- 2 Note that the wiper will self-park when switched off.
- ③ The pilot lamp is turned ON when operating the switch.
- If the wiper does not operate with the switch in ON position, turn the switch OFF immediately. Check the cause.
 If the switch remains ON, motor failure can result.

(11) Washer switch



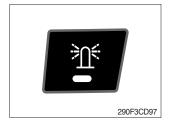
- ① The washer liquid is sprayed and the wiper is operated only while pressing this switch.
- ② The pilot lamp is turned ON when operating the switch.

(12) Cab light switch



- ① This switch turns ON the cab light on the cab.
- ② The pilot lamp is turned ON when operating the switch.

(13) Beacon switch



- ① This switch turns ON the rotary light on the cab.
- ② The pilot lamp is turned ON when operating the switch.

(14) Overload switch



- ① When this switch turned ON, buzzer makes sound and overload warning lamp comes ON in case that the machine is overload.
- 2 When it turned OFF, buzzer stops and warning lamp goes out.
- ♠ Overloading the machine could impact the machines stability which could result in tipover hazard. A tipover hazard could result in serious injury or death. Always activate the overload warning device before you handle or lift objects.

(15) Travel alarm switch



- ① This switch is to activate travel alarm function surrounding when the machine travels.
 - · ON : The travel alarm function is activated.
 - · OFF : The travel alarm function is not activated.

(16) Air conditioner quick touch switch



- ① This switch used to select air conditioner control mode.
- * Refer to the page 5-90.

(17) Main menu quick touch switch



- ① This switch is to activate the main menu in the cluster.
- * Refer to the page 5-78.

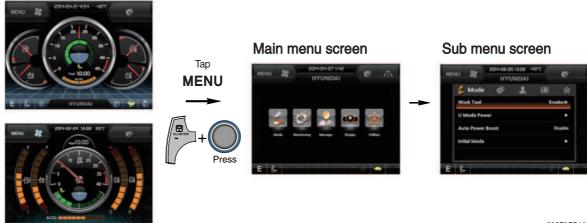
(18) Entertainment quick touch switch



- ① This switch is to activate the entertainment control menu in the cluster.
- ※ Refer to the page 5-87.

6) MAIN MENU

- You can select or set the menu by the haptic controller or touch screen.
 On the operation screen, tap MENU to access the main menu screen.
 On the sub menu screen, you can tap the menu bar to access functions or applications.
- · Operation screen



290F3CD102

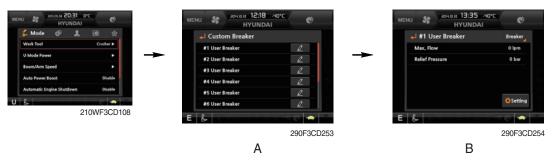
* Please refer to the haptic controller, operator's manual page 3-57 for selection and change of menu and input value.

(1) Structure

Stru	tructure							
No	Main menu	Sub menu	Description					
1	Mode 290F3CD103	Work mode U mode power Boom/Arm speed Auto power boost IPC mode Auto engine shutdown (option) Initial mode Emergency mode	Breaker, Crusher, Lifting Mode, Not installed User mode only Boom speed, Arm speed Enable, Disable Speed mode, Balance mode, Efficiency mode One time, Always, Disable Key on initial mode, Accel initial mode / step Switch function					
2	Monitoring 290F3CD104	Active fault Logged fault Delete logged fault Monitoring	MCU, Engine ECM MCU, Engine ECM All logged fault delete, Initialization canceled Machine information, Switch status, Output status,					
3	Management 290F3CD105	Fuel rate information Maintenance information Machine security Machine information Contact Service menu Clinometer Update	General record, Hourly, Daily, Mode record Replacement, Change interval oils and filters ESL mode setting, Password change Model, MCU, Monitor, Haptic / switch controller, RMCU, Relay drive unit, FATC, AAVM (opt) A/S phone number, A/S phone number change Power shift, Operating hour, Breaker mode pump acting, EPPR current level, Overload pressure Clinometer setting Cluster, ETC device					
4	Display 290F3CD106	Display item Clock Brightness Unit setup Language selection Screen type	Engine speed, Tripmeter A, Tripmeter B, Tripmeter C Clock Manual, Auto Temperature, Pressure, Flow, Distance, Date format Korean, English, Chinese, ETC A type, B type					
5	Utilities 290F3CD107	Entertainment Tripmeter Camera	Play Video, Audio, Smart terminal. 3 kinds (A, B, C) Number of active, Display order, AAVM (opt)					

(2) Mode setup

① Work tool



- · Select on installed optional attachment
 - A: It can set the user's attachment.
 It is available in setting #1~#10.
 - B : Max flow Set the maximum flow for the attachment. Relief pressure - Set the relief pressure.

2 U mode power



290F3CD112

- Engine high idle rpm, auto idle rpm and pump torque (power shift) can be modulated and memorized separately in U-mode.
- · U-mode can be activated by user mode switch.

Engine speed (rpm)	Idle speed (rpm)	Power shift (bar)
1300	700	0
1400	750	3
1500	800	6
1600	850	9
1700	900	12
1800	950	16
1850	1000	20
1900	1050	26
1950	1100 (auto decel)	32
2000	1150	38
	speed (rpm) 1300 1400 1500 1600 1700 1800 1850 1900 1950 2000	speed (rpm) Idle speed (rpm) 1300 700 1400 750 1500 800 1600 850 1700 900 1800 950 1850 1000 1900 1050 1950 1100 (auto decel)

*One touch decel & low idle: 1000 rpm

3 Boom/Arm speed



Boom speed

Boom priority function can be activated or cancelled
 Enable - Boom up speed is automatically adjusted as working conditions by the MCU.
 Disable - Normal operation

· Arm speed

- Arm regeneration function can be activated or cancelled.
 Enable Arm in speed is up.
 - Disable Normal operation.

4 Auto power boost

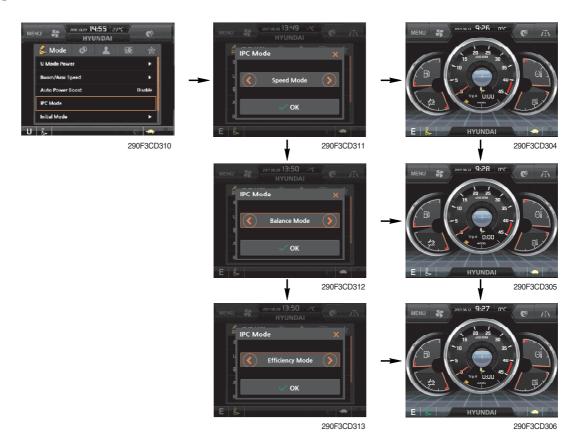


· The power boost function can be activated or cancelled.

Enable - The digging power is automatically increased as working conditions by the MCU. It is operated max 8 seconds.

Disable - Not operated.

⑤ IPC mode



- · The IPC mode can be selected by this menu.
 - Speed mode
 - Balance mode (default)
 - Efficiency mode
- · This mode is applied only general operation mode of the work tool mode.
- * Please update the cluster programs if this mode is not displayed in the mode setup menu. Refer to the operator's manual page 3-25-1.

6 Automatic engine shutdown (option)



- The automatic engine shutdown function can be set by this menu.
 - One time
 - Always
 - Disable
 - Wait time setting : Max 40 minutes, min 2 minutes

7 Initial mode



290F3CD119

- · Key on initial mode
 - Selected the power mode is activated when the engine is started.
- · Accel initial mode
 - Last setting value
 - User setting value
- · Accel initial step
 - 0~9 step

8 Emergency mode



- · This mode can be use when the switches are abnormal on the cluster.
- · The cluster switches will be selected by touched each icon.

(3) Monitoring

① Active fault



· The active faults of the MCU, engine ECM or air conditioner can be checked by this menu.

2 Logged fault



· The logged faults of the MCU, engine ECM or air conditioner can be checked by this menu.

3 Delete logged fault



· The logged faults of the MCU, engine ECM or air conditioner can be deleted by this menu.

4 Monitoring



- The machine status such as the engine rpm, oil temperature, voltage and pressure etc. can be checked by this menu (Analog input).
- The switch status or output status can be confirmed by this menu (Digital input & Digital output).
- The activated switch or output pilot lamps
 are light ON.

(4) Management

① Fuel rate information

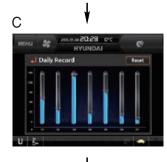














210WF3CD16

· General record (A)

- Average fuel rate (left) (from "Reset" to now) Fuel consumption devided by engine run time (service meter time).
- A days fuel used (right) Fuel consumption from 24:00 (or "Reset" time) to now (MCU real time).

· Hourly record (B)

- Hourly fuel rates for past 12 hours (service meter time).
- No record during key-off time.
- One step shift to the right for every one hour.
- Automatic deletion for 12 hours earlier data.
- All hourly records deletion by "Reset".

· Daily record (C)

- Daily fuel consumption for past seven days (MCU real time).
- No record during key-off time.
- One step shift to the right at 24:00 for every day.
- Automatic deletion for 7 days earlier data.
- All daily records deletion by "Reset".

· Mode record (D)

- Average fuel rate for each power mode/accel dial (at least 7) from "Reset" to now.
- No record during idle.
- All mode records deletion by "Reset".

2 Maintenance information



- · Alarm lamp () is ON when oil or filter needs to be changed or replaced.
- · Replacement : The elapsed time will be reset to zero (0).
- · Change interval: The change or replace interval can be changed in the unit of 50 hours.

· Change or relpace interval

No	Item	Interval
1	Engine oil	500
2	Final gear oil	1000
3	Swing gear oil	1000
4	Hydraulic oil	5000
5	Pilot line filter	1000
6	Drain filter	1000
7	Hydraulic oil return filter	1000
8	Engine oil filter	500
9	Fuel filter	500
10	Pre-filter	500
11	Hydraulic tank breather	1000
12	Air cleaner (inner & outer)	4000
13	Radiator coolant	2000
14	Swing gear pinion grease	1000
15	DEF/AdBlue® supply module filter	4500
16	Crankcase Breather Filter	2000
17	DEF/AdBlue® Tank Filter	4000

3 Machine security



· ESL mode setting

- ESL: Engine Starting Limit
- ESL mode is desingned to be a theft deterrent or will prevent the unauthorized operation of the machine.
- When you Enable the ESL mode, the password will be required when the starting switch is turned to the on position.
- Machine security

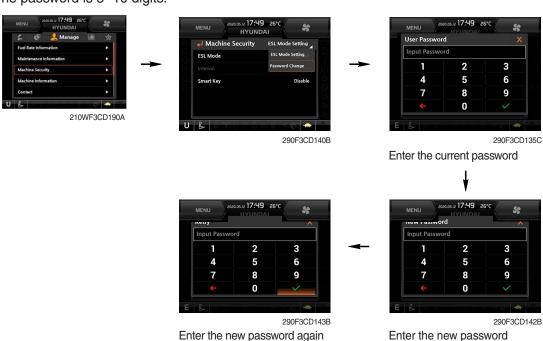
Disable: ESL function is disabled and password is not required to start engine.

Enable (always): The password is required whenever the operator starts engine.

- Interval: The password is required when the operator starts engine first. But the operator can restart the engine within the interval time without inputting the password. The interval time can be set to a maximum 4 hours.
 - ※ Default password : 00000 +
 ✓
 - ※ Password length: (5~10 digits) +
 ✓
- Smart key (option) : Refer to next page.

Password change

- The password is 5~10 digits.



* Before first use, please set user password and owner password in advance for machine security.

290F3CD138A

Enter the new password

- Smart key



- Smart key is registered when equipped with optional smart key. If smart key is not inside of the cabin, authentication process fails and the password is needed.
- · Tag management menu is activated when the Smart key menu is Enabled.

You can register and delete the tags.

- Tag management

- · When registering a tag : Only the tag you want to register must be in the cabin.
- \cdot When deleting a tag : All registered tags are deleted.



← Machine Security

ESL Mode



Deleting

4 Machine Information



 This can confirm the identification of the model information (ECU), MCU, monitor, haptic controller, switch controller, RMCU, relay driver unit, FATC (air conditioner controller), AAVM (opt).

(5) Contact (A/S phone number)



Enter the new A/S phone number

6 Service menu



- · Power shift (standard/option): Power shift pressure can be set by option menu.
- · Operating hours : Operating hours since the machine line out can be checked by this menu.
- · Breaker mode pump acting (1 pump/2 pump)
- EPPR current level (attach flow EPPR 1 & 2, boom priority EPPR, attach relief pressure EPPR 1& 2)
- · Overload pressure: 100 ~ 350 bar

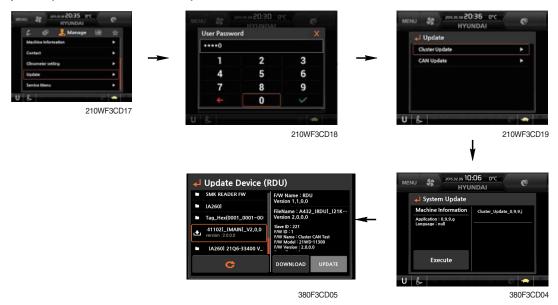
7 Clinometer



290F3CD153

- · When the machine is on the flatland, if tap the "initialization", the values of X, Y reset "0".
- · You can confirm tilt of machine in cluster's operating screen.

8 Update (cluster & ETC devices)



- · ETC devices and cluster can be updated through CAN 2 network.
- · Insert USB memory stick which includes program files, start download.

(5) Display

① Display item



- · The center display type of the LCD can be selected by this menu.
- The engine speed or each of the tripmeter (A,B,C) is displayed on the center display.

2 Clock



- The first line's three spots "**/***" represent Month/Day/Year each.
- The second line shows the current time. (0:00~23:59)

3 Brightness



· If "Auto" is chosen, brightness for day and night can be differently set up. Also by using the bar in lower side, users can define which time interval belongs to day and night. (in bar figure, white area represents night time while orange shows day time)

4 Unit



 $\cdot \ \, \text{Temperature} : {}^{\circ}\text{C} \longleftrightarrow {}^{\circ}\text{F}$

· Pressure : bar \leftrightarrow MPa \leftrightarrow kgf/cm²

 $\begin{array}{ll} \cdot \ \, \text{Volume} & : \ell \longleftrightarrow \text{gal} \\ \cdot \ \, \text{Flow} & : \text{lpm} \longleftrightarrow \text{gpm} \\ \cdot \ \, \text{Distance} & : \text{km} \longleftrightarrow \text{mile} \end{array}$

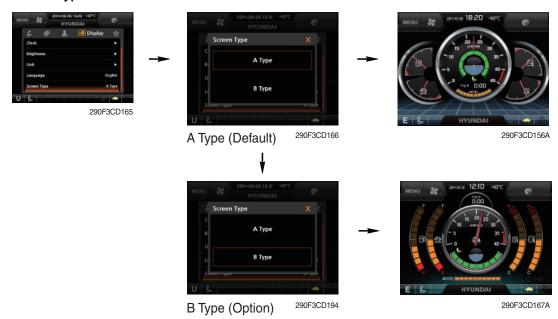
· Date format : $yy/mm/dd \leftrightarrow mm/dd/yy \leftrightarrow dd-mm-yy$

5 Language



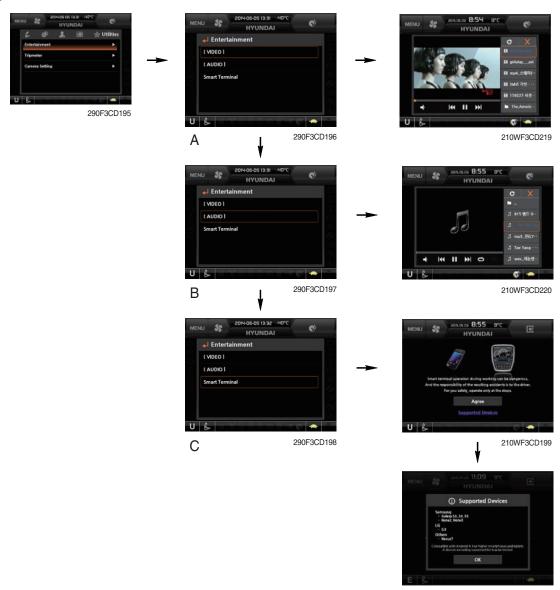
· User can select preferable language and all displays are changed the selected language.

6 Screen type



(6) Utilities

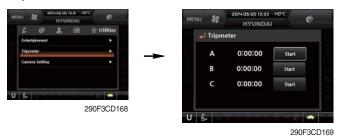
① Entertainment



210WF3CD22

- Video (A): This menu operates the video play function.
 mp4, mkv, avi files and so on.
- Audio (B): This menu operates the play music. mp3, mp4 files and so on.
- Smart terminal (C): The menu features a smartphone and operates the miracast.

2 Tripmeter



- · Maximum 3 kinds of tripmeters can be used at the same time.
- · Each tripmeter can be turned on by choosing "Start" while it also can be turned off by choosing "Stop".
- · If the tripmeter icon is activated in the operation screen, it can be controlled directly there.

③ Camera setting

- · If the rear camera is not installed on the machine, set disable.
- · If the rear camera installed on the machine, set enable.



· In the operation screen, rear camera screen show up when ESC/CAM button is pushed.



- 4 AAVM (All Around View Monitoring, option)
- · The AAVM buttons of the cluster consist of ESC/CAM and AUTO IDLE/Buzzer stop.



- Escape button
- · It will enter into the AAVM mode from the beginning screen if the AAVM is installed.
- · While in the AAVM mode, select the ESC button to return to the beginning screen.



- Buzzer stop button
- · In AAVM mode, it detects surrounding pedestrians or objects and the warning buzzer sounds.
- · User can turn OFF the warning sound by pressing buzzer stop button.



290F3CD246

- When the worker or pedestrian go to the blue line (radius 5 m), an external danger area of equipping on the cluster screen, the warning buzzer sounds and it displays the blue rectangular box for the recognition of the worker and pedestrian.
 - At this time, the operator should stop work immediately, and stop the buzzer by pressing the buzzer stop button. And then, please work after you check whether the danger factors are solved.



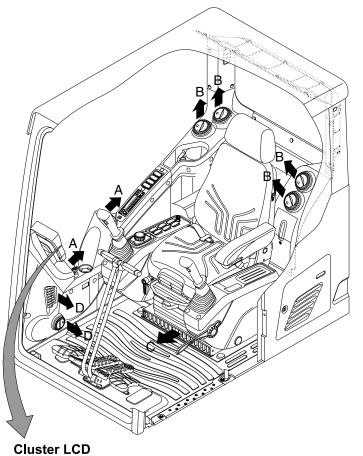
290F3CD247

- When the worker or pedestrian go inside of red line (radius 3 m), an internal danger area of equipping on the cluster screen, the warning buzzer sounds and it displays the red rectangular box for the recognition of the worker and pedestrian.
 - At this time, the operator should stop work immediately, and stop the buzzer by pressing the buzzer stop button. And then, please work after you check whether the danger factors are solved.
- * In AAVM mode, a touch screen of the LCD is available only. The multimodal dial of the haptic controller is not available.

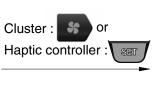
7) AIR CONDITIONER AND HEATER

Full auto air conditioner and heater system automatically keeps the optimum condition in accordance with operator's temperature configuration sensing ambient and cabin inside temperature.

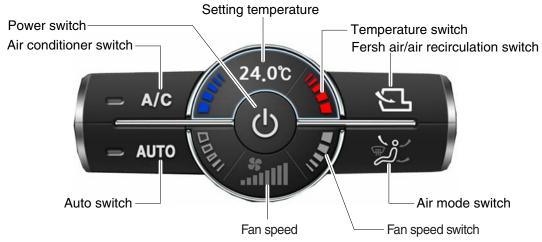
· Location of air flow ducts











* Haptic controller: Refer to the operator's manual page 3-57.

290F3CD201

(1) Power switch



- ① This switch makes the system ON/OFF.

 Just before the power OFF, set values are stored.
- ② Default setting values

Function	Air conditioner	In/outlet	LCD	Temperature	Mode
Value	OFF	Inlet	OFF	Previous sw OFF	Previous sw OFF

(2) Air conditioner switch



- ① This switch turns the compressor ON/OFF.
- ** Air conditioner operates to remove vapor and drains water through a drain hose. Water can be sprayed into the cab in case that the drain cock at the ending point of drain hose has a problem.

In this case, exchange the drain cock.

(3) Auto switch



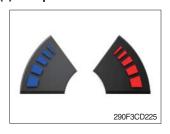
① Auto air conditiner and heater system automatically keeps the optimum condition in accordance with operator's temperature configuration sensing ambient and cabin inside temperature.

(4) Setting temperature



① Display the temperature setting out.

(5) Temperature switch



- ① Setting temperature indication
 - · Lo (17°C), 17.5~31.5°C, Hi (32°C)
- 2 Max cool and max warm beeps 5 times.
- The max cool or the max warm position operates as following table.

Temperature	erature Compressor Fan s		In/outlet	Mode
Max cool ON		Hi (8 step) Recirculation		Face
Max warm OFF		Hi (7 step)	Fresh	Def/Foot

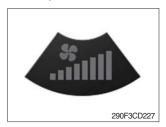
- ④ Temperature unit can be changed between celsius (°C) and fahrenheit (°F)
 - a. Default status (°C)
 - b. Push Up/Down temperature switch simultaneously more than
 5 second displayed temperature unit change (°C → °F)

(6) Fan speed switch



- ① Fan speed is controlled automatically by setted temperature.
- 2 This switch controls fan speed manually.
 - · There are 8 up/down steps to control fan speed.
 - · The maximum step or the minimum step beeps 5 times.

(7) Fan speed



① Steps 1 through 8 to display the amount of wind.

(8) Fresh air/air recirculation switch



- ① It is possible to change the air-inlet method.
- a. Fresh air (ᠫ)
 Inhaling air from the outside.
- b. Air recirculation (巨)
 It recycles the heated or cooled air to increase the energy efficiency.
- * Change air occasionally when using recirculation for a long time.
- * Check out the fresh air filter and the recirculation filter periodically to keep a good efficiency.

(9) Air mode switch



① Operating this switch, it beeps and displays symbol of each mode in order. (Face → Face/Rear → Face/Rear/Foot → Foot → Def/Foot)

Mode switch		Face	Face/Rear	Face/Rear/Foot	Foot	Def/Foot
		رڅ	ريم	رگ ۔	مُدُكُ	
	Α	•	•	•		
Outlet	В		•	•		
Ouliet	С			•	•	•
	D					•

② When defroster mode operating, FRESH AIR/AIR RECIRCULATION switch turns to FRESH AIR mode and air conditioner switch turns ON.

8) SELF DIAGNOSIS FUNCTION

- (1) Diagnostic methods: Diagnostic information window, select
- (2) Diagnostic indication (Displays fault)

Fault code	Description	Fail safe function	
F01	Ambient temperature sensor open	20°C alternate value central	
F02	Ambient temperature sensor short	20°C alternate value control	
F03	Cab inside temperature sensor open	25°C alternate value control	
F04	Cab inside temperature sensor short	25 C alternate value control	
F05	Evaporate temperature sensor open	0°C alternate value control	
F06	Evaporate temperature sensor short	U.C. alternate value control	
F07	Null	-	
F08	Null	-	
F09	Mode 1 actuator open/short	The alternate value is face	
F10	Mode 1 actuator drive circuit malfunction	If not, the alternate value is Def/Foot	
F11	Intake actuator open/short	The alternate value is air recirculation	
F12	Intake actuator drive circuit malfunction	The alternate fresh air	
F13	Temperature actuator open/short	If opening amount is 0 %, the alternate value is 0 %	
F14	Temperature actuator drive circuit malfunction	If not, the alternate value is 100 %	
F15	Null	-	
F16	Null	-	

GROUP 17 FUEL WARMER SYSTEM

1. SPECIFICATION

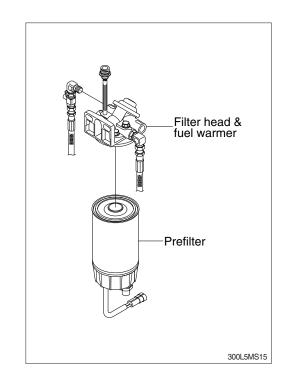
1) Operating voltage : 24 ± 4 V

2) Power: 350 ± 50 W 3) Current: 15 A

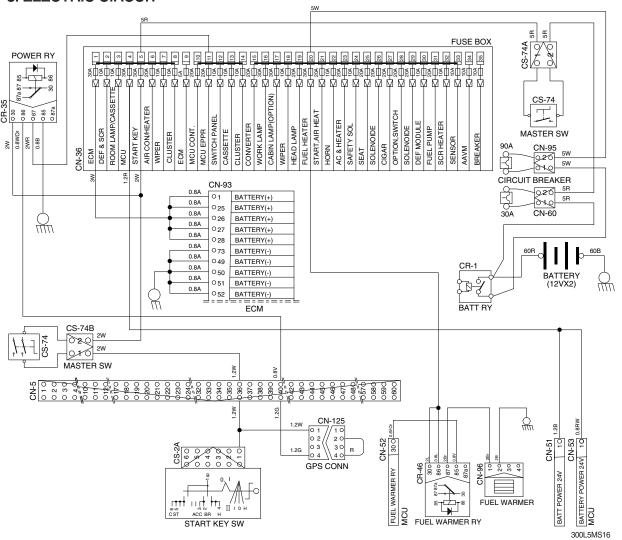
2. OPERATION

- The current of fuel warmer system is automatically controlled without thermostat according to fuel temperature.
- 2) At the first state, the 15 A current flows to the fuel warmer and engine may be started in 1~2 minutes.
- 3) If the fuel starts to flow, ceramic-disk in the fuel warmer heater senses the fuel temperature to reduce the current as low as 1.5 A.

So, fuel is protected from overheating by this mechanism.



3. ELECTRIC CIRCUIT



SECTION 6 TROUBLESHOOTING

Group	1 Before Troubleshooti	ing (6-1
Group	2 Hydraulic and Mecha	anical System ······ 6	6-4
Group	3 Electrical System ·····	(6-24
Group	4 Mechatronics Syster	η (6-40

SECTION 6 TROUBLESHOOTING

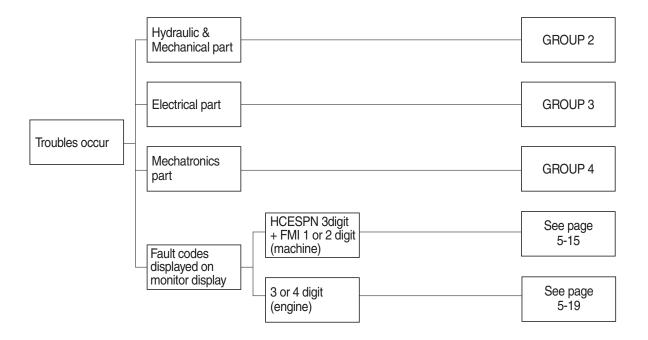
GROUP 1 BEFORE TROUBLESHOOTING

1. INTRODUCTION

When a trouble is occurred in the machine, this section will help an operator to maintain the machine with easy.

The trouble of machine is parted Hydraulic & Mechanical system, Electrical system and Mechatronics system. At each system part, an operator can check the machine according to the troubleshooting process diagram.

* Before carring out troubleshooting procedure, check monitoring menu in the cluster.



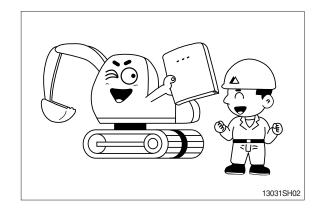
2. DIAGNOSING PROCEDURE

To carry out troubleshooting efficiently, the following steps must be observed.

STEP 1. Study the machine system

Study and know how the machine is operating, how the system is composing, what kinds of function are installed in the machine and what are specifications of the system components by the machine service manual.

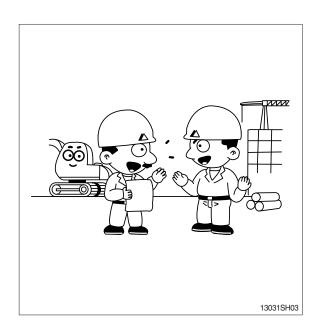
Especially, deepen the knowledge for the related parts of the trouble.



STEP 2. Ask the operator

Before inspecting, get the full story of malfunctions from a witness --- the operator.

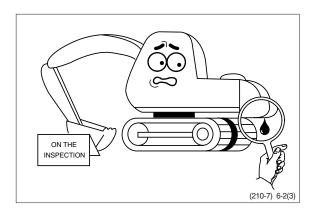
- 1) How the machine is used and when it is serviced?
- 2) When the trouble was noticed and what work the machine was doing at that time?
- 3) What is the phenomenon of the trouble? Was the trouble getting worse, or did it come out suddenly for the first time?
- 4) Did the machine have any troubles previously? If so, which parts were repaired before.



STEP 3. Inspect the machine

Before starting troubleshooting, check the machine for the daily maintenance points as shown in the operator's manual.

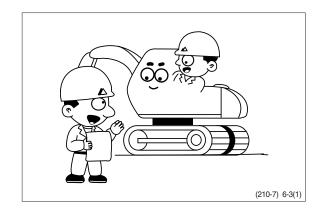
And also check the electrical system including batteries, as the troubles in the electrical system such as low battery voltage, loose connections and blown out fuses will result in malfunction of the controllers causing total operational failures of the machine.



STEP 4. Inspect the trouble actually on the machine

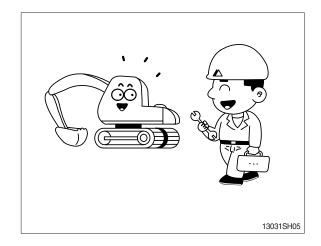
In case that some trouble cannot be confirmed, obtain the details of the malfunction from the operator.

Also, check if there are any in complete connections of the wire harnesses are or not.



STEP 5. Perform troubleshooting

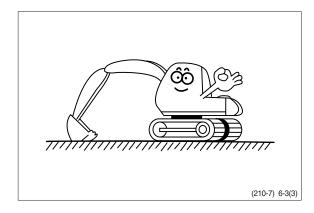
According to where the trouble parts are located, hydraulic & mechanical system part or electrical system part or mechatronics system part, perform troubleshooting the machine refer to the each system part's troubleshooting process diagram.



STEP 6. Trace a cause

Before reaching a conclusion, check the most suspectible causes again. Try to trace what the real cause of the trouble is.

Make a plan of the appropriate repairing procedure to avoid consequential malfunctions.



GROUP 2 HYDRAULIC AND MECHANICAL SYSTEM

1. INTRODUCTION

1) MACHINE IN GENERAL

- (1) If even a minor fault is left intact and operation is continued, a fatal failure may be caused, entailing a large sum of expenses and long hours of restoration.
 - Therefore when even a small trouble occurs, do not rely on your intuition and experience, but look for the cause based on the troubleshooting principle and perform maintenance and adjustment to prevent major failure from occurring. Keep in mind that a fault results from a combination of different causes.
- (2) The following lists up commonly occurring faults and possible causes with this machine. For the troubleshooting of the engine, refer to the coming troubleshooting and repair.
- (3) When carrying out troubleshooting, do not hurry to disassemble the components. It will become impossible to find the cause of the problem.
- (4) Ask user or operator the following.
- ① Was there any strange thing about machine before failure occurred?
- ② Under what conditions did the failure occur?
- 3 Have any repairs been carried out before the failure?
- (5) Check before troubleshooting.
- ① Check oil and fuel level.
- ② Check for any external leakage of oil from components.
- ③ Check for loose or damage of wiring and connections.

2) MACHINE STATUS MONITORING ON THE CLUSTER

(1) The machine status such as the engine rpm, oil temperature, voltage and pressure etc. can be checked by this menu.





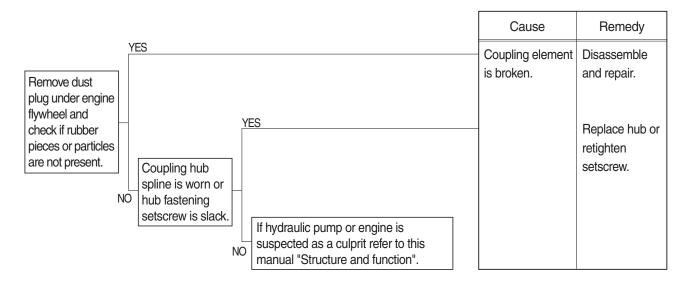
n

(2) Specification

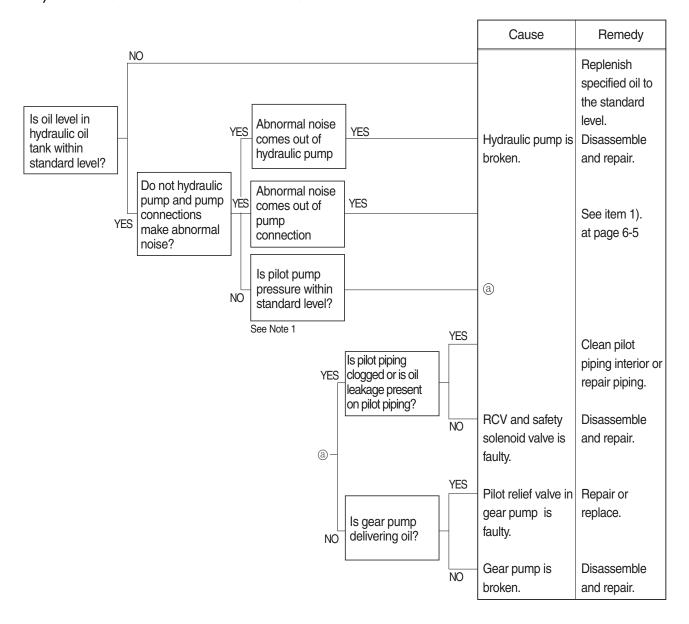
· / ·		
No.	Description	Specification
Note 1	Work pilot pressure	40 ⁺² bar
Note 2	Swing pilot pressure	0~40 bar
Note 3	Boom up pilot pressure	0~40 bar
Note 4	Arm/bucket pilot pressure	0~40 bar
Note 5	Pump 1 regulator pressure	0~50 bar
Note 6	Pump 2 regulator pressure	0~50 bar
Note 7	Pump 1 pressure	350 bar

2. DRIVE SYSTEM

1) UNUSUAL NOISE COMES OUT OF PUMP CONNECTION

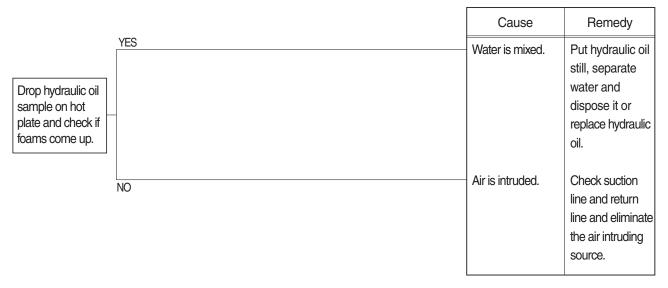


2) ENGINE STARTS BUT MACHINE DOES NOT OPERATE AT ALL

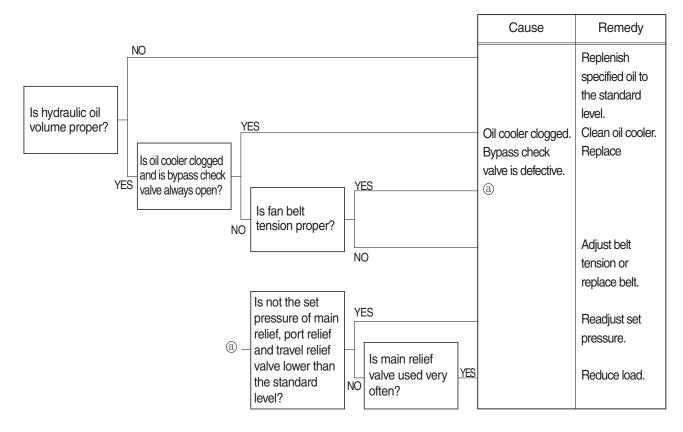


3. HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

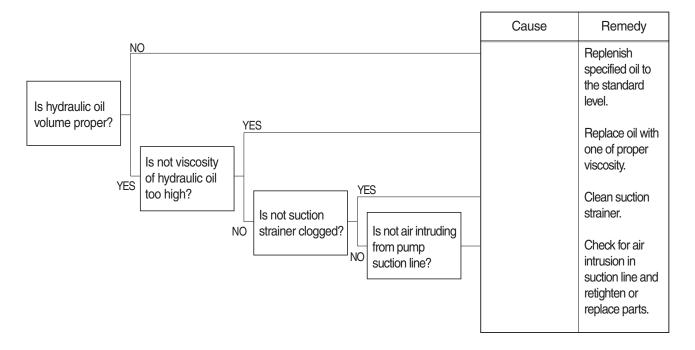
1) HYDRAULIC OIL IS CLOUDY



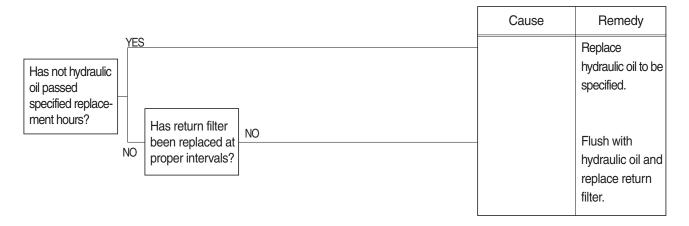
2) HYDRAULIC OIL TEMPERATURE HAS RISEN ABNORMALLY



3) CAVITATION OCCURS WITH PUMP

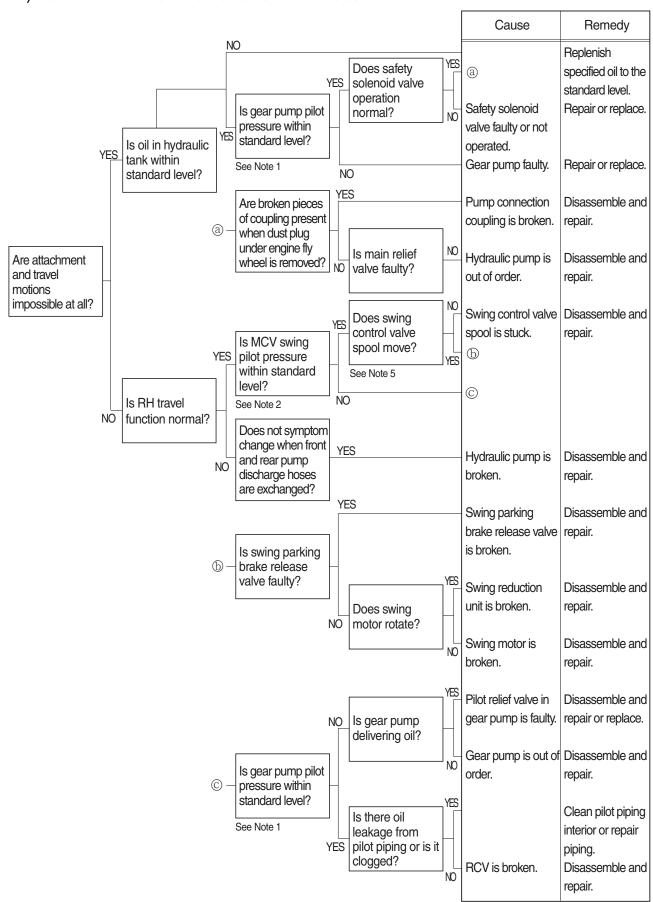


4) HYDRAULIC OIL IS CONTAMINATED

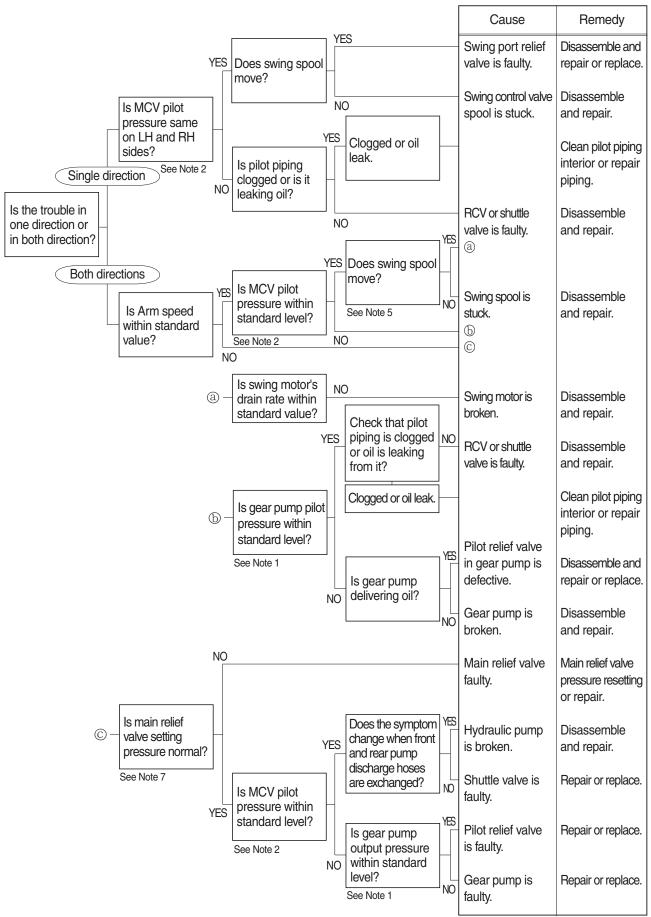


4. SWING SYSTEM

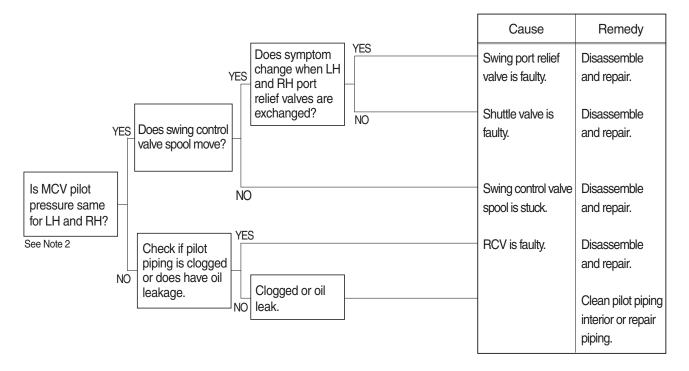
1) BOTH LH AND RH SWING ACTIONS ARE IMPOSSIBLE



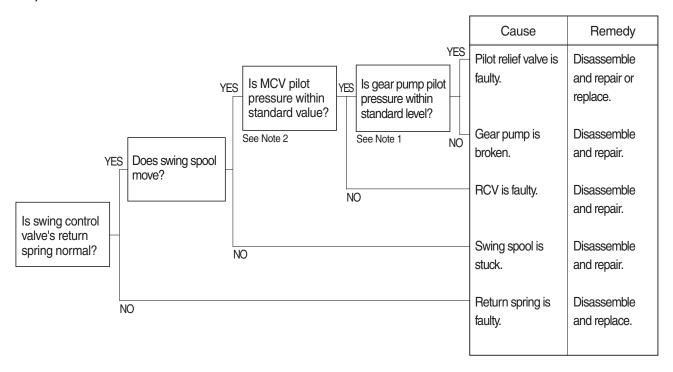
2) SWING SPEED IS LOW



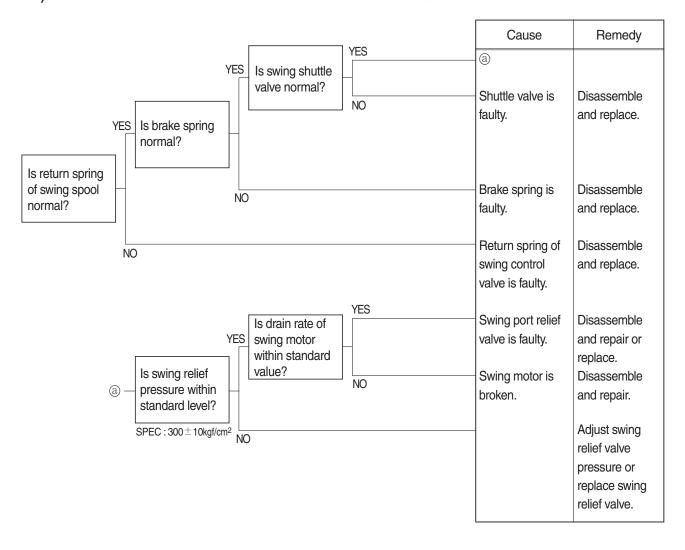
3) SWING MOTION IS IMPOSSIBLE IN ONE DIRECTION



4) MACHINE SWINGS BUT DOES NOT STOP

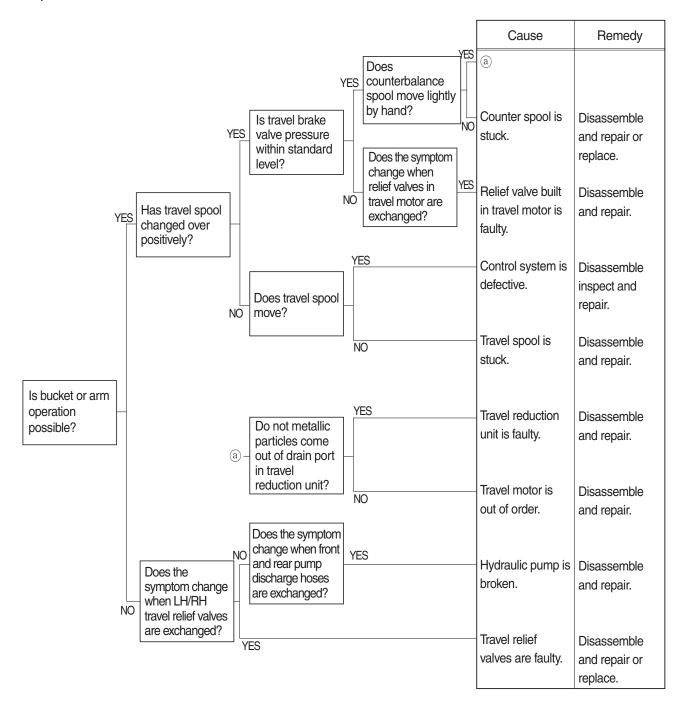


5) THE SWING UNIT DRIFTS WHEN THE MACHINE IS AT REST ON A SLOPE

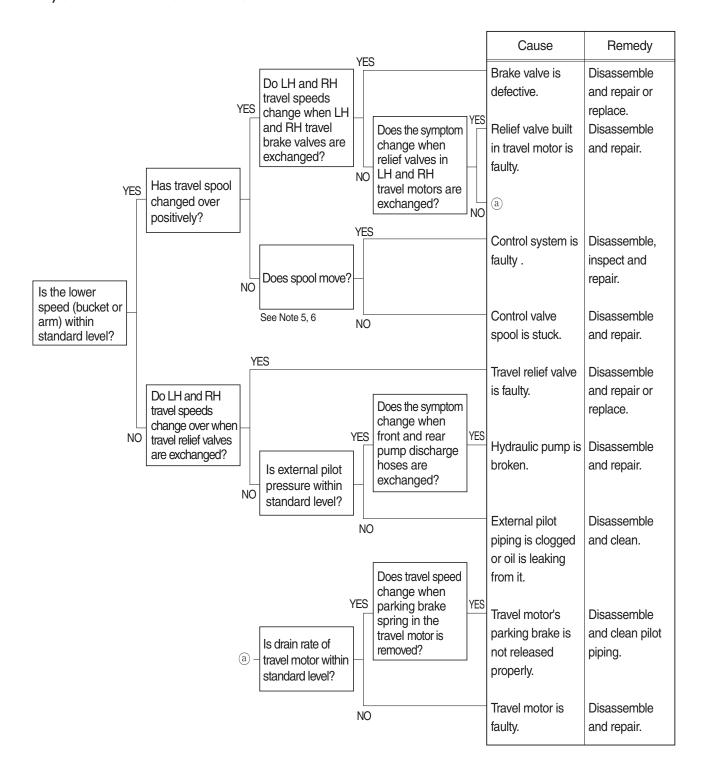


5. TRAVEL SYSTEM

1) TRAVEL DOES NOT FUNCTION AT ALL ON ONE SIDE

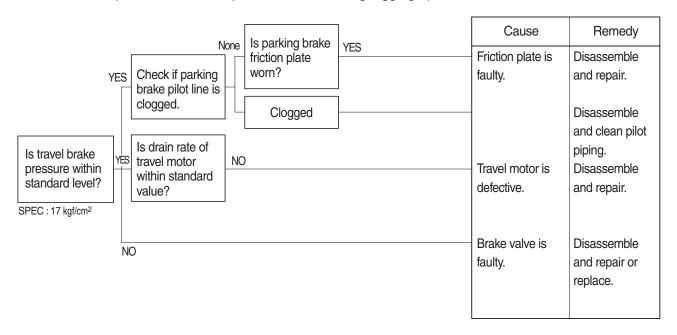


2) SPEED ON ONE SIDE FALLS AND THE MACHINE CURVES

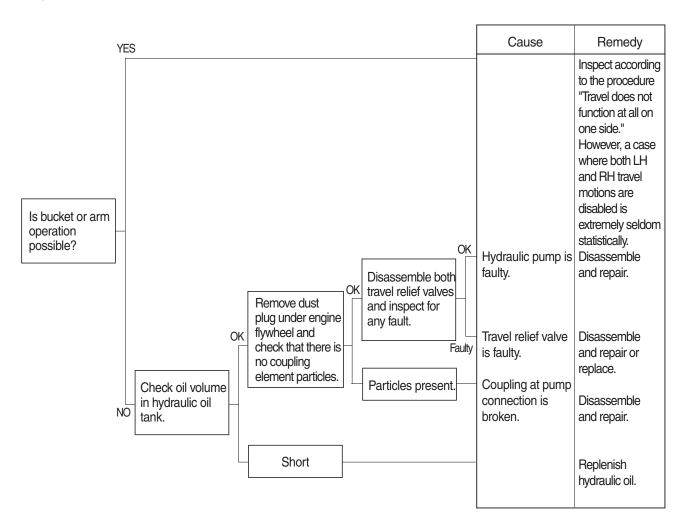


3) MACHINE DOES NOT STOP ON A SLOPE

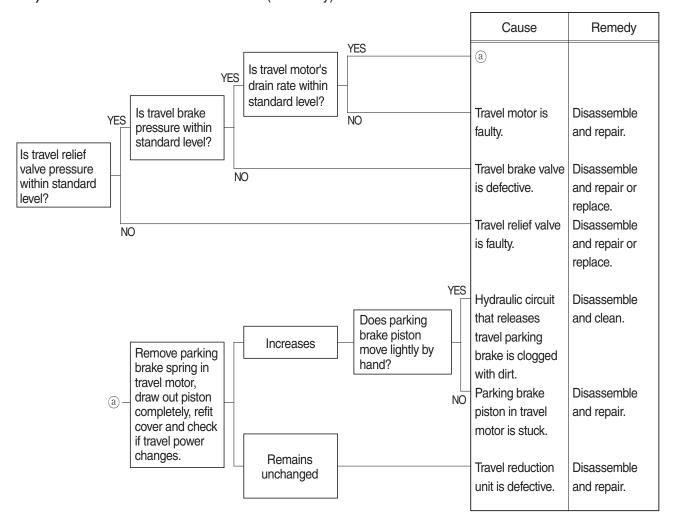
Machine is pulled forward as sprocket rotates during digging operation.



4) LH AND RH TRAVEL MOTIONS ARE IMPOSSIBLE



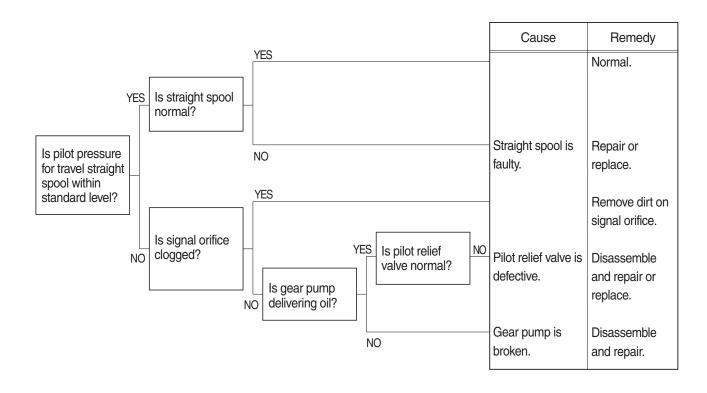
5) TRAVEL ACTION IS POWERLESS (travel only)



6) MACHINE RUNS RECKLESSLY ON A SLOPE

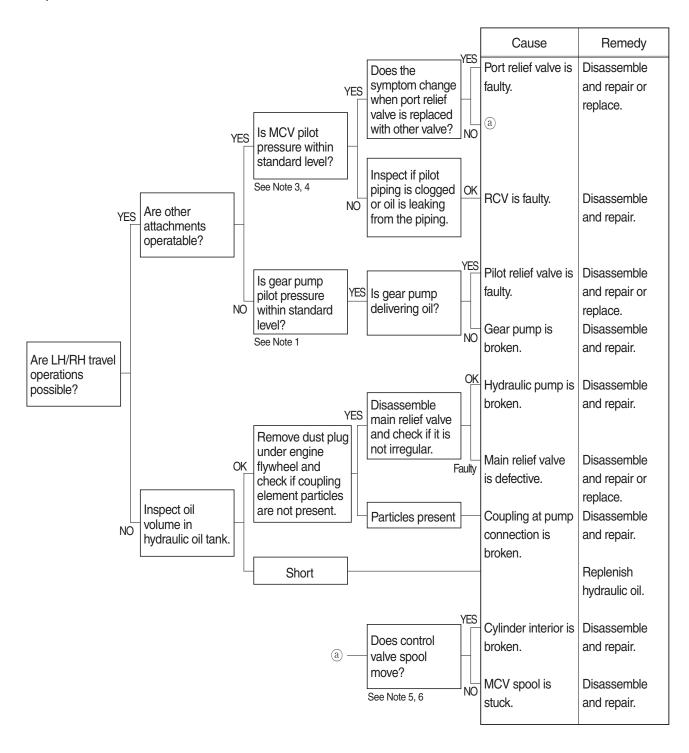


7) MACHINE MAKES A CURVED TRAVEL OR DOES NOT TRAVEL AT ALL WHEN TRAVEL AND ATTACHMENT OPERATIONS ARE EXECUTED AT THE SAME TIME

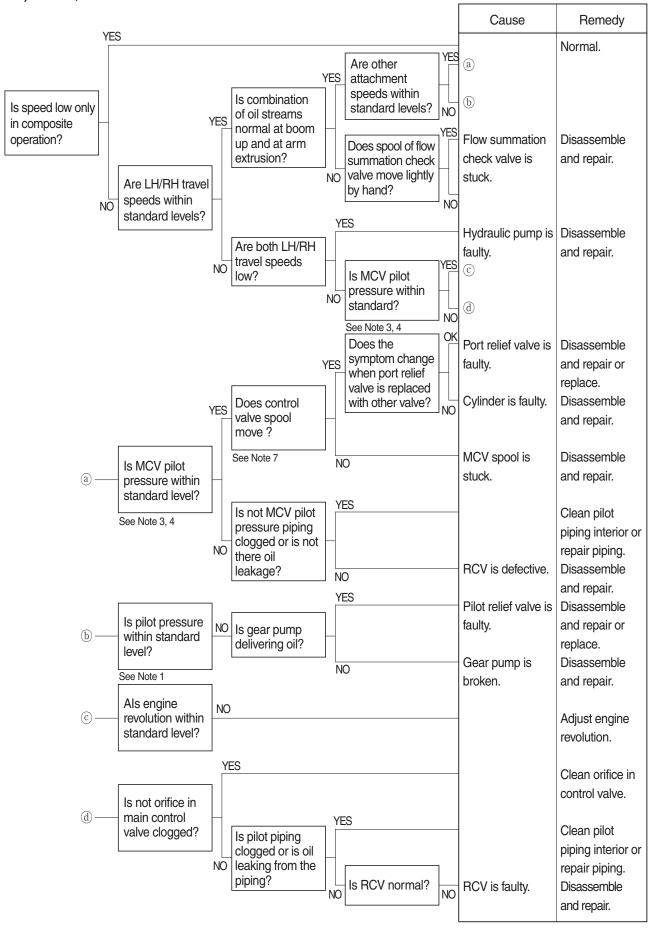


6. ATTACHMENT SYSTEM

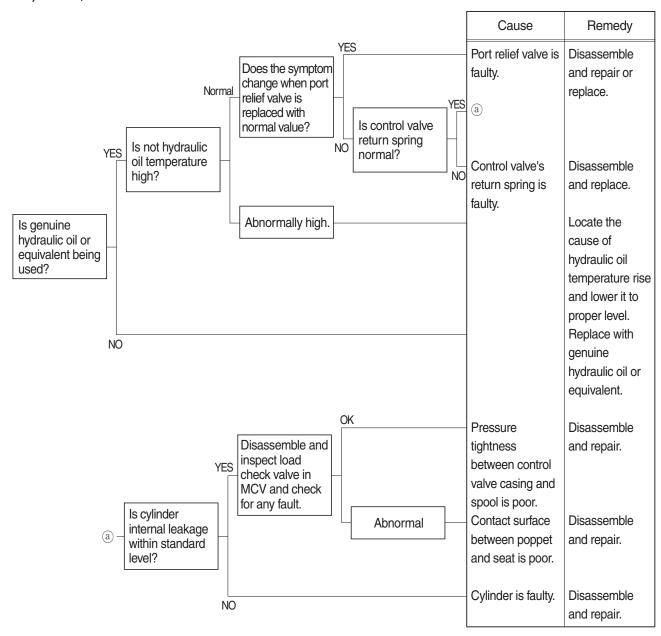
1) BOOM OR ARM ACTION IS IMPOSSIBLE AT ALL



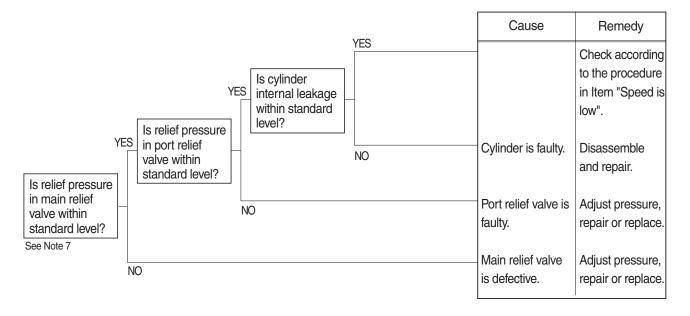
2) BOOM, ARM OR BUCKET SPEED IS LOW



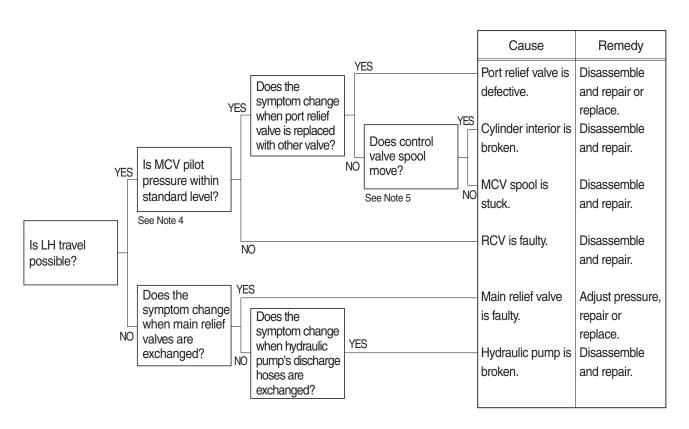
3) BOOM, ARM OR BUCKET CYLINDER EXTENDS OR CONTRACTS ITSELF AND ATTACHMENT FALLS



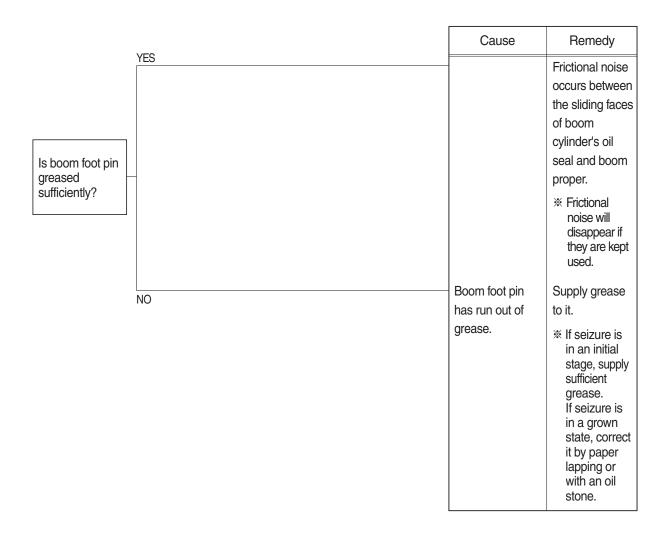
4) BOOM, ARM OR BUCKET POWER IS WEAK



5) ONLY BUCKET OPERATION IS TOTALLY IMPOSSIBLE

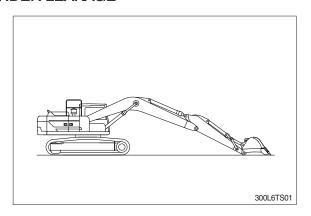


6) BOOM MAKES A SQUEAKING NOISE WHEN BOOM IS OPERATED

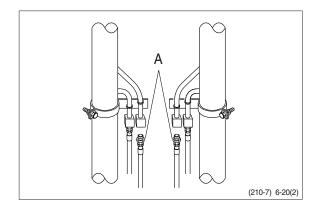


**** HOW TO CHECK INTERNAL BOOM CYLINDER LEAKAGE**

1. Lower the bucket teeth to the ground with bucket cylinder fully retracted and arm cylinder rod retracted almost in full.



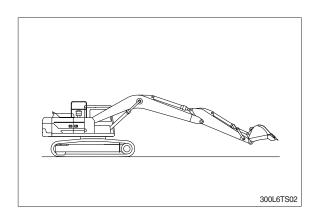
2. Disconnect hose (A) from rod side of boom cylinder and drain oil from cylinders and hose. (put cups on piping and hose ends)



3. Raise bucket OFF the ground by retracting the arm cylinder rod.

If oil leaks from piping side and boom cylinder rod is retracted there is an internal leak in the cylinder.

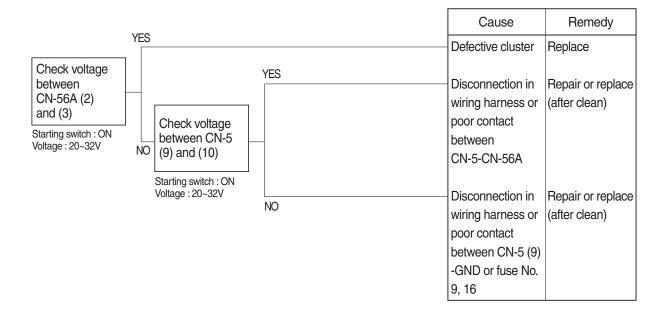
If no oil leaks from piping side and boom cylinder rod is retracted, there is an internal leak in the control valve.



GROUP 3 ELECTRICAL SYSTEM

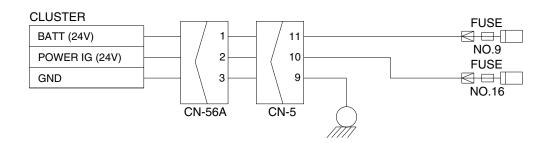
1. WHEN STARTING SWITCH IS TURNED ON, MONITOR PANEL DISPLAY DOES NOT APPEAR

- · Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
- · Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and short of fuse No. 9, 16.
- · After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



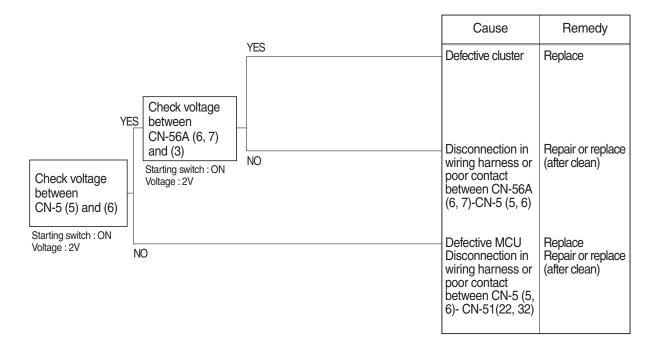
Check voltage

YES	20~32V
NO	0V



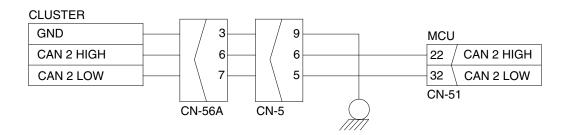
2. COMMUNICATION ERROR FLASHES ON THE CLUSTER (HCESPN 840, FMI 2)

- · Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
- · Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
- · After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



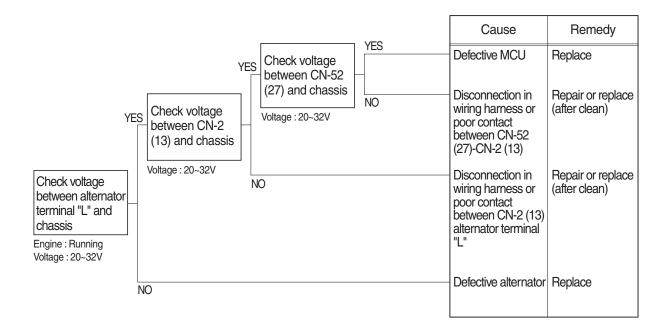
Check voltage

YES	2V	
NO	0V	



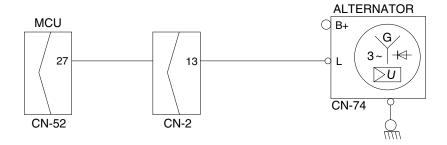
3. - + BATTERY CHARGING WARNING LAMP LIGHTS UP (Starting switch : ON)

- · Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
- · Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
- · After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



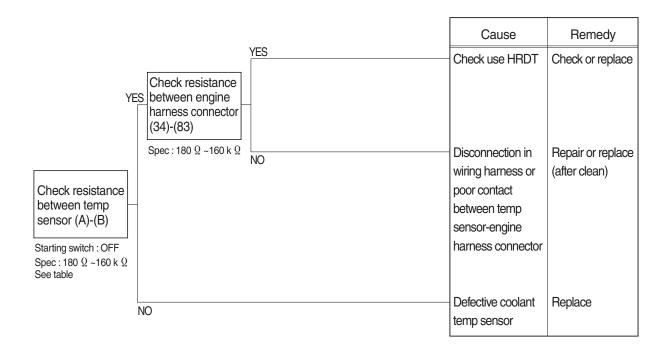
Check voltage

YES	20~32V
NO	0V



4. WHEN COOLANT OVERHEAT WARNING LAMP LIGHTS UP (engine is started)

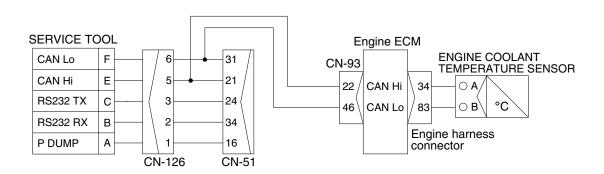
- · Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
- Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
- · After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.





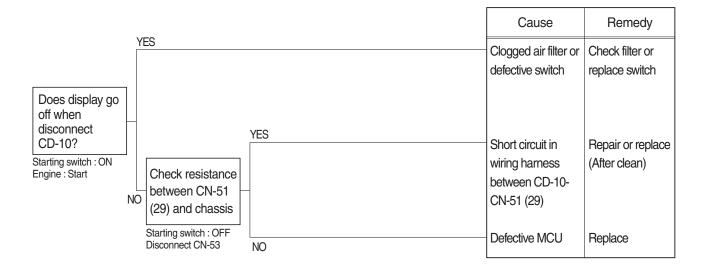
Check Table

Temperature (°C)	0	25	50	80	95
Resistance (k Ω)	30~37	9.3~10.7	3.2~3.8	1.0~1.3	0.7~0.8



5. WHEN AIR CLEANER WARNING LAMP LIGHTS UP (engine is started)

- · Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
- · Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
- · After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.

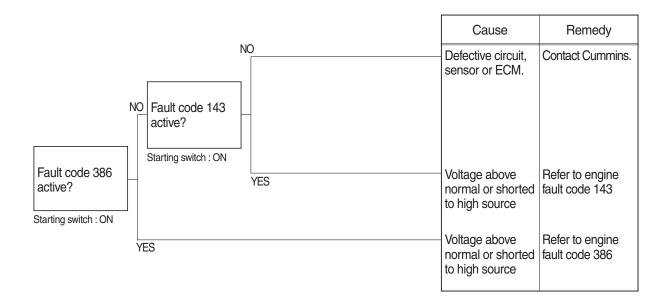


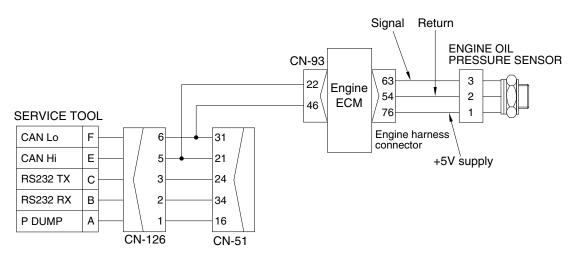
Check resistance

YES	MAX 1Ω			
NO	MIN 1MΩ		////	
		MCU		AIR CLEANER SWITCH
				Pa
		/ 29		-
				CD-10
		CN-51		

6. WHEN ENGINE OIL PRESSURE WARNING LAMP LIGHTS UP (engine is started)

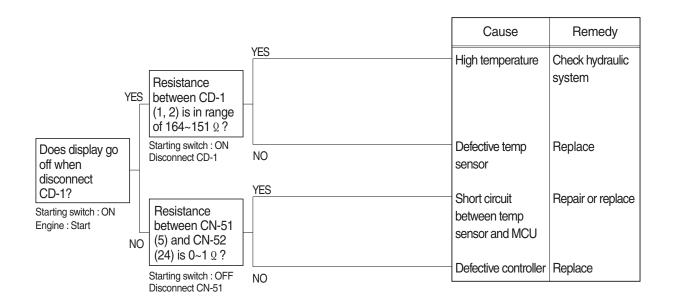
- · Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
- · Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
- · After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.





7. WHEN HYDRAULIC OIL TEMPERATURE WARNING LAMP LIGHTS UP (engine is started)

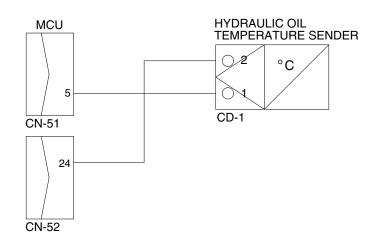
- · Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
- · Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
- · After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



Check Table

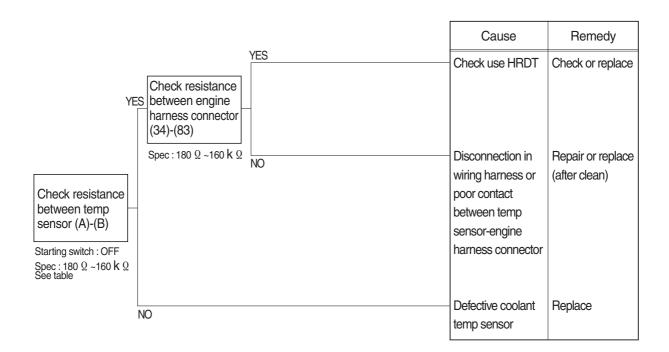


Temperature (°C)	~ -30	~ -10	~ 0	~ 40	~ 70	~ 80	~ 90	~ 100	105~
Resistance (k Ω)	22.22 ~31.78	8.16 ~10.74	5.18 ~ 6.6	1.06 ~1.28	0.39 ~0.476	0.322 ~0.298	0.243 ~0.219	0.185 ~0.167	0.164 0.151



8. WHEN COOLANT TEMPERATURE GAUGE DOES NOT OPERATE

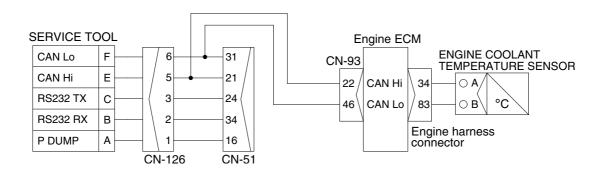
- · Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
- · Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
- · After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.





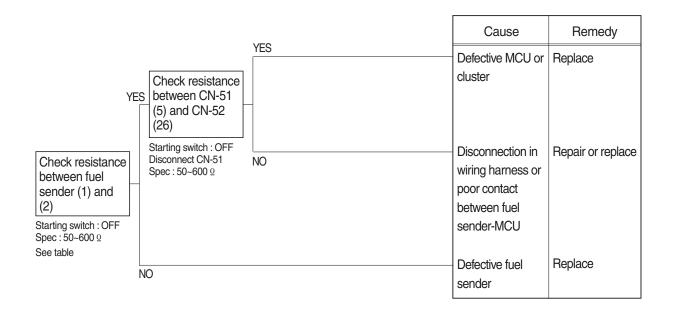
Check Table

Temperature (°C)	0	25	50	80	95
Resistance (k Ω)	30~37	9.3~10.7	3.2~3.8	1.0~1.3	0.7~0.8



9. WHEN FUEL GAUGE DOES NOT OPERATE (HCESPN 301, FMI 3 or 4)

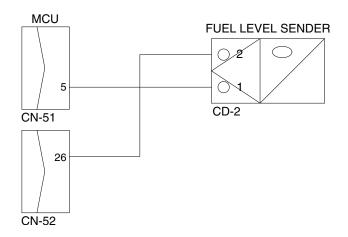
- · Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
- · Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.
- · After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.





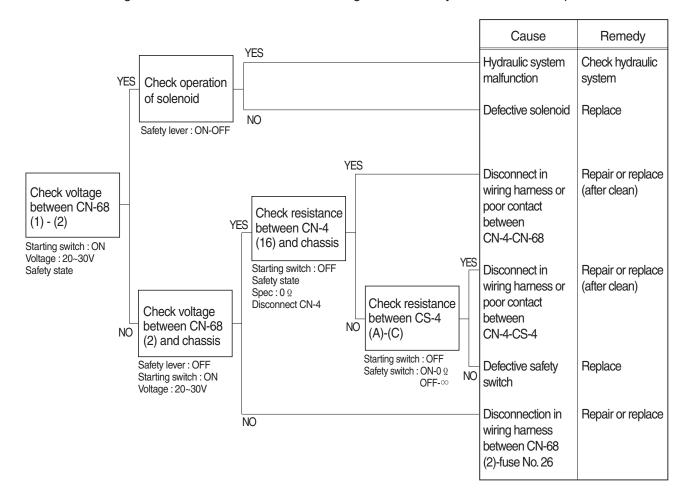
Check Table

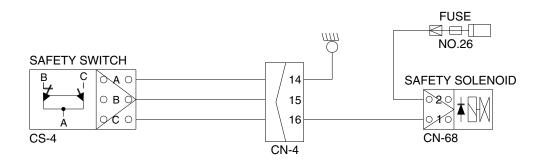
Range	Resistance (Ω)	Range	Resistance (Ω)
Full	50	5/12	400
11/12	100	4/12	450
10/12	150	3/12	500
9/12	200	2/12	550
8/12	250	1/12	600
7/12	300	Empty warning	700
6/12	350	-	-



10. WHEN SAFETY SOLENOID DOES NOT OPERATE

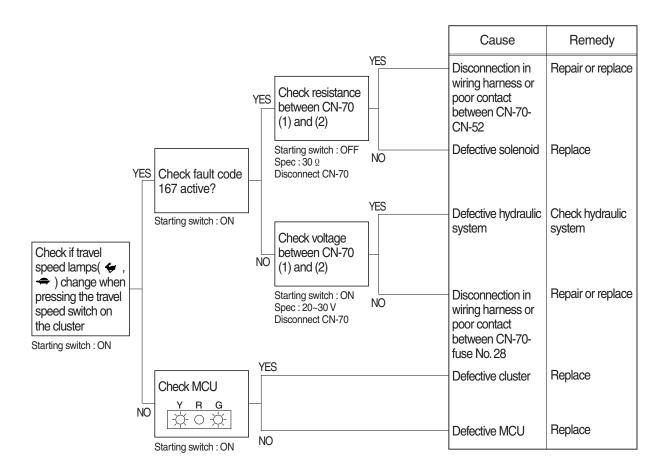
- · Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
- · Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and short of fuse No. 26.
- · After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.

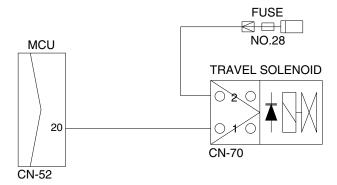




11. WHEN TRAVEL SPEED 1, 2 DOES NOT OPERATE (HCESPN 167, FMI 4 or 6)

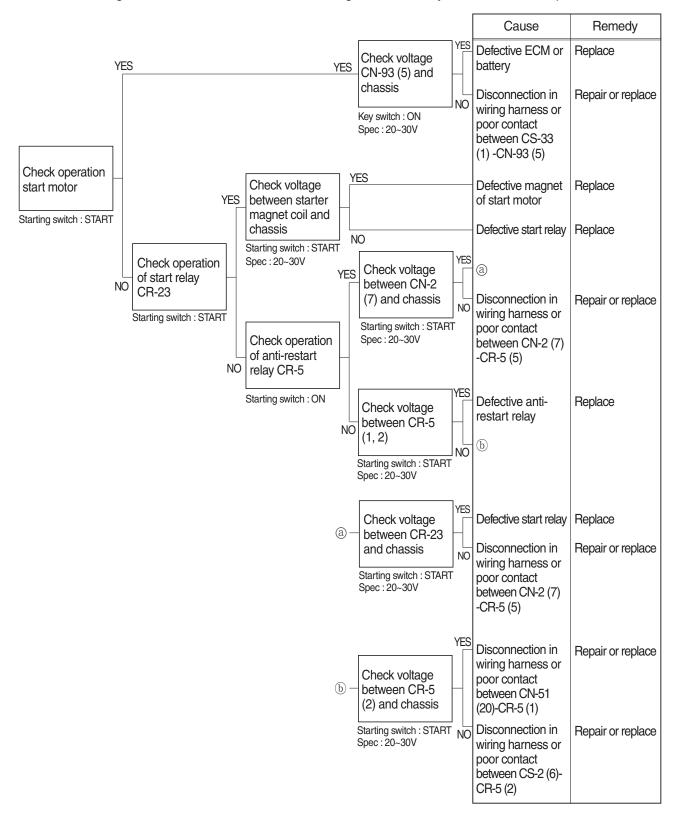
- · Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
- · Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and short of fuse No. 28.
- · After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.

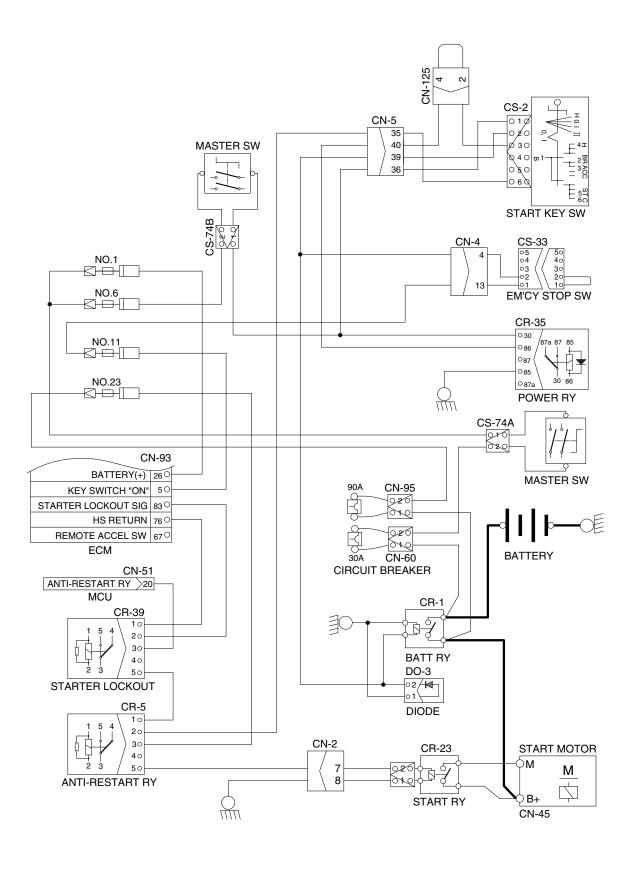




12. WHEN ENGINE DOES NOT START (| lights up condition)

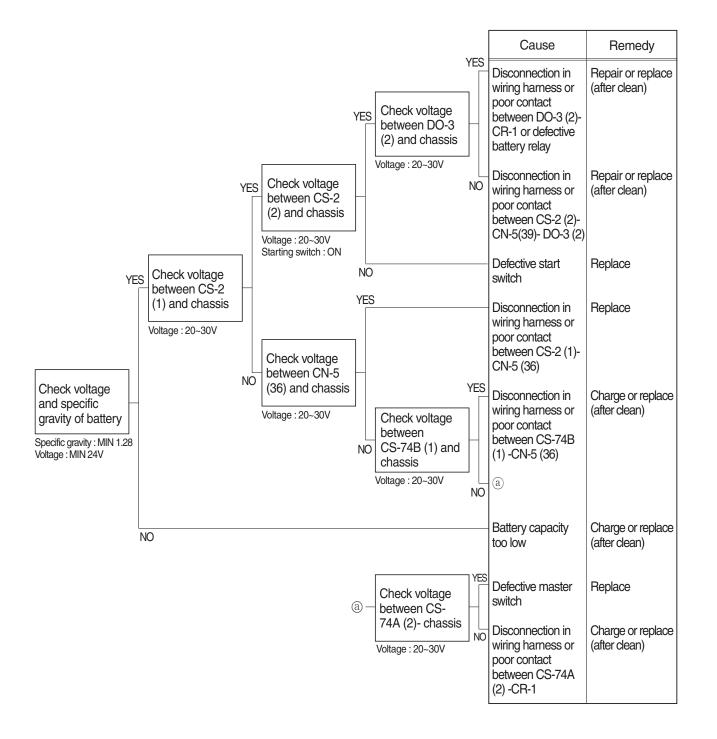
- · Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
- · Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and short of fuse No. 1, 6, 11, 23.
- · After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.

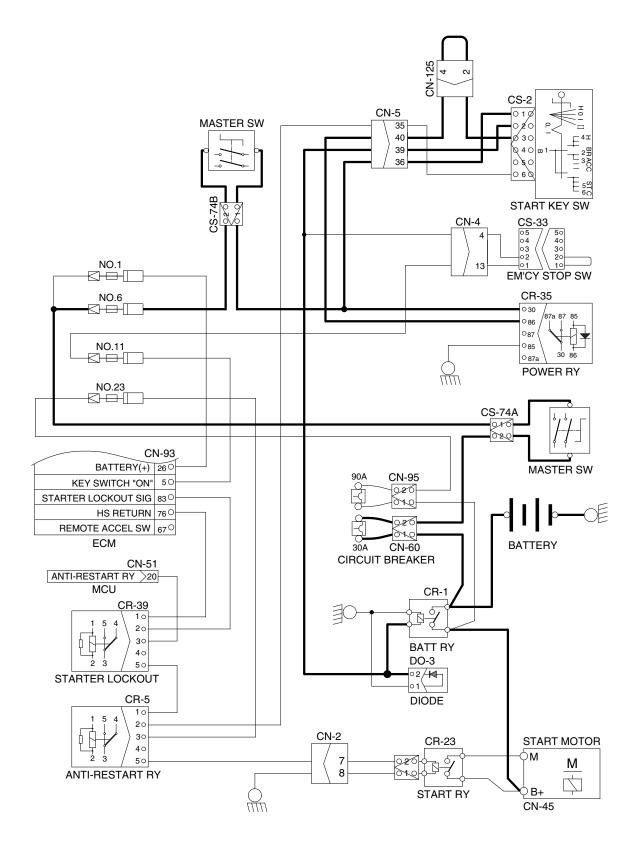




13. WHEN STARTING SWITCH ON DOES NOT OPERATE

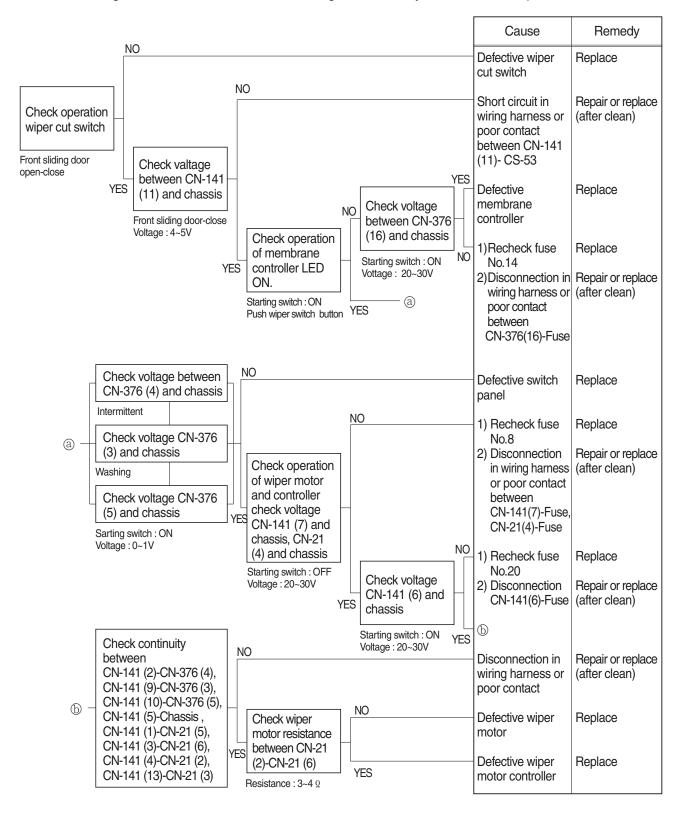
- · Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
- · Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted, master switch ON and check open circuit of fusible link (CN-60).
- · After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.

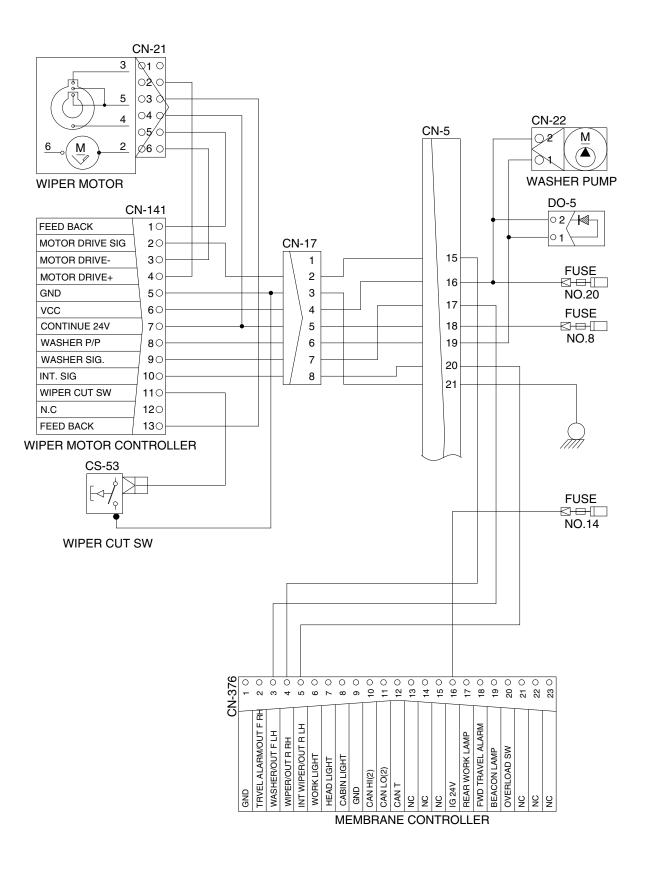




14. WHEN STARTING SWITCH IS TURNED ON, WIPER MOTOR DOES NOT OPERATE

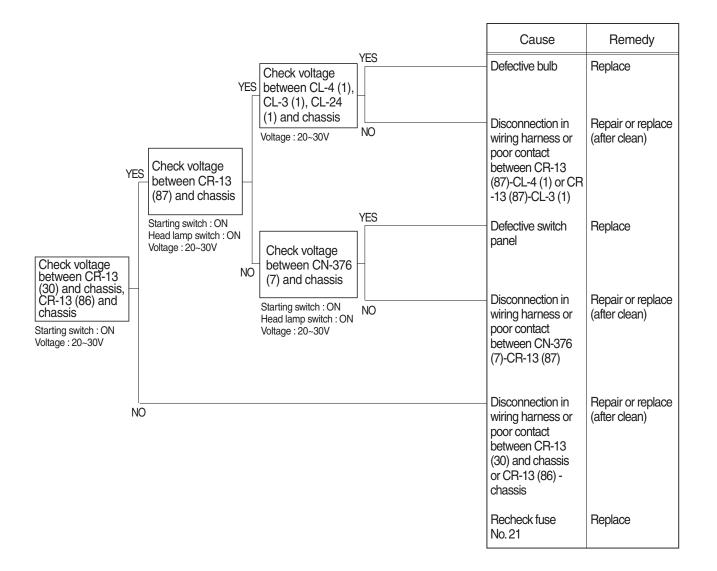
- · Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
- · Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and the fuse No. 8, 14 and 20 is not blown out.
- · After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.

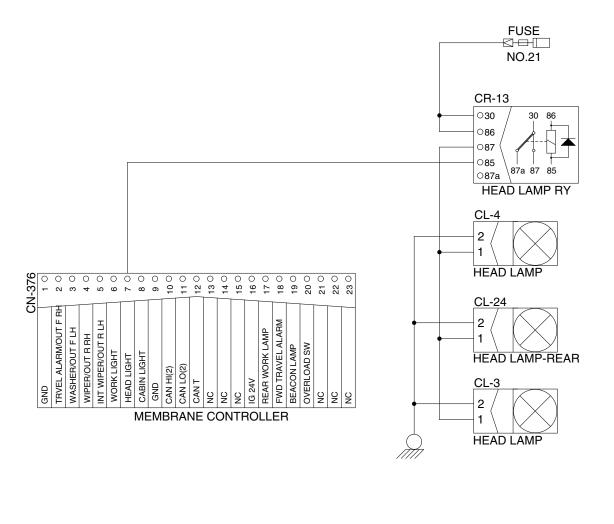




15. WHEN STARTING SWITCH IS TURNED ON, HEAD LAMP DOES NOT LIGHTS UP

- · Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
- · Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and short of fuse No.21.
- · After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



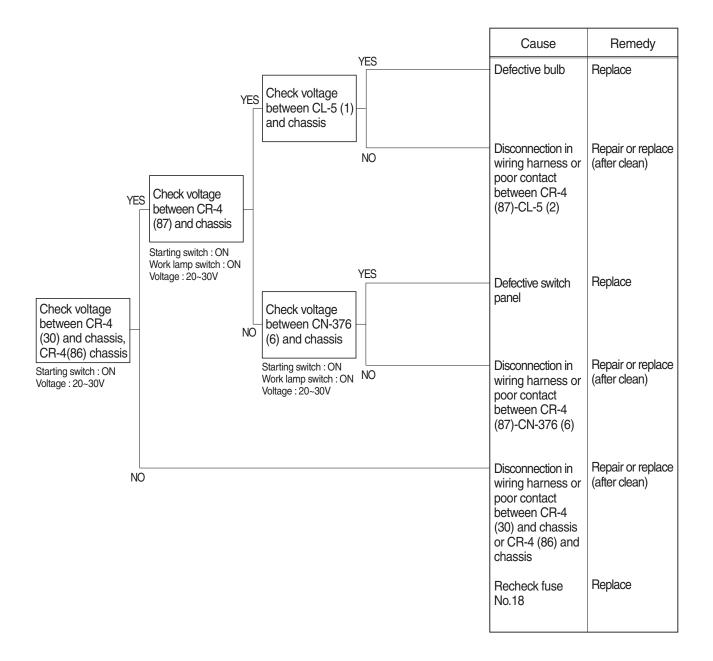


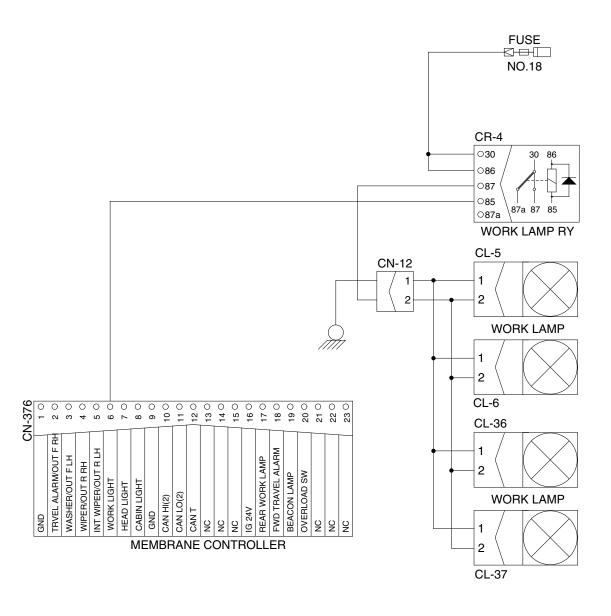
330L6ES07

6-38

16. WHEN STARTING SWITCH IS TURNED ON, WORK LAMP DOES NOT LIGHTS UP

- · Before disconnecting the connector, always turn the starting switch OFF.
- · Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and short of fuse No.18.
- · After checking, insert the disconnected connectors again immediately unless otherwise specified.



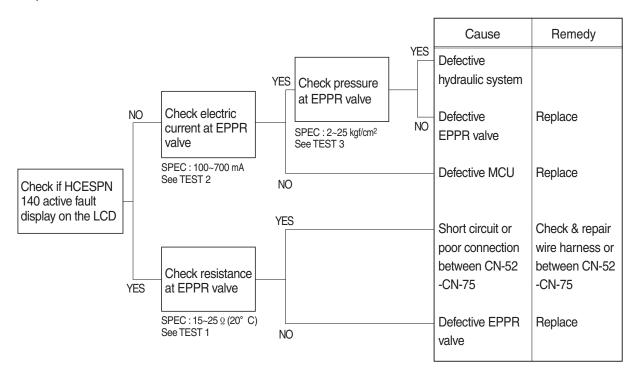


GROUP 4 MECHATRONICS SYSTEM

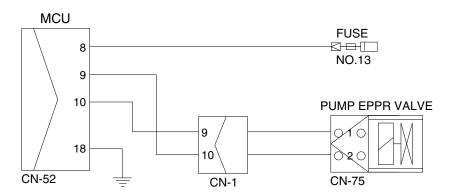
1. ALL ACTUATORS SPEED ARE SLOW

- * Boom, Arm, Bucket, Swing and travel speed are slow, but engine speed is good.
- lpha Spec : P-mode 1700 \pm 50 rpm S -mode 1600 \pm 50 rpm E-mode 1550 \pm 50 rpm
- * Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted and fault code on the cluster.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE

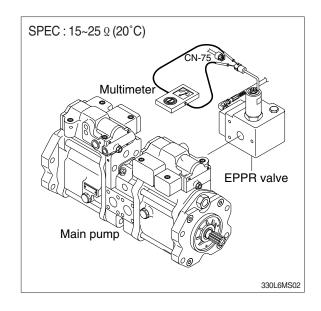


Wiring diagram

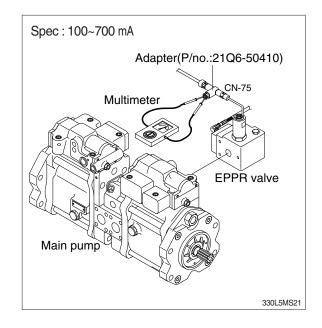


2) TEST PROCEDURE

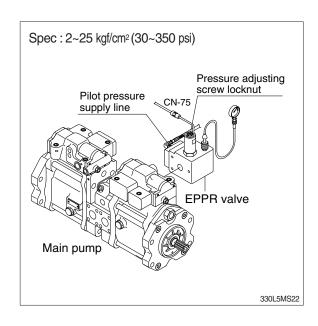
- (1) **Test 1**: Check resistance at connector CN-75.
- ① Starting key OFF.
- ② Disconnect connector CN-75 from EPPR valve at main hydraulic pump.
- ③ Check resistance between 2 lines as figure.



- (2) Test 2 : Check electric current at EPPR valve.
- ① Disconnect connector CN-75 from EPPR valve.
- ② Insert the adapter to CN-75 and install multimeter as figure.
- ③ Start engine.
- 4 Set S-mode and cancel auto decel mode.
- (5) Position the accel dial at 10.
- 6 If tachometer show approx 1600 \pm 50 rpm disconnect one wire harness from EPPR valve.
- ⑦ Check electric current at bucket circuit relief position.



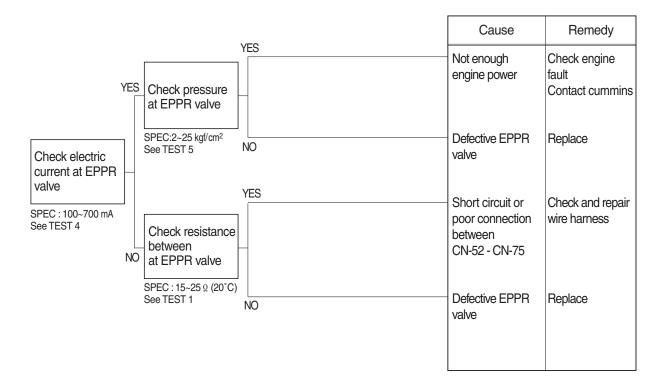
- (3) Test 3: Check pressure at EPPR valve.
 - ① Remove plug and connect pressure gauge as figure.
 - Gauge capacity: 0 to 50 kgf/cm² (0 to 725 psi)
 - ② Start engine.
 - 3 Set S-mode and cancel auto decel mode.
 - 4 Position the accel dial at 10.
 - ⑤ If tachometer show approx 1600±50 rpm check pressure at relief position of bucket circuit by operating bucket control lever.
 - 6 If pressure is not correct, adjust it.
 - 7 After adjust, test the machine.



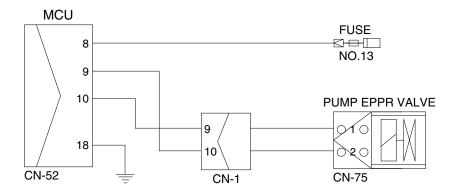
2. ENGINE STALL

* Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE

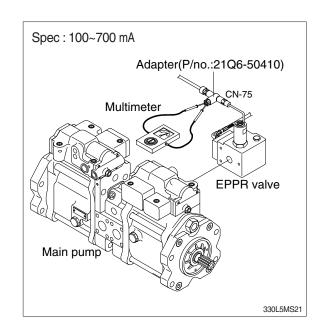


Wiring diagram

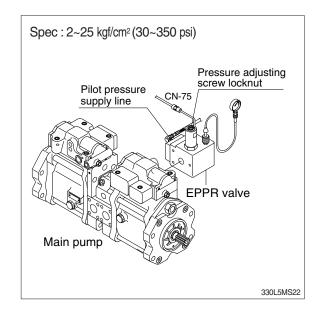


2) TEST PROCEDURE

- (1) **Test 4**: Check electric current at EPPR valve.
 - ① Disconnect connector CN-75 from EPPR valve.
 - ② Insert the adapter to CN-75 and install multimeter as figure.
 - ③ Start engine.
 - Set S-mode and cancel auto decel mode.
 - 5 Position the accel dial at 10.
 - ⑥ If rpm show approx 1600±50 rpm disconnect one wire harness from EPPR valve.
 - Theck electric current at bucket circuit relief position.



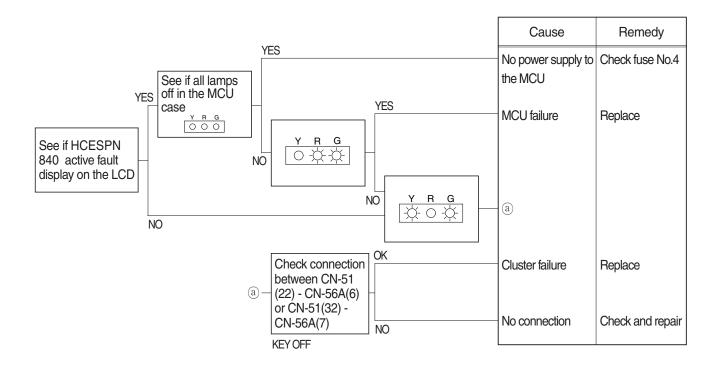
- (2) Test 5 : Check pressure at EPPR valve.
 - ① Remove plug and connect pressure gauge as figure.
 - Gauge capacity: 0 to 50 kgf/cm² (0 to 725 psi)
 - ② Start engine.
 - ③ Set S-mode and cancel auto decel mode.
 - 4 Position the accel dial at 10.
 - ⑤ If rpm show approx 1600±50 rpm check pressure at relief position of bucket circuit by operating bucket control lever.
- 6 If pressure is not correct, adjust it.
- 7 After adjust, test the machine.



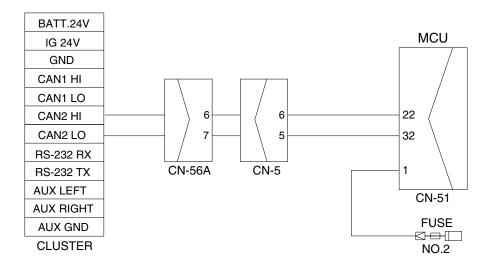
3. MALFUNCTION OF CLUSTER OR MODE SELECTION SYSTEM

* Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



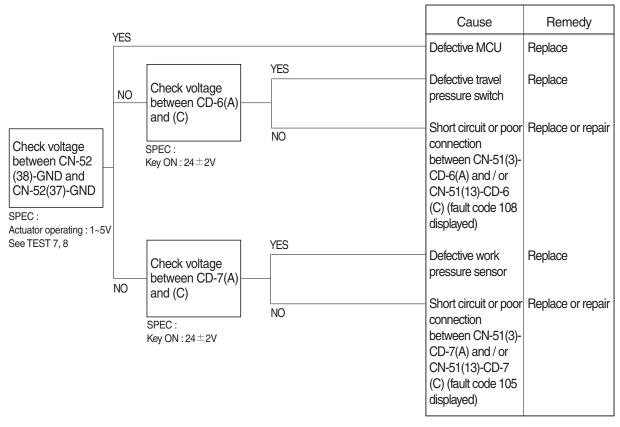
Wiring diagram



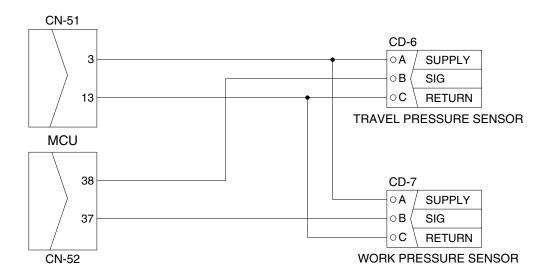
4. AUTO DECEL SYSTEM DOES NOT WORK

- Fault code: HCESPN 105, FMI 0~4 (work pressure sensor)
 HCESPN 108, FMI 0~4 (travel oil pressure sensor)
- * Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE

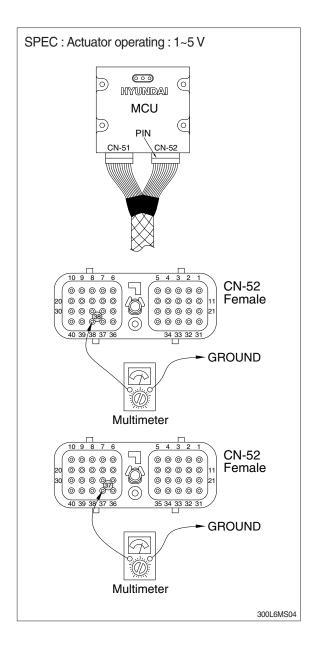


Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

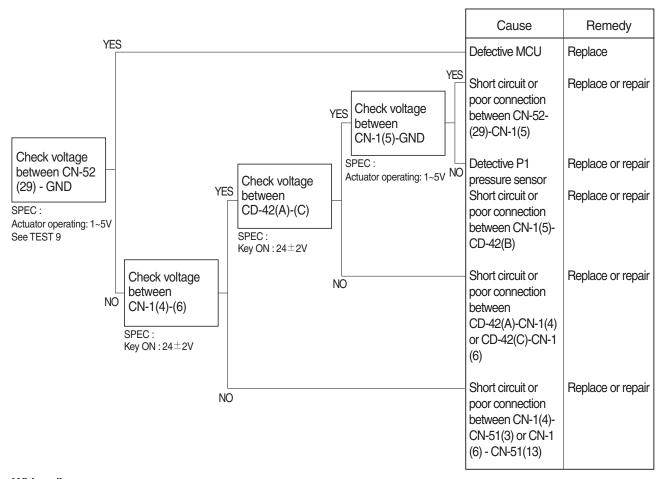
- (1) Test 7: Check voltage at CN-52 (38) and ground.
- ① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.
- ② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors : One pin to (38) of CN-52.
- 3 Starting key ON.
- ④ Check voltage as figure.
- (2) Test 8: Check voltage at CN-52 (37) and ground.
- ① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper
- ② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors: One pin to (37) of CN-52.
- ③ Starting key ON.
- ④ Check voltage as figure.



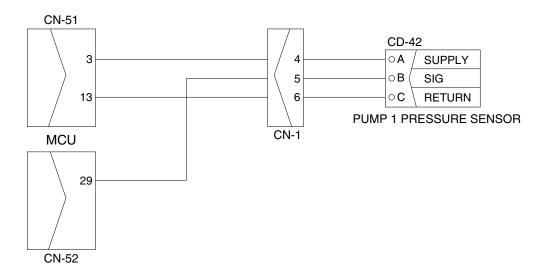
5. MALFUNCTION OF PUMP 1 PRESSURE SENSOR

- · Fault code: HCESPN 120, FMI 0~4
- * Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE

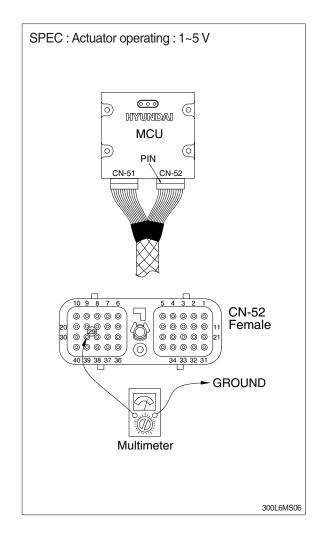


Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

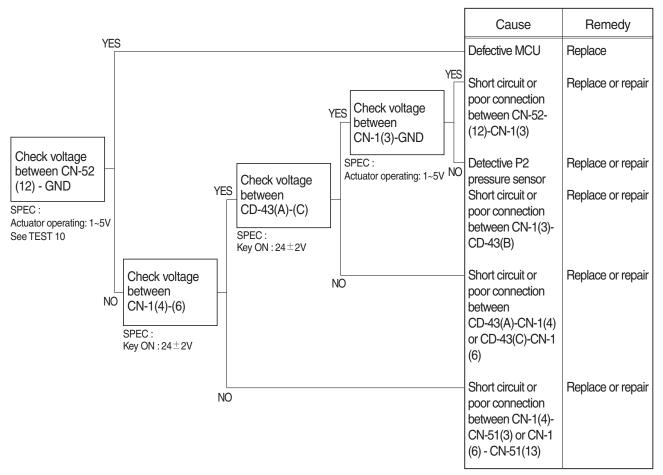
- (1) Test 9: Check voltage at CN-52 (29) and ground.
- ① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.
- ② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors: One pin to (29) of CN-52.
- ③ Starting key ON.
- ④ Check voltage as figure.



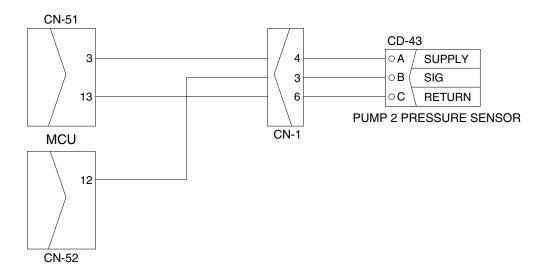
6. MALFUNCTION OF PUMP 2 PRESSURE SENSOR

- · Fault code: HCESPN 121, FMI 0~4
- * Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE

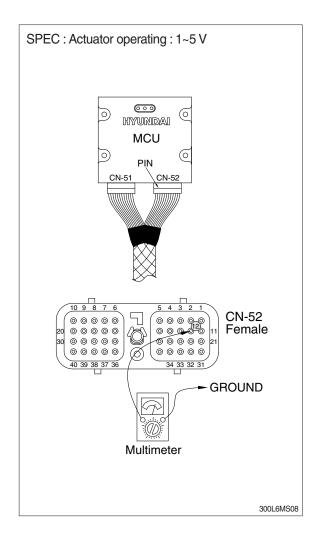


Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

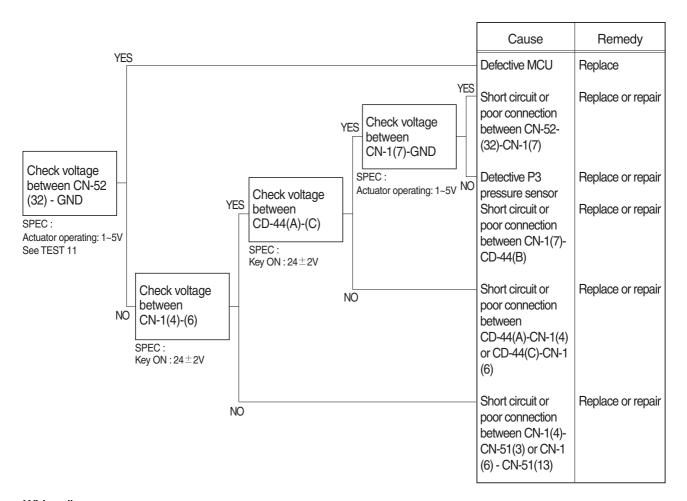
- (1) Test 10: Check voltage at CN-52 (12) and ground.
- ① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.
- ② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors: One pin to (12) of CN-52.
- ③ Starting key ON.
- ④ Check voltage as figure.



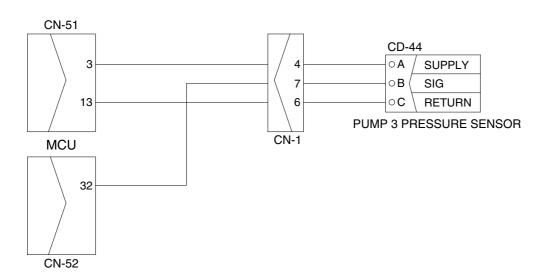
7. MALFUNCTION OF PUMP 3 PRESSURE SENSOR

* Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE

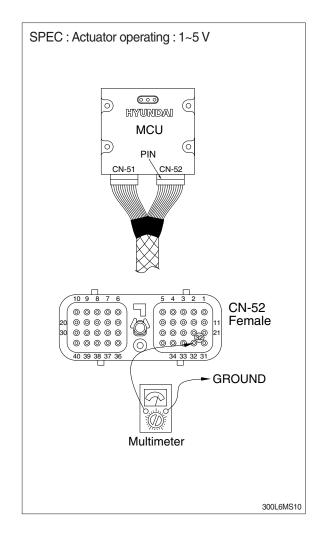


Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

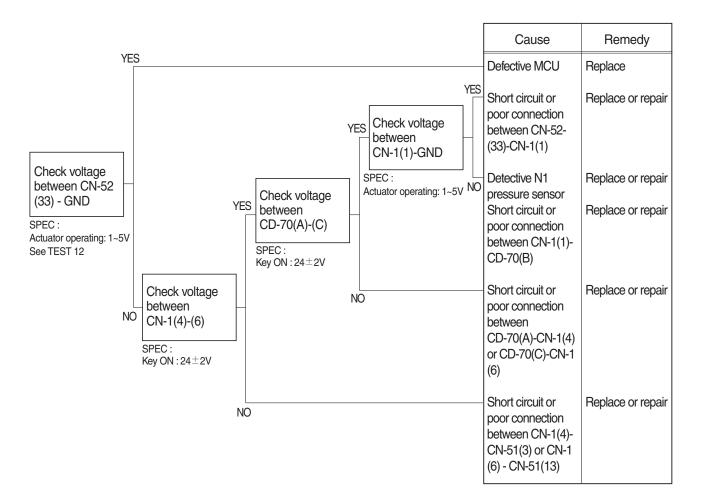
- (1) Test 11: Check voltage at CN-52 (32) and ground.
- ① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.
- ② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors: One pin to (32) of CN-52.
- ③ Starting key ON.
- ④ Check voltage as figure.



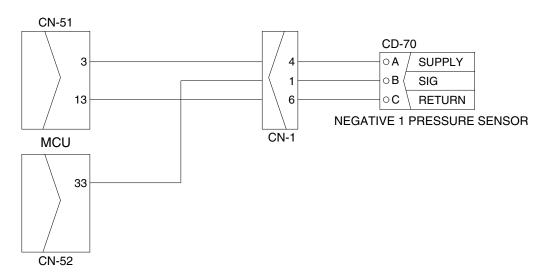
8. MALFUNCTION OF NEGATIVE 1 PRESSURE SENSOR

- · Fault code: HCESPN 123, FMI 0~4
- * Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE

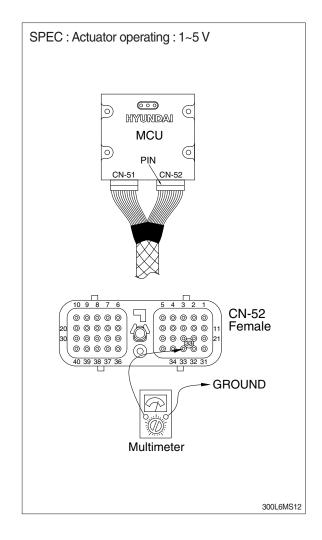


Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

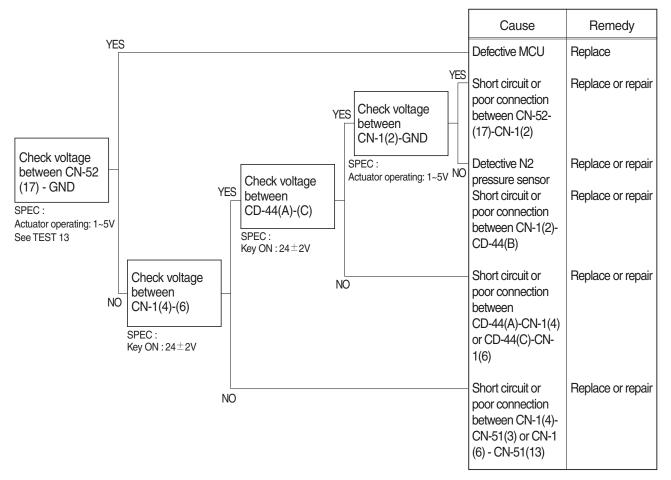
- (1) Test 12: Check voltage at CN-52 (33) and ground.
- ① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.
- ② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors: One pin to (33) of CN-52.
- ③ Starting key ON.
- 4 Check voltage as figure.



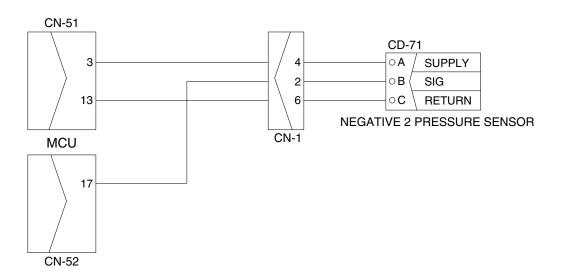
9. MALFUNCTION OF NEGATIVE 2 PRESSURE SENSOR

- · Fault code: HCESPN 124, FMI 0~4
- * Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE

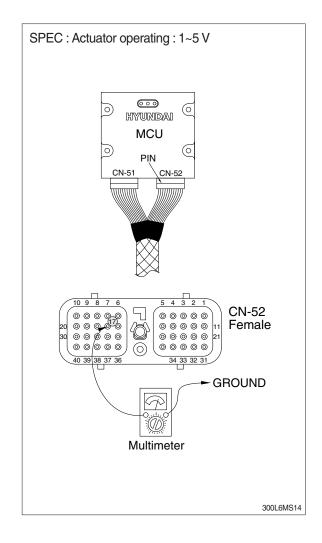


Wiring diagram



2) TEST PROCEDURE

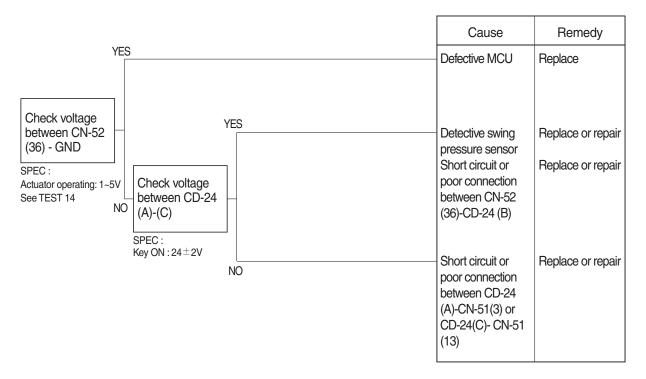
- (1) Test 13: Check voltage at CN-52 (17) and ground.
- ① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.
- ② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors: One pin to (17) of CN-52.
- ③ Starting key ON.
- ④ Check voltage as figure.



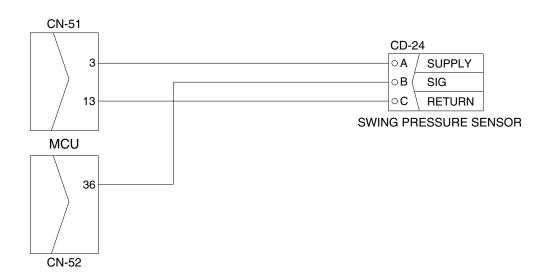
10. MALFUNCTION OF SWING PRESSURE SENSOR

- · Fault code: HCESPN 135, FMI 0~4
- * Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



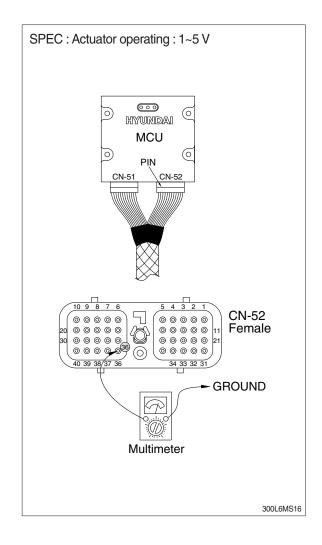
Wiring diagram



300L6MS15

2) TEST PROCEDURE

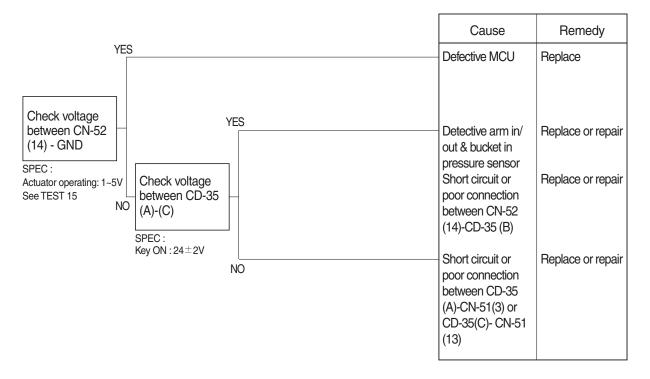
- (1) Test 14: Check voltage at CN-52 (36) and ground.
- ① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.
- ② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors: One pin to (36) of CN-52.
- ③ Starting key ON.
- 4 Check voltage as figure.



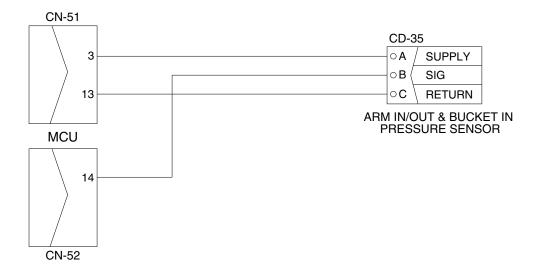
11. MALFUNCTION OF ARM IN/OUT & BUCKET IN PRESSURE SENSOR

- · Fault code: HCESPN 133, FMI 0~4
- * Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



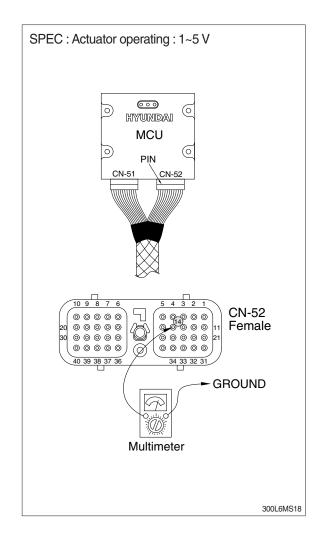
Wiring diagram



300L6MS17

2) TEST PROCEDURE

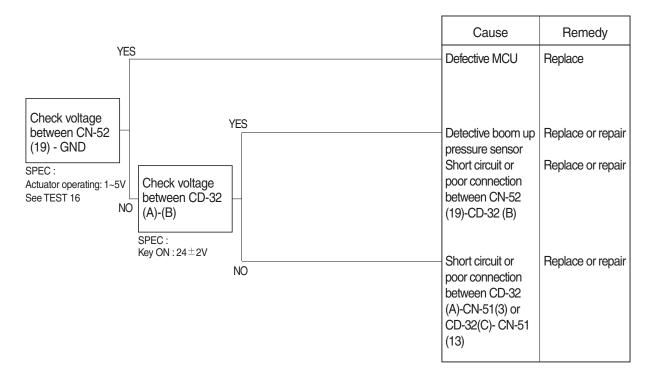
- (1) Test 15: Check voltage at CN-52 (14) and ground.
- ① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.
- ② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors: One pin to (14) of CN-52.
- ③ Starting key ON.
- ④ Check voltage as figure.



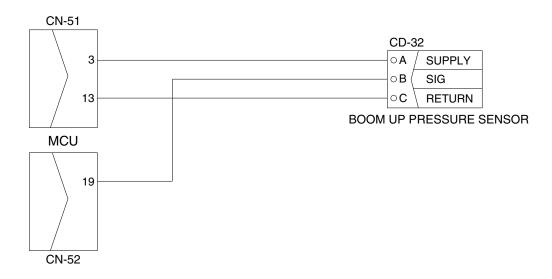
12. MALFUNCTION OF BOOM UP PRESSURE SENSOR

- · Fault code: HCESPN 127, FMI 0~4
- * Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



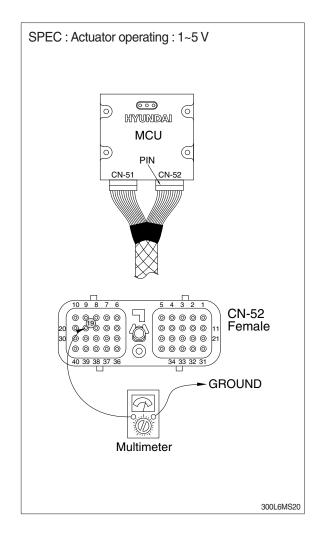
Wiring diagram



300L6MS19

2) TEST PROCEDURE

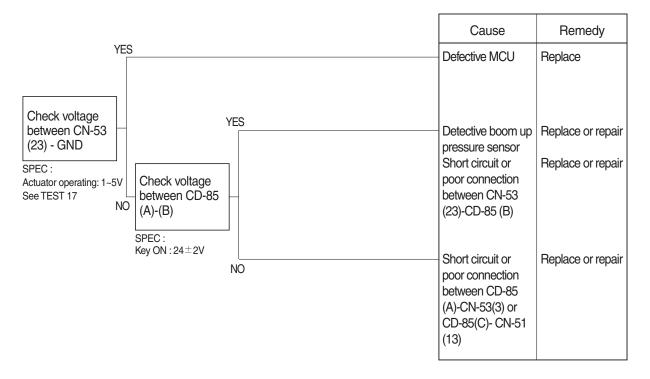
- (1) Test 16: Check voltage at CN-52 (19) and ground.
- ① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.
- ② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors: One pin to (19) of CN-52.
- ③ Starting key ON.
- ④ Check voltage as figure.



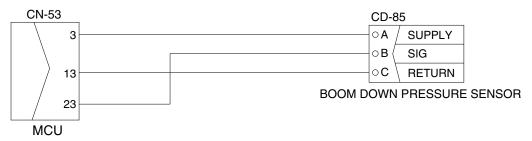
13. MALFUNCTION OF BOOM DOWN PRESSURE SENSOR

- · Fault code: HCESPN 128, FMI 0~4
- * Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



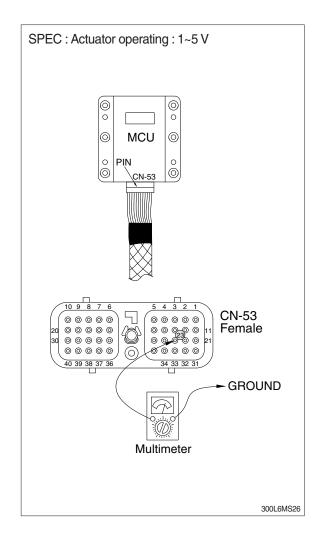
Wiring diagram



300L6MS25

2) TEST PROCEDURE

- (1) Test 17: Check voltage at CN-53 (23) and ground.
- ① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.
- ② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors: One pin to (23) of CN-53.
- ③ Starting key ON.
- 4 Check voltage as figure.

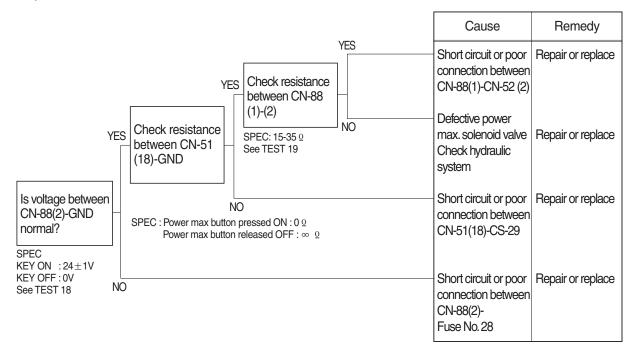


14. MALFUNCTION OF POWER MAX

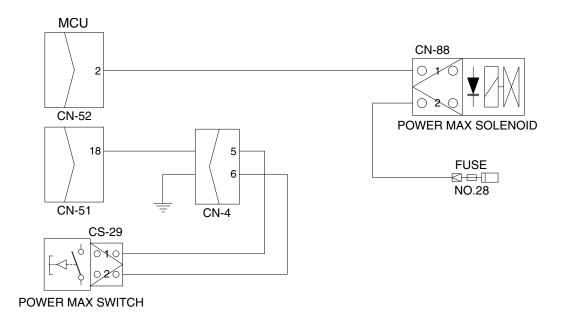
· Fault code: HCESPN 166, FMI 4 or 6

* Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



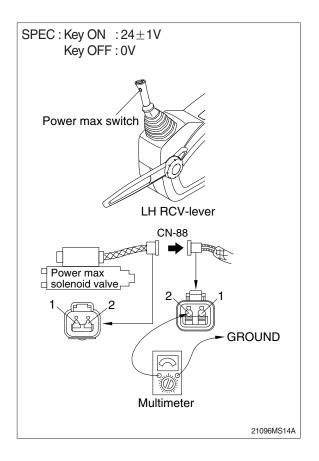
Wiring diagram



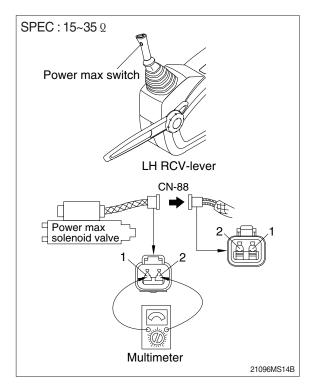
330L6MS04

2) TEST PROCEDURE

- (1) Test 18: Check voltage between connector CN-88 (2) GND.
- ① Disconnect connector CN-88 from power max solenoid valve.
- ② Start key ON.
- ③ Check voltage as figure.



- (2) Test 19: Check resistance of the solenoid valve between CN-88 (1)-(2).
- ① Starting key OFF.
- ② Disconnect connector CN-88 from power max solenoid valve.
- ③ Check resistance as figure.

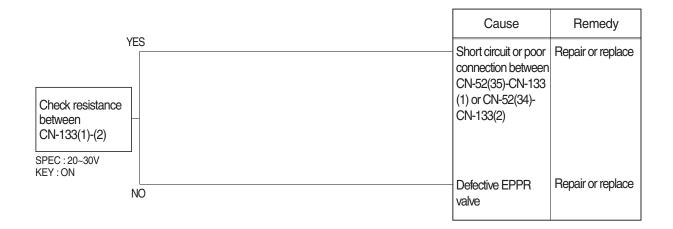


15. MALFUNCTION OF BOOM PRIORITY EPPR VALVE

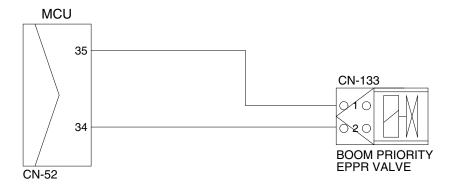
· Fault code: HCESPN 141, FMI 5 or 6

* Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



Wiring diagram



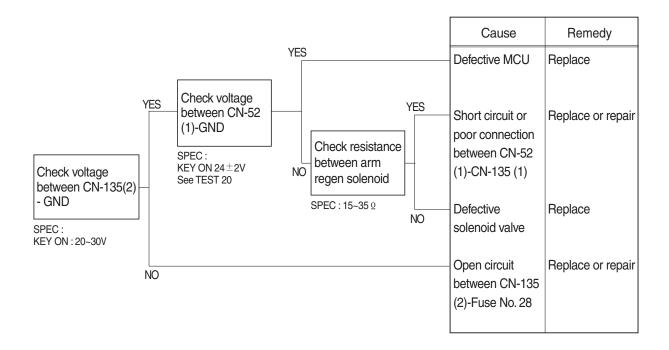
300L6MS23

16. MALFUNCTION OF ARM REGENERATION SOLENOID

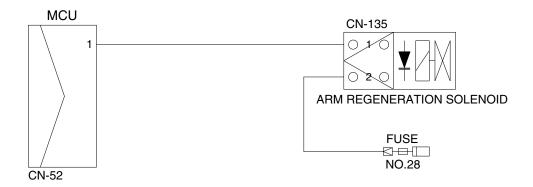
· Fault code: HCESPN 170, FMI 4 or 6

* Before carrying out below procedure, check all the related connectors are properly inserted.

1) INSPECTION PROCEDURE



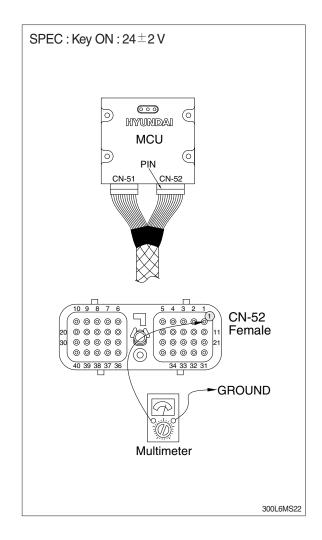
Wiring diagram



330L6MS05

2) TEST PROCEDURE

- (1) Test 20 : Check voltage at CN-52 (1) and ground.
- ① Prepare 1 piece of thin sharp pin, steel or copper.
- ② Insert prepared pin to rear side of connectors: One pin to (1) of CN-52.
- ③ Starting key ON.
- ④ Check voltage as figure.



SECTION 7 MAINTENANCE STANDARD

Group	1	Operational Performance Test ······	7-1
Group	2	Major Components	7-21
Group	3	Track and Work Equipment	7-30

SECTION 7 MAINTENANCE STANDARD

GROUP 1 OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE TEST

1. PURPOSE

Performance tests are used to check:

1) OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE OF A NEW MACHINE

Whenever a new machine is delivered in parts and reassembled at a customer's site, it must be tested to confirm that the operational performance of the machine meets HD Hyundai Construction Equipment spec.

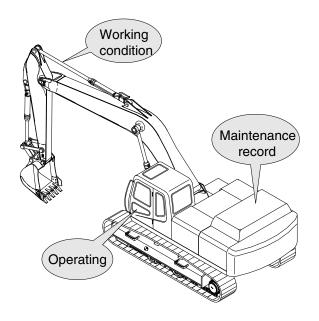
2) OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE OF A WORKING MACHINE

With the passage of time, the machine's operational performance deteriorates, so that the machine needs to be serviced periodically to restore it to its original performance level.

Before servicing the machine, conduct performance tests to check the extent of deterioration, and to decide what kind of service needs to be done(by referring to the "Service Limits" in this manual).

3) OPERATIONAL PERFORMANCE OF A REPAIRED MACHINE

After the machine is repaired or serviced, it must be tested to confirm that its operational performance was restored by the repair and/or service work done.

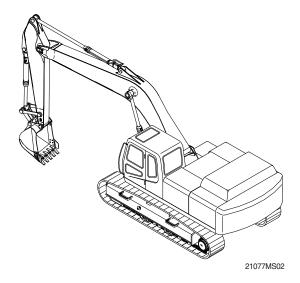


21077MS01

2. TERMINOLOGY

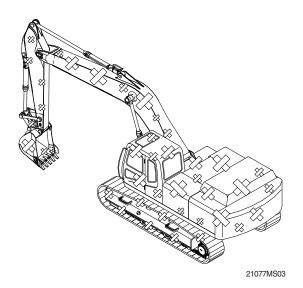
1) STANDARD

Specifications applied to the brand-new machine, components and parts.



2) SERVICE LIMIT

The lowest acceptable performance level. When the performance level of the machine falls below this level, the machine must be removed from work and repaired. Necessary parts and components must be replaced.



3. OPERATION FOR PERFORMANCE TESTS

 Observe the following rules in order to carry out performance tests accurately and safely.

(1) The machine

Repair any defects and damage found, such as oil or water leaks, loose bolts, cracks and so on, before starting to test.

(2) Test area

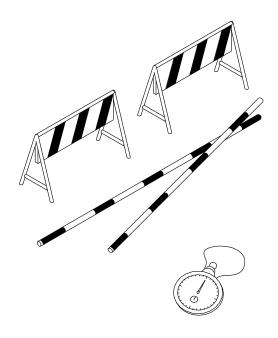
- ① Select a hard, flat surface.
- ② Secure enough space to allow the machine to run straight more than 20 m, and to make a full swing with the front attachment extended.
- ③ If required, rope off the test area and provide signboards to keep unauthorized personnel away.

(3) Precautions

- ① Before starting to test, agree upon the signals to be employed for communication among coworkers. Once the test is started, be sure to communicate with each other using these signals, and to follow them without fail.
- ② Operate the machine carefully and always give first priority to safety.
- While testing, always take care to avoid accidents due to landslides or contact with high voltage power lines. Always confirm that there is sufficient space for full swings.
- Avoid polluting the machine and the ground with leaking oil. Use oil pans to catch escaping oil. Pay special attention to this when removing hydraulic pipings.

(4) Make precise measurements

- Accurately calibrate test instruments in advance to obtain correct data.
- ② Carry out tests under the exact test conditions prescribed for each test item.
- ③ Repeat the same test and confirm that the test data obtained can be procured repeatedly. Use mean values of measurements if necessary.



(210-7) 7-3

2) ENGINE SPEED

- (1) Measure the engine speed at each power mode
- ** The engine speed at each power mode must meet standard RPM; if not, all other operational performance data will be unreliable. It is essential to perform this test first.

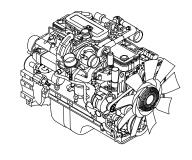
(2) Preparation

- ① Warm up the machine, until the engine coolant temperature reaches 50°C or more, and the hydraulic oil is 50±5°C.
- ② Set the accel dial at 10 (Max) position.
- ③ Measure the engine RPM.

(3) Measurement

- ① Start the engine. The engine will run at start idle speed. Measure engine speed with a engine rpm display.
- ② Measure and record the engine speed at each mode (P, S, E).
- 3 Select the P-mode.
- 4 Lightly operate the bucket control lever a few times, then return the control lever to neutral; The engine will automatically enter the auto-idle speed after 4 seconds.
- Measure and record the auto deceleration speed.





330F7MS01

(4) Evaluation

The measured speeds should meet the following specifications.

Unit: rpm

Model	Engine speed	Standard	Remarks
	Start idle	900±100	
	P mode	1700±50	
HX330 L	S mode	1600±50	
TIASSU L	E mode	1550±50	
	Auto decel	1000±100	
	One touch decel	900±100	

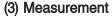
Condition: Set the accel dial at 10 (Max) position.

3) TRAVEL SPEED

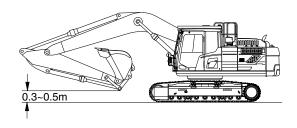
(1) Measure the time required for the excavator to travel a 20 m test track.

(2) Preparation

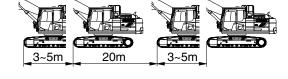
- ① Adjust the tension of both tracks to be equal.
- ② Prepare a flat and solid test track 20m in length, with extra length of 3 to 5 m on both ends for machine acceleration and deceleration.
- 3 Hold the bucket 0.3 to 0.5 m above the ground with the arm and bucket rolled in.
- 4 Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at $50\pm5^{\circ}\text{C}$.



- ① Measure both the low and high speeds of the machine.
- ② Before starting either the low or high speed tests, adjust the travel mode switch to the speed to be tested, then select the following switch positions.
- · Power mode switch: P mode
- 3 Start traveling the machine in the acceleration zone with the travel levers at full stroke.
- 4 Measure the time required to travel 20 m.
- S After measuring the forward travel speed, turn the upperstructure 180° and measure the reverse travel speed.
- ⑥ Repeat steps ④ and ⑤ three times in each direction and calculate the average values.



260A7MS02



260A7MS03

(4) Evaluation

The average measured time should meet the following specifications.

Unit: Seconds / 20 m

Model	Travel speed	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
HX330 L	1 Speed	21.2±2.0	27.3	
HA330 L	2 Speed	12.0±1.0	16.4	

4) TRACK REVOLUTION SPEED

(1) Measure the track revolution cycle time with the track raised off ground.

(2) Preparation

- ① Adjust the tension of both side tracks to be equal.
- ② On the track to be measured, mark one shoe with chalk.
- ③ Swing the upperstructure 90° and lower the bucket to raise the track off ground. Keep the boom-arm angle between 90 to 110° as shown. Place blocks under machine frame.
- 4 Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at $50\pm5^{\circ}\text{C}$.



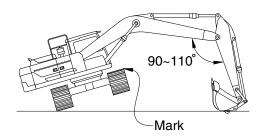
- ① Select the following switch positions.
- · Travel mode switch : 1 or 2 speed
- · Power mode switch : P mode
- · Auto idle switch : OFF
- ② Operate the travel control lever of the raised track in full forward and reverse.
- 3 Rotate 1 turn, then measure time taken for next 3 revolutions.
- ④ Raise the other side of machine and repeat the procedure.
- S Repeat steps 3 and 4 three times and calculate the average values.

(4) Evaluation

The revolution cycle time of each track should meet the following specifications.

Unit: Seconds / 3 revolutions

Model	Travel speed	Standard	Maximum allowable
LIVOOLI	1 Speed	33±2.0	42.5
HX330 L	2 Speed	19±2.0	25.5



300L7MS04

5) TRAVEL DEVIATION

(1) Measure the deviation by the tracks from a 20 m straight line.

(2) Preparation

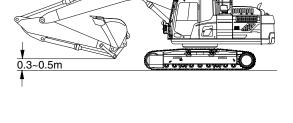
- ① Adjust the tension of both tracks to be equal.
- ② Provide a flat, solid test yard 20 m in length, with extra length of 3 to 5 m on both ends for machine acceleration and deceleration.
- 3 Hold the bucket 0.3 to 0.5 m above the ground with the arm and bucket rolled in.
- 4 Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at $50\pm5^{\circ}$ C.



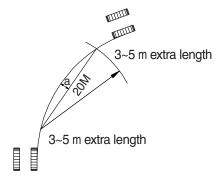
- ① Measure the amount of mistracking at high and low travel speeds.
- ② Before beginning each test, select the following switch positions.
- · Power mode switch : P mode
- Start traveling the machine in the acceleration zone with the travel levers at full stroke.
- ④ Measure the distance between a straight 20 m line and the track made by the machine. (Dimension a)
- S After measuring the tracking in forward travel, turn the upperstructure 180° and measure that in reverse travel.
- 6 Repeat steps 4 and 5 three times and calculate the average values.

(4) Evaluation

Mistrack should be within the following specifications.



260A7MS02



(210-7) 7-7(2)

Unit: mm/20 m

Model	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
HX330 L 200 below		250	-

6) SWING SPEED

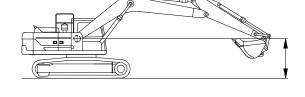
(1) Measure the time required to swing three complete turns.

(2) Preparation

- ① Check the lubrication of the swing gear and swing bearing.
- ② Place the machine on flat, solid ground with ample space for swinging. Do not conduct this test on slopes.
- ③ With the arm rolled out and bucket rolled in, hold the bucket so that the height of the bucket pin is the same as the boom foot pin. The bucket must be empty.
- 4 Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at $50\pm5^{\circ}$ C.



- ① Select the following switch positions.
- · Power mode switch : P mode
- ② Operate swing control lever fully.
- ③ Swing 1 turn and measure time taken to swing next 3 revolutions.
- ④ Repeat steps ② and ③ three time and calculate the average values.



300L7MS05

(4) Evaluation

The time required for 3 swings should meet the following specifications.

Unit: Seconds / 3 revolutions

Model	Model Power mode switch		Maximum allowable
HX330 L	HX330 L P mode		23.9

7) SWING FUNCTION DRIFT CHECK

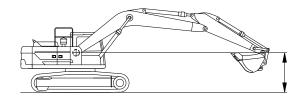
 Measure the swing drift on the bearing outer circumference when stopping after a 360° full speed swing.

(2) Preparation

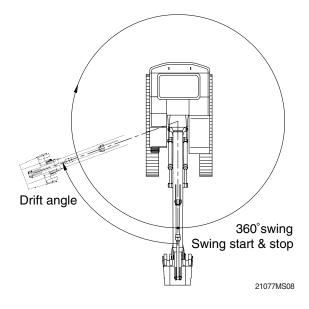
- ① Check the lubrication of the swing gear and swing bearing.
- ② Place the machine on flat, solid ground with ample space for swinging. Do not conduct this test on slopes.
- With the arm rolled out and bucket rolled in, hold the bucket so that the height of the bucket pin is the same as the boom foot pin. The bucket must be empty.
- Make two chalk marks: one on the swing bearing and one directly below it on the track frame.
- (5) Swing the upperstructure 360°.
- 6 Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at $50\pm5^{\circ}\text{C}$.

(3) Measurement

- ① Conduct this test in the M mode.
- ② Select the following switch positions.
- · Power mode switch : P mode
- ③ Operate the swing control lever fully and return it to the neutral position when the mark on the upperstructure aligns with that on track frame after swinging 360°
- Measure the distance between the two marks.
- ⑤ Align the marks again, swing 360°, then test the opposite direction.
- ⑥ Repeat steps ④ and ⑤ three times each and calculate the average values.



300L7MS05



(4) Evaluation

The measured drift angle should be within the following specifications.

Unit: Degree

	Model	Power mode switch	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
Ī	HX330 L	P mode	90 below	112.5	

8) SWING BEARING PLAY

(1) Measure the swing bearing play using a dial gauge to check the wear of bearing races and balls.

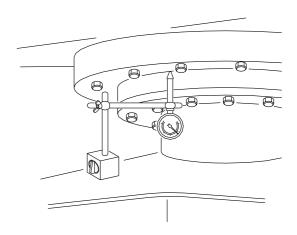
(2) Preparation

- ① Check swing bearing mounting cap screws for loosening.
- ② Check the lubrication of the swing bearing. Confirm that bearing rotation is smooth and without noise.
- ③ Install a dial gauge on the track frame as shown, using a magnetic base.
- ④ Position the upperstructure so that the boom aligns with the tracks facing towards the front idlers.
- ⑤ Position the dial gauge so that its needle point comes into contact with the bottom face of the bearing outer race.
- 6 Bucket should be empty.

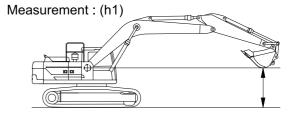
(3) Measurement

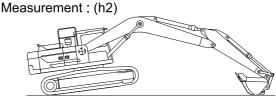
- ① With the arm rolled out and bucket rolled in, hold the bottom face of the bucket to the same height of the boom foot pin.

 Record the dial gauge reading (h1).
- ② Lower the bucket to the ground and use it to raise the front idler 50 cm. Record the dial gauge reading (h2).
- ③ Calculate bearing play (H) from this data (h1 and h2) as follows.
 H=h2-h1



(210-7) 7-10(1)





300L7MS0

(4) Evaluation

The measured drift should be within the following specifications.

Unit: mm

Model Standard		Maximum allowable	Remarks
HX330 L	0.5 ~ 1.5	3.0	

9) HYDRAULIC CYLINDER CYCLE TIME

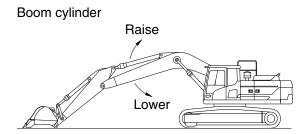
(1) Measure the cycle time of the boom, standard arm, and standard bucket cylinders.

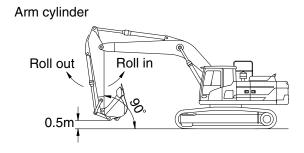
(2) Preparation

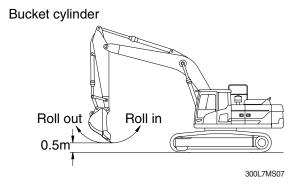
- ① To measure the cycle time of the boom cylinders:
 - With the arm rolled out and the empty bucket rolled out, lower the bucket to the ground, as shown.
- ② To measure the cycle time of the arm cylinder.
 - With the empty bucket rolled in, position the arm so that it is vertical to the ground. Lower the boom until the bucket is 0.5 m above the ground.
- To measure the cycle time of the bucket cylinder.
 - The empty bucket should be positioned at midstroke between roll-in and roll-out, so that the sideplate edges are vertical to the ground.
- 4 Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at $50\pm5^{\circ}\text{C}$.

(3) Measurement

- ① Select the following switch positions.
- · Power mode switch : P mode
- ② To measure cylinder cycle times.
- Boom cylinders.
 - Measure the time it takes to raise the boom, and the time it takes to lower the boom. To do so, position the boom at one stroke end then move the control lever to the other stroke end as quickly as possible.
- Arm cylinder.
 - Measure the time it takes to roll in the arm, and the time it takes to roll out the arm. To do so, position the bucket at one stroke end, then move the control lever to the other stroke end as quickly as possible.







-Bucket cylinders

Measure the time it takes to roll in the bucket, and the time it takes to roll out the bucket. To do so, position the bucket at one stroke end, then move the control lever to the other stroke end as quickly as possible.

-Repeat each measurement 3 times and calculate the average values.

(4) Evaluation

The average measured time should meet the following specifications.

Unit: Seconds

Model	Fu	ınction	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
	Boom raise		3.9±0.4	4.3	
	Boom lo	ower	3.3±0.4	3.4	
LIVOOL	Arm in	Regen ON	3.7±0.4	4.3	
HX330 L	Arm out		3.3±0.3	3.7	
	Bucket	load	2.7±0.4	3.1	
	Bucket	dump	2.8±0.3	3.0	

10) DIG FUNCTION DRIFT CHECK

(1) Measure dig function drift, which can be caused by oil leakage in the control valve and boom, standard arm, and standard bucket cylinders, with the loaded bucket. When testing the dig function drift just after cylinder replacement, slowly operate each cylinder to its stroke end to purge air.

(2) Preparation

- Load bucket fully. Instead of loading the bucket, weight(W) of the following specification can be used.
 - · W=M³×1.5 Where:

M³ = Bucket heaped capacity (m³)

1.5 = Soil specific gravity

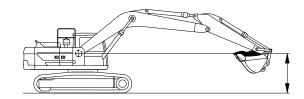
- ② Position the arm cylinder with the rod 20 to 30 mm extended from the fully retracted position.
- ③ Position the bucket cylinder with the rod 20 to 30 mm retracted from the fully extended position.
- With the arm rolled out and bucket rolled in, hold the bucket so that the height of the bucket pin is the same as the boom foot pin.
- $\$ Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at $50\pm5^{\circ}$ C.

(3) Measurement

- ① Stop the engine.
- ② Five minutes after the engine has been stopped, measure the changes in the positions of the boom, arm and bucket cylinders.
- ③ Repeat step ② three times and calculate the average values.
- (4) The measured drift should be within the following specifications.

Unit: mm/5min

Model	Drift to be measured	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
	Boom cylinder	10 below	15	
HX330 L	Arm cylinder	10 below	15	
	Bucket cylinder	40 below	50	



300L7MS08

11) CONTROL LEVER OPERATING FORCE

 Use a spring scale to measure the maximum resistance of each control lever at the middle of the grip.

(2) Preparation

① Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at $50\pm5^{\circ}$ C.

(3) Measurement

- ① Start the engine.
- ② Select the following switch positions.
- · Power mode switch : P mode
- ③ Operate each boom, arm, bucket and swing lever at full stroke and measure the maximum operating force for each.
- ① Lower the bucket to the ground to raise one track off the ground. Operate the travel lever at full stroke and measure the maximum operating force required. When finished, lower the track and then jack-up the other track.
- ⑤ Repeat steps ③ and ④ three times and calculate the average values.

(4) Evaluation

The measured operating force should be within the following specifications.

Unit: kgf

Model	Kind of lever	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
	Boom lever	1.3 or below	1.7	
	Arm lever	1.3 or below	1.7	
HX330 L	Bucket lever	1.3 or below	1.7	
	Swing lever	1.3 or below	1.7	
	Travel lever	2.1 or below	3.15	

12) CONTROL LEVER STROKE

- (1) Measure each lever stroke at the lever top using a ruler.
- When the lever has play, take a half of this value and add it to the measured stroke.

(2) Preparation

Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at $50\pm5^{\circ}$ C.

(3) Measurement

- ① Stop the engine.
- ② Measure each lever stroke at the lever top from neutral to the stroke end using a ruler.
- ③ Repeat step ② three times and calculate the average values.

(4) Evaluation

The measured drift should be within the following specifications.

Unit: mm

Model	Kind of lever	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
	Boom lever	90±10	115	
	Arm lever	90±10	115	
HX330 L	Bucket lever	90±10	115	
	Swing lever	90±10	115	
	Travel lever	142±10	178	

13) PILOT PRIMARY PRESSURE

(1) Preparation

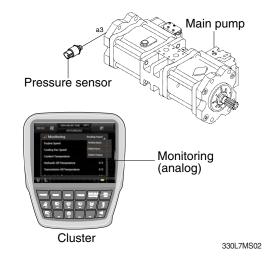
① Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at $50\pm5^{\circ}$ C.

(2) Measurement

① Select the following switch positions.

Power mode switch : P modeAuto decel switch : OFF

② Measure the primary pilot pressure by the monitoring menu of the cluster.



(3) Evaluation

The average measured pressure should meet the following specifications:

Unit: kgf/cm2

Model	Engine speed	Standard	Allowable limits	Remarks
HX330 L	P mode	40 +2	-	

14) FOR TRAVEL SPEED SELECTING PRESSURE:

(1) Preparation

- ① Stop the engine.
- ② Loosen the cap and relieve the pressure in the tank by pushing the top of the air breather.
- ③ To measure the speed selecting pressure: Install a connector and pressure gauge
- ④ assembly to turning joint P port as shown. Start the engine and check for on leakage from the adapter.
- \bigcirc Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at $50\pm5^{\circ}$ C.

(2) Measurement

① Select the following switch positions.

· Power mode switch : P mode

· Travel mode switch : 1 speed

2 speed

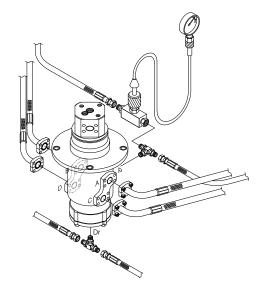
- ② Measure the travel speed selecting pressure in the Hi or Lo mode.
- ③ Lower the bucket to the ground to raise the track off the ground. Operate the travel lever at full stroke and measure the fast speed pressure.
- ④ Repeat steps ② and ③ three times and calculate the average values.



The average measured pressure should be within the following specifications.

Unit: kgf/cm2

Model	Travel speed mode	Standard	Maximum allowable	Remarks
HX330 L	1 Speed	0	-	
	2 Speed	40±5	-	



21077MS13

15) SWING PARKING BRAKE RELEASING PRESSURE

(1) Preparation

- ① Stop the engine.
- ② Loosen the cap and relieve the pressure in the tank by pushing the top of the air breather.
- 3 The pressure release L wrench to bleed air.
- ④ Install a connector and pressure gauge assembly to swing motor SH port, as shown.
- ⑤ Start the engine and check for oil leakage from the adapter.
- 6 Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at $50\pm5^{\circ}\text{C}$.



- ① Select the following switch positions.
- · Power mode switch : P mode
- ② Operate the swing function or arm roll in function and measure the swing brake control pressure with the brake disengaged. Release the control lever to return to neutral and measure the control pressure when the brake is applied.

Repeat step ② three times and calculate the average values.

(3) Evaluation

The average measured pressure should be within the following specifications.

Unit: kgf/cm2

Model	Description	Standard	Allowable limits	Remarks
HX330 L	Brake disengaged	40	31~49	
	Brake applied	0	-	



300L7MS10

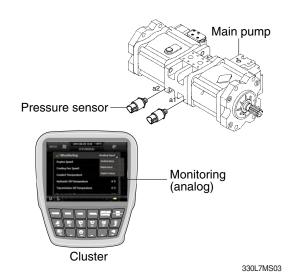
16) MAIN PUMP DELIVERY PRESSURE

(1) Preparation

① Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at $50\pm5^{\circ}$ C.

(2) Measurement

- ① Select the following switch positions.
- · Power mode switch : P mode
- ② Measure the main pump delivery pressure in the P mode (high idle).



(3) Evaluation

The average measured pressure should meet the following specifications.

Unit: kgf/cm2

Model	Engine speed	Standard	Allowable limits	Remarks
HX330 L	High idle	40±5	-	

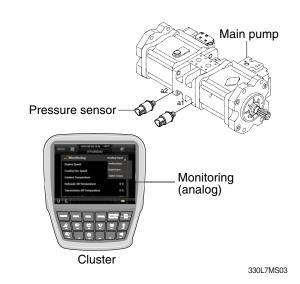
17) SYSTEM PRESSURE REGULATOR RELIEF SETTING

(1) Preparation

① Keep the hydraulic oil temperature at $50\pm5^{\circ}$ C.

(2) Measurement

- ① Select the following switch positions.
- · Power mode switch : P mode
- ② Slowly operate each control lever of boom, arm and bucket functions at full stroke over relief and measure the pressure.
- ③ In the swing function, place bucket against an immovable object and measure the relief pressure.
- ④ In the travel function, lock undercarriage with an immovable object and measure the relief pressure.



(3) Evaluation

The average measured pressure should be within the following specifications.

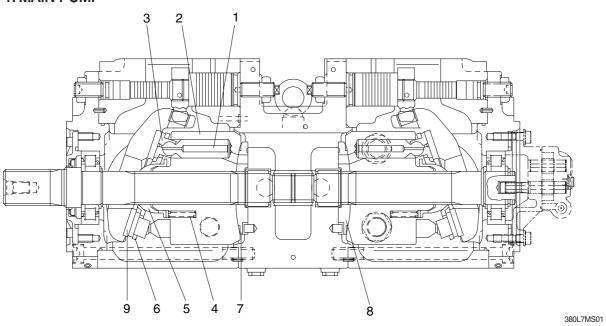
Unit: kgf/cm²

Model	Function to be tested	Standard	Port relief setting
	Boom, Arm, Bucket	350 (380)±10	390±10
HX330 L	Travel	350 ± 10	-
	Swing	$300\!\pm\!10$	-

(): Power boost

GROUP 2 MAJOR COMPONENT

1. MAIN PUMP



Part name & inspection item		Standard dimension	Recommended replacement value	Counter measures
Clearance between piston(1) & cylinder bore(2) (D-d)	d D	0.043	0.070	Replace piston or cylinder.
Play between piston(1) & shoe caulking section(3) (δ)		0-0.1	0.3	Replace assembly of
Thickness of shoe (t)	t state of the sta	5.4	5.0	piston & shoe.
Free height of cylinder spring(4)		47.9	47.1	Replace cylinder spring.
Combined height of set plate(5) & spherical bushing(6) (H-h)	h H	23.8	22.8	Replace retainer or set plate.
Surface roughness for valve plate (sliding face) (7,8), swash plate (shoe plate area) (9), & cylinder(2) (sliding face)	Surface roughness necessary to be corrected	3z		
	Standard surface roughness (corrected value)	0.4z or lower		Lapping

2. MAIN CONTROL VALVE

Part name	Inspection item	Criteria & measure
Casing	· Existence of scratches, rust or corrosion.	In case of damage in following section, replace casing.
		 Sliding sections of casing hole and spool, especially land sections applied with held pressure. Seal pocket section where spool is inserted. Sealing section of port where O-ring contacts. Sealing section of each relief valve for main and port. Sealing section of plug. Other damages that may damage normal function.
Spool	Existence of scratch, gnawing, rusting or corrosion.	Replacement when its outside sliding section has scratch (especially on seals-contacting section).
	O-ring seal sections at both ends.	Replacement when its sliding section has scratch.
	Insert spool into casing hole, rotate and reciprocate it.	Correction or replacement when O-ring is damaged or when spool does not move smoothly.
Poppet	· Damage of spring	· Replacement.
	· Damage of poppet	Correction or replacement when sealing is incomplete.
	Insert poppet into casing and function it.	Normal when it can function lightly and smoothly without sticking.
Spring and related parts	Rusting, corrosion, deformation or breakage of spring, spring seat, plug or cover.	· Replacement for significant damage.
Around seal	· External oil leakage.	· Correction or replacement.
for spool	Rusting, corrosion or deformation of seal plate.	· Correction or replacement.
Main relief valve,	· External rusting or damage.	· Replacement.
port relief valve & negative control	Contacting face of valve seat.	· Replacement when damaged.
valve	· Contacting face of poppet.	· Replacement when damaged.
	· O-rings and back up rings.	· Replacement in principle.

3. SWING DEVICE

1) WEARING PARTS

Inspection item	Standard dimension	Recommended replacement value	Counter measures
Clearance between piston and cylinder block bore	0.041	0.060	Replace piston or cylinder block
Thickness of valve plate	6	5.88	Replace
Play between piston and shoe caulking section (δ)	0.025	0.1	Replace assembly of piston and shoe
Thickness of shoe (t)	6.6	6.5	Replace assembly of piston and shoe
Combined height of retainer plate and spherical bushing (H-h)	17.6	17.3	Replace set of retainer plate and sperical bushing
Thickness of friction plate	2.94	2.7	Replace
t Å	550	Training Training	↓h H ↑ ↑
T 140W77MS12			2609A7MS01

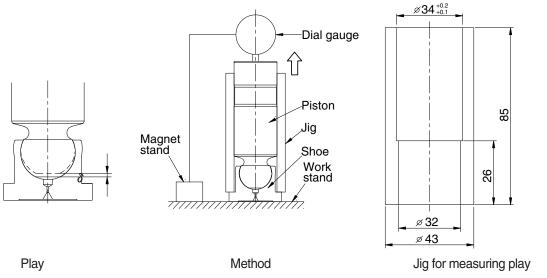
2) SLIDING PARTS

Part name	Standard roughness	Allowable roughness	Remark
Shoe	Rmax=1S (Ra=0.2a) (LAPPING)	4S (Ra=0.1a)	
Shoe plate	Rmax=0.4S (Ra=0.1a) (LAPPING)	3S (Ra=0.8a)	
Cylinder	Rmax=0.4S (Ra=0.1a) (LAPPING)	3S (Ra=0.8a)	
Valve plate	Rmax=0.4S (Ra=0.1a) (LAPPING)	2S (Ra=0.5a)	

4. TRAVEL MOTOR

The followings are the general maintenance standards. However, it is the most important to determine which parts should be replaced, depending on the characteristics before disassembling, damages and discoloration of exterior view, the purpose of disassembling, the expected remaining service life. etc..

Che	ck item	Measuring method	Criteria	Allowable	Remedy
Sliding surface of cylinder block, valve plate and swash plate	Surface roughness of cylinder block, valve plate and swas plate	Measure the surface roughness by roughness tester	Below 0.4 Ζμ	Below 3.0 Zμ	Replace or repair ** Lap together the surfaces of both cylinder block and valve plate to remedy their roughness (# 1200 power)
	Swash plate - hardness of sliding surface	Measure the surface hardness of swash plate by hardness tester	Over HS78	HS74	Replace
Clearance between piston and cylinder block	Outer dia of piston d max - d min	Measure outer dia of piston and bore of cylinder block at least 3	0.01 mm	0.05 mm	Replace piston or cylinder block
	Inner dia of cylinder bore D max - D min	places in the longitudinal direction with micrometer and obtain: max outer dia = d max	0.01 mm	0.022 mm	* In exchanging pistons, replace all of nine pis-
Measurement position	Clearance D-d	min outer dia = d min max inner dia = D max min inner dia = D min	0.037~ 0.047 mm	0.065 mm	tons at the same time
Play between piston and shoe	Play between calked piston and shoe (δ)	With the jig, hold down the shoe on work stand and pull up the piston vertical direction to measure the play between piston and shoe	0~0.1 mm	0.3 mm	Replace piston



Check item	Measuring method	Criteria	Allowable	Remedy
Parking brake torque	After completion of assembly, set the torque wrench on the shaft end, and measure the braking torque generat- ed when the shaft starts to rotate	92.6 kgf · m (670 lbf · ft)	82.8 kgf · m (599 lbf · ft)	Replace all of separator, friction plates and springs
Standard of replacing friction and separating plate. When measuring parking brake torque, it needs to disassemble traveling unit to motor and reduction gear portion, and it's so hard. The right allowable value is a standard of replacing friction and separating plate. If it is impossible to disassemble traveling unit, refer to the right value.	Measure the total thickness of 4 pieces of friction plate and 5 pieces of separating plate.	22.76 mm	Thickness: 21.3 mm	Replace all separating and friction plates and springs.

Check item	Measuring method	Judging criteria and remedy
Shaft	Measure the wear at contacting surface of oil seal (3) with the surface roughness tester	If the depth of shaft wear is less than 0.05 mm, the shaft is reusable. ** In case of replacing the shaft (9), replace oil seal (3) at the same time.
Bearings	Replace bearings (10, 51) after decided hours	Replace bearings (10, 51) before hour meter of host machine indicates 10,000 hours. In case replacing the bearings (10, 51), replace both inner and outer races at the same time. Also the bearing shims (52) must be readjusted when replaced shaft (9) and/or bearings (10, 51). Contact dealers for jigs and tools required.
Splines	Replace if the wear of splines exceeds the allowable value	If the wear of splines is less than 0.3 mm, the spline is reusable.
Overload relief valve	Do not try to adjust the valve, since special hydraulic test bench is required for inspecting and adjusting the pressure	Replace relief valve part as an assembly each time the host machine works for 10,000 hours.

5. RCV LEVER

Maintenance check item	Criteria	Remark
Leakage	The valve is to be replaced when the leakage becomes more than 1000 cc/m at neutral handle position, or more than 2000 cc/m during operation.	Conditions : Primary pressure : 30 kgf/cm² Oil viscosity : 23 cSt
Spool	This is to be replaced when the sliding surface has worn more than 10 μ m, compared with the non-sliding surface.	The leakage at the left condition is estimated to be nearly equal to the above leakage.
Push rod	1 mm	
	This is to be replaced when the top end has worn more than 1 mm.	
Play at operating section	The pin, shaft, and joint of the operating section are to be replaced when their plays become more than 2 mm due to wears or so on.	When a play is due to looseness of a tightened section, adjust it.
Operation stability	When abnormal noises, hunting, primary pressure drop, etc. are generated during operation, and these cannot be remedied, referring to section 6. Troubleshooting, replace the related parts.	

Notes 1. It is desirable to replace seal materials, such as O-rings, every disassembling. However, they may be reused, after being confirmed to be free of damage.

2. When loosening the hexagon socket head cap screw (125), replace the seal washers (121) without fail.

6. RCV PEDAL

Maintenance check item	Criteria	Remark
Leakage	The valve is to be replaced when the leakage effect to the system. For example, the primary pressure drop.	Conditions : Primary pressure : 30 kgf/cm² Oil viscosity : 23 cSt
Spool	This is to be replaced when the sliding surface has worn more than 10 μ m, compared with the non-sliding surface.	The leakage at the left condition is estimated to be nearly equal to the above leakage.
Push rod	1 mm	
	This is to be replaced when the top end has worn more than 1 mm.	
Play at operating section	The pin, shaft, and joint of the operating section are to be replaced when their plays become more than 2 mm due to wears or so on.	When a play is due to looseness of a tightened section, adjust it.
Operation stability	When abnormal noises, hunting, primary pressure drop, etc. are generated during operation, and these cannot be remedied, referring to section 6. Troubleshooting, replace the related parts.	

Notes 1. It is desirable to replace seal materials, such as O-rings, every disassembling. However, they may be reused, after being confirmed to be free of damage.

7. TURNING JOINT

F	art name	Maintenance standards	Remedy
	Sliding surface with sealing sections.	Plating worn or peeled due to seizure or contamination.	Replace
Body,	Sliding surface between body and stem other than	· Worn abnormality or damaged more than 0.1 mm (0.0039 in) in depth due to seizure contamination.	Replace
Stem	sealing section.	· Damaged more than 0.1 mm (0.0039 in) in depth.	Smooth with oilstone.
	Sliding surface with thrust plate.	· Worn more than 0.5 mm (0.02 in) or abnormality.	Replace
	with thrust plate.	· Worn less than 0.5 mm (0.02 in).	Smooth
		Damage due to seizure or contamination remediable within wear limit (0.5 mm) (0.02 in).	Smooth
Cover	Sliding surface with thrust plate.	· Worn more than 0.5 mm (0.02 in) or abnormality.	Replace
	with triust plate.	· Worn less than 0.5 mm (0.02 in).	Smooth
		Damage due to seizure or contamination remediable within wear limit (0.5 mm) (0.02 in).	Replace
		· Extruded excessively from seal groove square ring.	Replace
	-	Square ring Extrusion	
		Slipper ring 1.5 mm (0.059 in) narrower than seal groove, or narrower than back ring.	Replace
Seal set	-	1.5 mm (max.)	
	-	· Worn more than 0.5 mm (0.02 in) ~ 1.5 mm (MAX.) (0.059 in)	Replace

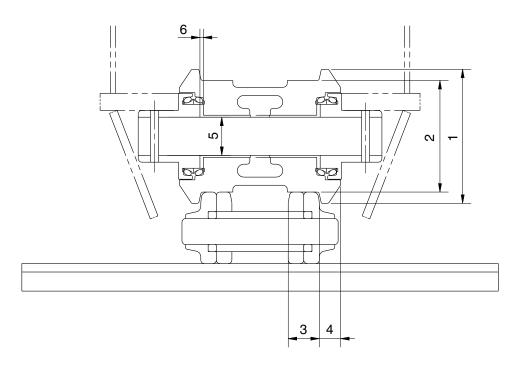
8. CYLINDER

_			
Part name	Inspecting section	Inspection item	Remedy
Piston rod	· Neck of rod pin	· Presence of crack	· Replace
	· Weld on rod hub	· Presence of crack	· Replace
	· Stepped part to which piston is attached.	· Presence of crack	· Replace
	· Threads	· Presence of crack	· Recondition or replace
	· Plated surface	· Plating is not worn off to base metal.	· Replace or replate
		· Rust is not present on plating.	· Replace or replate
		· Scratches are not present.	· Recondition, replate or replace
	· Rod	· Wear of O.D.	· Recondition, replate or replace
	· Bushing at mounting part	· Wear of I.D.	· Replace
Cylinder tube	· Weld on bottom	· Presence of crack	· Replace
	· Weld on head	· Presence of crack	· Replace
	· Weld on hub	· Presence of crack	· Replace
	· Tube interior	· Presence of faults	· Replace if oil leak is seen
	· Bushing at mounting part	· Wear on inner surface	· Replace
Gland	· Bushing	· Flaw on inner surface	· Replace if flaw is deeper than coating

GROUP 3 TRACK AND WORK EQUIPMENT

1. TRACK

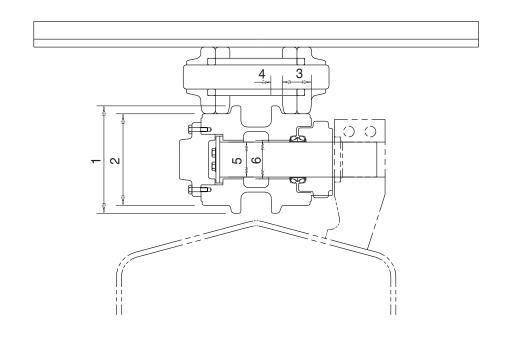
1) TRACK ROLLER



Unit: mm

No.	Check item		Criteria			
4	Outside diameter of flange	Standa	ard size	Repa	ir limit	
'	Outside diameter of flarige	ø 216		_		Rebuild or
2	Outside diameter of tread	Ø	180	ø 168		replace
3	Width of tread	50		56		
4	Width of flange	57		21		
		Standard siz	e & tolerance	Standard	Clearance	
5	Clearance between shaft	Shaft	Hole	clearance	limit	Replace
	and bushing	ø 75 _{-0.03}	ø 75.35 ^{+0.05}	0.35 to 0.40	2.0	bushing
6	Side clearance of roller	Standard clearance		Clearance limit		Doplose
0	(both side)	0.16~1.24		2.	0	Replace

2) CARRIER ROLLER

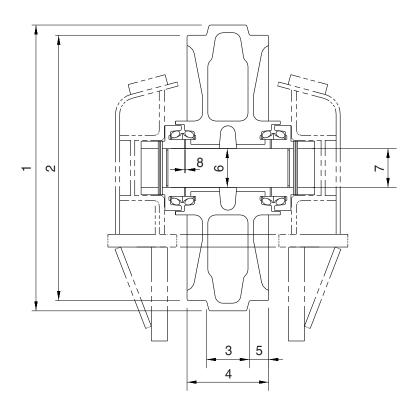


32037MA37

Unit:mm

No.	Check item		Criteria			
4	Outside dismeter of flance	Standard size		Repair limit		
ı	Outside diameter of flange	ø 200		_		Rebuild or
2	Outside diameter of tread	ø.	168	Ø ·	158	replace
3	Width of tread	5	54		59	
4	Width of flange	19		_		
		Standard size	e & tolerance	Standard	Clearance	
5	Clearance between shaft	Shaft	Hole	clearance	limit	Replace
	and bushing	ø 55 +0.085 +0.066	ø 55 +0.37 +0.33	0.245 to 0.304	2.0	bushing
6	Clearance between shaft and support	ø 58 0 -0.1	ø 58 +0.5 +0.3	0.3 to 0.6	1.2	Replace

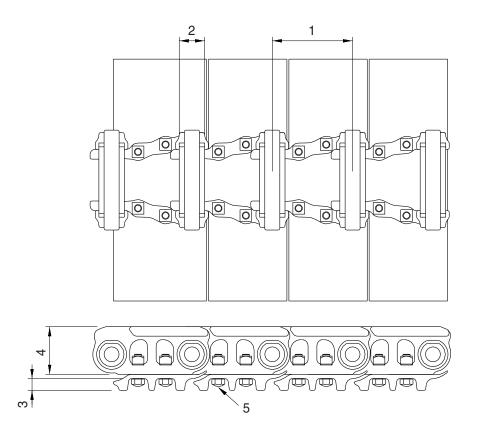
3) IDLER



Unit: mm

						OT III.	
No.	Check item		Criteria				
1	Outoido diameter of protrucion	Standa	ard size	Repa	Repair limit		
'	Outside diameter of protrusion	Ø	646	-	_		
2	Outside diameter of tread	Ø.	594	ø 588		Rebuild or	
3	Width of protrusion	1	02	-	_		
4	Total width	2	203		_		
5	Width of tread	50.5		56.5			
		Standard size	e & tolerance	Standard	Clearance		
6	Clearance between shaft	Shaft	Hole	clearance	limit	Replace	
	and bushing	ø 90 0 -0.035	ø 90.35 ^{+0.05}	0.35 to 0.435	2.0	bushing	
7	Clearance between shaft and support	ø 90 0 -0.035	ø 90 +0.09 +0.036	0.036 to 0.125	1.2	Replace	
8	Side clearance of idler (both side)	Standard clearance 0.4 to 1.2		Clearance limit 2.0		Replace	

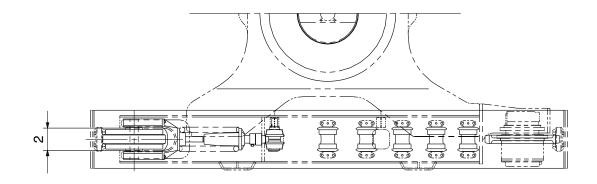
4) TRACK

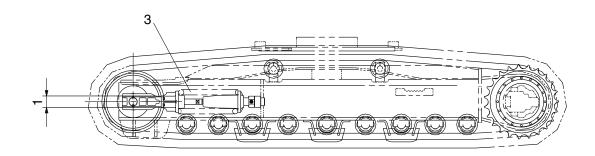


Unit:mm

No.	Check item	Crit	Remedy		
4	Link pitch	Standard size Repair limit		Turn or	
'	LITK PILOT	216	221	replace	
2	Outside diameter of bushing	ø 66.5	ø 60.9	5	
3	Height of grouser	30	23	Rebuild or replace	
4	Height of link	116	111	,	
5	Tightening torque	Initial tightening torque: 115	Retighten		

5) TRACK FRAME AND RECOIL SPRING

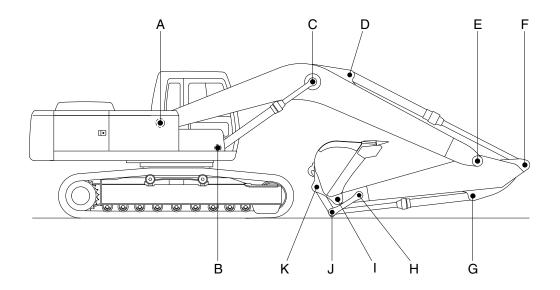




Unit:mm

No.	Check item		Criteria					Remedy
	Vertical width of idler guide		Standar	d size	Tole	erance	Repair limit	
1			e 132	2		-2 0	136	
			rt 130	130		0 1.5	126	Rebuild or replace
2	2 Horizontal width of idler guide		e 292	2		-2 0	297	Τοριασο
			rt 290)		-	288	
		S	Standard size Repa		pair limit			
3	Recoil spring	Free length	Installation length	Installa load		Free length	Installation load	Replace
		ø 253×710	580	19012	kg	_	15210 kg	

2. WORK EQUIPMENT



Unit:mm

			Pin		Bushing		Pomody
Mark	Measuring point (Pin and Bushing)	Normal value	Recomm. service limit	Limit of use	Recomm. service limit	Limit of use	Remedy & Remark
Α	Boom Rear	110	109	108.5	110.5	111	Replace
В	Boom Cylinder Head	90	89	88.5	90.5	91	"
С	Boom Cylinder Rod	100	99	98.5	100.5	101	"
D	Arm Cylinder Head	90	89	88.5	90.5	91	"
Е	Boom Front	100	99	98.5	100.5	101	"
F	Arm Cylinder Rod	90	89	88.5	90.5	91	"
G	Bucket Cylinder Head	90	89	88.5	90.5	91	"
Н	Arm Link	80	79	78.5	80.5	81	"
I	Bucket and Arm Link	90	89	88.5	90.5	91	"
J	Bucket Cylinder Rod	80	79	78.5	80.5	81	"
K	Bucket Link	90	89	88.5	90.5	91	"

SECTION 8 DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

Group	1	Precaution	8-1
Group	2	Tightening Torque ·····	8-4
Group	3	Pump Device	8-7
Group	4	Main Control Valve	8-30
Group	5	Swing Device	8-54
Group	6	Travel Device ····	8-78
Group	7	RCV Lever	8-111
Group	8	Turning Joint	8-125
Group	9	Boom, Arm and Bucket Cylinder	8-130
Group	10	Undercarriage	8-147
Group	11	Work Equipment ·····	8-159

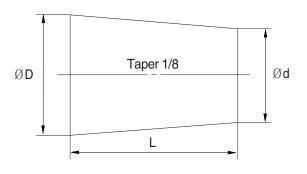
SECTION 8 DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

GROUP 1 PRECAUTIONS

1. REMOVAL WORK

- Lower the work equipment completely to the ground.
 If the coolant contains antifreeze, dispose of it correctly.
- 2) After disconnecting hoses or tubes, cover them or fit blind plugs to prevent dirt or dust from entering.
- 3) When draining oil, prepare a container of adequate size to catch the oil.
- 4) Confirm the match marks showing the installation position, and make match marks in the necessary places before removal to prevent any mistake when assembling.
- 5) To prevent any excessive force from being applied to the wiring, always hold the connectors when disconnecting the connectors.
- 6) Fit wires and hoses with tags to show their installation position to prevent any mistake when installing.
- 7) Check the number and thickness of the shims, and keep in a safe place.
- 8) When raising components, be sure to use lifting equipment of ample strength.
- 9) When using forcing screws to remove any components, tighten the forcing screws alternately.
- 10) Before removing any unit, clean the surrounding area and fit a cover to prevent any dust or dirt from entering after removal.
- 11) When removing hydraulic equipment, first release the remaining pressure inside the hydraulic tank and the hydraulic piping.
- 12) If the part is not under hydraulic pressure, the following corks can be used.

Nominal		Dimensions					
number	D	d	L				
06	6	5	8				
08	8	6.5	11				
10	10	8.5	12				
12	12	10	15				
14	14	11.5	18				
16	16	13.5	20				
18	18	15	22				
20	20	17	25				
22	22	18.5	28				
24	24	20	30				
27	27	22.5	34				



2. INSTALL WORK

- 1) Tighten all bolts and nuts (sleeve nuts) to the specified torque.
- 2) Install the hoses without twisting or interference.
- 3) Replace all gaskets, O-rings, cotter pins, and lock plates with new parts.
- 4) Bend the cotter pin or lock plate securely.
- 5) When coating with adhesive, clean the part and remove all oil and grease, then coat the threaded portion with 2-3 drops of adhesive.
- 6) When coating with gasket sealant, clean the surface and remove all oil and grease, check that there is no dirt or damage, then coat uniformly with gasket sealant.
- 7) Clean all parts, and correct any damage, dents, burrs, or rust.
- 8) Coat rotating parts and sliding parts with engine oil.
- 9) When press fitting parts, coat the surface with antifriction compound (LM-P).
- 10) After installing snap rings, check that the snap ring is fitted securely in the ring groove (check that the snap ring moves in the direction of rotation).
- 11) When connecting wiring connectors, clean the connector to remove all oil, dirt, or water, then connect securely.
- 12) When using eyebolts, check that there is no deformation or deterioration, and screw them in fully.
- 13) When tightening split flanges, tighten uniformly in turn to prevent excessive tightening on one side.
- 14) When operating the hydraulic cylinders for the first time after repairing and reassembling the hydraulic cylinders, pumps, or other hydraulic equipment or piping, always bleed the air from the hydraulic cylinders as follows:
 - (1) Start the engine and run at low idling.
 - (2) Operate the control lever and actuate the hydraulic cylinder 4-5 times, stopping 100mm before the end of the stroke.
 - (3) Next, operate the piston rod to the end of its stroke to relieve the circuit. (The air bleed valve is actuated to bleed the air.)
 - (4) After completing this operation, raise the engine speed to the normal operating condition.
 - If the hydraulic cylinder has been replaced, carry out this procedure before assembling the rod to
 - * the work equipment.
 - Carry out the same operation on machines that have been in storage for a long time after completion of repairs.

3. COMPLETING WORK

- 1) If the coolant has been drained, tighten the drain valve, and add water to the specified level. Run the engine to circulate the water through the system. Then check the water level again.
- 2) If the hydraulic equipment has been removed and installed again, add engine oil to the specified level. Run the engine to circulate the oil through the system. Then check the oil level again.
- 3) If the piping or hydraulic equipment, such as hydraulic cylinders, pumps, or motors, have been removed for repair, always bleed the air from the system after reassembling the parts.
- 4) Add the specified amount of grease (molybdenum disulphied grease) to the work equipment related parts.

GROUP 2 TIGHTENING TORQUE

1. MAJOR COMPONENTS

NI.	o. Descriptions		D.H'	Torque		
No.			Bolt size	kgf⋅m	lbf ⋅ ft	
1		Engine mounting bolt (engine-bracket)	M12 × 1.75	10 ± 1.0	72.3 ± 7.2	
3		Engine mounting bolt (bracket-frame)	M24 × 3.0	90 ± 9.0	651 ± 65	
4	Engine	Radiator, oil cooler mounting bolt	M16 × 2.0	29.7 ± 4.5	215 ± 32.5	
5		Coupling mounting socket bolt	M20 × 2.5	46.5 ± 2.5	336 ±18.1	
6		Fuel tank mounting bolt	M20 × 2.5	46 ± 5.1	333 ± 36.9	
7		Main pump housing mounting bolt	M10 × 1.5	4.8 ± 0.3	34.7 ± 2.2	
8		Main pump mounting socket bolt	M20 × 2.5	46.5 ± 2.5	336 ± 18.1	
9	Hydraulic system	Main control valve mounting nut	M12 × 1.75	12.2 ± 1.3	88.2 ± 9.4	
10) 5,515	Hydraulic oil tank mounting bolt	M20 × 2.5	57.9 ± 5.8	419 ± 42	
11		Turning joint mounting bolt, nut	M12 × 1.75	12.3 ± 1.3	89.0 ± 9.4	
12		Swing motor mounting bolt	M20 × 2.5	57.9 ± 5.8	419 ± 42	
13	Power	Swing bearing upper part mounting bolt	M24 × 3.0	100 ± 10	723 ± 72.3	
14	train	Swing bearing lower part mounting bolt	M24 × 3.0	100 ± 10	723 ± 72.3	
15	system	Travel motor mounting bolt	M24 × 3.0	84 ± 8.0	608 ± 57.8	
16		Sprocket mounting bolt	M20 × 2.5	57.9 ± 6.0	419 ± 43.4	
17		Carrier roller mounting bolt, nut	M16 × 2.0	29.7 ± 3.0	215 ± 21.7	
18		Track roller mounting bolt	M20 × 2.5	57.9 ± 6.0	419 ± 43.4	
19	Under carriage	Track tension cylinder mounting bolt	M16 × 2.0	29.7 ± 4.5	215 ± 32.5	
20	Jaminago	Track shoe mounting bolt, nut	M22 × 1.5	123 ± 6.0	890 ± 43.4	
21		Track guard mounting bolt	M20 × 2.5	57.9 ± 8.7	419 ± 62.9	
22		Counterweight mounting bolt	M36 × 3.0	337 ± 30	2440 ± 217	
23	Others	Cab mounting bolt	M12 × 1.75	12.8 ± 3.0	92.6 ± 21.7	
24		Operator's seat mounting bolt	M 8 × 1.25	4.05 ± 0.8	29.3 ± 5.8	

^{*} For tightening torque of engine and hydraulic components, see engine maintenance guide and service manual.

2. TORQUE CHART

Use following table for unspecified torque.

1) BOLT AND NUT

(1) Coarse thread

Dolt oize	8.8T		10	.9T	12.9T	
Bolt size	kgf · m	lbf ⋅ ft	kgf · m	lbf ⋅ ft	kgf · m	lbf ⋅ ft
M 6×1.0	0.8 ~ 1.2	5.8 ~ 8.6	1.2 ~ 1.8	8.7 ~ 13.0	1.5 ~ 2.1	10.9 ~ 15.1
M 8×1.25	2.0 ~ 3.0	14.5 ~ 21.6	2.8 ~ 4.2	20.3 ~ 30.4	3.4 ~ 5.0	24.6 ~ 36.1
M10×1.5	4.0 ~ 6.0	29.0 ~ 43.3	5.6 ~ 8.4	40.5 ~ 60.8	6.8 ~ 10.0	49.2 ~ 72.3
M12×1.75	6.8 ~ 10.2	50.0 ~ 73.7	9.6 ~ 14.4	69.5 ~ 104	12.3 ~ 16.5	89.0 ~ 119
M14×2.0	10.9 ~ 16.3	78.9 ~ 117	16.3 ~ 21.9	118 ~ 158	19.5 ~ 26.3	141 ~ 190
M16×2.0	17.9 ~ 24.1	130 ~ 174	25.1 ~ 33.9	182 ~ 245	30.2 ~ 40.8	141 ~ 295
M18×2.5	24.8 ~ 33.4	180 ~ 241	34.8 ~ 47.0	252 ~ 340	41.8 ~ 56.4	302 ~ 407
M20×2.5	34.9 ~ 47.1	253 ~ 340	49.1 ~ 66.3	355 ~ 479	58.9 ~ 79.5	426 ~ 575
M22×2.5	46.8 ~ 63.2	339 ~ 457	65.8 ~ 88.8	476 ~ 642	78.9 ~ 106	570 ~ 766
M24×3.0	60.2 ~ 81.4	436 ~ 588	84.6 ~ 114	612 ~ 824	102 ~ 137	738 ~ 991
M30×3.5	120 ~161	868 ~ 1164	168 ~ 227	1216 ~ 1641	202 ~ 272	1461 ~ 1967

(2) Fine thread

Bolt size	8	8.8T		10.9T		12.9T	
Boil Size	kgf · m	lbf ⋅ ft	kgf · m	lbf ⋅ ft	kgf · m	lbf ⋅ ft	
M 8×1.0	2.1 ~ 3.1	15.2 ~ 22.4	3.0 ~ 4.4	21.7 ~ 31.8	3.6 ~ 5.4	26.1 ~ 39.0	
M10×1.25	4.2 ~ 6.2	30.4 ~ 44.9	5.9 ~ 8.7	42.7 ~ 62.9	7.0 ~ 10.4	50.1 ~ 75.2	
M12×1.25	7.3 ~ 10.9	52.8 ~ 78.8	10.3 ~ 15.3	74.5 ~ 110	13.1 ~ 17.7	94.8 ~ 128	
M14×1.5	12.4 ~ 16.6	89.7 ~ 120	17.4 ~ 23.4	126 ~ 169	20.8 ~ 28.0	151 ~ 202	
M16×1.5	18.7 ~ 25.3	136 ~ 182	26.3 ~ 35.5	191 ~ 256	31.6 ~ 42.6	229 ~ 308	
M18×1.5	27.1 ~ 36.5	196 ~ 264	38.0 ~ 51.4	275 ~ 371	45.7 ~ 61.7	331 ~ 446	
M20×1.5	37.7 ~ 50.9	273 ~ 368	53.1 ~ 71.7	384 ~ 518	63.6 ~ 86.0	460 ~ 622	
M22×1.5	51.2 ~ 69.2	370 ~ 500	72.0 ~ 97.2	521 ~ 703	86.4 ~ 116	625 ~ 839	
M24×2.0	64.1 ~ 86.5	464 ~ 625	90.1 ~ 121	652 ~ 875	108 ~ 146	782 ~ 1056	
M30×2.0	129 ~ 174	933 ~ 1258	181 ~ 245	1310 ~ 1772	217 ~ 294	1570 ~ 2126	

2) PIPE AND HOSE (FLARE TYPE)

Thread size (PF)	Width across flat (mm)	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1/4"	19	4	28.9
3/8"	22	5	36.2
1/2"	27	9.5	68.7
3/4"	36	18	130.2
1"	41	21	151.9
1-1/4"	50	35	253.2

3) PIPE AND HOSE (ORFS TYPE)

Thread size (UNF)	Width across flat (mm)	kgf · m	lbf · ft
9/16-18	19	4	28.9
11/16-16	22	5	36.2
13/16-16	27	9.5	68.7
1-3/16-12	36	18	130.2
1-7/16-12	41	21	151.9
1-11/16-12	50	35	253.2

4) FITTING

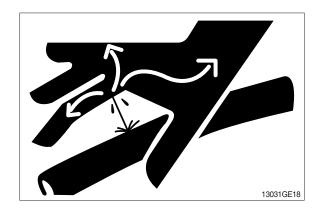
Thread size	Width across flat (mm)	kgf · m	lbf ⋅ ft
1/4"	19	4	28.9
3/8"	22	5	36.2
1/2"	27	9.5	68.7
3/4"	36	18	130.2
1"	41	21	151.9
1-1/4"	50	35	253.2

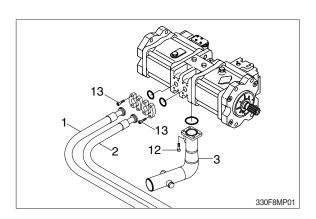
GROUP 3 PUMP DEVICE

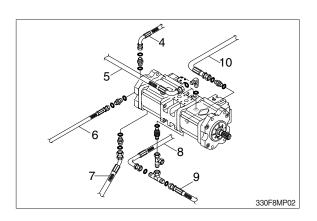
1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL

1) REMOVAL

- (1) Lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.
- (2) Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.
- (3) Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.
- ▲ Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.
- (4) Remove the wirings for the pressure sensors and so on.
- (5) Loosen the drain plug under the hydraulic tank and drain the oil from the hydraulic tank.
 - · Hydraulic tank quantity: 210 /
- (6) Remove bolts (13) and disconnect pipe (1,2).
- (7) Disconnect pilot line hoses (4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10).
- (8) Remove bolts(12) and disconnect pump suction tube (3).
- When pump suction tube is disconnected, the oil inside the piping will flow out, so catch it in oil pan.
- (9) Sling the pump assembly and remove the pump mounting bolts.
 - · Weight : 200 kg (440 lb)
- ** Pull out the pump assembly from housing. When removing the pump assembly, check that all the hoses have been disconnected.





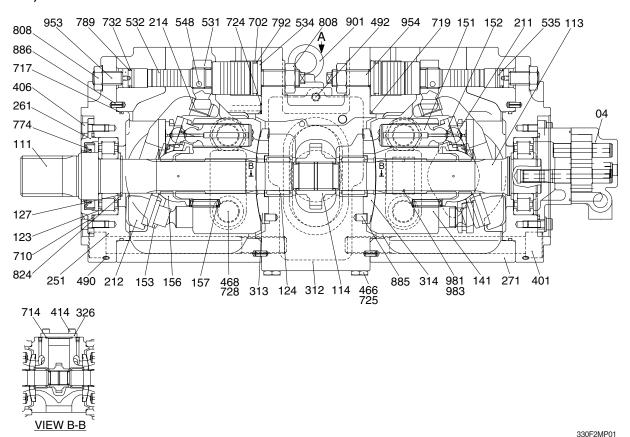


2) INSTALL

- (1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal
- (2) Remove the suction strainer and clean it.
- (3) Replace the return filter with a new one.
- (4) Remove breather and clean it.
- (5) After adding oil to the hydraulic tank to the specified level.
- (6) Bleed the air from the hydraulic pump.
- ① Remove the air vent plug (2EA)
- ② Tighten plug lightly
- 3 Start the engine, run at low idling, and check oil come out from plug.
- ④ Tighten plug.
- (7) Start the engine, run at low idling (3~5 minutes) to circulate the oil through the system.
- (8) Confirmed the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leaks or not.

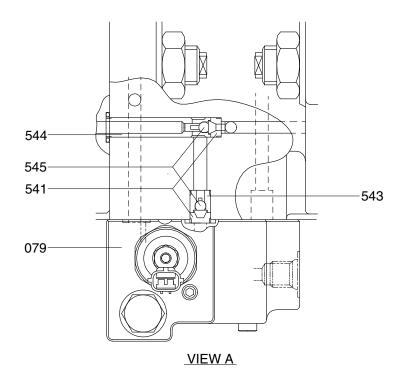
2. MAIN PUMP (1/2)

1) STRUCTURE



04	Gear pump	312	Valve block	717	O-ring
111	Drive shaft (F)	313	Valve plate (R)	719	O-ring
113	Drive shaft (R)	314	Valve plate (L)	724	Square ring
114	Gear	326	Cover	725	O-ring
123	Roller bearing	401	Hexagon socket bolt	728	O-ring
124	Needle bearing	406	Hexagon socket bolt	732	O-ring
127	Bearing spacer	414	Hexagon socket bolt	774	Oil seal
141	Cylinder block	466	VP plug	789	Back up ring
151	Piston	468	VP plug	792	Back up ring
152	Shoe	490	VP plug	808	Hexagon head nut
153	Set plate	492	VP plug	824	Snap ring
156	Bushing	531	Tilting pin	885	Pin
157	Cylinder spring	532	Servo piston	886	Spring pin
211	Shoe plate	534	Stopper (L)	901	Eye bolt
212	Swash plate	535	Stopper (S)	953	Set screw
214	Bushing	548	Pin	954	Set screw
251	Swash plate support	702	O-ring	981	Name plate
261	Seal cover (F)	710	O-ring	983	Pin
271	Pump casing	714	O-ring		

MAIN PUMP (2/2)



32092MP03

079	Proportional reducing valve	543	Stopper 1	545	Steel ball
541	Seat	544	Stopper 2		

2) TOOLS AND TIGHTENING TORQUE

(1) Tools

The tools necessary to disassemble/reassemble the pump are shown in the follow list.

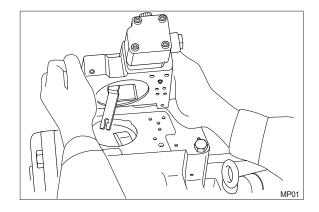
Tool name & size	Part name							
Allen wrench B		Hexagon socket head bolt	PT plug (PT thread)		PO plug (PF thread)		Hexagon socket head setscrew	
	4	M 5		3P-1/16	-		M 8	
	5	M 6		BP1/8	-		M10	
B -+ -	6	M 8 E		BP-1/4	PO-1/4		M12, M14	
	8	M10	M10 E		PO-3/8		M16, M18	
	17	M20, M22		BP-1	PO-1, 1 1/4,	1 1/2	-	
Double ring spanner, socket wrench, double	-	Hexagon head bolt		Hexagon head bolt		VP plug (PF thread)		
(single) open end spanner	19	M12		M12		VP-1/4		
_	24	M16		M16		-		
- - B	27	M18		M18			VP-1/2	
\bigcup	30	M20		M20		-		
	36				VP-3/4			
Adjustable angle wrench		Medium size, 1 set						
Screw driver	Minus type screw driver, Medium size, 2 sets							
Hammer	Plastic hammer, 1 set							
Pliers	For snap ring, TSR-160							
Steel bar	Steel bar of key material approx. 10 × 8 × 200							
Torque wrench		Capable of tightening with the specified torques						

(2) Tightening torque

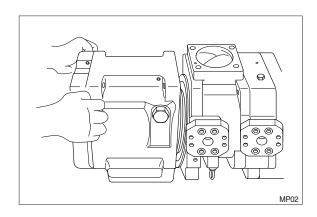
Doub no mo	Delt eize	Tor	que	Wrench size		
Part name	Bolt size	kgf ⋅ m	lbf ⋅ ft	in	mm	
Hexagon socket head bolt	M 5	0.7	5.1	0.16	4	
(material : SCM435)	M 6	1.2	8.7	0.20	5	
	M 8	3.0	21.7	0.24	6	
	M10	5.8	42.0	0.31	8	
	M12	10.0	72.3	0.39	10	
	M14	16.0	115.7	0.47	12	
	M16	24.0	173.6	0.55	14	
	M18	34.0	245.9	0.55	14	
	M20	44.0	318.3	0.67	17	
PT plug (material : S45C)	PT 1/16	0.7	5.1	0.16	4	
Wind a seal tape 1 1/2 to2 turns round the plug	PT 1/ 8	1.05	7.59	0.20	5	
2 turns round the plag	PT 1/ 4	1.75	12.66	0.24	6	
	PT 3/ 8	3.5	25.3	0.31	8	
	PT 1/ 2	5.0	36.2	0.39	10	
PF plug (material : S45C)	PF 1/ 4	3.0	21.7	0.24	6	
	PF 1/ 2	10.0	72.3	0.39	10	
	PF 3/ 4	15.0	108.5	0.55	14	
	PF 1	19.0	137.4	0.67	17	
	PF 1 1/4	27.0	195.3	0.67	17	
	PF 1 1/2	28.0	202.5	0.67	17	

3) DISASSEMBLY

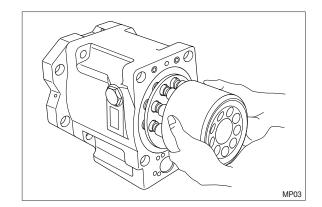
- (1) Select place suitable to disassembling.
- « Select clean place.
- Spread rubber sheet, cloth or so on, on overhaul workbench top to prevent parts from being damaged.
- (2) Remove dust, rust, etc, from pump surfaces with cleaning oil or so on.
- (3) Remove drain port plug (468) and let oil out of pump casing. (front and rear pump).
- (4) Remove hexagon socket head bolts (412, 413) and remove regulator.Remove hexagon socket head bolts (416) and remove gear pump.



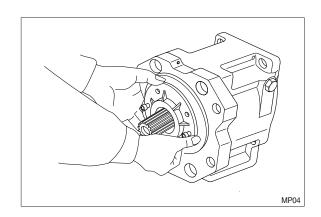
- (5) Loosen hexagon socket head bolts (401) fixing swash plate support (251), pump casing (271) and valve block (312).
- (6) Place pump horizontally on workbench with its regulator-fitting surface down, and separate pump casing (271) from valve block (312).
- Before bringing this surface down, spread rubber sheet on workbench without failing to prevent this surface from being damaged.

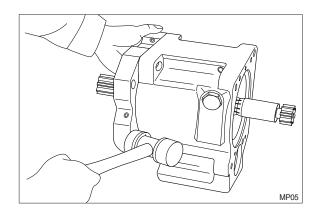


- (7) Pull cylinder (141) out of pump casing (271) straightly over drive shaft (111). Pull out also pistons (151), set plate (153), spherical bush (156) and cylinder springs (157) simultaneously.
- * Take care not to damage sliding surfaces of cylinder, spherical bushing, shoes, swash plate, etc.

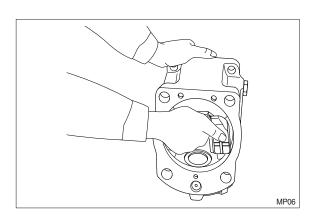


- (8) Remove hexagon socket head bolts (406) and then seal cover (F) (261). Fit bolt into pulling out tapped hole of seal
 - cover (F), and cover can be removed
- * Since oil seal is fitted on seal cover (F), take care not to damage it when removing cover.
- (9) Remove hexagon socket head bolts (408) and then seal cover (R, 262). In case of fitting a gear pump, first, remove gear pump.
- (10) Tapping lightly fitting flange section of swash plate support (251) on its pump casing side, separate swash plate support from pump casing.

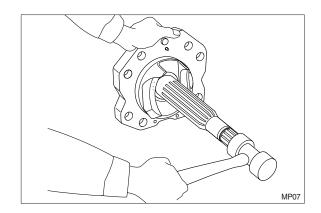




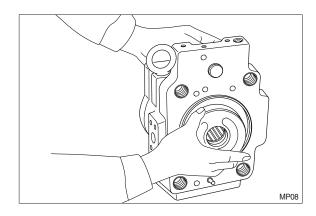
(11) Remove shoe plate (211) and swash plate (212) from pump casing (271).



(12) Tapping lightly shaft's end of drive shafts (111, 113) with plastic hammer, take out drive shafts from swash plate supports.



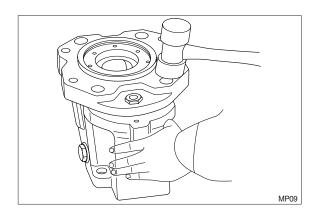
- (13) Remove valve plates (313, 314) from valve block (312).
- * These may be removed in work 6.



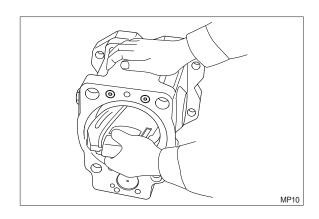
- (14) If necessary, remove stopper (L, 534), stopper (S, 535), servo piston (532) and tilting pin(531) from pump casing (271), and needle bearing (124) and gear (116) from valve block (312).
- In removing tilting pin, use a protector to prevent pin head from being damaged.
- Since loctite is applied to fitting areas of tilting pin and servo piston, take care not to damage servo piston.
- * Do not remove needle bearing as far as possible, except when it is considered to be out of its life span.
- Do not loosen hexagon nuts of valve block and swash plate support.
 Once loosened, flow setting will be changed.

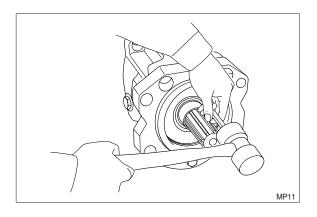
4) ASSEMBLY

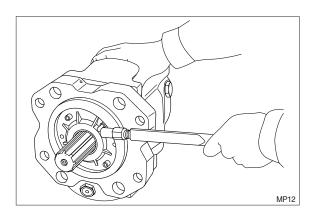
- (1) For reassembling reverse the disassembling procedures, paying attention to the following items.
- ① Do not fail to repair the parts damaged during disassembling, and prepare replacement parts in advance.
- ② Clean each part fully with cleaning oil and dry it with compressed air.
- ③ Do not fail to apply clean working oil to sliding sections, bearings, etc. before assembling them.
- ④ In principle, replace seal parts, such as O-rings, oil seals, etc.
- 5 For fitting bolts, plug, etc., prepare a torque wrench or so on, and tighten them with torques shown in Section 2-3.
- ⑥ For the double-pump, take care not to mix up parts of the front pump with those of the rear pump.
- (2) Fit swash plate support (251) to pump casing (271), tapping the former lightly with a hammer.
- * After servo piston, tilting pin, stopper (L) and stopper (S) are removed, fit them soon to pump casing in advance for
- * reassembling.
 - In tightening servo piston and tilting pin, use a protector to prevent tilting pin head and feedback pin from being damaged. In addition, apply lock-tight (medium strength) to their threaded sections.

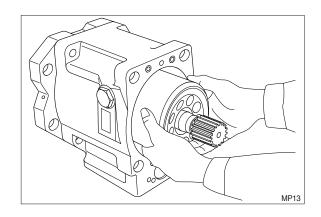


- (3) Place pump casing with its regulator fitting surface down, fit tilting bush of swash plate to tilting pin (531), and fit swash plate (212) to swash plate support (251) correctly.
- * Confirm with fingers of both hands that swash plate can be removed smoothly.
- * Apply grease to sliding sections of swash plate and swash plate support, and drive shaft can be fitted easily.
- (4) To swash plate support (251), fit drive shaft (111) set with bearing (123), bearing spacer (127) and snap ring (824).
- * Do not tap drive shaft with hammer or so on.
- * Assemble them into support, tapping outer race of bearing lightly with plastic
- * hammer.
 Fit them fully, using steel bar or so on.
- (5) Assemble seal cover (F, 261) to pump casing (271) and fix it with hexagon socket head bolts (406).
- * Apply grease lightly to oil seal in seal cover (F).
- * Assemble oil seal, taking full care not to damage it.
- * For tandem type pump, fit rear cover (263) and seal cover (262).
- (6) Assemble piston cylinder subassembly (Cylinder (141), piston subassembly (151, 152), set plate (153), spherical bush (156) and cylinder spring (157).) Fit spline phases of retainer and cylinder. Then, insert piston cylinder subassembly into pump casing.

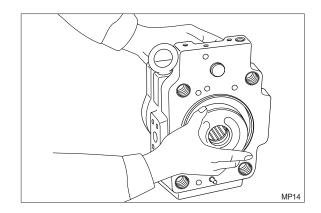




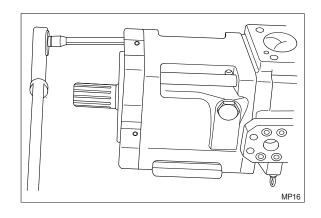




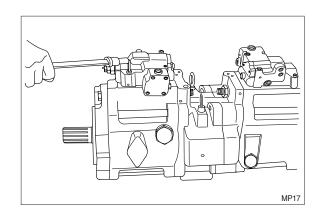
- (7) Fit valve plate (313) to valve block (312), entering pin into pin hole.
- * Take care not to mistake suction / delivery directions of valve plate.



- (8) Fit valve block (312) to pump casing (271) and tighten hexagon socket head bolts (401).
- * At first assemble this at rear pump side, and this work will be easy.
- * Take care not to mistake direction of valve block.



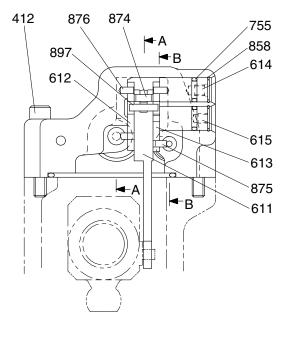
- ** Clockwise rotation (viewed from input shaft side)
- * Fit block with regulator up and with delivery flange left, viewed from front side.
- (9) Putting feedback pin of tilting pin into feedback lever of regulator, fit regulator and tighten hexagon socket head bolts (412, 413).
- * Take care not to mistake regulator of front pump for that of rear pump.

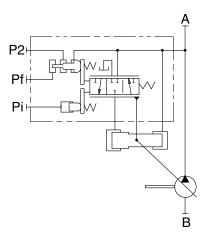


- (10) Fit drain port plug (468).
 - This is the end of reassembling procedures.

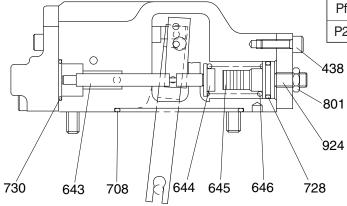
3. REGULATOR

1) STRUCTURE(1/2)

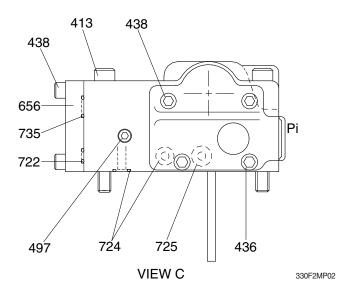




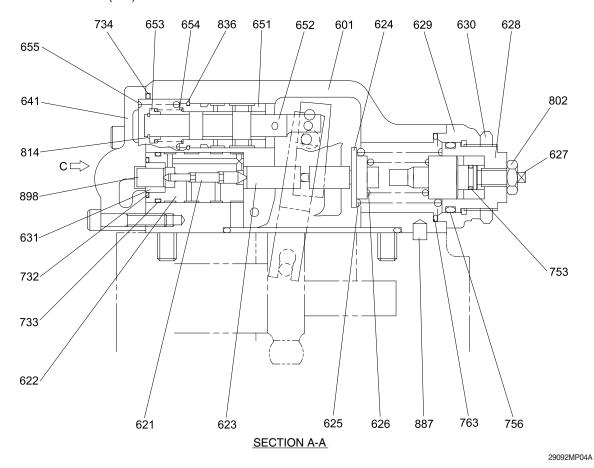
Port	Port name	Port size
Α	Delivery port	1"
В	Suction port	3"
Pi	Pilot port	PF 1/4-15
Pf	Power shift pressure	-
P2	Companion delivery pressure	-



SECTION B-B



REGULATOR (2/2)



412	Hexagon socket screw	630	Lock nut	733	O-ring
413	Hexagon socket screw	631	Sleeve, pf	734	O-ring
436	Hexagon socket screw	641	Pilot cover	735	O-ring
438	Hexagon socket screw	643	Pilot piston	753	O-ring
497	Plug	644	Spring seat (Q)	755	O-ring
601	Casing	645	Adjust stem (Q)	756	O-ring
611	Feed back lever	646	Pilot spring	763	O-ring
612	Lever (1)	651	Sleeve	801	Nut
613	Lever (2)	652	Spool	802	Nut
614	Fulcrum plug	653	Spring seat	814	Snap ring
615	Adjust plug	654	Return spring	836	Snap ring
621	Compensator piston	655	Set spring	858	Snap ring
622	Piston case	656	Block cover	874	Pin
623	Compensator rod	708	O-ring	875	Pin
624	Spring seat (C)	722	O-ring	876	Pin
625	Outer spring	724	Square ring	887	Pin
626	Inner spring	725	O-ring	897	Pin
627	Adjust stem (C)	728	O-ring	898	Pin
628	Adjust screw (C)	730	O-ring	924	Set screw
629	Cover (C)	732	O-ring		

2) TOOLS AND TIGHTENING TORQUE

(1) Tools

The tools necessary to disassemble/reassemble the pump are shown in the follow list.

Allen wrench Socket wrench, double (single) open end B Socket wrench, double (single) open end 6		Part name						
		Hexagon socket head bolt (F		PT plug T thread)	PO plug (PF thread)		Hexagon socket head setscrew	
		M 5 B		3P-1/16	-		M 8	
		M 6		BP1/8 -		M10		
		M 8	I	3P-1/4	PO-1/4	1	M12, M14	
		Hexagon head bolt		Hexagon nut		VP plug (PF thread)		
		M 8		M 8		-		
Adjustable angle wrench	Small size, Max 36 mm							
Screw driver	Minus type screw driver, Medium size, 2 sets							
Hammer		Plastic hammer, 1 set						
Pliers		For snap ring, TSR-160						
Steel bar	Steel bar of key material approx. 10 × 8 × 200							
Torque wrench	Capable of tightening with the specified torques.							
Pincers	-							
Bolt	M4, Length: 50 mm							

(2) Tightening torque

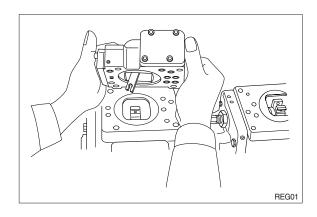
Dort name	D !! .	Tor	que	Wrench size	
Part name	Bolt size	kgf ⋅ m	lbf ⋅ ft	in	mm
Hexagon socket head bolt	M 5	0.7	5.1	0.16	4
(material : SCM435)	M 6	1.2	8.7	0.20	5
	M 8	3.0	21.7	0.24	6
	M10	5.8	42.0	0.31	8
	M12	10.0	72.3	0.39	10
	M14	16.0	115.7	0.47	12
PT plug (material : S45C)	PT 1/16	0.7	5.1	0.16	4
Wind a seal tape 1 1/2 to 2 turns round the plug	PT 1/ 8	1.05	7.59	0.20	5
2 tame really the play	PT 1/ 4	1.75	12.66	0.24	6
PF plug (material : S45C)	PT 1/ 4	3.0	21.7	0.24	6

3) DISASSEMBLY

Since the regulator consists of small precision finished parts, disassembly and assembly are rather complicated.

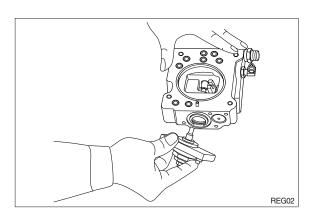
For this reason, replacement of a regulator assembly is not recommended, unless there is a special reason, but in case disassembly is necessary for an unavoidable reason, read through this manual to the end before starting disassembly.

- (1) Choose a place for disassembly.
- * Choose a clean place.
- * Spread rubber sheet, cloth, or so on on top of work-bench to prevent parts from being damaged.
- (2) Remove dust, rust, etc. from surfaces of regulator with clean oil.
- (3) Remove hexagon socket head screw (412, 413) and remove regulator main body from pump main body.
- * Take care not to lose O-ring.



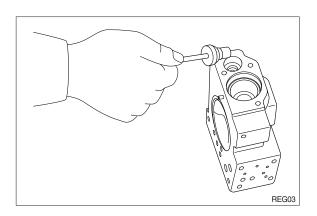
- (4) Remove hexagon socket head screw (438) and remove cover (C, 629).
- ** Cover (C) is fitted with adjusting screw (C, 628), adjusting stem (C, 627), lock nut (630), hexagon nut (801) and adjusting screw (924).

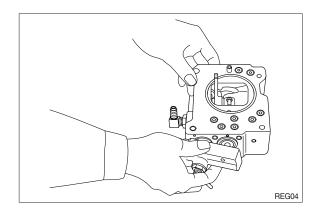
Do not loosen these screws and nuts. If they are loosened, adjusted pressureflow setting will vary.



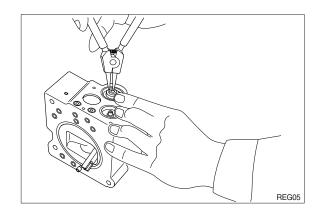
- (5) After removing cover (C, 629) subassembly, take out outer spring (625), inner spring (626) and spring seat (C, 624) from compensating section.
 Then draw out adjusting stem (Q, 645), pilot spring (646) and spring seat (644) from pilot section.
- * Adjusting stem (Q, 645) can easily be drawn out with M4 bolt.
- (6) Remove hexagon socket head screws (436, 438) and remove pilot cover (641).

 After removing pilot cover, take out set spring (655) from pilot section.

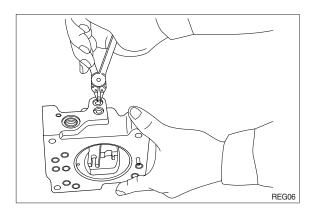


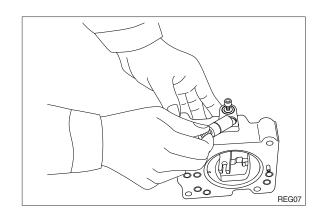


- (7) Remove snap ring (814) and take out spring seat (653), return spring (654) and sleeve (651).
 - Sleeve (651) is fitted with snap ring (836).
- When removing snap ring (814), return spring (654) may pop out.
- * Take care not to lose it.

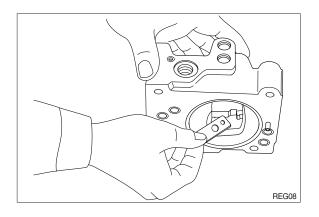


- (8) Remove locking ring (858) and take out fulcrum plug (614) and adjusting plug (615).
- * Fulcrum plug (614) and adjusting plug (615) can easily be taken out with M6 bolt.

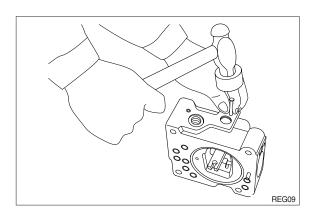


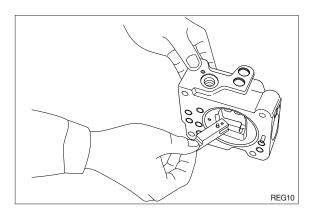


- (9) Remove lever (2, 613). Do not draw out pin (875).
- Work will be promoted by using pincers or so on.



- (10) Draw out pin (874) and remove feedback lever (611).
- Push out pin (874, 4 mm in dia.) from above with slender steel bar so that it may not interfere with lever (1, 612).



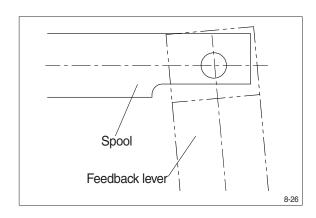


- (11) Remove lever (1, 612). Do not draw out pin (875).
- (12) Draw out pilot piston (643) and spool (652).
- (13) Draw out piston case (622), compensating piston (621) and compensating rod (623).
- Piston case (622) can be taken out by pushing compensating rod (623) at opposite side of piston case.

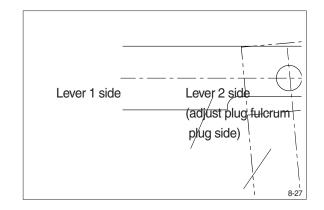
This completes operation.

4) ASSEMBLY

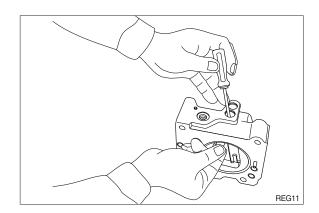
- (1) For assembly, reverse disassembly procedures, but pay attention to the following items.
- ① Always repair parts that were scored at disassembly.
 - Get replacement parts ready beforehand.
- ② Mixing of foreign matter will cause malfunction.
 - Therefore, wash parts well with cleaning oil, let them dry with jet air and handle them in clean place.
- 3 Always tighten bolts, plugs, etc. to their specified torques.
- ④ Do not fail to coat sliding surfaces with clean hydraulic oil before assembly.
- ⑤ Replace seals such as O-ring with new ones as a rule.
- (2) Put compensating rod (623) into compensating hole of casing (601).
- (3) Put pin force-fitted in lever (1, 612) into groove of compensating rod and fit lever (1) to pin force-fitted in casing.
- (4) Fit spool (652) and sleeve (651) into hole in spool of casing.
- * Confirm that spool and sleeve slide smoothly in casing without binding.
- * Pay attention to orientation of spool.



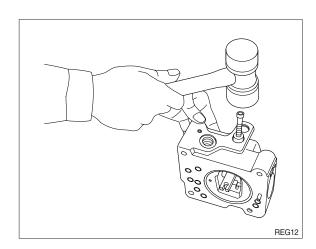
- (5) Fit feedback lever (611), matching its pin hole with pin hole in spool. Then insert pin (874).
- * Insert pin in feedback lever a little to ease operation.
- * Take care not to mistake direction of feedback lever.

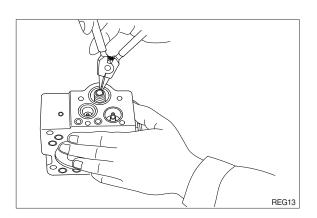


- (6) Put pilot piston (643) into pilot hole of casing.
- * Confirm that pilot piston slides smoothly without binding.
- (7) Put pin force-fitted in lever (2, 613) into groove of pilot piston. Then fix lever (2).



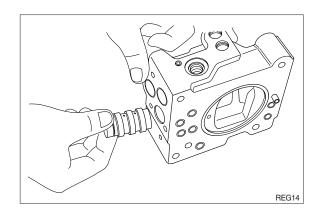
- (8) Fit fulcrum plug (614) so that pin forcefitted in fulcrum plug(614) can be put into pin hole of lever (2). Then fix locking ring (858).
- (9) Insert adjusting plug (615) and fit locking ring.
- * Take care not to mistake inserting holes for fulcrum plug and adjusting plug. At this point in time move feedback lever to confirm that it has no large play and is free from binding.
- (10) Fit return spring (654) and spring seat (653) into spool hole and attach snap ring (814).



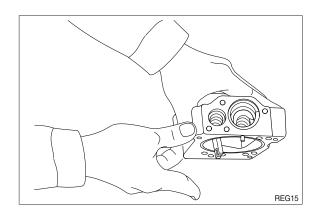


(11) Fit set spring (655) to spool hole and put compensating piston (621) and piston case (622) into compensating hole.

Fit pilot cover (641) and tighten it with hexagonal socket head screws (436, 438).



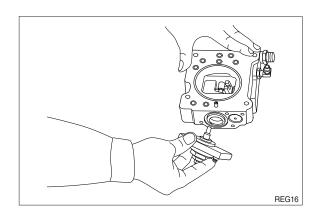
- (12) Put spring seat (644), pilot spring (646) and adjusting stem (Q, 645) into pilot hole. Then fix spring seat (624), inner spring (626) and outer spring (625) into compensating hole.
- When fitting spring seat, take care not to mistake direction of spring seat.



(13) Install cover (C, 629) fitted with adjusting screws (628), adjusting stem (C, 627), lock nut (630), hexagon nut (802) and adjusting screw (924).

Then tighten them with hexagonal socket head screws (438).

This completes assembly.



GROUP 4 MAIN CONTROL VALVE

1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL OF MOTOR

1) REMOVAL

- (1) Lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.
- (2) Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.
- (3) Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.

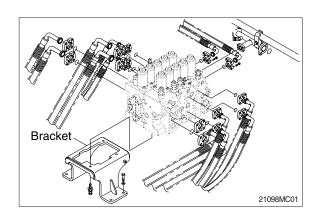
▲ Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.

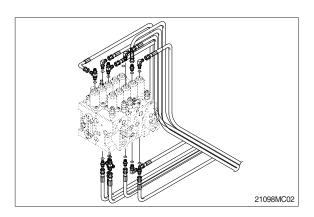
- When pipes and hoses are disconnected, the oil inside the piping will flow out, so catch it in oil pan.
- (4) Remove the wirings for the pressure sensor and so on.
- (5) Remove bolts and disconnect pipe.
- (6) Disconnect pilot line hoses.
- (7) Disconnect pilot piping.
- (8) Sling the control valve assembly and remove the control valve mounting bolt and bracket.
 - · Weight: 220 kg (485 lb)
- (9) Remove the control valve assembly. When removing the control valve assembly, check that all the piping have been disconnected.

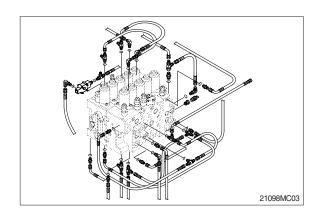
2) INSTALL

- (1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.
- (2) Bleed the air from below items.
- ① Cylinder (Boom, arm, bucket)
- ② Swing motor
- ③ Travel motor
- * See each item removal and install.
- (3) Confirm the hydraulic oil level and recheck the hydraulic oil leak or not.

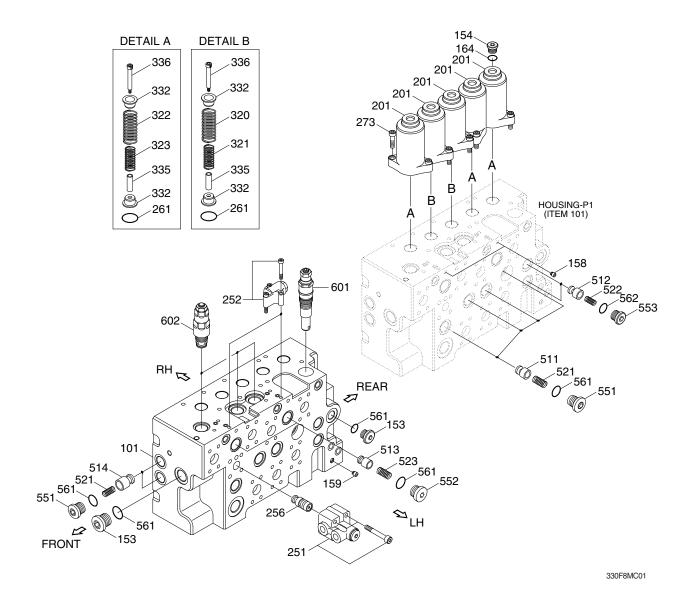






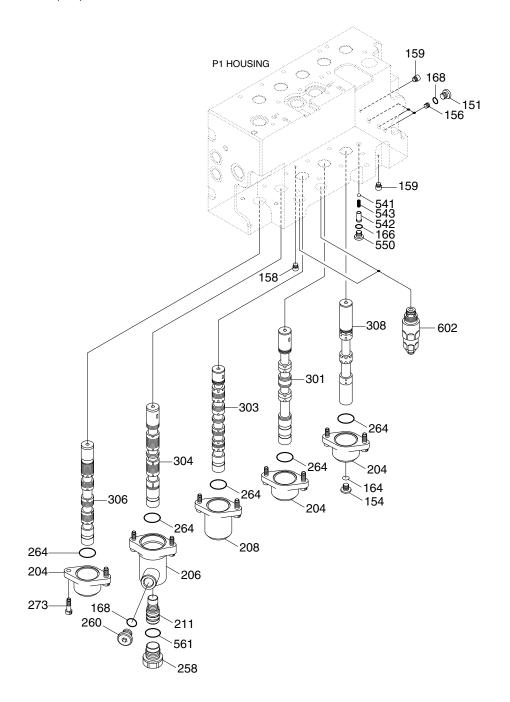


2. STRUCTURE (1/4)



101	P2 housing (casing A)	273	Socket screw	514	Poppet
153	Plug	320	Spring	521	Spring
154	Plug	321	Spring	522	Spring
158	Plug	322	Spring	523	Spring
159	Plug	323	Spring	551	Plug
164	O-ring	332	Seat	552	Plug
201	Spring cover	335	Stopper	553	Plug
251	Logic control valve	336	Bolt	561	O-ring
252	Selector lock valve	511	Poppet	562	O-ring
256	Logic poppet	512	Poppet	601	Main relief valve
261	O-ring	513	Poppet	602	Port relief valve

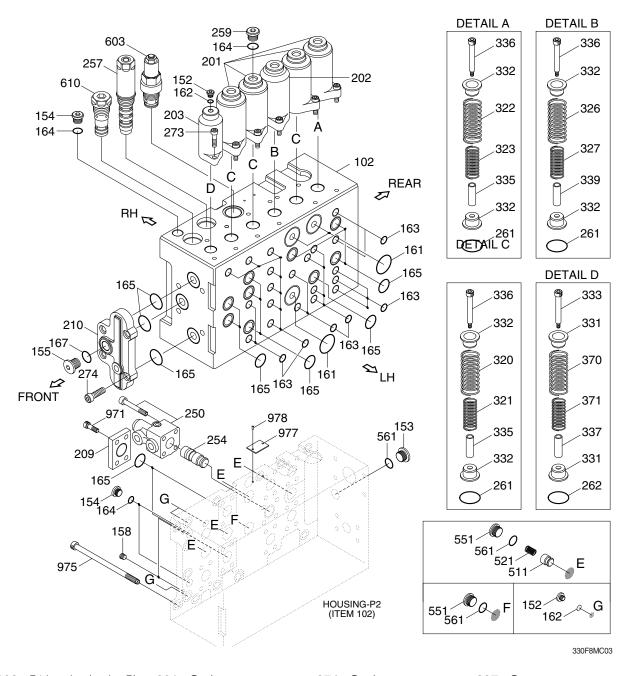
STRUCTURE (2/4)



330F8MC02

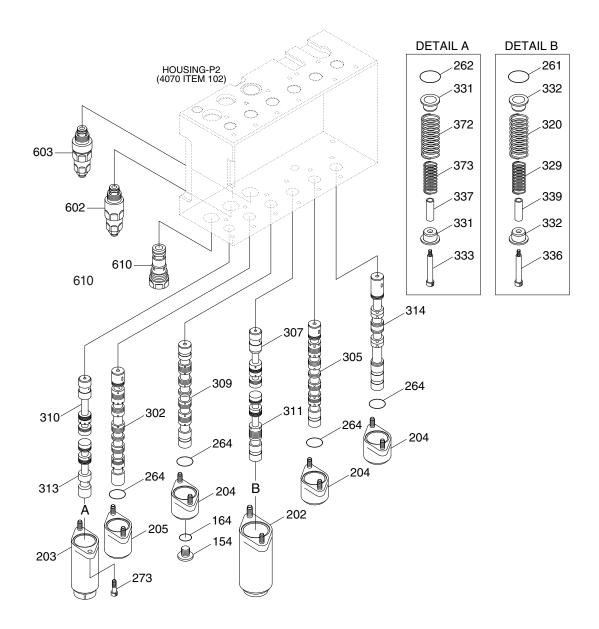
151	Plug	206	Cover	304	Bucket spool
154	Plug	208	Cover-spool	306	Arm 2 spool
156	Orifice	211	Piston	308	Straight travel spool
158	Plug	258	Plug	541	Steel ball
159	Plug	260	Plug	542	Spring seat
164	O-ring	264	O-ring	543	Spring
166	O-ring	273	Socket screw	550	Plug
168	O-ring	301	Travel, LH spool	561	O-ring
204	Cover	303	Boom 1 spool	602	Port relief valve

STRUCTURE (3/4)



102	P1 housing (casing B)	201	Spring cover	274	Socket screw	337	Stopper
152	Plug	202	Spring cover	320	Spring	339	Stopper
153	Plug	203	Spring cover	321	Spring	370	Spring
154	Plug	209	Flange	322	Spring	371	Spring
155	Plug	210	Plate	323	Spring	511	Poppet
158	Plug	250	Logic control valve	326	Spring	521	Spring
161	O-ring	254	Logic poppet	327	Spring	551	Plug
162	O-ring	257	Arm regen cut sub	331	Seat	561	O-ring
163	O-ring	259	Plug	332	Seat	603	Port relief valve
164	O-ring	261	O-ring	333	Spacer bolt	610	Nega control relief valve
165	O-ring	262	O-ring	335	Stopper	971	Screw
167	O-ring	273	Socket screw	336	Bolt	975	Socket screw

STRUCTURE(4/4)



330F8MC04

154	Plug	305	Swing spool	333	Spacer bolt
164	O-ring	307	Boom 2 spool	336	Bolt
202	Spring cover	309	Option spool	337	Stopper
203	Spring cover	310	Bypass cut spool	339	Stopper
204	Cover	311	Swing priority spool	370	Spring
205	Cover	313	Bypass cut spool	371	Spring
261	O-ring	314	Travel, RH spool	602	Port relief valve
262	O-ring	320	Spring	603	Port relief valve
264	O-ring	329	Spring	610	Nega control relief valve
273	Socket screw	331	Seat		
302	Arm 1 spool	332	Seat		

3. DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

1) GENERAL PRECAUTIONS

- (1) All hydraulic components must be worked with precision working. Then, before disassembling and assembling them, it is essential to select an especially-clean place.
- (2) In handling a control valve, pay full attention to prevent dust, sand, etc. from entering into it.
- (3) When a control valve is to be remove from the machine, apply caps and masking seals to all ports. Before disassembling the valve, recheck that these caps and masking seals are fitted completely, and then clean the outside of the assembly. Use a proper bench for working, spread a paper or rubber mat on the bench, and disassemble the valve on it.
- (4) Support the body section carefully when carrying, transferring and so on of the control valve. Do not support the lever, exposed spool, end cover section or so on without fail.
- (5) After disassembling and assembling of the component, it is desired to carry out various tests (for the relief characteristics, leakage, flow resistance, etc.), but the hydraulic test equipment is necessary to these tests. Therefore, even when its disassembling can be carried out technically, do not disassemble such components that cannot be tested, adjusted, and so on. Besides, prepare clean cleaning oil, hydraulic oil, grease, etc. beforehand.

2) TOOLS

Before disassembling the control valve, prepare the following tools beforehand.

Name of tool	Quantity	Size (mm)
Vice mounted on bench (soft jaws)	1 unit	
Box wrench	Each 1 piece	24, 32, 36
Hexagon key wrench	Each 1 piece	4, 5, 6, 8, 10 and 12
Loctite #262	1 piece	-
Spanner	Each 1 piece	32 (main relief valve, 601) 36 (port relief valve, 603)

3) DISASSEMBLY

The figure in () shown after the part name in the explanation sentence shows its number in the structure figures (8-31~34).

- (1) Place control valve on working bench.
- * Disassemble it in clean place and pay attention not to damage flange faces and plate faces.



21098MC37

(2) Disassembling of main spools

- · Travel (301), bucket (304), swing (305), option (308), arm 2 (306), boom 2 (307), swing priority (311).
- ① Loosen the hexagon the socket head bolts (273) and remove the spring cover (201, 202) and the O-ring (261).
 - · Hexagon key wrench: 6 mm



- ② Pull out the spool, spring, spring seats (322), stopper (335 or 339) and spacer bolt (336) in the spool assembly condition from the casing.
- When pulling out the spool assembly from housing, pay attention not to damage the housing.



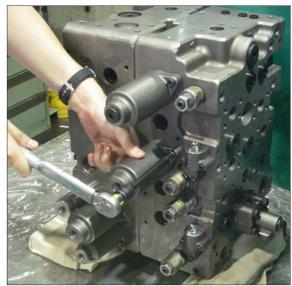
- 3 Hold the spool in the mouthpiece-attached vise applying a protection plate (aluminum plate and the like) in between. Remove the spacer bolt (336) and disassemble the stopper (335 or 339) and spring seats (332).
 - · Hexagon key wrench: 10 mm



21098MC40

(3) Disassembling of boom 1 spool (303):

- ① Loosen the hexagon socket head bolts (273), and remove the spring cover (201) and the O-ring (261).
 - · Hexagon key wrench: 6 mm
- ② Pull out the boom 1 spool (303), spring (320, 321), spring seats (332), stopper (335) and spacer bolt (336) in the spool assembly condition from the P2 housing (101).
- When pulling out the spool assembly from P2 housing (101), pay attention not to damage housing.
- ③ Hold the boom1 spool (303) in the mouthpiece-attached vise applying a protection plate (aluminum plate and the like) in between. Remove the spacer bolt (336), and disassemble the spring (320, 321), spring seats (332) and stopper (335).
 - Hexagon key wrench: 10 mm
- ④ Do not disassemble the boom1 spool (303) more than these conditions.



21098MC41

(4) Disassembling of arm 1 spool (302):

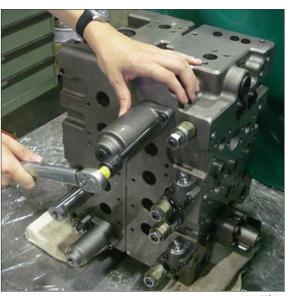
- ① Loosen the hexagon socket head bolts (273), and remove the spring cover (201) and the O-ring (261).
 - · Hexagon key wrench: 6 mm
- ② Pull out the arm 1 spool (302), spring (320, 321), spring seats (332), stopper (335) and spacer bolt (336) in the spool assembly condition from the P1 housing (102).
- When pulling out the spool assembly from P1 housing(102), pay attention not to damage housing.
- ③ Hold the arm 1 spool (302) in the mouthpiece-attached vise applying a protection plate (aluminum plate and the like) in between. Remove the spacer bolt (336), and disassemble the spring (320, 321), spring seats (332) and stopper (335).
 - Hexagon key wrench: 10 mm
- ④ Do not disassemble the arm 1 spool (302) more than these conditions.



- ① Loosen the hexagon socket head bolts (273), and remove the spring cover (201) and the O-ring (261).
 - · Hexagon key wrench: 6 mm
- ② Pull out the travel straight spool (308), spring (322, 323), spring seat (332), stopper (335) and spacer bolt (336) in the spool assembly condition from the P2 housing (101).
- When pulling out the spool assembly from P2 housing (101), pay attention not to damage housing.



21098MC4



21098MC43

- ③ Hold the travel straight spool (308) in the mouthpiece-attached vise applying a protection plate (aluminum plate and the like) in between. Remove the spacer bolt (336) and disassemble the spring(322, 323), spring seats(332) and stopper (335).
 - · Hexagon key wrench: 10 mm
- ④ Do not disassemble the travel straight spool (308) more than these conditions.

(6) Disassembling of bypass cut spool (310, 313):

- ① Loosen the hexagon socket head bolts (273), and remove the spring cover (203) and the O-ring (262).
 - · Hexagon key wrench: 6 mm
- ② Pull out the bypass cut spool (310, 313), spring (370, 371), spring seats (331), stopper (337) and spacer bolt (333) in the spool assembly condition from the P1 housing (102).
- When pulling out the spool assembly from P1 housing (102), pay attention not to damage housing.
- 3 Hold the bypass cut spool (310,313) in the mouthpiece-attached vise applying a protection plate (aluminum plate and the like) in between. Remove the spacer bolt (333) and disassemble the spring (370, 371), spring seats (331) and stopper (337).
 - · Hexagon key wrench: 10 mm



21098MC44



21098MC45

(7) Disassembling of spool covers (204, 205, 206, 208):

- ① Remove the hexagon socket head bolts (273), and remove the spool cover (204, 205, 206, 208) and the O-ring (264).
 - · Hexagon key wrench: 6 mm
- ② In removing the bucket spool cover (206), at first loosen the plug (258) before it is removed from the P1 housing (102). After removing the bucket spring cover (206) remove the plug (551), and take out the piston (211).
 - · Box wrench: 32 mm



21098MC46

(8) Removal of main relief valve (601) port relief valves (602, 603):

① Remove the main relief valve (601) and the port relief valves (602, 603) from the housing.

Main relief valve (601): spanner 32mm Port relief valve (602): spanner or box

wrench 32mm

Port relief valve (603): spanner 36mm

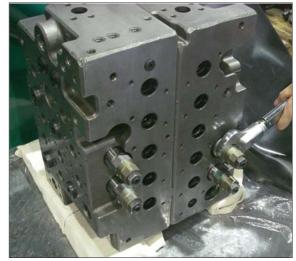


21098MC4

② Do not disassemble the relief valves more than these conditions.



21098MC48



(9) Removal of lock valve selector (252):

- ① Loosen the hexagon socket head bolts (252-171) and remove the lock valve selector (252) and the O-rings (252-161).
 - · Hexagon key wrench: 5 mm
- ② Do not disassemble the lock valve selector (252) more than these conditions.



(10) Removal of negative control relief valve

- ① Remove the negative control relief valve (610) from the P1 housing (102).
 - · Box wrench : 36 mm
- ② Do not disassemble the negative control relief valve (610) more than these conditions.



(11) Removal of arm regeneration cut valve (257):

Remove the plug (253), spring (331), spool (211), and sleeve (392) from the P1 housing (102).

· Box wrench: 36 mm



21008MC53

(12) Disassembly of logic control valve (250, 251) and logic poppet (254, 256):

- ① Loosen the hexagon socket head bolts (250-120, 251-120) and remove the logic control valve (250, 251) and the O-rings (250-112 and 113, 251-112 and 113).
 - · Hexagon key wrench: 8 mm
- ② Pull out the logic poppet (254, 256), spring (254-106, 256-106) and spring seat (254-103, 256-103) from the housing.
- ③ Do not disassemble the logic control valve and the logic poppet more than these condition.



21098MC53



1098MC54

(13) Disassembly of check valve:

① CP1, C2, CCb, LCb, LCo, LCk, LCa, LCAT2

Remove the plug (551) and take out the poppet (511) and the spring (521).

- · Hexagon key wrench: 12 mm
- ② CMR1, CMR2
 Remove the plug (553) and take out the poppet (512) and the spring (522).
 - · Hexagon key wrench: 10 mm



21098MC55

③ CRa, CRb

Remove the plug (552) and take out the poppet (513) and the spring (523).

· Hexagon key wrench: 12 mm



21098MC56

4 CCk, CCo

Remove the plug (551) and take out poppet (514) and the spring (521).

- · Hexagon key wrench: 12 mm
- ⑤ Remove the plug (550) and take out the ball (541), spring (543) and spring seat (542).
 - · Hexagon key wrench: 6 mm



21098MC57

(14) Disassembly of flanges (209):

Loosen the hexagon socket head bolts (971) and remove the flange (209) and the O-ring (165).

· Hexagon key wrench: 8 mm

(15) Disassembly of plate (210):

Loosen the hexagon socket head bolts (274) and remove the plate (210) and the O-rings (165).

· Hexagon key wrench: 10 mm

(16) Disassembly of orifices for signal line:

Do not disassemble the plug (151) and orifice (156) unless required specifically.

(17) Disassembly of casing:

- ① Except when required specially, do not disassemble the tie bolts of the P1 housing.
- ② Since the plugs not described in above disassembling procedures are the blind plugs for sacrifice holes and the blind plugs for the housing sanitation, do not disassemble them as far as not required specially.



21098MC58

(18) Inspection after disassembling

Clean all the disassembled parts with clean mineral oil fully, and dry them with compressed air. Then, place them on clean papers or cloths for inspection.

Control valve

- a. Check whole surfaces of all parts for burrs, scratches, notches and other defects.
- Confirm that the seal groove faces of the housing and the covers are smooth and free of dust, dent, rust etc.
- c. Correct dents and damages on check seat faces of housing, if any, by lapping.
- * Pay attention not to leave lapping agent in the housing.
- d. Confirm that all sliding and fitting parts can be moved manually and that all grooves and paths are free from foreign matter.
- e. If any spring is broken or deformed, replace it with new one.
- f. When a relief valve does not function properly, repair it, following its inspection procedures.
- g. Replace all the O-rings with new ones.

② Relief valve

- Confirm that all seat faces at ends of all poppets and seats are free of defects and are uniform contact faces.
- b. Confirm manually that main poppet and seat can slide lightly and smoothly.
- Confirm that outside face of main poppet and inside face of seat are free from scratches and so
 on.
- d. Confirm that orifices of the main poppet and seat section are not clogged with foreign matter.
- e. Replace all O-rings with new ones.
- f. When any light damage is found in above inspections, correct it by lapping.
- g. When any abnormal part is found, replace it with a relief valve assembly.

4) ASSEMBLY

- ① In this assembling section, explanation only is shown. Refer to figures and photographs shown in disassembling section.
- ② Figure in () shown after part name in explanation sentence shows number in structure figure.
- ③ Cautions in assembling O-rings
 - a. Pay attention to keep O-rings free from defects in its forming and damages in its handling.
 - b. Apply grease, hydraulic oil or so on to O-rings and seal-fitting sections for full lubrication.
 - c. Do not stretch O-rings so much to deform them permanently.
 - d. In fitting O-ring, pay attention not to roll it into its position. In addition, twisted O-ring cannot remove its twisting naturally with ease after being fitted, and causes oil leakage.
 - e. Tighten fixing the bolts for all sections with a torque wrench to their respective tightening torque.

(1) Assembly of check valve:

- ① Assemble the poppets (511, 512, 513, 514) and the springs (521, 522, 523): Put the O-rings (561) onto the plugs (551, 552). Put the O-rings (562) onto the plugs (553). Tighten the plugs (551, 552, 553) with their specified torques.
- We use the poppets, springs and plugs in following groups.

Poppet	Spring	Plug
511	521	551
512	522	553
513	523	552
514	521	551

Remember that 511 in 8 positions 512 in 2 positions 513 in 2 positions 514 in 2 positions

Plug No.	Hexagon key wrench (mm)	Tightening torque (kgf·m)
551	12	23.5 ~ 26.5
552	12	23.5 ~ 26.5
553	10	13.3 ~ 15.3



21098MC57



21098MC56

② Assemble of ball (541), spring Seat (542) and spring (543): Put the O-ring (166) onto the plug (550), and tighten the plug (550) with specified torque.

· Hexagon key wrench: 6 mm

· Tightening torque : 2.55 ~ 2.96 kgf⋅m

(18.4~21.4 lbf·ft)



21098MC55

(2) Assembly of plate (210):

Fit the O-rings (165) to the P1 housing (102), and tighten the hexagon socket head bolts (274) with specified torque.

· Hexagon key wrench: 10 mm

• Tightening torque : 10.0 ~ 12.2 kgf·m

(72.3~88.2 lbf·ft)

So turn the control valve that the plate face may be directed downward.

(3) Assembly of flange (209):

Fit the O-rings (165) to the flange (209), and tighten the hexagon socket head bolts (971) with specified torque.

· Hexagon key wrench: 8 mm

 \cdot Tightening torque : 5.0 ~ 6.6 kgf·m

(36.2~47.7 lbf·ft)

(4) Assemble of logic control valve (250, 251):

① Put the O-ring (250-115, 251-115) onto the plug (250-111, 251-111).



21098MC5

- ② Assemble the spool (250-102, 251-102), spring seat (250-104, 251-104) and spring (251-105, 251-105) into the casing (250-101, 251-101) of the logic control valve, and tighten the plug (250-111, 251-111) with specified torque.
 - · Hexagon key wrench: 8 mm
 - Tightening torque : 7.0 ~ 8.1 kgf·m
 - (50.6~58.6 lbf·ft)
- ③ Assemble the logic poppet (254; poppet, spring, spring seat) into the housing of the control valve.
- Fit the O-rings (250-112 and 113, 251-112 and 113) to the casing (250-101, 251-101) of the logic control valve, and tighten the hexagon socket head bolts (250-120, 251-120) with specified torque.
 - Hexagon key wrench: 8 mmTightening torque: 5.0 ~ 6.6 kgf-m
 - (36.2~47.7 lbf·ft)



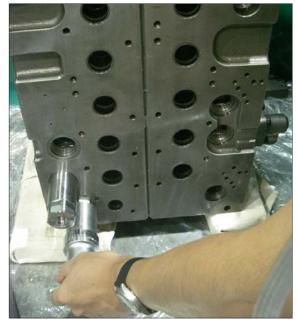
21098MC54

(5) Assembling of negative control relief valve (610):

Assemble the negative control relief valve (610) into the P2 housing (101), and tighten it with specified torque.

- · Box wrench: 36 mm
- · Tightening torque: 7.0 ~ 8.0 kgf⋅m

(50.6~57.9 lbf·ft)



21098MC51

(6) Assembly of arm regeneration cut valve (257):

Assemble the sleeve (257-212), spool (257-211), and spring (257-231) into the P1 housing (102). Put the O-ring (265) onto the plug (257-253), and tighten with specified torque.

· Box wrench: 36 mm

· Tightening torque : 7.0 ~ 8.0 kgf·m

(50.6~57.9 lbf·ft)



21098MC5

(7) Assembling of lock valve selector (252):

Fit the O-rings (252-161) to the lock valve selector (252) and tighten the hexagon socket head bolts (252-171) with specified torque.

· Hexagon key wrench : 5 mm

· Tightening torque : 1.0 ~ 1.4 kgf⋅m

(7.2~10.1 lbf·ft)



21098MC50

(8) Assembling of main relief valve (601) and port relief valve (602, 603):

Assemble the main relief valve (601) and the port relief valves (602, 603) to the housing, and tighten them with specified torque.

Item	Tool	Tightening torque (kgf·m)
Main relief valve (601)	Spanner 32	7.0 ~ 8.1
Port relief valve (602)	Spanner 32 or box wrench 32	7.0 ~ 8.1
Port relief valve (603)	Spanner 36	12.2 ~14.3



21098MC49



21098MC48



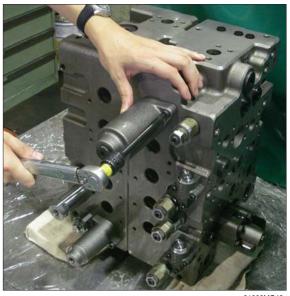
21098MC47

(9) Assemble of travel straight spool (308):

- ① Hold the middle of the travel straight spool (308) in the mouthpiece-attached vise applying a protection plate (aluminum plate and the like) in between. Attach the spring seats (332), springs (322, 323) and stopper (335), and tighten the spacer bolt (336) with specified torque.
- Before tightening the spacer bolt (336), apply loctite #262 to it.
 - · Hexagon key wrench: 10 mm
 - Tightening torque: 1.6 ~ 1.8 kgf⋅m

(11.6~13.0 lbf·ft)

- * Pay attention not to fasten the vise excessively to the shape of the travel straight spool (308) is deformed.
- ② Insert the spool assemblies of ① items above into the P2 housing (101).
- Fit spool assemblies into P2 housing (101) carefully and slowly.
- » Do not push them forcibly without fail.



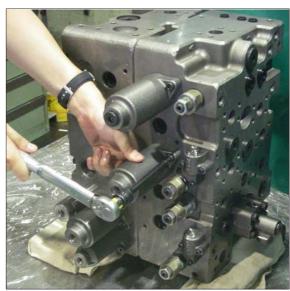
21098MC43

(10) Assembling of boom 1 spool (303):

- ① Hold the middle of the boom1 spool (303) in the mouthpiece-attached vise applying a protection plate (aluminum plate and the like) in between. Attach the spring seats (332), springs (320, 321) and stopper (335), and tighten the spacer bolt (336) with specified torque.
- Before tightening the spacer bolt (336), apply loctite #262 to it.
 - · Hexagon key wrench: 10 mm
 - · Tightening torque: 1.6 ~ 1.8 kgf⋅m

(11.6~13.0 lbf·ft)

- Pay attention not to fasten the vise excessively to the shape of the boom 1 spool (303) is deformed.
- ② Insert the spool assemblies of items ① above into the P2 housing (101).
- Fit spool assemblies into the P2 housing (101) carefully and slowly.
- Do not push them forcibly without fail.



21098MC41

(11) Assembling of arm 1 spool (302):

- ① Hold the middle of the arm1 spool (302) in the mouthpiece-attached vise applying a protection plate (aluminum plate and the like) in between. Attach the spring seats (332), springs (320, 321) and stopper (335) and tighten the spacer bolt (336) with specified torque.
- Before tightening the spacer bolt (336), apply loctite #262 to it.
 - · Hexagon key wrench: 10 mm
 - \cdot Tightening torque : 1.6 ~ 1.8 kgf·m

(11.6~13.0 lbf·ft)

- Pay attention not to fasten the vise excessively to the shape of the arm 1 spool (302) is deformed.
- ② Insert the spool assemblies of items ① above into the P1 housing (102).
- Fit spool assemblies into the P1 housing (102) carefully and slowly.
- Do not push them forcibly without fail.



21098MC42

- (12) Assembling of main spool (travel (301), bucket (304), swing (305), option (309), arm2 (306), boom2 (307), swing priority (311)):
 - ① Hold the middle of each spool in the mouthpiece-attached vise applying a protection plate (aluminum plate and the like) in between. Attach the spring seats (332), springs and stopper (335 or 339) and tighten the spacer bolt (336) with specified torque.
 - Before tightening the spacer bolt (336), apply loctite #262 to it.
 - · Hexagon key wrench: 10 mm
 - · Tightening torque : 1.6 ~ 1.8 kgf⋅m

(11.6~13.0 lbf·ft)

- Pay attention not to fasten the vise excessively to the shape of the spool is deformed.
- ② Insert the spool assemblies of Items ① above into the P2 housing (101) and P1 housing (102).
- Fit spool assemblies into P2 housing (101) and P1 housing (102) carefully and slowly.
- Do not push them forcibly without fail.



21098MC39



21098MC3

(13) Assembling of bypass cut spool (310, 313):

- ① Hold the middle of each spool in the mouthpiece-attached vise applying a protection plate (aluminum plate and the like) in between. Attach the spring seats (331), springs (370, 371) and stopper (337) and tighten the spacer bolt (333) with specified torque.
- Before tightening the spacer bolt (333), apply loctite #262 to it.
 - · Hexagon key wrench: 10 mm
 - Tightening torque : 1.6 ~ 1.8 kgf·m

 $(11.6 \sim 13.0 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft})$

- Pay attention not to fasten the vise excessively to the shape of the bypass cut spool (310, 313) is deformed.
- ② Insert the spool assemblies of Items ① above into the P1 housing (102).
- Fit spool assemblies into the P1 housing (102) carefully and slowly.
- Do not push them forcibly without fail.



21098MC44

(14) Assembling of covers:

- ① Fit the O-rings (264) to the spool covers (204, 205, 206, 208) to sides reverse to the spring sides of spools, and tighten the hexagon socket head bolts (273) with specified torque.
- ** Confirm that O-rings (264) have been fitted to the spool covers (204, 205, 206, 208).
 - · Hexagon key wrench: 6 mm
 - \cdot Tightening torque : 2.5 ~ 3.5 kgf·m

(18.1~25.3 lbf·ft)

- ② Bucket spool cover (206): Assemble piston (355) into bucket spool cover (206). Put O-ring (561) onto plug (258) and tighten it with specified torque.
 - · Box wrench: 32 mm
 - Tightening torque : 15.3 ~ 18.4 kgf·m (111~133 lbf·ft)
- ③ Fit the O-rings (261, 262) to spring covers (201, 202, 203) to the spring sides of spools, and tighten the hexagon socket head bolts (273) with specified torque.
- Confirm that O-rings (261,262) have been fitted to spring covers (204, 205, 206).
 - · Hexagon key wrench: 6 mm
 - Tightening torque : 2.5 ~ 3.5 kgf·m

(18.1~25.3 lbf·ft)



21098MC46

GROUP 5 SWING DEVICE

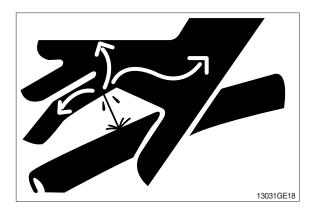
1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL OF MOTOR

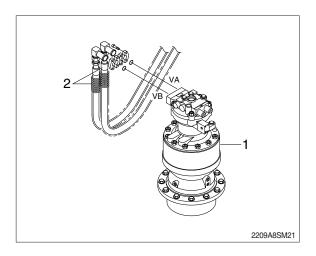
1) REMOVAL

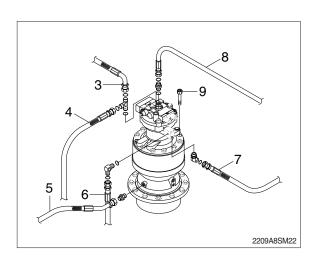
- (1) Lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.
- (2) Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.
- (3) Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.
- ▲ Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.
- When pipes and hoses are disconnected, the oil inside the piping will flow out, so catch it in oil pan.
- (4) Disconnect hose assembly (2).
- (5) Disconnect pilot line hoses (3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8).
- (6) Sling the swing motor assembly (1) and remove the swing motor mounting socket bolts (9).
 - Motor device weight: 61 kg (135 lb)
- (7) Remove the swing motor assembly.
- When removing the swing motor assembly, check that all the piping have been disconnected.

2) INSTALL

- Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.
- (2) Bleed the air from the swing motor.
- ① Remove the air vent plug.
- ② Pour in hydraulic oil until it overflows from the port.
- ③ Tighten plug lightly.
- 4 Start the engine, run at low idling and check oil come out from plug.
- ⑤ Tighten plug fully.
- (3) Confirm the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.

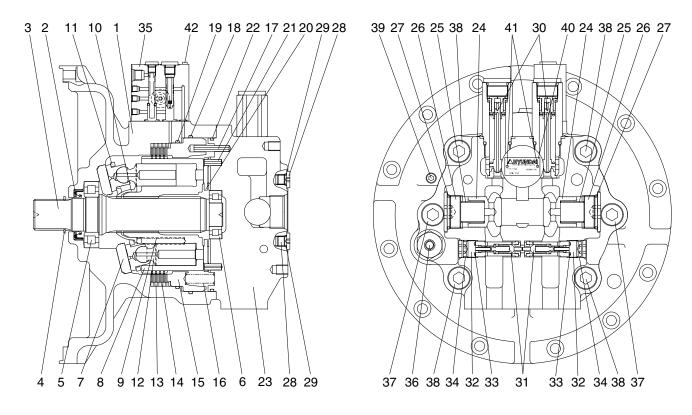






2. DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY OF SWING MOTOR

1) STRUCTURE



300L2SM02

1	Casing	15	Parking piston	29	O-ring
2	Oil seal	16	Brake spring	30	Relief valve assy
3	Shaft	17	Spring pin	31	Reactionless valve assy
4	Snap ring	18	O-ring	32	Plug
5	Roller bearing	19	O-ring	33	O-ring
6	Needle bearing	20	Valve plate	34	O-ring
7	Swash plate	21	Spring pin	35	Time delay valve assy
8	Cylinder block	22	O-ring	36	Level gauge
9	Spring	23	Valve casing	37	Socket bolt
10	Ball guide	24	Check valve	38	Socket bolt
11	Retainer plate	25	Spring	39	Plug
12	Piston assy	26	Plug	40	Name plate
13	Friction plate	27	O-ring	41	Rivet
14	Separate plate	28	Plug	42	Socket bolt

2) DISASSEMBLY

(1) Disassemble drive shaft

① Unloosing socket bolt (time delay valve, 42) and disassemble time delay valve assy (35) from casing (1).



2209A8SM51

② Disassemble level gauge (36) from casing (1).



2209A8SM52

③ Hang valve casing (23) on hoist, unloose socket bolt (37, 38) and disassemble from casing (1).



2209A8SM53

① Disassemble spring (16) and using a jig, disassemble parking piston (15) from casing (1).



2209A8SM54

⑤ Disassemble respectively cylinder block sub (8), friction plate (13), separate plate (14) from casing (1).



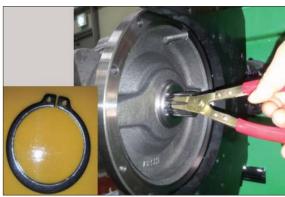
2209A8SM55

⑤ Disassemble swash plate (7) from casing (1).



2209A8SM56

Using a plier jig, disassemble snap ring(4) from casing (1).



2209A8SM57



2209A8SM58

(2) Disassemble cylinder block sub

① Disassemble piston assy (12) from cylinder block (8).



2209A8SM59

- ② Disassemble ball guide (10) and spring (cylinder block, 9) from cylinder block (8).
 - Ball guide \times 1EA
 - $\cdot \; \mathsf{Spring} \! \times \! \mathsf{9EA}$



2209A8SM60

(3) Disassemble valve casing sub

① Disassemble spring pin (17, 21), valve plate (20), O-ring (22) from valve casing (23).



② Using a torque wrench, disassemble relief valve (30) from valve casing (23).



2209A8SM62

③ Using a torque wrench, disassemble plug (32) from valve casing (23) and disassemble O-ring (33, 34) and reactionless valve assy (31).



2209A8SM63

④ Using a torque wrench, disassemble check valve (24) from valve casing (23).



2209A8SM64

⑤ Disassemble plug (28), O-ring (29) from valve casing (23).



2209A8SM65

3) ASSEMBLING

(1) Assemble shaft sub

① Put roller bearing (3) on preheater and provide heat to inner race.

(Temperature in conveyor: 120°C for 3~5 minutes)



② Using a robot machine, assemble and press preheated roller bearing (3) into shaft (5).



2209A8SM67

(2) Assemble cylinder block sub

- ① Assemble 9 springs (cylinder block, 9) into cylinder block (8).
 - · Spring×9EA



2209A8SM68

- ② Assemble ball guide (10) into cylinder block (8).
 - · Ball guide × 1EA



2209A8SM69

- 3 Assemble 9 piston assy (12) into retainer plate (11).
 - · Piston assy × 9EA
 - · Retainer plate × 1EA



2200A8SM70

④ Assemble parts of procedure ② and ③.



2209A8SM71

(3) Assemble valve casing sub

- ① Assemble make up check valve sub Assemble check valve (24), O-ring (27), plug (26) in that order and then screw it torque wrench.
 - · Make up check valve × 2EA
 - · Spring×2EA
 - · Plug×2EA
 - O-ring \times 2EA
 - Tightening torque : $38\pm3.8 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$ (275 \pm 27.5 lbf \cdot ft)



2209A8SM72

② Assemble reactionless valve assy

Assemble reactionless valve assy (31), plug (32), O-ring (33, 34) in that order and then screw it a torque wrench.

- · Reactionless valve assy (31) × 2EA
- Plug (32) × 2EA
- · O-ring (33, 34) × 2EA
- Tightening torque : $22\pm1.5 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$ (159 $\pm11 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$)



2209A8SM73

- ③ Using a torque wrench, assemble relief valve (30) 2 sets into valve casing (23).
 - · Relief valve (30) × 2EA
 - Tightening torque : $18 \pm 1.8 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$ (130 $\pm 13 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$)



2209A8SM74

- ④ Assemble plug (28) and O-ring (27) into valve casing (23).
 - Plug (28) × 3EA
 - O-ring (27) × 3EA
 - Tightening torque : $4.5\pm0.4 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$ (32.5 $\pm2.9 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$)



2209A8SM75

- S Assemble needle bearing (6) into valve casing (23) and assemble spring pin (17, 21) into valve casing (23).
 - · Needle bearing (6) × 1EA
 - Spring pin (17, 21) × 1EA



2209A8SM76

⑥ Apply some grease valve plate (20) and assemble it into valve casing (23).



2209A8SM77

(4) Assemble drive shaft sub

① Using a jig, assemble oil sealing (2) into casing (1).



2209A8SM78

② Fit shaft sub (shaft+roller bearing) into casing (1).



2209A8SM79

- ③ Using a plier jig, assemble snap ring (4) to shaft (3).
 - Snap ring \times 1EA



2209A8SM80

- ④ Apply some grease swash plate (7) and assemble it into casing (1).
 - · Swash plate × 1EA



2209A8SM81

- ⑤ Insert O-ring (18, 19) into casing (1).
 - O-ring (18) × 1EA
 - O-ring (19)×1EA



2209A8SM82

Assemble cylinder block (8) into casing (1).



2209A8SM83

- Assemble separate plate (14) and friction plate (13) 4 sets into casing (1) and fit parking piston (15) into casing (1) by a jig or a press.
 - · Separate plate × 4EA
 - Friction plate \times 4EA
 - Parking piston × 1EA



2209A8SM84

- Assemble spring (parking piston, 16) into parking piston (15).
 - · Spring×26EA



2209A8SM85

- ⑤ Lift up valve casing (23) on casing (1) by a crane and assemble it with socket bolts (37, 38).
 - Tightening torque : $33\pm3.3 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$ (239 $\pm23.9 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$)



2209A8SM8

- ① Assemble level gauge (36) and plug (39) into casing (1).
 - Tightening torque (36) : 15 \pm 1.0 kgf \cdot m
 - $(108.5\pm7.2~\text{lbf}\cdot\text{ft})$
 - \cdot Tightening torque (39) : 3 \pm 0.3 kgf \cdot m
 - $(21.7 \pm 2.2 lbf \cdot ft)$



2209A8SM87

- ① Assemble time delay valve assy (35) into valve casing (23) with socket bolt (42).
 - · Time delay valve \times 1EA
 - · Socket bolt × 3EA
 - Tightening torque (42) : 1.3 \pm 0.1 kgf · m (9.4 \pm 0.72 lbf · ft)



2209A8SM88

② Air pressing test

Be sure of leakage, after press air into assembled motor and put it in water for 1 minute (pressure : 2 kgf/cm²).



2209A8SM89

Leakage check

Place motor on a bench tester and after cleaning motor by color check No.1, paint No.3 and be sure of leakage.



2209A8SM90

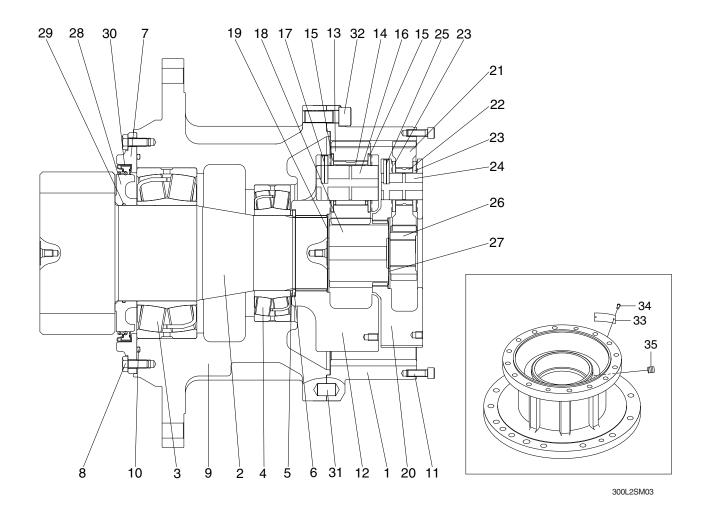
(4) Mount test bench

Mounting motor a test bench, test the availability of each part.



2209A8SM91

3. DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY OF REDUCTION GEAR 1) STRUCTURE



- 1 Ring gear2 Drive shaft
- 3 Bearing
- 4 Bearing
- 5 Thrust plate
- 6 Snap ring
- 7 Cover
- 8 Hex head bolt
- 9 Casing
- 10 O-ring
- 11 Hex socket head bolt
- 12 Carrier 2

- 13 Planetary gear 2
- 14 Needle bearing 2
- 15 Thrust washer 2
- 16 Carrier pin 2
- 17 Spring pin 2
- 18 Sun gear 2
- 19 Thrust plate 2
- 20 Carrier 1
- 21 Planetary gear 1
- 22 Needle bearing 1
- 23 Thrust washer 1
- 24 Carrier pin 1

- 25 Spring pin 1
- 26 Sun gear 1
- 27 Thrust plate 1
- 28 Sleeve
- 29 O-ring
- 30 Oil seal
- 31 Parallel pin
- 32 Hex socket head bolt
- 33 Name plate
- 34 Rivet
- 35 Plug

2) DISASSEMBLY REDUCTION GEAR

(1) Preparation

- ① The reduction gear removed from machine is usually covered with mud. Wash out side of reduction gear and dry it.
- 2 Setting reduction gear on work stand for disassembling.
- 3 Mark for mating Put marks on each mating parts when disassembling so as to reassemble correctly as before.
- ▲ Take great care not to pinch your hand between parts while disassembling not let fall parts on your foot while lifting them.

(2) Disassemble the swing motor

① Loosen the hex wrench bolt (11, M10), and remove the swing motor.



(3) Disassemble the carrier No.1 assy

① Disassemble gear-sun No.1 (26), tightening eye-bolt (M10) to screw holes for disassembly in carrier No.1 (20), then disassemble carrier No.1 assy.



(4) Disassemble the carrier No.2 assy

① Disassemble gear-sun No.2 (18), tighten eye-bolt (M10) to screw holes for disassembly in carrier No.2 (12), then disassemble carrier No.2 assy.



300L8SR03

(5) Disassemble carrier No.1 assy

- ① Hold jig to spring pin No.1 (26), then tap jig with a hammer, so that place spring pin in the center of carrier pin No.1 (24).
- * Do not reuse spring pin.
- » Disassemble method of carrier No.2 assy is same.



300L8SR04

② Disassemble carrier pin No.1 (24), then disassemble planetary gear No.1 (21), thrust washer No.1 (23) from the carrier No.1 (20).



300L8SR05

- (6) Disassemble the ring gear (1).
- ① Separate ring gear (1) from casing (9).
- Separate casing (9) by using the groove area because loctite is spread on joining surface of ring gear (1) and casing (9) to prevent oil leakage.



300L8SR06

- (7) Disassemble the drive shaft (2).
- ① Using the snapring plier, disassemble snapring (6),then disassemble thrust plate (5).



300L8SR07

② Turn casing (9) over to face pinion gear upward. Then unscrew hex.head bolt (8) 12ea by using the tool.



300L8SR08

- ③ Disassemble drive shaft sub assy by using the press machine.
- * The drive shaft sub assy fall all together, so becareful when removing it.



300L8SR09

- ① Disassemble sph. roller bearing (3), cover (7), oil seal (30), and sleeve (28) from the drive shaft (2).
- * Do not reuse oil seal (30).



300L8SR10

(8) Separate sph. roller bearing (4) from casing (9) by using the press machine.



300L8SR11

3) ASSEMBLY REDUCTION GEAR

- (1) Even though assembly is accomplished by reversing disassembly steps, be careful of the following.
 - ① Repair the damaged part when disassembling, prepare parts for the exchange in advance.
- ② All parts should be cleaned with cleaner, and dried with compressed air.
- ③ Sliding surface, O-ring, bearing and oil seal should be lubricated with clean hydraulic oil, prior to final assembly.
- ④ Replacement O-ring and oil seal with new parts is generally recommended.
- ⑤ Use a torque wrench to make sure that assembly fasteners are tightened to specified values.
- 6 When assembling bolt, spread Loctite.
- (2) Assemble drive shaft (2).
- ① After heating sleeve (28) for 5 minutes at 80 ~ 90°C, assemble O-ring (29).
- * Apply grease to the O-ring (29) to prevent damage.



300L8SR12

- ② Apply grease to the oil seal (30), placed on the jig and then assemble it to cover (7) by using the press machine.
- * Apply grease to oil seal lip portion.
- * Be careful of damage of oil seal.



300L8SR13

- ③ Assemble sleeve (28) and cover (7) to drive shaft (2).
- ** Be careful of the direction of cover (7), sleeve (28).
- * Be careful of damage of oil seal.



300L8SR14

④ After heating sph. roller bearing (3) for 13 minutes at 80~90°C and doing demagnetization, then assemble it to drive shaft (2).



300L8SR15

⑤ After assembling O-ring (10) on casing (9), assemble drive shaft sub assy by using a press machine.



300L8SR16

- ⑥ After spreading loctite #262 on hex.head bolt (8), screw them to fix casing (9) and cover (7).
- ${\rm \divideontimes}$ Tightening torque : 8.8 \pm 0.9 kgf \cdot m $(63.7 \pm 6.51 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft})$
- * Screwing when rust inhibitor is not remove.



300L8SR17

- (3) Assemble sph. roller bearing (4).
- ① Assemble sph. roller bearing (4) to casing (9) by using the press machine.



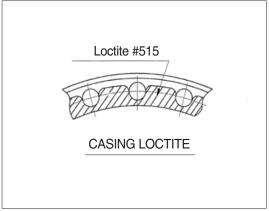
300L8SR18

- ② After assembling thrust plate (5), assemble snap ring (6) to assembly groove of drive shaft (2).
- * Assemble selected thrust plate (5) to make gap (0.1~0.3 mm) between snap ring (6) and sph. roller bearing (4).



300L8SR19

- (4) Assemble ring gear (1).
- ① Spread the loctite #515 on the casing (9) with reference to the right detail view.
- * Loctite should not flow into casing (9).



300L8SR20

- ② After press-fitting parallel pin (31) with a hammer on the casing (9). Then spreading loctite #262 on hex.head bolt (32), screw them.
- * Tightening torque : 33 \pm 3.3 kgf \cdot m

 $(239 \pm 23.9 \, lbf \cdot ft)$

* Screwing when rust inhibitor is not removed.



300L8SR21

(5) Assemble carrier No.1 assy

- ① After assembling thrust plate No.1 (27) on carrier No.1 (20), assemble thrust washer No.1 (23), planetary gear No.1 (21), then assemble carrier pin No.1 (24) by using the hammer.
- * Assembly method of carrier No.2 assy is same.



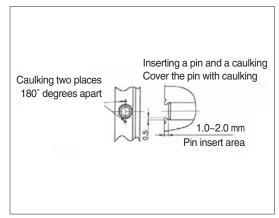
300L8SR22

② Assemble spring pin No.1 (25) to fix carrier No.1 (20) and spring pin No.1 (25) by using the jig.



300L8SR23

- 3 Caulking is performed on the assembled spring pin unit.
- * To cover pins, implement the caulking in two places that are located direction of 180 degrees around assembled spring pin No.1 (25).



300L8SR24

(6) Assemble carrier No.2 assy

- ① Lift pre-assembled carrier No.2 assy. Shaking it from side to side, assemble it to ring gear (1) to engage with ring gear (1). Then, press-fit it with polyurethane hammer.
- * Check caulking and rotating state before assembly.



300L8SR25

- (7) Assemble sun gear No.2 (18).
- ① Shaking sun gear No.2 (18) from side to side, assemble it to carrier No.2 assy to engage with planetary gear No.2 (13).



300L8SR26

- (8) Assemble carrier No.1 assy. Lift carrier No.1 assy. Shaking it from side to side, assemble it to ring gear (1) to engage with ring gear (1).
- * Check rotating state before assembly.



300L8SR27

- (9) Assemble sun gear No.1 (26).
- ① Shaking sun gear No.1 (26) from side to side, assembleit to engage planetary gear No.1 (21). Then fill with gear oil 11 liter.



300L8SR28

GROUP 6 TRAVEL DEVICE

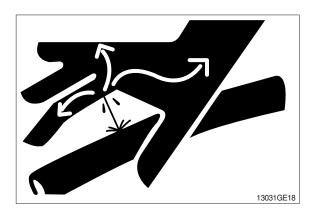
1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL

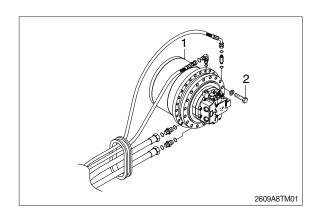
1) REMOVAL

- (1) Swing the work equipment 90° and lower it completely to the ground.
- (2) Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.
- (3) Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.
- Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.
- When pipes and hoses are disconnected, the oil inside the piping will flow out, so catch it in oil pan.
- (4) Remove the track shoe assembly.
 For details, see removal of track shoe assembly.
- (5) Remove the cover.
- (6) Remove the hoses.
- * Fit blind plugs to the disconnected hoses.
- (7) Remove the bolts and the sprocket.
- (8) Sling travel device assembly (1).
- (9) Remove the mounting bolts (2), then remove the travel device assembly.
 - Weight: 430 kg (950 lb)

2) INSTALL

- Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.
- (2) Bleed the air from the travel motor.
- ① Remove the air vent plug.
- ② Pour in hydraulic oil until it overflows from the port.
- ③ Tighten plug lightly.
- Start the engine, run at low idling, and check oil come out from plug.
- 5 Tighten plug fully.
- (3) Confirm the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.





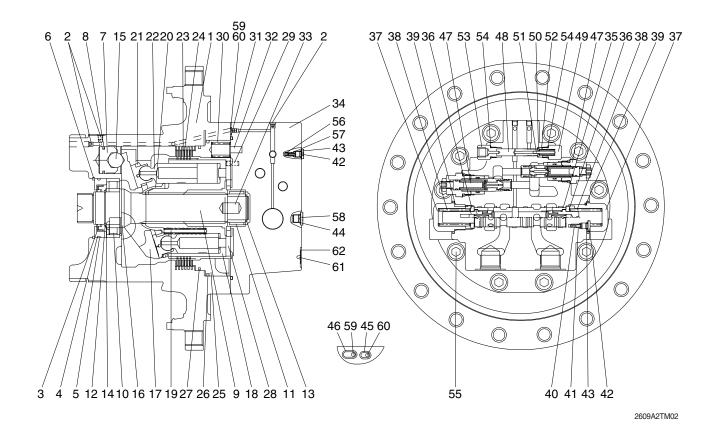
2. SPECIFICATION

20

Ball guide

21 Retainer plate

1) TRAVEL MOTOR



1	Casing	22	Piston assy	43	O-ring	
2	Plug	23	Friction plate	44	O-ring	
3	Oil seal	24	Separated plate	45	O-ring	
4	Thrust block	25	Parking piston	46	O-ring	
5	O-ring	26	D-ring	47	Relief valve	
6	Snap ring	27	D-ring	48	Spool	
7	Piston	28	Valve plate	49	Plug	
8	Piston seal	29	Parallel pin	50	Spring seat	
9	Shaft	30	Spring	51	Parallel pin	
10	Cylinder roller bearing	31	O-ring	52	Spring	
11	Needle bearing	32	Spring pin	53	Connector	
12	Snap ring	33	Parallel pin	54	O-ring	
13	Snap ring	34	Rear cover	55	Hexagon socket head bolt	
14	Thrust plate	35	Main spool assy	56	Check valve	
15	Steel ball	36	Spring seat	57	Spring	
16	Pivot	37	Plug	58	Plug	
17	Swash plate	38	Spring	59	Restrictor	
18	Cylinder block	39	O-ring	60	Restrictor	
19	Spring	40	Restrictor	61	Name plate	

62 Rivet

41 Spring

42 Plug

2) TOOL AND TIGHTENING TORQUE

(1) Tools

Name of tools	B-size	Name of part applied		
	4	Plug (2), Orifice screw (3, 4, 38)		
Hexagonal	8	Hex socket bolt (50), Lock screw (62, 72), Plug (65)		
L-Wrench	10	Hex socket bolt (49)		
	46	Hex (57)		
	19	Hp plug (54)		
Socket wrench/ spanner	24	Hex nut (63)		
Spariner	27	Hp plug (56)		
Snap-ring plier (for holes	, axis)	Ring stop (14), Ring lock (74)		
Solder hammer		Needle bearing (34), Pin (5, 6, 36)		
Torque wrench		Size : 500, 3000		
Jig for assembling oil sea	al	Oil seal (73)		
Induction heating apparatus for bearing		Roller bearing (13)		

(2) Tightening torque

NO	David va a va a	Otomolo val	0:	Torque		
NO.	Part name	Standard	Size	kgf · m	lbf ⋅ ft	
2	Plug	NPTF 1/16	4	0.9±0.2	6.51 ± 1.45	
3, 4, 38	Orifice screw	NPTF 1/16	4	0.7	5.06	
49	Hex socket bolt	M12	10	10	72.33	
50	Hex socket bolt	M10	8	6.7	48.46	
54	Plug	PF 1/4	19	3.7	26.76	
56	Plug	PF 1/2	27	11	79.56	
57	Relief valve	HEX 27	1 5/16	34±3.4	246±24.6	
63	Nut	M16	24	24	173.59	
65	Plug PF 3/8		8	7.5	54.25	
70, 72	Hex socket bolt	M16	14	24	173.59	
71	Hex socket bolt	socket bolt M16		24	173.59	

3. DISASSEMBLING

1) GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS

▲ Combustibles such as white kerosene are used for washing parts. These combustibles are easily ignited, and could result in fire or injury. Be very careful when using.

▲ Internal parts are coated with hydraulic fluid during disassembling and are slippery.
If a part slips out of your hand and fails, it could result in bodily injury or could damage the park.

Be very careful when handling.

- (1) Generally, hydraulic equipment is precisely manufactured and clearances between each parts are very narrow. Therefore, disassembling and assembling works should be performed on the clean place where dusts hardly gather. Tools and kerosene to wash parts should also be clean and handled with great care.
- (2) When motor is removed from the host machine, wash around the ports sufficiently and put the plugs so that no dust and/or water may invade. Take off these plugs just before the piping works when re-attach it to the host machine.
- (3) Bofore disassembling, review the sectional drawing and prepare the required parts, depending on the purpose and the range of disassembling.

Seals, O-rings, etc., if once disassembled, are not reusable.

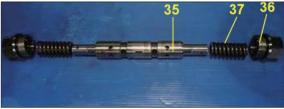
There are some parts that should be replaced as a subassembly.

Consult with the parts manual in advance.

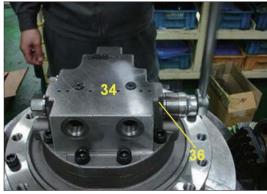
- (4) The piston can be inserted to whichever cylinder block for the initial assembling. However, their combination should not be changed if they are once used. To reuse them, put the matching mark on both pistons and cylinder block before disassembling.
- ▲ Take great care not to pinch your hand between parts while disassembling nor let fall parts on your foot while lifting them.

2) DISASSEMBLING TRAVEL MOTOR

(1) Disassemble main spool cover (36) into rear cover (34) using spanner and torque wrench and then disassemble spring (37), main spool assy (35).







2609A8TM03

(2) Disassemble wrench bolt (54) using torque wrench.



2609A8TM04

(3) Take out rear cover (34) into casing (1).



(4) Remove brake spring (30, 14EA)

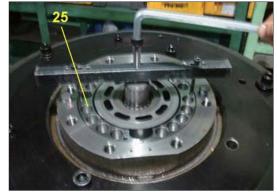


2609A8TM06

(5) Disassemble parking piston (25) using jig.



2609A8TM07



2609A8TM08

(6) Disassemble separate plate (24, 5EA) and friction plate (23, 4EA).









2609A8TM12

(7) Remove cylinder block kit. It is easier to work by placing the casing (1) horizontal.



2609A8TM13

(8) Disassemble cylinder block (18), retainer plate (21), piston assy (22), ball guide (20) and spring (19) into cylinder block kit.







2609A8TM15



2609A8TM16







2609A8TM18

(9) Disassemble swash plate (17) into casing (1).





2609A8TM20

- (10) Disassemble steel ball (15), swash piston (7) into casing (1).
- Mean Hole in the Casing(1) of two speed line is decomposed by injecting air.



2609A8TM21



2609A8TM22



2609A8TM23

(11) Disassemble pivot (16, 2EA) into casing (1).



2609A8TM24

(12) Disassemble snap ring (6) using pliers.



(13) Disassemble trust block (4) and oil-seal (3) into casing (1).



2609A8TM26



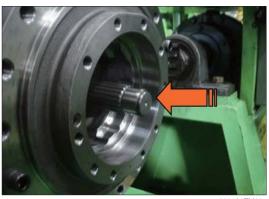
2609A8TM27

(14) In the casing (1), the arrow part of the shaft (8) using a rubber mallet taps and then disassemble the shaft (8) and bearing-roller

(10) to the other side.

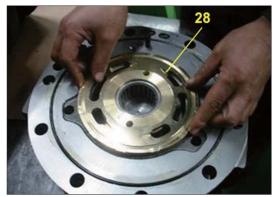


2609A8TM28



2609A8TM29

(15) Disassemble valve plate (28) into rear cover (34).



2609A8TM30

(16) Disassemble relief valve (46, 2EA) into rear cover (34) using the torque wrench.

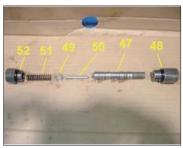






2609A8TM3

(17) Disassemble plug (48), connector (52) into rear cover (34) using the torque wrench and then disassemble spring (51), spring seat (49), parallel pin (50) and spool (47) in regular sequence.







2609A8TM35



2609A8TM36

(18) Disassemble plug (57) into rear cover (34).



2609A8TM37

(19) Disassemble plug (57) into rear cover (34) and then disassemble spring (56), check valve (55) into rear cover (34) in regular

sequence.



2609A8TM38



2609A8TM39

4. REASSEMBLING

1) ASSEMBLING MOTOR

- REAR COVER ASSY

(1) Assemble check valve (55), spring (56) into rear cover (34) and then assemble plug (57) using L-wrench.



2609A8TM40



2609A8TM41

(2) Apply loctite #242 on the NPTF 1/16 plug (2) and then assemble 12-NPTF 1/16 Plug (2) into rear cover(34).



2609A8TM42



2609A8TM43

(3) Assemble spool (47), parallel pin (50), spring seat (49) and spring (51) into rear cover (34) in regular sequence and then assemble plug (48) and connector (52).



2609A8TM44



2609A8TM45



2609A8TM46

(4) Assemble relief valve (42, 2EA) into rear cover (34).



2609A8TM47



2609A8TM48



2609A8TM49

(5) Press needle bearing (11) into rear cover (34) using jig.



2609A8TM50

(6) Assemble spring pin (32) and parallel pin (29) using small hammer.



- (7) Assemble valve plate (28) into rear cover (34).
- * Apply grease to the valve plate contact and then assemble valve plate into rear cover (34).



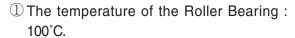
(8) Apply grease to the O-ring and then assemble O-ring into rear cover (34).



2609A8TM53

(9) Install casing (1) into assembling jig.





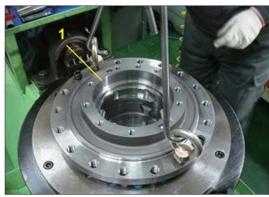
Using tool: Heater.

* Be careful not to damage the sliding surface for the Oil seal on the shaft.





2609A8TM56



2609A8TM54



2609A8TM57

(11) Assemble the heated needle bearing inner ring on the shaft (8).



2609A8TM58



2609A8TM59

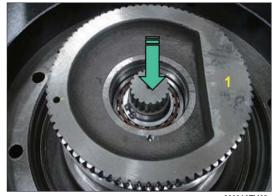
(12) Assemble snap ring (13) into Shaft (8) using pliers.



(13) Insert assembled shaft assy in the direction of the arrow into casing (1) using a rubber mallet.



2609A8TM61



(14) Assemble oil seal(3) into trust block (4) with a assembling jig and press it into casing (1). Caution the direction of oil seal (3).



2609A8TM63



(15) Assemble snap ring(6) into casing(1) using pliers.



2609A8TM65

(16) Apply the grease to pivot (16, 2EA) and then assemble pivot (16) into casing(1).



2609A8TM66

(17) Warm piston seal (8) and assemble it on swash piston (7) and then bind the piston seal (8) with a bend for a minute.

Remove the bend and assemble it into

casing (1).



2609A8TM67



2609A8TM6

(18) Apply the grease to steel ball(15) and then assemble steel ball(15) into casing(1).



2609A8TM69



2609A8TM70

(19) Apply the grease to swash plate(17) and then assemble swash plate(17) into casing(1).

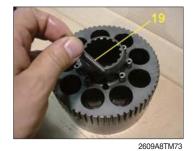


2609A8TM71



2609A8TM72

(20) Assemble spring (19), ball guide((20), retainer plate (21), piston assy (22) into cylinder block (18) in regular sequence.







2609A8TM74





2609A8TM77

(21) Stant the casing (1) and then assemble cylinder block kit into casing (1).



2609A8TM78

(22) Assemble separated plate (24), friction plate (23) into cylinder block in regular sequence.

Friction plate : 4EA Separated plate : 5EA

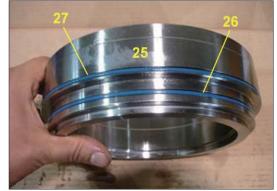






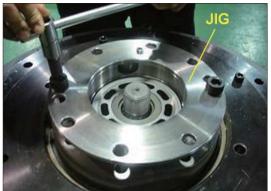
2609A8TM82

(23) Apply the grease to D-ring (26, 27) and then assemble D-ring (26, 27) into parking piston (25).



2609A8TM83

(24) Assemble parking piston into casing using jig.



2609A8TM84

(25) Assemble brake spring (30, 18EA).



2609A8TM85

(26) Put on the rear cover (34) on the casing (1).



(27) Assemble rear cover (34) into casing (1) and then tighten the wrench bolt (54, 55) using torque wrench.



(28) Assemble main spool assy (35) into rear cover (34) after checking the direction to be correct.



2609A8TM88



2609A8TM89

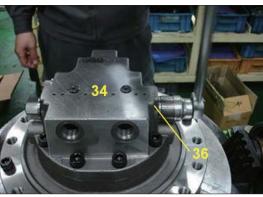
(29) Assemble spring (37), plug (36) into rear cover (34) in regular sequence and then plug (36) into rear cover (34) using torque wrench.



2609A8TM90

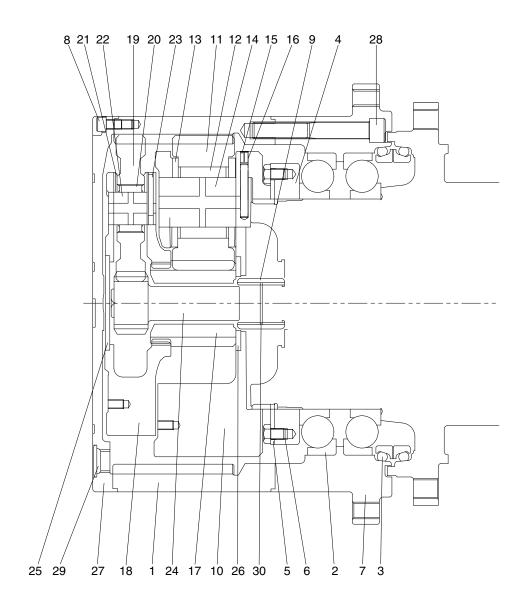


2609A8TM91



2609A8TM92

2) TRAVEL REDUCTION GEAR



2609A2TM03

1	Gear ring	11	Planetary gear 2	21	Thrust washer 1
2	Ball bearing	12	Needle bearing 2	22	Carrier pin 1
3	Floating seal assy	13	Thrust washer 2	23	Spring pin 1
4	Nut ring	14	Carrier pin 2	24	Sun gear 1
5	Lock plate	15	Spring pin 2	25	Thrust plate
6	Hexagon socket head bolt	16	Solid pin 2	26	Thrust plate
7	Housing	17	Sun gear 2	27	Cover
8	Hexagon socket head bolt	18	Carrier 1	28	Hexagon socket head bolt
9	Coupling	19	Planetary gear 1	29	Plug
10	Carrier 2	20	Needle bearing 1	30	Snap ring

6. DISASSEMBLING

1) GENERAL INSTRUCTIONS

▲ Combustibles such as white kerosene are used for washing parts.

These combustibles are easily ignited, and could result in fire or injury.

Be very careful when using.

▲ Internal parts are coated with gear oil during disassembling and are slippery.
If a part slips off from your hand and fails, it could result in bodily injury or could damage the park.

Be very careful when handling.

(1) Therefore, disassembling and assembling works should be performed on the clean place where dusts hardly gather.

Tools and kerosene to wash parts should also be clean and handled with great care.

(2) Bofore disassembling, review the sectional drawing and prepare the required parts, depending on the purpose and the range of disassembling.

Seals, O-rings, etc., if once disassembled, are not reusable.

There are some parts that should be replaced as a subassembly.

Consult with the parts manual in advance.

▲ Take great care not to pinch your hand between parts while disassembling nor let fall parts on your foot while lifting them.

2) DISASSEMBLING TRAVEL REDUCTION GEAR

(1) Preparation for disassembling

- ① The reduction units removed from excavator are usually covered with mud. Wash outside of propelling unit and dry it.
- ② Locate reducer in order for drain port to be at the lowest level loosen taper screw plug of drain port, and drain oil from reduction gear.
- While oil is still hot, inside of the unit may be pressurized.
- ▲ Take care of the hot oil gushing out of the unit when loosening the plug.
- 3 Mark for mating

Put marks on each mating parts when disassembling so as to reassemble correctly as before.

(2) Set the reduction unit on table

- ① Remove 7/16-14UNC hexagon socket head bolts at 3 places from cover almost equally apart each other, and then install 7/16-14UNC eye bolts.
- ▲ Take great care not to pinch your hand between parts while disassembling nor let fall parts on your foot while lifting them.

(3) Removing cover

- ① Remove 22 socket bolts (7/16-14UNC) those are attached to ring gear.
- 2 Cover is stuck (27) to ring gear (1). So use sharp chisel for removing cover (27) from ring gear (1).



2609A8TM02

(4) Removing sun gear No.1

Pull sun gear No.1 (24) vertically slow after removing thrust plate (25).



(5) Removing carrier No.1 sub assembly

Pull away carrier No.1 (18) with attached eyebolt (M10) that is assembled to hole on carrier sub-assembly.



2609A8TM04

(6) Removing sun gear No.2
Pull away sun gear No.2 (17) for removing.



2609A8TM05

- (7) Deassembleing carrier No.2 sub-assembly Attach eye-bolt (M10) to the hole of carrier No.2 (10), and remove the carrier No.2 sub-assembly to lift up slowly.
- ※ Keep horizontal to ground and make sure the eye-bolts to be safe operation.



2609A8TM06

(8) Take away coupling
Take away the coupling (9) from casing (1).



2609A8TM07

(9) Lock plate

Release four hex head bolts (6, M12) and remove lock plate (5).



2600A8TM08

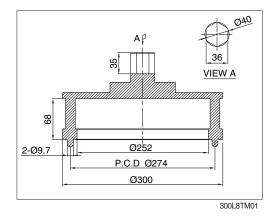
(10) Nut ring

Release nut ring with removing jig.



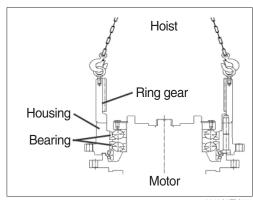
PARTMO9

Remove the ring nut by using the special tool for removing the ring nut.



(11) Housing sub-assembly

Lift up housing part slowly with hoist after attaching eye-bolt (7/16-14UNC) on it If you hit softly the center of motor with hammer and particular jig, you can remove the device easily.



2609A8TM10

(12) Ring gear

① Reverse the housing sub-assembly part with machine, and remove floating seal (3) from the inside.



2609A8TM11

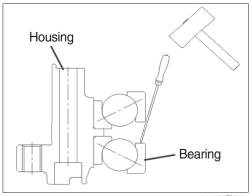
2 Release 25 hex wrench bolts (28. M18) and remove ring gear (1) from housing (7).



2609A8TM12

(13) Angular Bearing

Put the housing sub-assembly (7) like this figure. And hit each opposite side of bearing with driver and hammer.



2609A8TM13

(14) Carrier No.1 sub-assembly

① Lay it on deassemblig jig. And remove pin No.1 (22) with press machine.



2609A8TM14

② Then remove planet gear No.1 (19) and thrust washer No.1 (21) from carrier No.1 (18).



2609A8TM15

(15) Carrier No.2 sub-assembly

Same as carrier No.1 (12) sub-asembly.



2609A8TM16

(16) Coupling

Remove snap ring (30) inside coupling (9) with nipper.



2609A8TM17

7. ASSEMBLY REDUTION UNIT

1) GENERAL NOTES

- (1) Clean every part by kerosene and dry them by air blow.
- (2) Surfaces to be applied by loctite must be decreased by solvent.
- (3) Check every part for any abnormal.
- (4) Each hexagon socket head bolt should be used with loctite No.242 applied on its threads.
- (5) Apply gear oil slightly on each part before assembling.
- ▲ Take great care not to pinch your hand between parts or tools while assembling nor let fall parts on your foot while lifting them.
 Inspection before reassembling.

Thrust washer

- · Check if there are seizure, abnormal wear or uneven wear.
- · Check if wear is over the allowable limit.

Gear

- · Check if there are pitting or seizure on the tooth surface.
- · Check if there are cracks on the root of tooth by die check.

Bearing

· Rotate by hand to see if there are something unusual such as noise or uneven rotation.

Floating seal

· Check flaw or score on sliding surfaces or O-ring.

2) ASSEMBLING CARRIER 1 SUB-ASSY

- (1) Put carrier No.1 (18) on the flat table.
- (2) Insert needle bearing No.1 (20) in planet gear No.1 (20), and attach 2 thrust washers No.1 (21) on the both side of planet gear No.1. then assemble them in carrier No.1 (18).
- When assembling thrust washer, rounded edge-side should be facing casting side of carrier.
- (3) Insert pin No.1 (22) into pinhole of carrier correctly.
- Insert careful the pin not to scratch thrust washer and needle bearing.



2609A8TM18



2609A8TM19

- (4) Press spring pin No.1 (23) with jig and strike round spring pinhole (2 symmetrical point) with tool.
- * After striking, draw the line by marker pen.
- Check swinging conditon of planet gears.
- (5) Press two more pins and spring pins on the same way.



2609A8TM20

3) ASSEMBLING CARRIER 2 SUB-ASSY

(1) Put thrust plate (26) inside of carrier No.2 (10).



2609A8TM21

- (2) Insert needle bearing No.2 (12) in planet gear No.2 (11) and attach 2 thrust washers No.2 (13) on the both side of planet gear No.2. Then assemble them in carrier No.2 (10).
- * When assembling thrust washer, rounded edge-side should be facing casting side of carrier.
- (3) Insert pin No.2 (14) into pinhole of carrier No.2
- * Insert careful pin No.2 not to scratch thrust washer and needle bearing.
- (4) Insert solid pin No.2 (16) with pressing jig and insert spring pin No.2 (15) in the same position. When insertion is done, strike inner circle of spring pin (2 symmetrical point) with tool.
- After striking, draw the line by marker pen.
- Check the spining condition of planet gear.
- (5) Insert two more pins and spring pins on the same way.



2609A8TM22



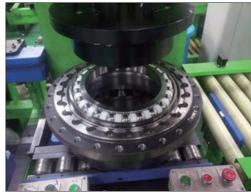
2609A8TM23

4) ANGULAR BEARING

- (1) Put the jig on housing (7) and insert angular bearing (2) into it with pressing machine, and turn down the upside of housing (7) by reversing machine.
- Check the direction of bearing when inserting



(2) Insert angular bearing (2) into reversed housing (7) on the same way.



5) ASSEMBLING FLOATING SEAL

(1) Paint alchole on floating seal (3) and polish it.



- (2) Put floating seal (3) on the right position of housing (3) and insert it by pressing jig. After complete, check the condition by lifting with hand softly.
- * Keep clean on surface of floating seal while assembling.



2609A8TM27

- (3) Put the gauge for seal measurement on floating seal (3) and check the horizontal angle by gauge scale.
- * Two gauge scales should be same. (pass inspection)



2609A8TM28

(4) Attach floating seal to motor that will be assembled with housing (on the same way to (1), (2))



- (5) Put the measuring jig on floating seal (3) and check the horizontal angle condition with both gauge scale.
- * Two gauge scales should be same. (pass inspection)



6) ASSEMBLING RING GEAR

- (1) Put ring gear (1) on contact surface (should be upside) of housing (7).
- (2) Paint loctite #515 on ring gear (1) and put on housing (7). Then assemble 25 hexwrench bolts (28, M18)
- Paint loctite #262 on hex-wrench bolts (28) before assembling.
- % Tightening torque: 38.5 \pm 3.8 kgf \cdot m $(278.5 \pm 27.5 lbf \cdot ft)$
- * Bolts should be assembled with lust preventing oil.



7) ASSEMBLING NUT RING

- (1) Put housing (7) sub-assembly upside down (ring gear side is up), and attach it to motor by lifting with hoist. (shaking it lightly)
- (2) When housing (7) sub-assembly is set, put nut ring (4) on it, and assemble with jig.
- Tightening torque for assembling nut ring: $66\pm6.0 \text{ kgf-m } (477.3\pm43.3 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft})$
- * Floating seal should not be damaged or separated while assembling.



2609A8TM32

8) ASSEMBLING LOCK PLATE

- (1) Put lock plate (5) on nut ring (4) to fit to M12 bolt hole. Then assemble 4 he head bolts (6, M12)
- * Paint loctite #262 on hex-head bolts.
- ※ Tightening torque: 6.05±0.6 kgf ⋅ m $(43.8 \pm 4.3 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft})$
- * Bolts should be assembled with lust preventing oil.



2609A8TM33

9) ASSEMBLING COUPLING

(1) Attach snap ring (3) into coupling (9) with nipper.



2609A8TM34

(2) Put coupling (9) on motor shaft to fit.



2609A8TM35

10) ASSEMBLING NO.2 CARRIER SUB-ASSY

- Lift carrier No.2 subassembly and put on ring gear (1), and fit it into internal side of ring gear (1). Then hit urethan hammer to fit.
- Check turning and cocking condition before assembling.



2609A8TM36

11) ASSEMBLING NO.2 SUN GEAR

(1) Insert sun gear No.2 (17) in the middle of carrier No.2 sub assembly and make it fit in carrier No.2.



2609A8TM37

12) ASSEMBLING NO.1 CARRIER SUB-ASSY

- Lift carrier No.1 sub-assembly and put it into ring gear (1) and shake carrier No.1 to fit into ring gear.
- Check turning and cocking condition before assembling.



2609A8TM38

13) SWINGING TORQUE INSPECTION

(1) Attach inspection jig before assembling sun gear No.1 (24).



2609A8TM39

- (2) Attach torque wrench to the jig, check the torque when it swings.
- % Swinging torque : below 3.0 kgf · m (21.7 lbf · ft)



2609A8TM40

14) ASSEMBLING NO.1 SUN GEAR

(1) Remove the jig and wrench after torque inspection complete. And assemble sun gear No.1 (24) with pushing round to fix to the center of carrier No.1



2609A8TM41

15) ASSEMBLING THRUST PLATE

- (1) Put thrust plate (25) on carrier No.1 sub assembly. And paint loctite #515 on flat side of ring gear (1).
- * When assembling thrust washer, rounded edge-side should be facing casting side of carrier.



2609A8TM42

16) ASSEMBLING COVER

- (1) Attach cover on ring gear (1) with assembling 22 hex-wrench bolts (8, 7/16-16UNC).
- Paint loctite #262 on screw of hex bolts.
- % Tightening torque: 8.1 \pm 0.8 kgf \cdot m $(58.6 \pm 5.8 lbf \cdot ft)$
- * Bolts should be assembled with lust preventing oil.



2609A8TM43

17) ASSEMBLING OIL INJECTION

(1) Inject the oil (10 ℓ) through PF3/4 hole on cover (27).



2609A8TM44

18) ASSEMBLING PLUG

(1) Assemble 3 plugs (29, PF3/4) after oil injection complete.

 $\ensuremath{\texttt{\#}}$ Tightening torque : 10 \pm 1.0 kgf \cdot m

(72.3 \pm 7.2 lbf \cdot ft)



2609A8TM45

GROUP 7 RCV LEVER

1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL

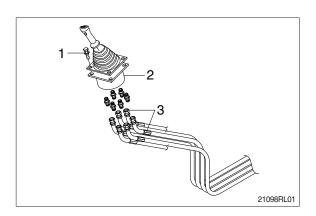
1) REMOVAL

- (1) Lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.
- (2) Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.
- (3) Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.
- ▲ Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.
- (4) Loosen the socket bolt (1).
- (5) Remove the cover of the console box.
- (6) Disconnect pilot line hoses (3).
- (7) Remove the pilot valve assembly (2).
- When removing the pilot valve assembly, check that all the hoses have been disconnected.

2) INSTALL

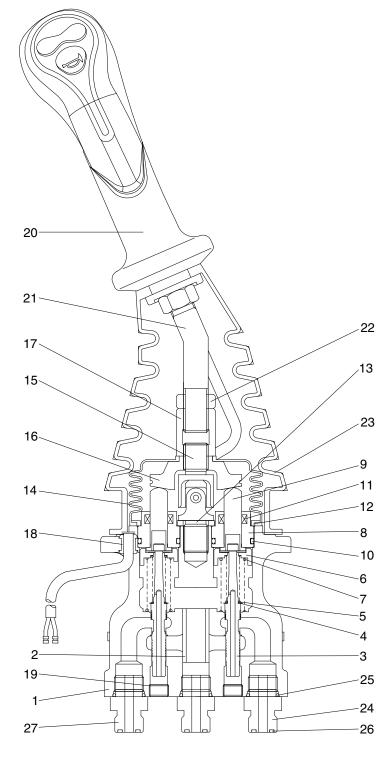
- Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.
- (2) Confirm the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.





2. DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

1) STRUCTURE



Plug Case Joint assembly 22 Nut 1 8 15 2 Bushing 9 Push rod 16 Swash plate 23 Boot Adjusting nut Last guard filter 3 Spool 10 O-ring 17 24 Bushing 4 Shim 11 Rod seal 18 25 O-ring 12 Plate 5 Spring 19 Plug 26 O-ring 6 Spring seat Spacer Handle assembly 27 Connector 13 20 7 Boot 21 Handle bar Spring 14

300L2RL06

2) TOOLS AND TIGHTENING TORQUE

(1) Tools

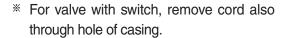
Tool name	Remark		
Allen wrench	6 B		
Cronno	22		
Spanne	27		
(+) Driver	Length 150		
(-) Driver	Width 4~5		
Torque wrench	Capable of tightening with the specified torques		

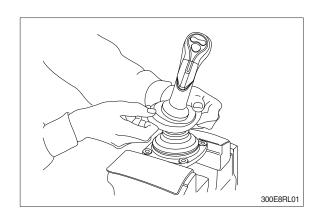
(2) Tightening torque

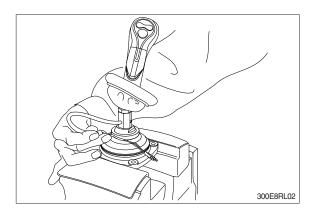
Part name	Item	Size	Torque		
Faithaine			kgf ⋅ m	lbf ⋅ ft	
Joint	15	M14	3.5	25.3	
Swash plate	16	M14	5.0±0.35	36.2±2.5	
Adjusting nut	17	M14	5.0±0.35	36.2±2.5	
Lock nut	22	M14	5.0±0.35	36.2±2.5	

3) DISASSEMBLY

- * Procedures are based on the type L1.
- (1) Clean pilot valve with kerosene.
- * Put blind plugs into all ports
- (2) Fix pilot valve in a vise with copper (or lead) sheets.
- (3) Remove end of boot (23) from case (1) and take it out upwards.



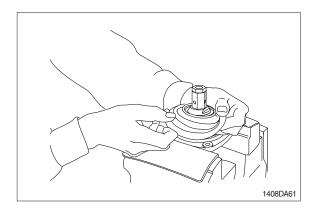




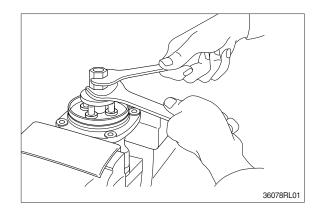
(4) Loosen lock nut (22) and adjusting nut (17) with spanners on them respectively, and take out handle section as one body.

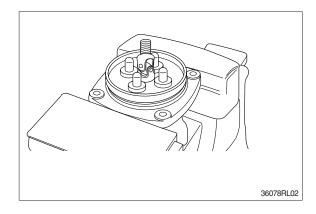


(5) Remove the boot (14).

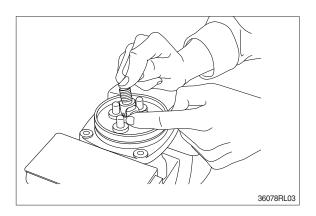


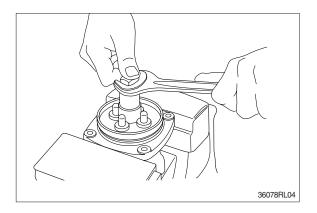
(6) Loosen adjusting nut (17) and swash plate (16) with spanners on them respectively, and remove them.



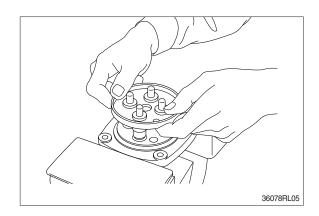


- (7) Turn joint anticlockwise to loosen it, utilizing jig (Special tool).
- When return spring (7) is strong in force, plate (12), plug (8) and push rod (9) will come up on loosening joint. Pay attention to this.

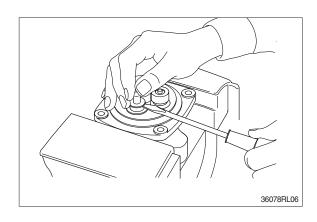


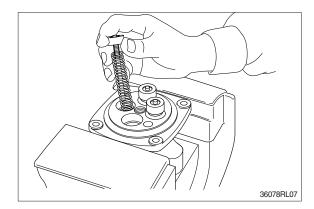


(8) Remove plate (12).

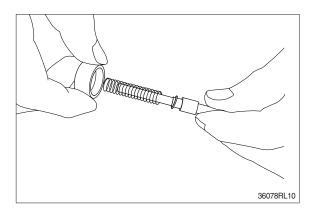


- (9) When return spring (7) is weak in force, plug (8) stays in casing because of sliding resistance of O-ring.
- * Take it out with minus screwdriver. Take it out, utilizing external periphery groove of plug and paying attention not to damage it by partial loading.
- During taking out, plug may jump up due to return spring (7) force.
 Pay attention to this.
- (10) Remove reducing valve subassembly and return spring (7) out of casing.
- * Record relative position of reducing valve subassembly and return springs.

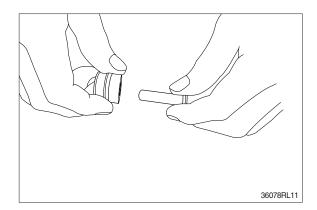




- (11) Separate spool (3), spring seat (6), spring (5) and shim (4) individually.
- * Pay attention not to damage spool surface.
- * Record original position of spring seat (6).
- * Until being assembled, they should be handled as one subassembly group.

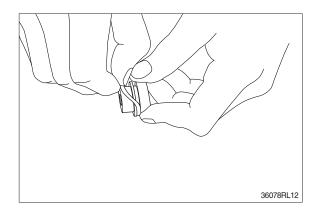


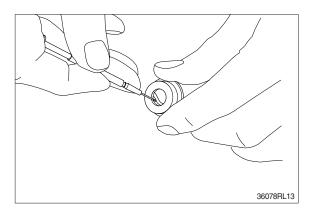
(12) Take push rod (9) out of plug (8).



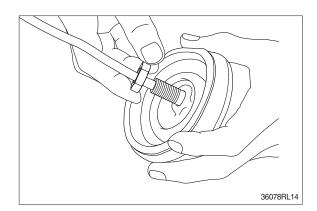
(13) Remove O-ring (10) and seal (11) from plug (8).

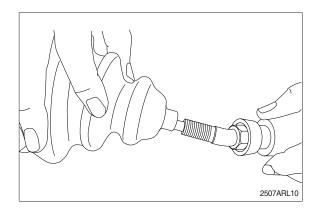
Use small minus screwdriver or so on to remove this seal.





(14) Remove lock nut (22) and then boot (23).





(15) Cleaning of parts

- ① Put all parts in rough cleaning vessel filled with kerosene and clean them (rough cleaning).
- If dirty part is cleaned with kerosene just after putting it in vessel, it may be damaged. Leave it in kerosene for a while to loosen dust and dirty oil.
- ** If this kerosene is polluted, parts will be damaged and functions of reassembled valve will be degraded.
 - Therefore, control cleanliness of kerosene fully.
- ② Put parts in final cleaning vessel filled with kerosene, turning it slowly to clean them even to their insides (finish cleaning).
- ** Do not dry parts with compressed air, since they will be damaged and/or rusted by dust and moisture in air.

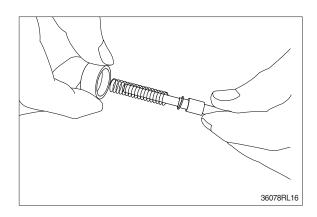
(16) Rust prevention of parts

Apply rust-preventives to all parts.

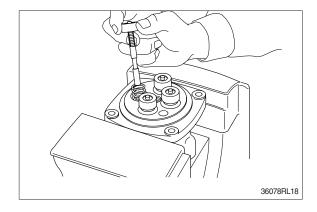
** If left as they after being cleaned, they will be rusted and will not display their functions fully after being reassembled.

4) ASSEMBLY

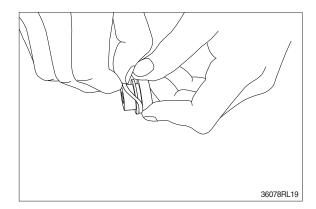
(1) Put shim (4), springs (5) and spring seat (6) onto spool (3) in this order.



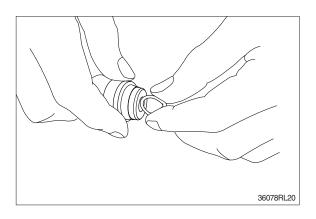
- (2) Assemble spring (7) into casing (1).
 Assemble reducing valve subassembly into casing.
- * Assemble them to their original positions.



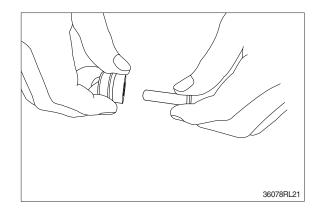
(3) Assemble O-ring (10) onto plug (8).



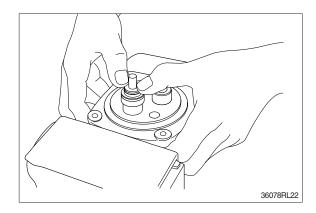
- (4) Assemble seal (11) to plug (8).
- * Assemble seal in such lip direction as shown below.



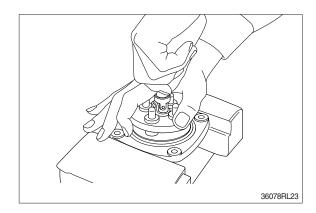
- (5) Assemble push rod (9) to plug (8).
- * Apply working oil on push-rod surface.



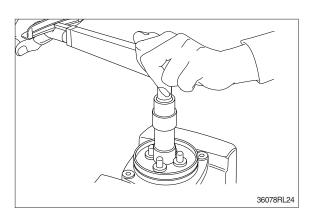
- (6) Assemble plug subassembly to casing.
- When return spring is weak in force, subassembly stops due to resistance of O-ring.



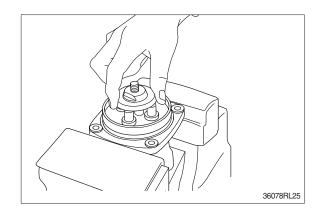
(7) When return spring is strong in force, assemble 4 sets at the same time, utilizing plate (12), and tighten joint (15) temporarily.



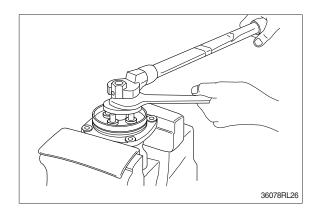
- (8) Fit plate (12).
- (9) Tighten joint (15) with the specified torque to casing, utilizing jig.



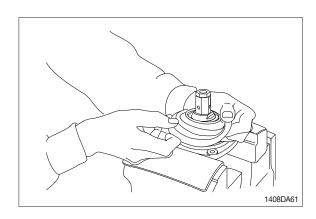
- (10) Assemble swash plate (16) to joint (15).
- Screw it to position that it contacts with 4 push rods evenly.
- * Do not screw it over.



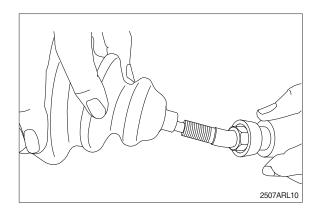
- (11) Assemble adjusting nut (17), apply spanner to width across flat of plate (16) to fix it, and tighten adjusting nut to the specified torque.
- During tightening, do not change position of disk.

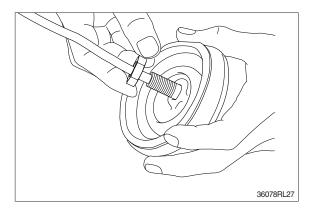


(12) Fit boot (14) to plate.

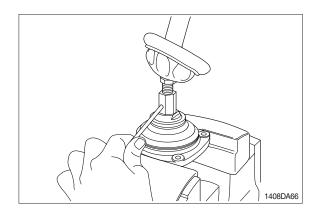


(13) Fit boot (23) and lock nut (22), and handle subassembly is assembled completely.

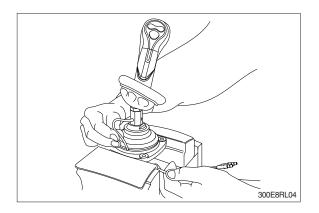




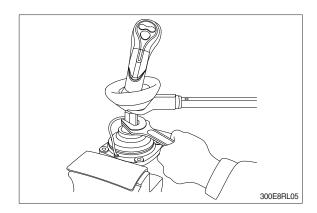
(14) Pull out cord and tube through adjusting nut hole provided in direction 60° to 120° from casing hole.



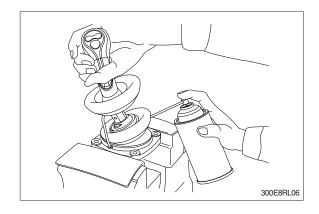
- (15) Assemble bushing (18) to plate and pass cord and tube through it.
- * Provide margin necessary to operation.



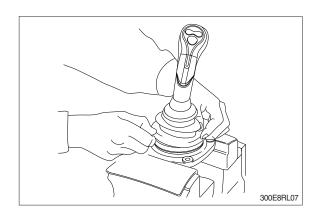
(16) Determine handle direction, tighten lock nut (22) to specified torque to fix handle.



(17) Apply grease to rotating section of joint and contacting faces of disk and push rod.



- (18) Assemble lower end of bellows to casing.
- (19) Inject volatile rust-preventives through all ports and then put blind plugs in ports.



GROUP 8 TURNING JOINT

1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL

1) REMOVAL

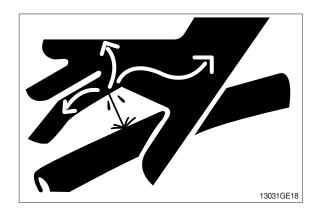
- (1) Lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.
- (2) Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.
- (3) Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.
- ♠ Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury.
- When pipes and hoses are disconnected, the oil inside the piping will flow out, so catch it in oil pan.
- (4) Disconnect all hoses.
- (5) Sling the turning joint assembly (1) and remove the mounting bolt (2).

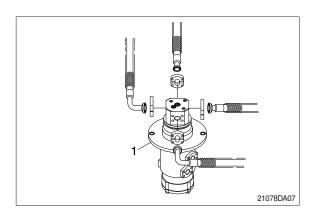
Weight: 55 kg (120 lb)

Tightening torque : 12.3 \pm 1.3 kgf \cdot m

 $(89\pm9.4 lbf \cdot ft)$

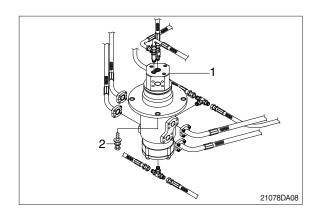
- (6) Remove the turning joint assembly.
- When removing the turning joint, check that all the hoses have been disconnected.





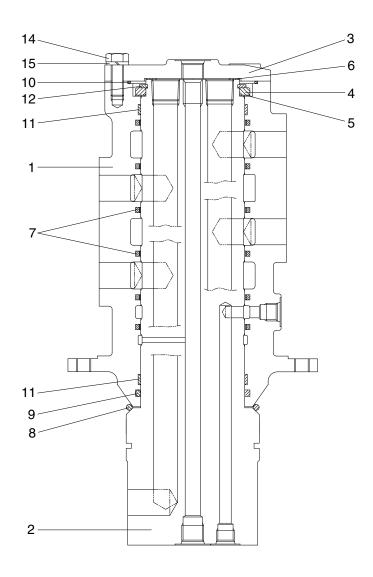
2) INSTALL

- (1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.
- * Take care of turning joint direction.
- Assemble hoses to their original positions.
- Confirm the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.



2. DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

1) STRUCTURE

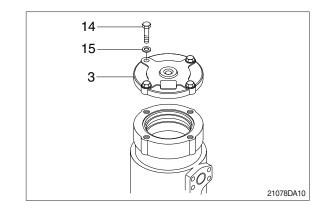


21098TJ01

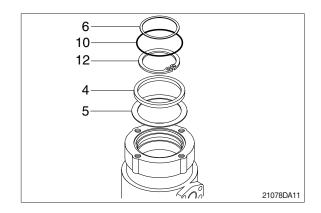
1	Hub	6	Shim	11	Wear ring
2	Shaft	7	Slipper seal	12	Retainer ring
3	Cover	8	O-ring	13	Plug
4	Spacer	9	O-ring	14	Hexagon bolt
5	Shim	10	O-ring	15	Spring washer

2) DISASSEMBLY

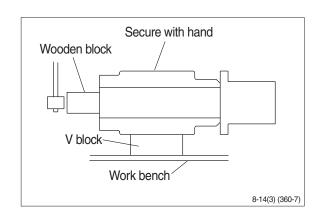
- Before the disassembly, clean the turning joint.
- (1) Remove bolts (14), washer (15) and cover (3).



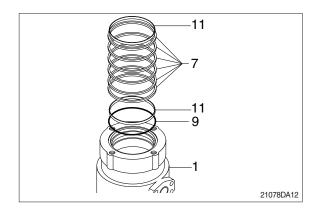
- (2) Remove shim (6) and O-ring (10).
- (3) Remove retainer ring (12), spacer (4) and shim (5).



- (4) Place hub (1) on a V-block and by using a wood buffer at the shaft end, hit out shaft(2) to about 1/2 from the body with a hammer.
- * Take care not to damage the shaft (2) when remove hub (1) or rest it sideway.
- Put a fitting mark on hub (1) and shaft (2).

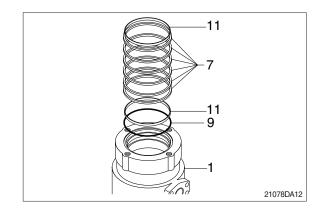


(5) Remove six slipper seals (7) and O-ring (9), two wear ring (11) from hub (1).

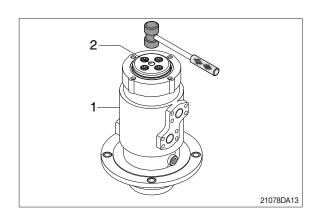


3) ASSEMBLY

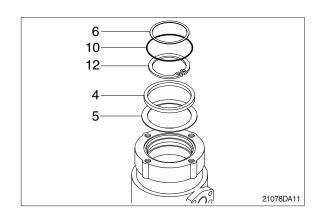
- Clean all parts.
- As a general rule, replace oil seals and O-ring.
- Coat the sliding surfaces of all parts with engine oil or grease before installing.
- (1) Fix seven slipper seal (7) and O-ring (9), two wear ring (11) to hub (1).
- (2) Fit O-ring (8) to shaft (2).



(3) Set shaft (2) on block, tap hub (1) with a plastic hammer to install.

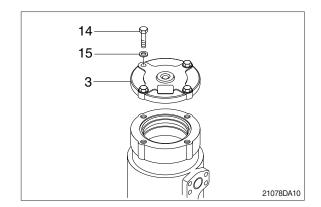


- (4) Fit shim (5), spacer (4) and retainer ring (12) to shaft (2).
- (5) Fit O-ring (10) to hub (1).
- (6) Fit shim (6) to shaft (2).



(7) Install cover (3) to body (1) and tighten bolts (14).

Torque : 10~12.5 kgf \cdot m (72.3~90.4 lbf \cdot ft)



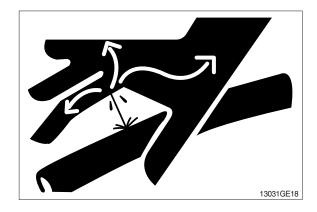
GROUP 9 BOOM, ARM AND BUCKET CYLINDER

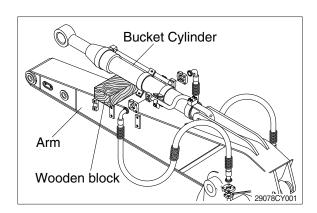
1. REMOVAL AND INSTALL

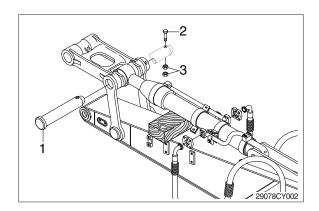
1) BUCKET CYLINDER

(1) Removal

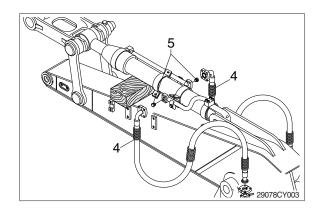
- Expand the arm and bucket fully, lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.
- ** Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.
- ▲ Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.
- ** Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury. Fit blind plugs in the hoses after disconnecting them, to prevent dirt or dust from entering.
- ① Set block between bucket cylinder and arm.
- ② Remove bolt (2), nut (3) and pull out pin (1).
- * Tie the rod with wire to prevent it from coming out.



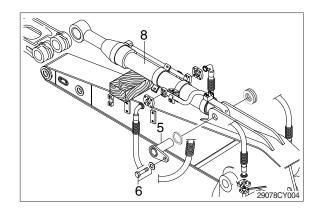




③ Disconnect bucket cylinder hoses (4) and put plugs (5) on cylinder pipe.



- ④ Sling bucket cylinder assembly (8) and remove bolt (6) then pull out pin (5).
- ⑤ Remove bucket cylinder assembly (8).
 - · Weight: 270 kg (600 lb)

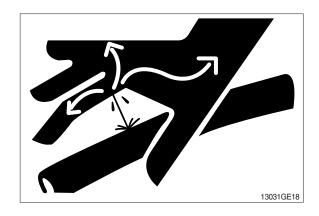


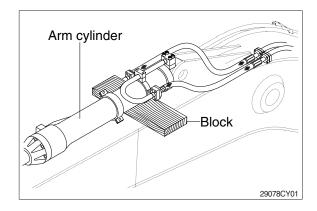
- ① Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.
- ♠ When aligning the mounting position of the pin, do not insert your fingers in the pin hole.
- * Bleed the air from the bucket cylinder.
- * Confirm the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.

2) ARM CYLINDER

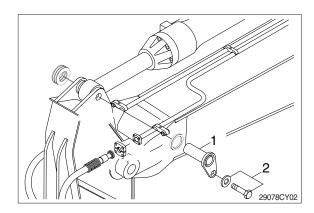
(1) Removal

- Expand the arm and bucket fully, lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.
- * Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.
- ▲ Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.
- * Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury. Fit blind plugs in the hoses after disconnecting them, to prevent dirt or dust from entering.
- ① Set block between arm cylinder and boom.

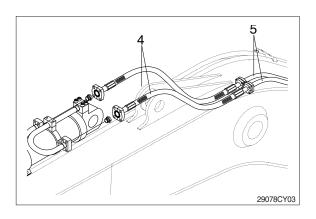




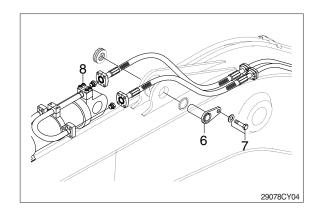
- ② Remove bolt (2) and pull out pin (1).
- * Tie the rod with wire to prevent it from coming out.



- ③ Disconnect arm cylinder hoses (4) and put plugs on cylinder pipe.
- ④ Disconnect greasing pipings (5).



- Sling arm assembly (8) and remove bolt(7) then pull out pin (6).
- ⑥ Remove arm cylinder assembly (8).
 - · Weight: 380 kg (840 lb)

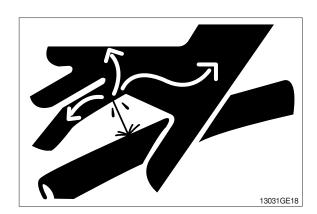


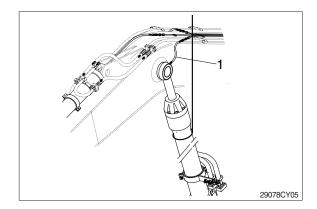
- Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.
- ♠ When aligning the mounting position of the pin, do not insert your fingers in the pin hole.
- * Bleed the air from the arm cylinder.
- * Confirm the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.

3) BOOM CYLINDER

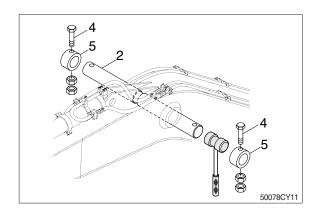
(1) Removal

- Expand the arm and bucket fully, lower the work equipment to the ground and stop the engine.
- ** Operate the control levers and pedals several times to release the remaining pressure in the hydraulic piping.
- ▲ Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.
- * Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrate the skin causing serious injury. Fit blind plugs in the hoses after disconnecting them, to prevent dirt or dust from entering.
- ① Disconnect greasing hoses (1).
- ② Sling boom cylinder assembly.

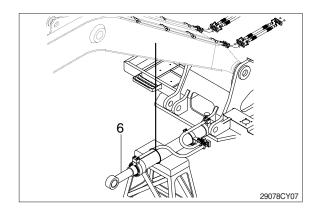




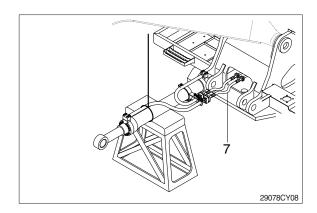
- ③ Remove bolt (4), pin stopper (5) and pull out pin (2).
- * Tie the rod with wire to prevent it from coming out.



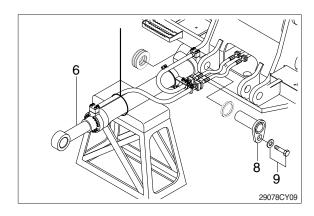
④ Lower the boom cylinder assembly (6) on a stand.



⑤ Disconnect boom cylinder hoses (7) and put plugs on cylinder pipe.



- 6 Remove bolt (9) and pull out pin (8).
- ? Remove boom cylinder assembly (6).
 - · Weight : 300 kg (660 lb)

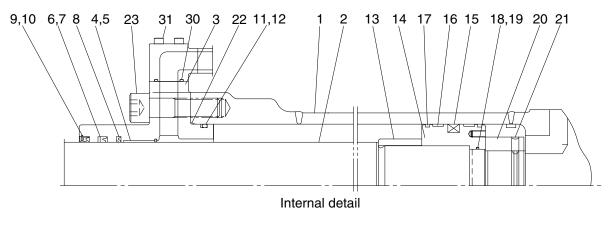


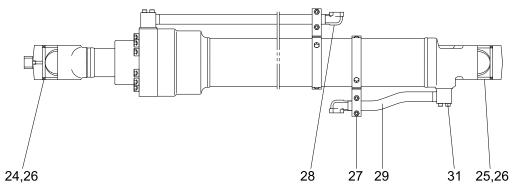
- ① Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.
- ♠ When aligning the mounting position of the pin, do not insert your fingers in the pin hole.
- * Bleed the air from the boom cylinder.
- * Conformed the hydraulic oil level and check the hydraulic oil leak or not.

2. DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY

1) STRUCTURE

(1) Bucket cylinder

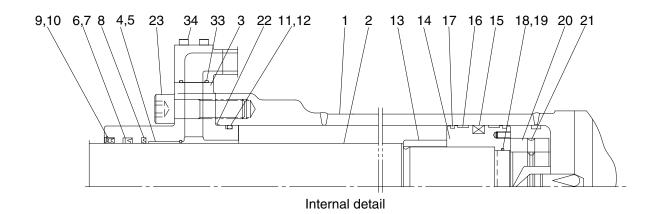


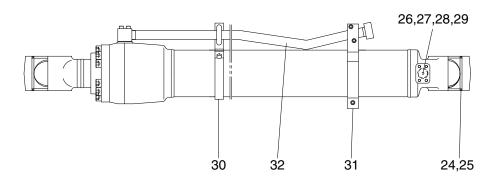


32098BK01

1	Tube assembly	12	Back up ring	23	Hexagon socket head bol
2	Rod assembly	13	Cushion ring	24	Pin bushing
3	Gland	14	Piston	25	Pin bushing
4	DD2 bushing	15	Piston seal	26	Dust seal
5	Snap ring	16	Wear ring	27	Band assembly
6	Rod seal	17	Dust ring	28	Pipe assembly
7	Back up ring	18	O-ring	29	Pipe assembly
8	Buffer ring	19	Back up ring	30	O-ring
9	Dust wiper	20	Lock nut	31	Hexagon socket head bolt
10	Snap ring	21	Hexagon socket set screw		
11	O-ring	22	O-ring		

(2) Arm cylinder

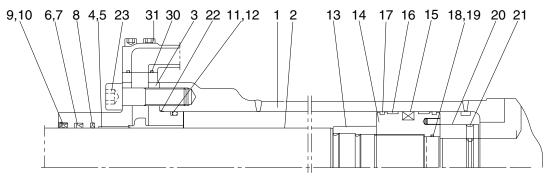




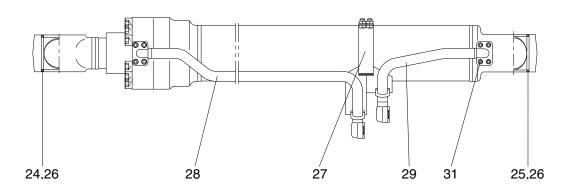
32098AM01

1	Tube assembly	13	Cushion ring	25	Dust seal
2	Rod assembly	14	Piston	26	Check valve
3	Gland	15	Piston seal	27	Coil spring
4	DD2 bushing	16	Wear ring	28	O-ring
5	Snap ring	17	Dust ring	29	Plug
6	Rod seal	18	O-ring	30	Band assembly
7	Back up ring	19	Back up ring	31	Band assembly
8	Buffer ring	20	Lock nut	32	Pipe assembly
9	Dust wiper	21	Hexagon socket set screw	33	O-ring
10	Snap ring	22	O-ring	34	Hexagon socket head bolt
11	O-ring	23	Hexagon socket head bolt		
12	Back up ring	24	Pin bushing		

(3) Boom cylinder



Internal detail



330F8BO01

1	Tube assembly	12	Back up ring	23	Hexagon socket head bolt
2	Rod assembly	13	Cushion ring	24	Pin bushing
3	Gland	14	Piston	25	Pin bushing
4	DD2 bushing	15	Piston seal	26	Dust seal
5	Snap ring	16	Wear ring	27	Band assembly
6	Rod seal	17	Dust ring	28	Pipe assembly
7	Back up ring	18	O-ring	29	Pipe assembly
8	Buffer ring	19	Back up ring	30	O-ring
9	Dust wiper	20	Lock nut	31	Hexagon socket head bolt
10	Snap ring	21	Hexagon socket set screw		
11	O-ring	22	O-ring		

2) TOOLS AND TIGHTENING TORQUE

(1) Tools

Tools	Remark		
	6		
Allen wrench	8 B		
en wendi	14		
	17		
Spanner	7		
Sparrier	8		
(-) Driver	Small and large sizes		
Torque wrench Capable of tightening with the specified torque			

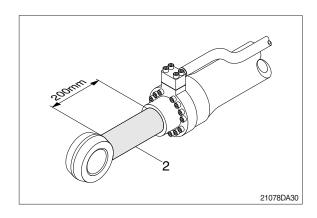
(2) Tightening torque

	Item	Size	Torque		
Part name		item	Size	kgf ⋅ m	lbf ⋅ ft
	Bucket cylinder	23	M18	32.0±3.0	232±21.7
Socket head bolt	Boom cylinder	23	M20	46.0±5.0	333±7.2
	Arm cylinder	23	M22	63.0±6.0	457±43.4
	Bucket cylinder	31	M12 9.4±1.0		68.0±7.2
Socket head bolt	Boom cylinder	31	M12	9.4±1.0	68.0±7.2
	Arm cylinder	34	M12	9.4±1.0	68.0±7.2
	Bucket cylinder	20	-	100±10.0	723±72.3
Lock nut	Boom cylinder	20	-	100±10.0	723±72.3
	Arm cylinder 20 -	-	150±15.0	1085±108	
	Bucket cylinder	14	-	150±15.0	1085±108
Piston	Boom cylinder	14	-	150±15.0	1085±108
	Arm cylinder	14	-	200±20.0	1447±145

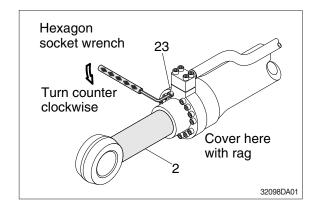
3) DISASSEMBLY

(1) Remove cylinder head and piston rod

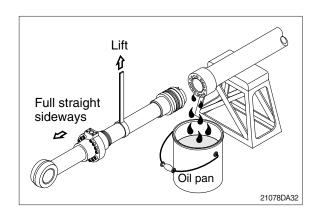
- * Procedures are based on the bucket cylinder.
- ① Hold the clevis section of the tube in a vise.
- ** Use mouth pieces so as not to damage the machined surface of the cylinder tube. Do not make use of the outside piping as a locking means.
- ② Pull out rod assembly (2) about 200 mm (7.1 in). Because the rod assembly is rather heavy, finish extending it with air pressure after the oil draining operation.



- ③ Loosen and remove socket bolts (23) of the gland in sequence.
- ** Cover the extracted rod assembly (2) with rag to prevent it from being accidentally damaged during operation.

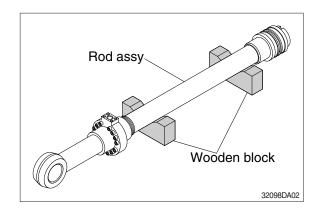


- ① Draw out cylinder head and rod assembly together from tube assembly (1).
- ** Since the rod assembly is heavy in this case, lift the tip of the rod assembly (2) with a crane or some means and draw it out. However, when rod assembly (2) has been drawn out to approximately two thirds of its length, lift it in its center to draw it completely.



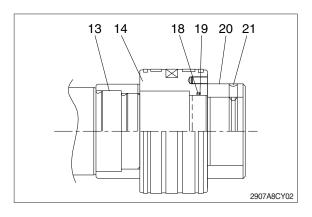
Note that the plated surface of rod assembly (2) is to be lifted. For this reason, do not use a wire sling and others that may damage it, but use a strong cloth belt or a rope.

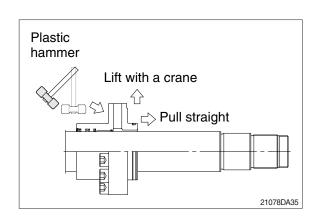
- ⑤ Place the removed rod assembly on a wooden V-block that is set level.
- * Cover a V-block with soft rag.



(2) Remove piston and cylinder head

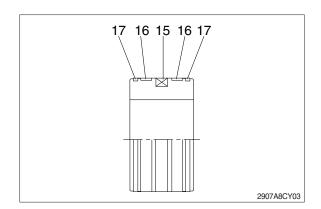
- ① Loosen sochet set screw (21) and remove lock nut (20).
- Since lock nut (20) is tightened to a high torque, use a hydraulic and power wrench that utilizers a hydraulic cylinder, to remove the lock nut (20).
- ② Remove piston assembly (14), back up ring (19), and O-ring (18).
- ③ Remove the cylinder head assembly from rod assembly (2).
- If it is too heavy to move, move it by striking the flanged part of cylinder head with a plastic hammer.
- ** Pull it straight with cylinder head assembly lifted with a crane.
 Exercise care so as not to damage the lip of rod bushing (4) and packing (5,6,7,8,9,10) by the threads of rod assembly (2).





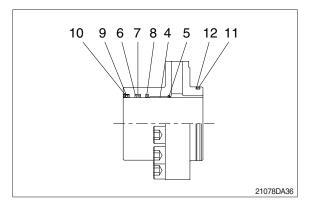
(3) Disassemble the piston assembly

- ① Remove wear ring (16).
- ② Remove dust ring (17) and piston seal (15).
- Exercise care in this operation not to damage the grooves.



(4) Disassemble cylinder head assembly

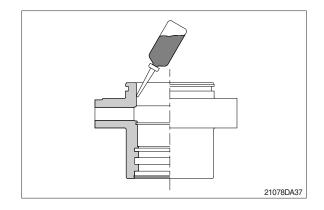
- ① Remove back up ring (12) and O-ring (11).
- ② Remove snap ring (10), dust wiper (9).
- ③ Remove back up ring (7), rod seal (6), buffer ring (8) and snap sing (5).
- Exercise care in this operation not to damage the grooves.
- * Do not remove seal and ring, if does not damaged.



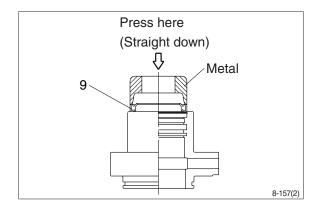
3) ASSEMBLY

(1) Assemble cylinder head assembly

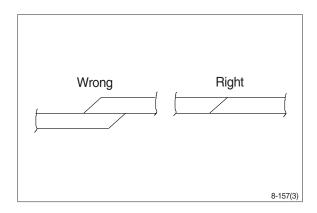
- * Check for scratches or rough surfaces if found smooth with an oil stone.
- ① Coat the inner face of gland (3) with hydraulic oil.



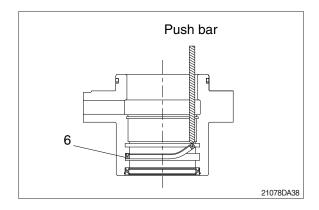
- ② Coat dust wiper (9) with grease and fit dust wiper (9) to the bottom of the hole of dust seal.
 - At this time, press a pad metal to the metal ring of dust seal.
- ③ Fit snap ring (10) to the stop face.



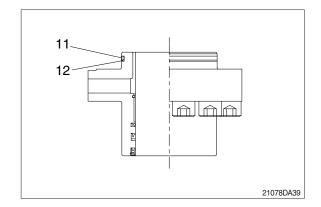
- Fit back up ring (7), rod seal (6) and buffer ring (8) to corresponding grooves, in that order.
- * Coat each packing with hydraulic oil before fitting it.
- * Insert the backup ring until one side of it is inserted into groove.



- ** Rod seal (6) has its own fitting direction.
 Therefore, confirm it before fitting them.
- Fitting rod seal (6) upside down may damage its lip. Therefore check the correct direction that is shown in fig.

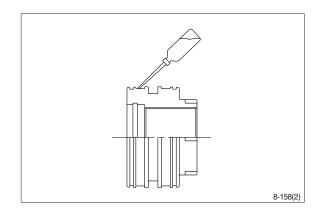


- 5 Fit back up ring (12) to gland (3).
- Put the backup ring in the warm water of 30~50°C.
- ⑥ Fit O-ring (11) to gland (3).

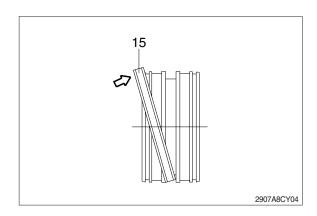


(2) Assemble piston assembly

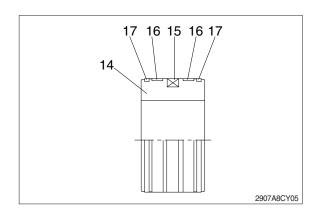
- * Check for scratches or rough surfaces.
 If found smooth with an oil stone.
- ① Coat the outer face of piston (14) with hydraulic oil.



- ② Fit piston seal (15) to piston.
- * Put the piston seal in the warm water of 60~100°C for more than 5 minutes.
- * After assembling the piston seal, press its outer diameter to fit in.

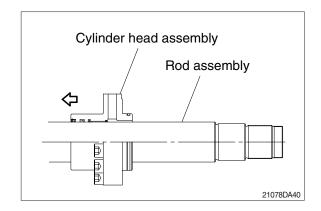


③ Fit wear ring (16) and dust ring (17) to piston (14).

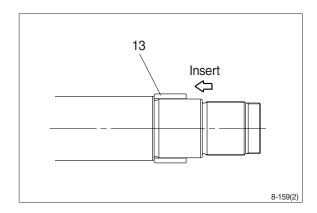


(3) Install piston and cylinder head

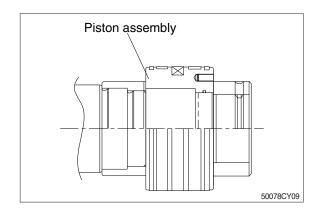
- ① Fix the rod assembly to the work bench.
- ② Apply hydraulic oil to the outer surface of rod assembly (2), the inner surface of piston and cylinder head.
- ③ Insert cylinder head assembly to rod assembly.



- ④ Insert cushion ring (13) to rod assembly.
- Note that cushion ring (13) has a direction in which it should be fitted.

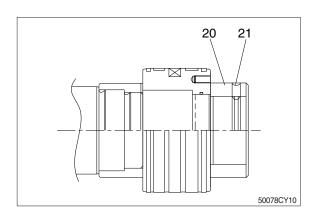


- ⑤ Fit piston assembly to rod assembly.
 - Tightening torque : $150 \pm 15.0 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$ ($1085 \pm 108 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft}$)



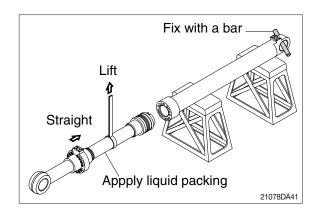
- 6 Fit lock nut (20) and tighten the set screw (21).
 - · Tightening torque:

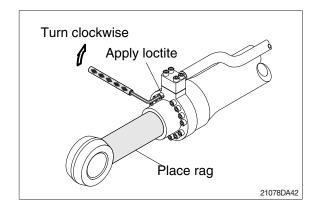
Item		kgf ⋅ m	lbf ⋅ ft
Bucket	20	100±10	723.3±72.3
Boom	21	5.4±0.5	39.1±3.6
Λ κκο	20	150±15	1085±108
Arm	21	5.4±0.5	39.1±3.6



(3) Overall assemble

- ① Place a V-block on a rigid work bench. Mount the tube assembly (1) on it and fix the assembly by passing a bar through the clevis pin hole to lock the assembly.
- ② Insert the rod assembly in to the tube assembly, while lifting and moving the rod assembly with a crane.
- ** Be careful not to damage piston seal by thread of tube assembly.
- ③ Match the bolt holes in the cylinder head flange to the tapped holes in the tube assembly and tighten socket bolts to a specified torque.
- * Refer to the table of tightening torque.





GROUP 10 UNDERCARRIAGE

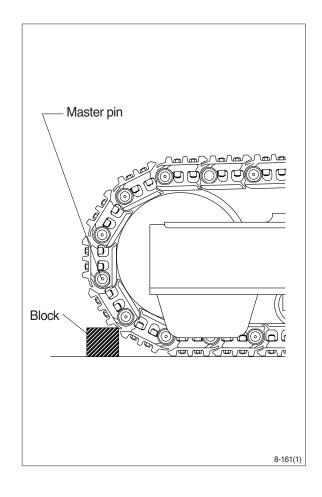
1. TRACK LINK

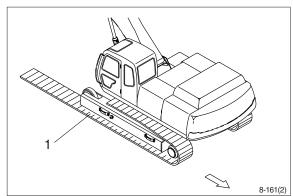
1) REMOVAL

- (1) Move track link until master pin is over front idler in the position put wooden block as shown.
- (2) Loosen tension of the track link.
- If track tension is not relieved when the grease valve is loosened, move the machine backwards and forwards.
- ** Unscrew the grease nipple after release the tension by pushing the poppet only when necessarily required. Grease leaking hole is not existing. So, while unscrew the grease nipple, grease is not leaking until the grease nipple is completely coming out. If the tension is not released in advance, the grease nipple can be suddenly popped out by
- (3) Push out master pin by using a suitable tool.

pressurized grease.

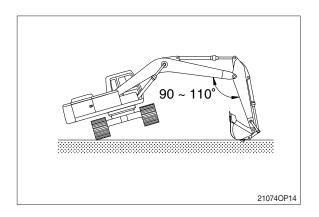
- (4) Move the machine slowly in reverse, and lay out track link assembly (1).
- * Jack up the machine and put wooden block under the machine.
- * Don't get close to the sprocket side as the track shoe plate may fall down on your feet.





2) INSTALL

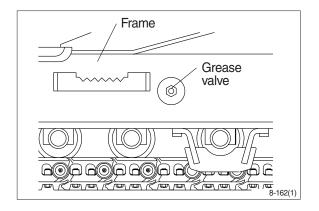
- (1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.
- * Adjust the tension of the track link.



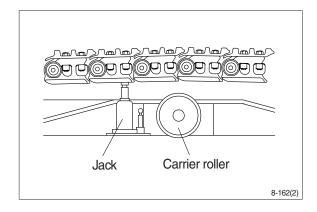
2. CARRIER ROLLER

1) REMOVAL

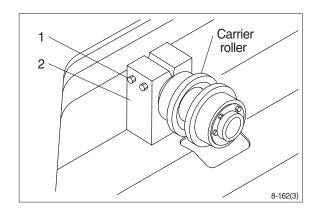
(1) Loosen tension of the track link.



(2) Jack up the track link height enough to permit carrier roller removal.



- (3) Loosen the lock nut (1).
- (4) Open bracket (2) with a screwdriver, push out from inside, and remove carrier roller assembly.
 - · Weight: 40 kg (88 lb)



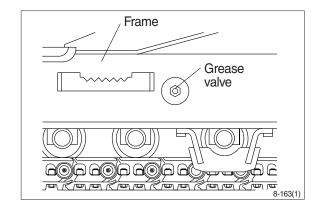
2) INSTALL

(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

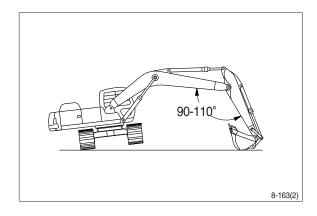
3. TRACK ROLLER

1) REMOVAL

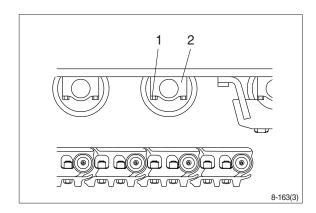
(1) Loosen tension of the track link.



- (2) Using the work equipment, push up track frame on side which is to be removed.
- * After jack up the machine, set a block under the unit.



- (3) Remove the mounting bolt (1) and draw out the track roller (2).
 - · Weight: 60 kg (130 lb)



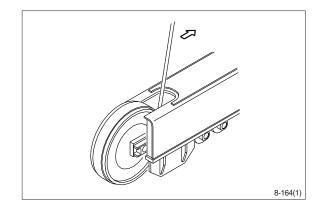
2) INSTALL

(1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.

4. IDLER AND RECOIL SPRING

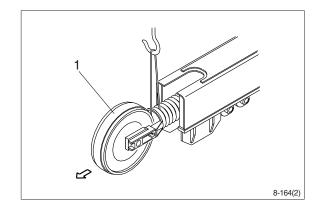
1) REMOVAL

(1) Remove the track link.
For detail, see **removal of track link.**

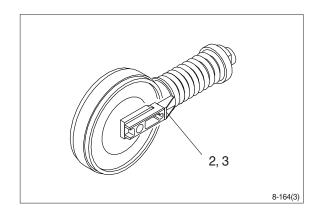


(2) Sling the recoil spring (1) and pull out idler and recoil spring assembly from track frame, using a pry.

· Weight: 475 kg (1020 lb)

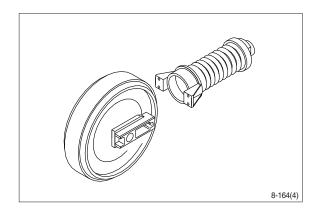


(3) Remove the bolts (2), washers (3) and separate idler from recoil spring.



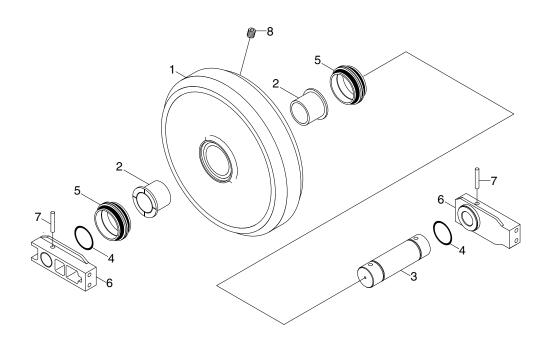
2) INSTALL

- (1) Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.
- Make sure that the boss on the end face of the recoil cylinder rod is in the hole of the track frame.



3) DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY OF IDLER

(1) Structure



29078ID01

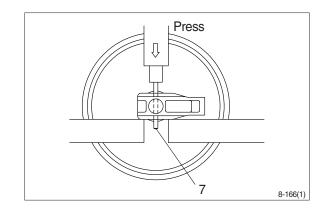
- 1 Shell
- 2 Bushing
- 3 Shaft

- 4 O-ring
- 5 Seal assembly
- 6 Bracket

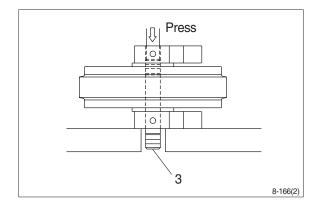
- 7 Spring pin
- 8 Plug

(2) Disassembly

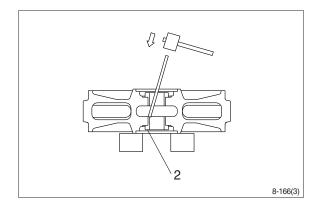
- ① Remove plug and drain oil.
- ② Draw out the spring pin (7), using a press.



- ③ Pull out the shaft (2) with a press.
- ④ Remove seal (5) from shell (1) and bracket (6).
- ⑤ Remove O-ring (4) from shaft.

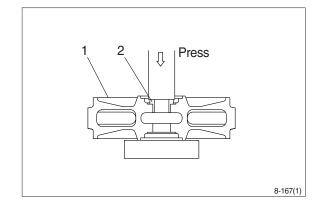


- ⑥ Remove the bushing (2) from idler, using a special tool.
- * Only remove bushing if replacement is necessity.

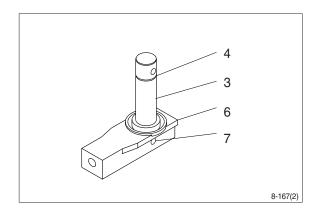


(3) Assembly

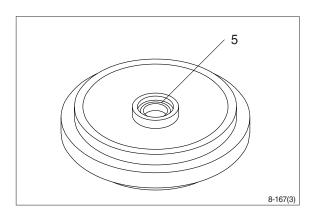
- * Before assembly, clean the parts.
- * Coat the sliding surfaces of all parts with oil.
- Cool up bushing (2) fully by some dry ice and press it into shell (1).
 Do not press it at the normal temperature, or not knock in with a hammer even after the cooling.



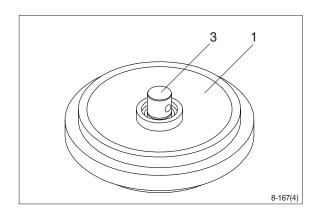
- ② Coat O-ring (4) with grease thinly, and install it to shaft (3).
- ③ Insert shaft (3) into bracket (6) and drive in the spring pin (7).



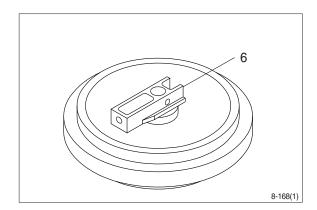
④ Install seal (5) to shell (1) and bracket (6).



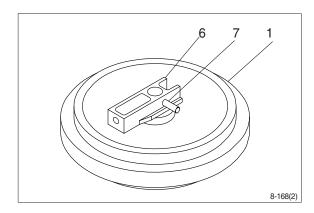
⑤ Install shaft (3) to shell (1).

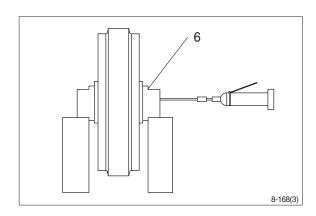


⑥ Install bracket (6) attached with seal (5).



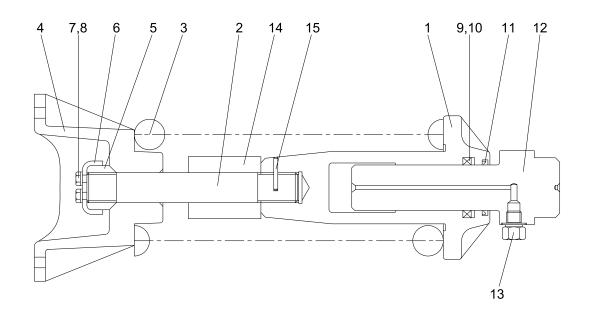
⑦ Knock in the spring pin (7) with a hammer.





4) DISASSEMBLY AND ASSEMBLY OF RECOIL SPRING

(1) Structure

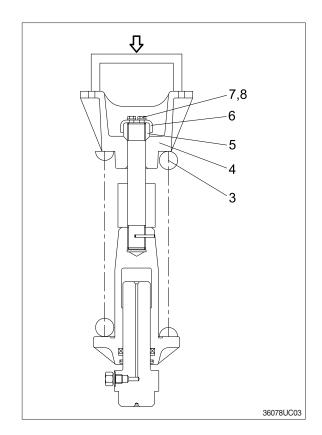


36078UC02

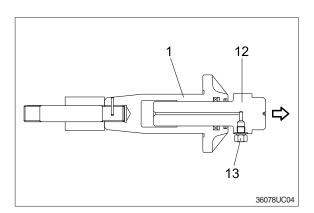
1	Body	6	Lock plate	11	Dust seal
2	Tie bar	7	Bolt	12	Rod assembly
3	Spring	8	Spring washer	13	Grease valve
4	Bracket	9	Rod seal	14	Stopper tube
5	Lock nut	10	Back up ring	15	Spring pin

(2) Disassembly

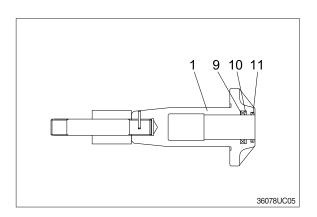
- ① Apply pressure on spring (3) with a press.
- * The spring is under a large installed load. This is dangerous, so be sure to set properly.
 - ·Spring set load : 19012 kg (41826 lb)
- ② Remove bolt (7), spring washer (8) and lock plate (6).
- ③ Remove lock nut (5).
 Take enough notice so that the press which pushes down the spring, should not be slipped out in its operation.
- 4 Lighten the press load slowly and remove bracket (4) and spring (3).



- ⑤ Remove rod (12) from body (1).
- 6 Remove grease valve (13) from rod (12).

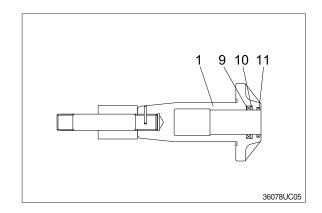


Remove rod seal (9), back up ring (10) and dust seal (11).

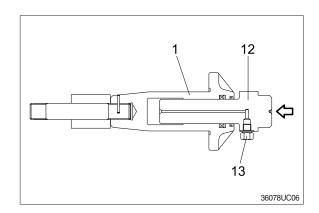


(3) Assembly

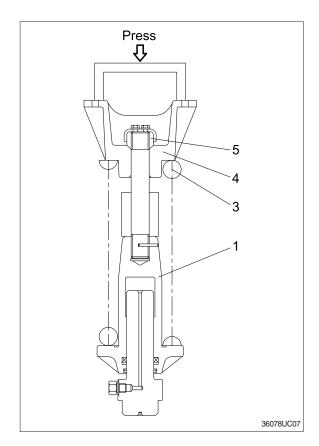
- ① Install dust seal (11), back up ring (10) and rod seal (9) to body (1).
- When installing dust seal (11) and rod seal (9), take full care so as not to damage the lip.



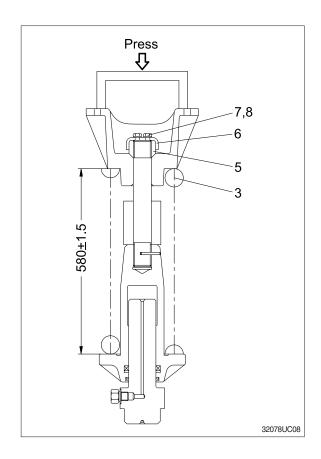
- ② Pour grease into body (1), then push in rod (12) by hand.
 After take grease out of grease valve mounting hole, let air out.
- * If air letting is not sufficient, it may be difficult to adjust the tension of crawler.
- ③ Fit grease valve (13) to rod (12). ·Tightening torque : $13.0 \pm 1.0 \text{ kgf} \cdot \text{m}$ $(94 \pm 7.2 \text{ lbf} \cdot \text{ft})$



- Install spring (3) and bracket (4) to body (1).
- ⑤ Apply pressure to spring (3) with a press and tighten lock nut (5).
- * Apply sealant before assembling.
- ** During the operation, pay attention specially to prevent the press from slipping out.

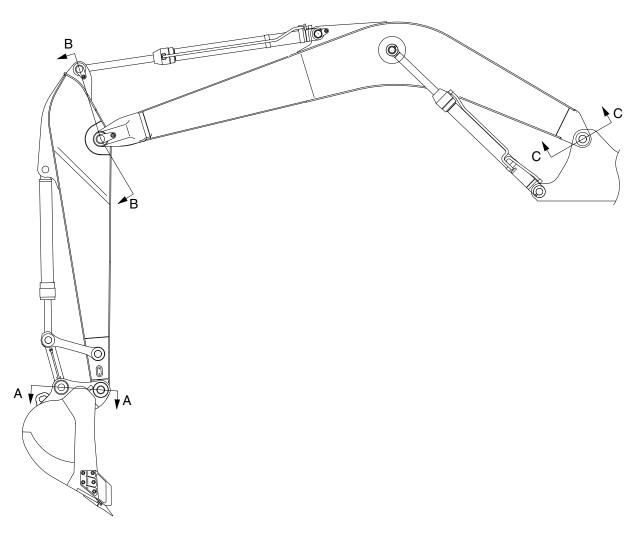


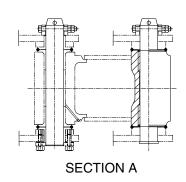
- ⑤ Lighten the press load and confirm the set length of spring (3).
- ② After the setting of spring (3), install lock plate (6), spring washer (8) and bolt (7).

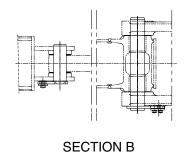


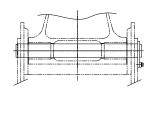
GROUP 11 WORK EQUIPMENT

1. STRUCTURE









SECTION C

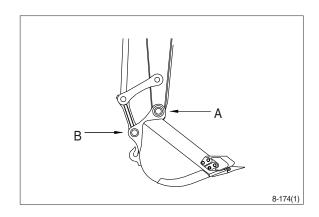
29078WE01

2. REMOVAL AND INSTALL

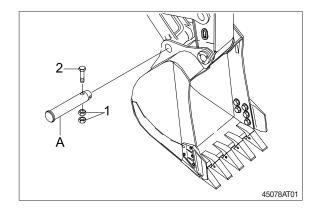
1) BUCKET ASSEMBLY

(1) Removal

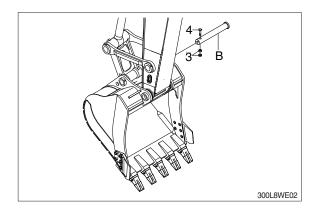
① Lower the work equipment completely to ground with back of bucket facing down.



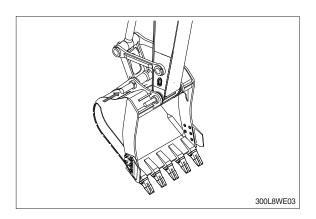
② Remove nut (1), bolt (2) and draw out the pin (A).



③ Remove nut (3), bolt (4) and draw out the pin (B).



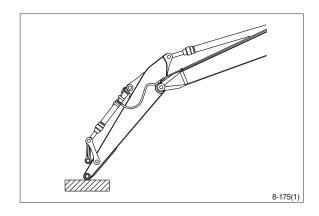
- ① Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.
- ♠ When aligning the mounting position of the pin, do not insert your fingers in the pin hole.
- * Adjust the bucket clearance.
 For detail, see operation manual.

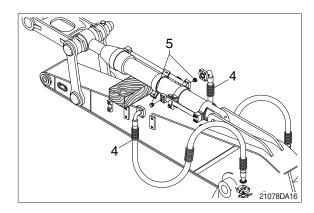


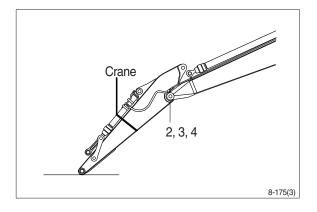
2) ARM ASSEMBLY

(1) Removal

- * Loosen the breather slowly to release the pressure inside the hydraulic tank.
- ♠ Escaping fluid under pressure can penetrated the skin causing serious injury.
- Remove bucket assembly.
 For details, see removal of bucket assembly.
- ② Disconnect bucket cylinder hose (1).
- ♠ Fit blind plugs in the piping at the chassis end securely to prevent oil from spurting out when the engine is started.
- 3 Sling arm cylinder assembly, remove spring, pin stopper and pull out pin.
- * Tie the rod with wire to prevent it from coming out.
- ④ For details, see removal of arm cylinder assembly.
 - Place a wooden block under the cylinder and bring the cylinder down to it.
- (5) Remove bolt (2), plate (3) and pull out the pin (4) then remove the arm assembly.
 - · Weight: 1160 kg (2560 lb)
- When lifting the arm assembly, always lift the center of gravity.







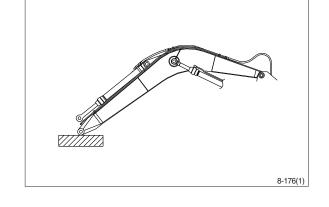
- ① Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.
- ♠ When lifting the arm assembly, always lift the center of gravity.
- * Bleed the air from the cylinder.

3) BOOM CYLINDER

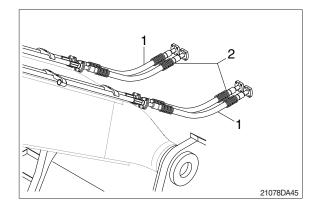
(1) Removal

- Remove arm and bucket assembly.
 For details, see removal of arm and bucket assembly.
- ② Remove boom cylinder assembly from boom.

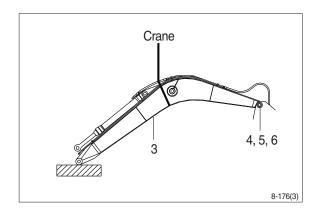
For details, see **removal of arm cylinder assembly.**



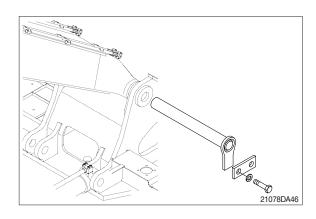
- 3 Disconnect head lamp wiring.
- ④ Disconnect bucket cylinder hose (2) and arm cylinder hose (1).
- When the hose are disconnected, oil may spurt out.
- ⑤ Sling boom assembly (3).



- Remove bolt (4), plate (5) and pull out the pin (6) then remove boom assembly.
 Weight: 2540 kg (5600 lb)
- When lifting the boom assembly always lift the center of gravity.



- ① Carry out installation in the reverse order to removal.
- ♠ When lifting the arm assembly, always lift the center of gravity.
- * Bleed the air from the cylinder.



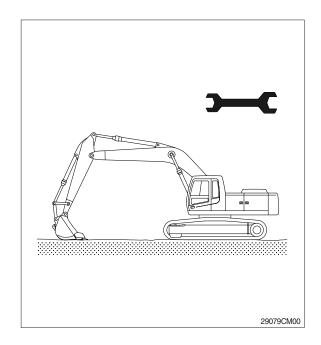
SECTION 9 COMPONENT MOUNTING TORQUE

Group	1	Introduction guide ·····	9-1
Group	2	Engine system	9-2
Group	3	Electric system	9-4
Group	4	Hydraulic system ·····	9-6
Group	5	Undercarriage	9-9
Group	6	Structure	9-11
Group	7	Work equipment ·····	9-15

SECTION 9 COMPONENT MOUNTING TORQUE

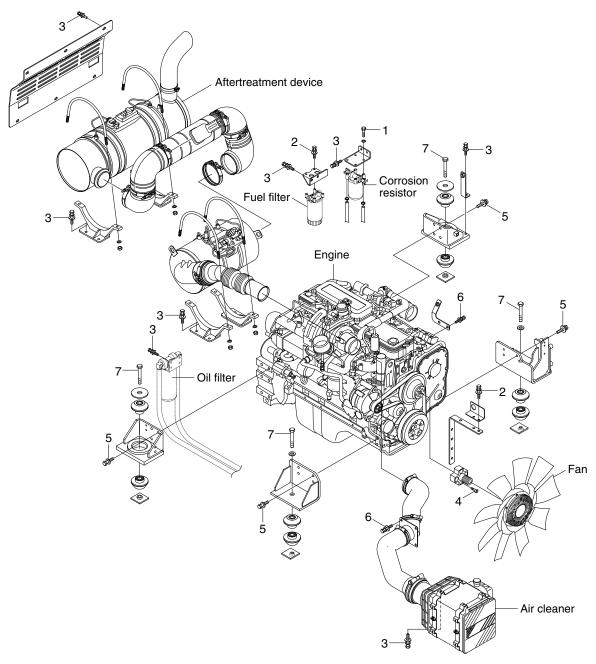
GROUP 1 INTRODUCTION GUIDE

- 1. This section shows bolt specifications and standard torque values needed when mounting components to the machine.
- 2. Use genuine HD Hyundai Construction Equipment spare parts.
 - We expressly point out that HD Hyundai Construction Equipment will not accept any responsibility for defects resulted from nongenuine parts.
 - In such cases HD Hyundai Construction Equipment cannot assume liability for any damage.
- Metric fasteners can be used and incorrect fasteners may result in machine damage or malfunction.
- Before installation, clean all the components with a non-corrosive cleaner. Bolts and threads must not be worn or damaged.



GROUP 2 ENGINE SYSTEM

ENGINE AND ACCESSORIES MOUNTING



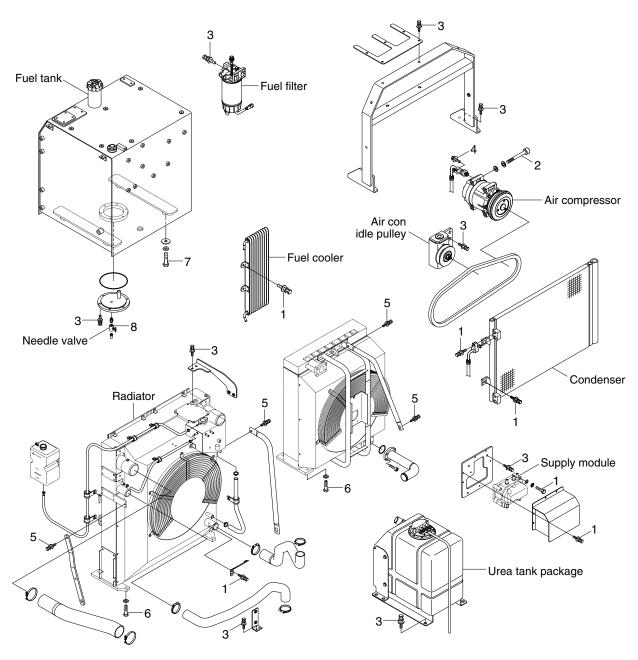
330L9CM01

· Tightening torque

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf ⋅ ft
1	M 6×1.0	1.44±0.3	10.4±2.2
2	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6
3	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1
4	M10×1.5	8.27±1.7	59.8±12.3

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf ⋅ ft
5	M12×1.75	10±1.0	72.3±7.2
6	M12×1.75	12.8±3.0	92.6±21.7
7	M24×3.0	90±9.0	651±65
-	-	-	-

COOLING SYSTEM AND FUEL TANK MOUNTING



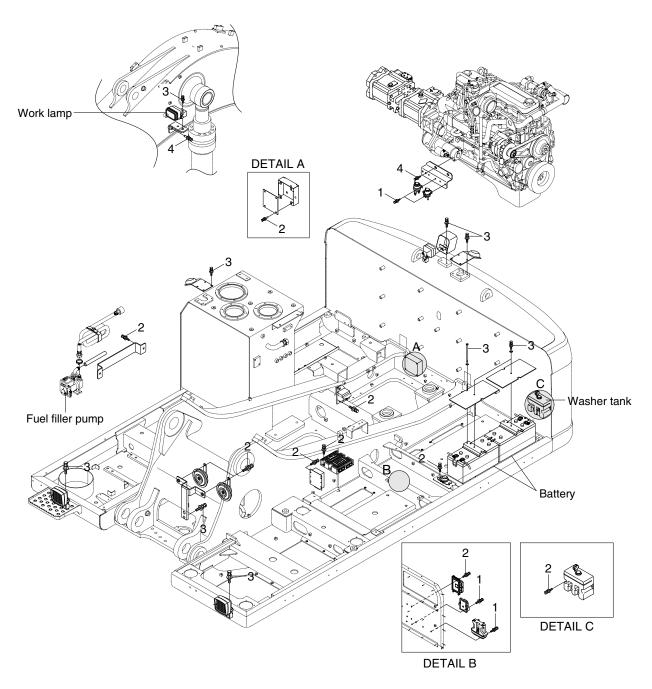
330L9CM02

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf ⋅ ft
1	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6
2	M 8×1.25	4.05 ± 0.8	29.3±5.8
3	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1
4	M10×1.5	7.4 ± 1.5	53.5±10.8

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
5	M12×1.75	12.8±3.0	92.6±21.7
6	M16×2.0	29.7±4.5	215±32.5
7	M20×2.5	46±5.1	333±36.9
8	-	2.3±0.6	16.6±4.3

GROUP 3 ELECTRIC SYSTEM

ELECTRIC COMPONENTS MOUNTING 1

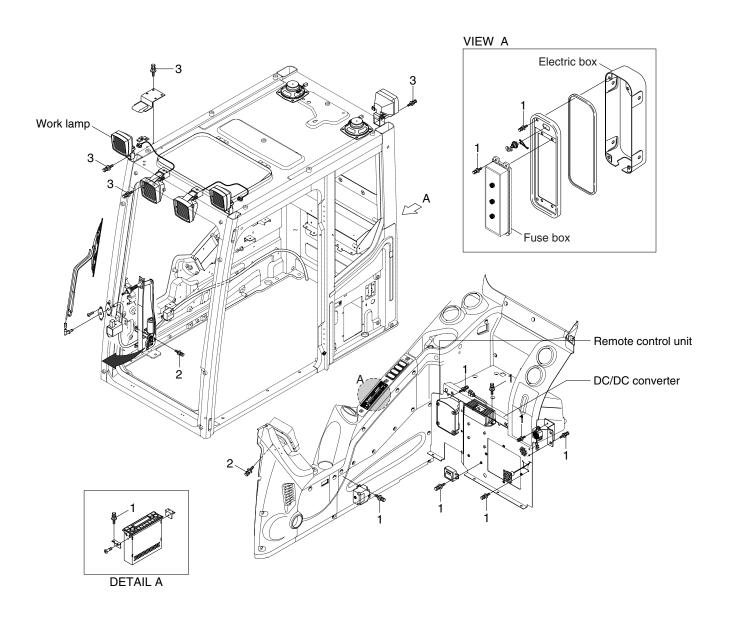


330L9CM03

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M 6×1.0	1.05±0.2	7.6±1.45
2	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
3	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1
4	M12×1.75	12.8±3.0	92.6±21.7

ELECTRIC COMPONENTS MOUNTING 2



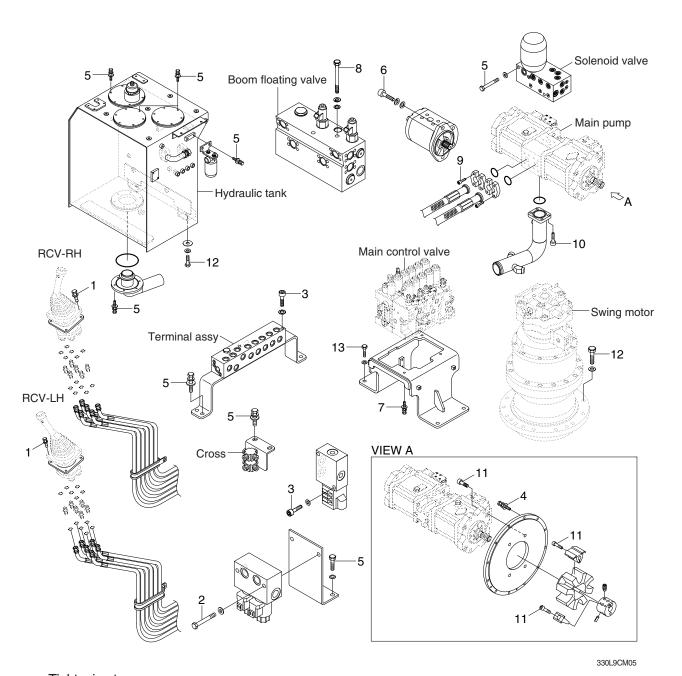
330L9CM04

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf ⋅ ft
1	M 6×1.0	1.05±0.2	7.6±1.45
2	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf ⋅ ft
3	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1
-	-	-	-

GROUP 4 HYDRAULIC SYSTEM

HYDRAULIC COMPONENTS MOUNTING 1

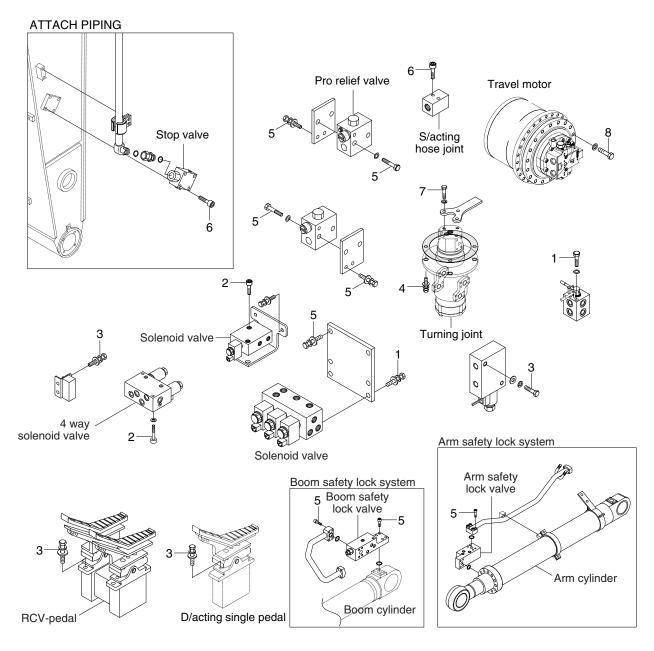


· Tightening torque

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M 6×1.0	1.05±0.2	7.6±1.45
2	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6
3	M 8×1.25	4.05 ± 0.8	29.3±5.8
4	M10×1.5	4.8±0.3	34.7±2.2
5	M10×1.5	6.9 ± 1.4	49.9±10.1
6	M10×1.5	8.27 ± 1.7	59.8±12.3
7	M12×1.75	12.2±1.3	88.2±9.4

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf ⋅ ft
8	M12×1.75	12.8±3.0	92.6±21.7
9	M12×1.75	14.7±2.2	106±15.9
10	M16×2.0	35.6±7.1	257±51
11	M20×2.5	46.5±2.5	336±18.1
12	M20×2.5	57.9±5.8	419±42
13	M20×2.5	57.9±8.7	419±62.9
-	-	-	-

HYDRAULIC COMPONENTS MOUNTING 2

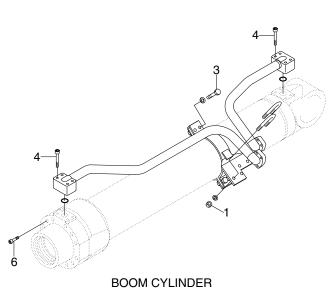


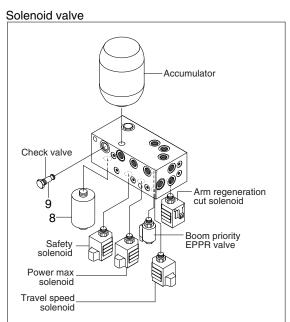
330L9CM06

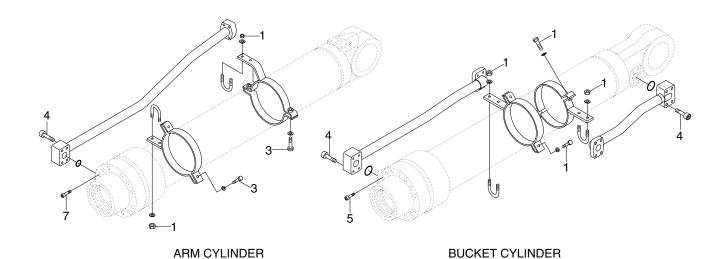
Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6
2	M 8×1.25	4.05±0.8	29.3±5.8
3	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1
4	M12×1.75	12.3±1.3	89.0±9.4

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf ⋅ ft
5	M12×1.75	12.8±3.0	92.6±21.7
6	M12×1.75	14.7±2.2	106±15.9
7	M14×2.0	19.6±2.9	142±21.0
8	M24×3.0	84±8.0	608±57.8

HYDRAULIC COMPONENTS MOUNTING 3







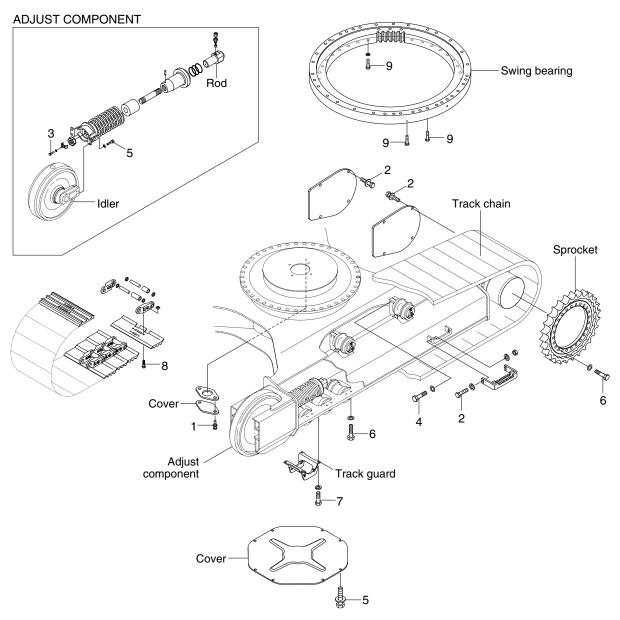
3309A9CM07

Item	Size	kgf ⋅ m	lbf ⋅ ft
1	M10×1.5	3.2±0.3	23.1±2.2
3	M12×1.75	5.5±0.6	39.8±4.3
4	M12×1.75	9.4±1.0	68.0±7.2
5	M18×2.5	32±3.0	232±21.7

Item	Size	kgf ⋅ m	lbf ⋅ ft
6	M20×2.5	46±5.0	333±36.2
7	M22×2.5	63±6.0	456±43.4
8	Line filter	2.5	18.0
9	Check valve	4.0	28.9

GROUP 5 UNDERCARRIAGE

UNDERCARRIAGE MOUNTING

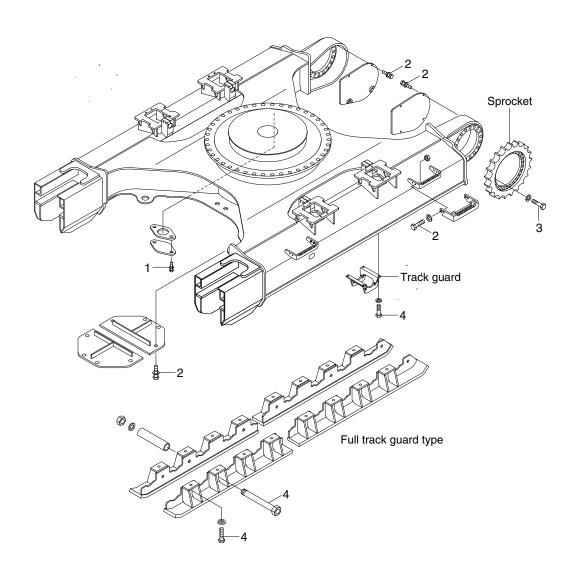


330L9CM08

	<u> </u>		
Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1
2	M12×1.75	12.8±3.0	92.6±21.7
3	M12×1.25	13.3±2.7	96.2±19.5
4	M16×2.0	29.7±3.0	215±21.7
5	M16×2.0	29.7±4.5	215±32.5

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf ⋅ ft
6	M20×2.5	57.9±6.0	419±43.4
7	M20×2.5	57.9±8.7	419±62.9
8	M22×1.5	123±6.0	890±43.4
9	M24×3.0	100±10	723±72.3
-	-	-	-

UNDERCARRIAGE MOUNTING (HIGH WALKER)



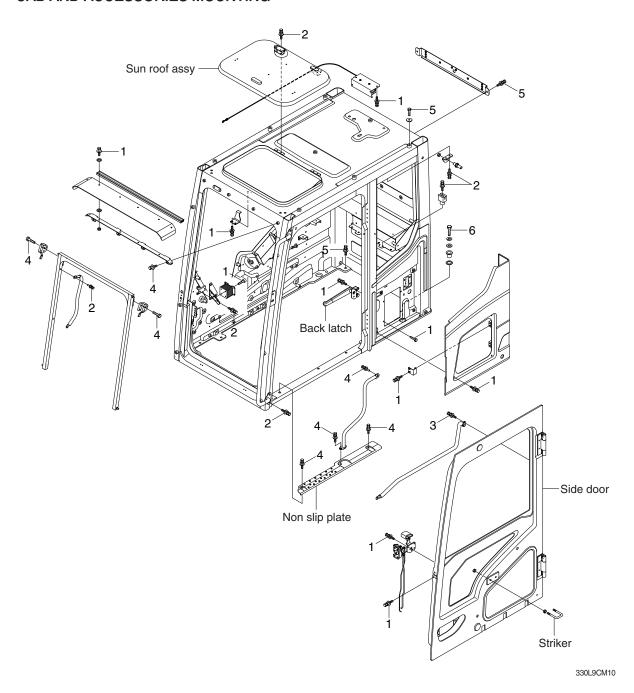
330L9CM09

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf ⋅ ft
1	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1
2	M12×1.75	12.8±3.0	92.6±21.7

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
3	M20×2.5	57.9±6.0	419±43.3
4	M24×3.0	100±15	723±109

GROUP 6 STRUCTURE

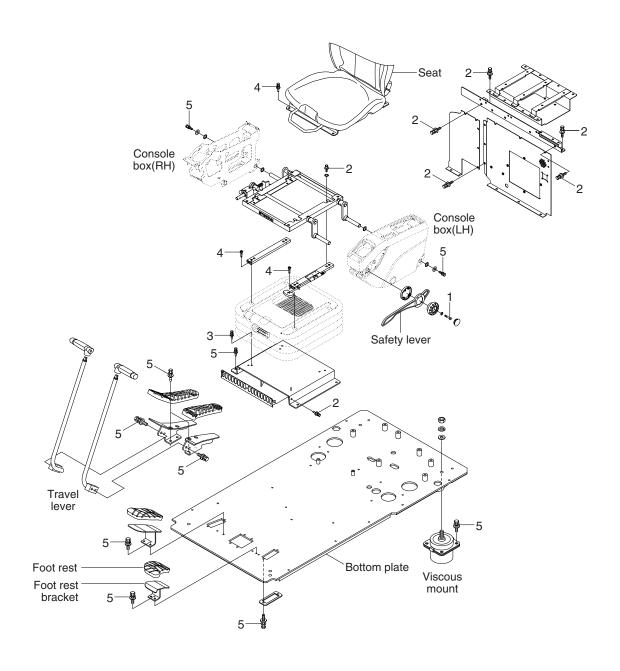
CAB AND ACCESSORIES MOUNTING



Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
1	M 6×1.0	1.05±0.2	7.6±1.45
2	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6
3	M 8×1.25	3.43±0.7	24.8±5.1

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
4	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1
5	M12×1.75	12.8±3.0	92.6±21.7
6	M24×3.0	100±15	723±109

CAB INTERIOR MOUNTING

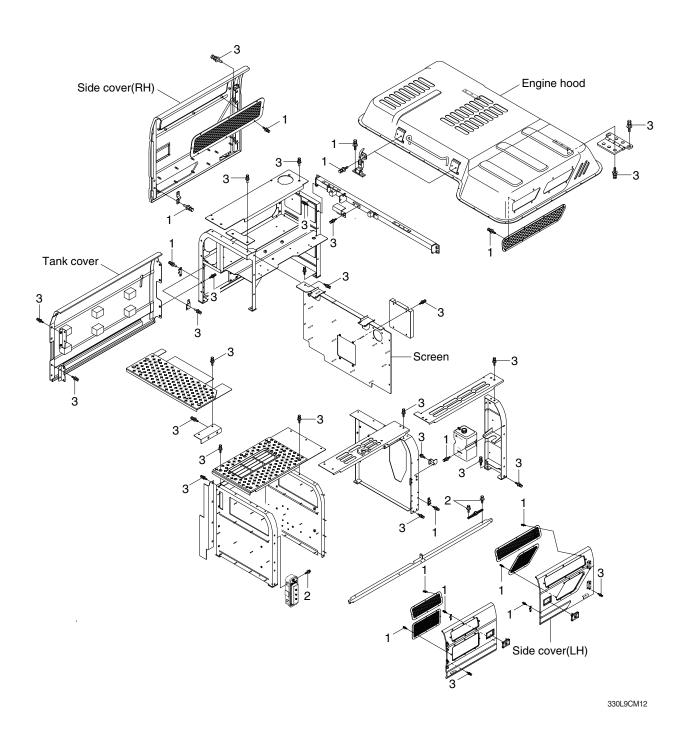


330L9CM11

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf ⋅ ft
1	M 6×1.0	1.05±0.2	7.6±1.45
2	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6
3	M 8×1.25	3.43±0.7	24.8±5.1

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf · ft
4	M 8×1.25	4.05±0.8	29.3±5.8
5	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1
-	-	-	-

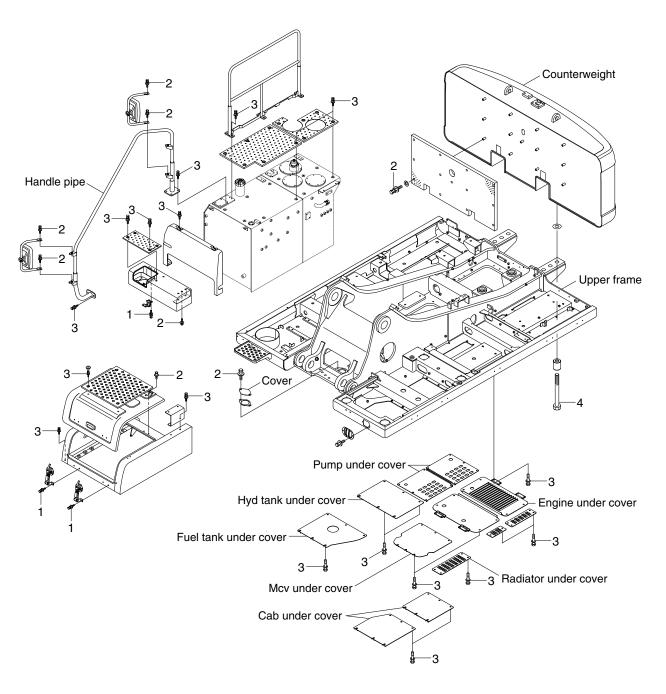
COWLING MOUNTING



Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf ⋅ ft
1	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6
2	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf ⋅ ft
3	M12×1.75	12.8±3.0	92.6±21.7
-	-	-	-

COUNTERWEIGHT AND COVERS MOUNTING

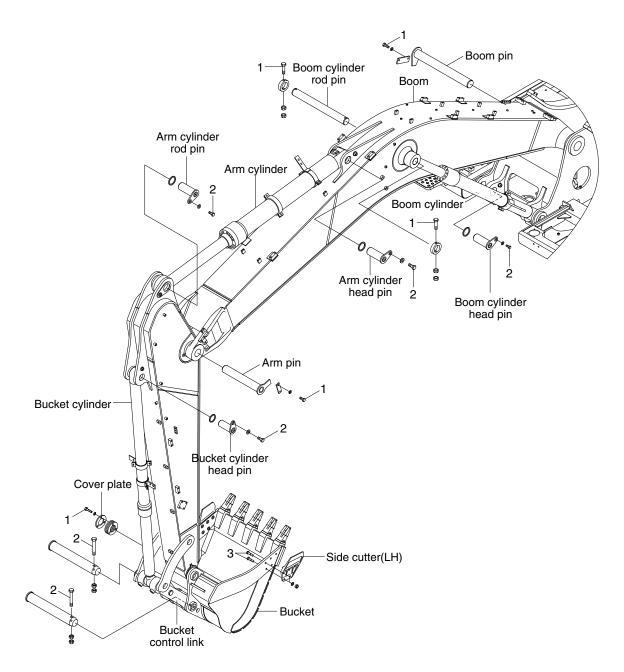


330L9CM13

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf ⋅ ft
1	M 8×1.25	2.5±0.5	18.1±3.6
2	M10×1.5	6.9±1.4	49.9±10.1

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf ⋅ ft
3	M12×1.75	12.8±3.0	92.6±21.7
4	M36×3.0	337±30	2440±217

GROUP 7 WORK EQUIPMENT



330L9CM14

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf ⋅ ft
1	M16×2.0	29.7±4.5	215±32.5
2	M20×2.5	57.9±8.7	419±62.9

Item	Size	kgf · m	lbf ⋅ ft
3	M22×2.5	81.9±16.1	592±116
-	-	-	-